UNDERSTANDING AND USING

# English Grammar

FOURTH EDITION

with ANSWER KEY



Betty S. Azar Stacy A. Hagen

#### Irregular Verbs: An Alphabetical Reference List

NOTE: Verbs followed by a bullet (•) are defined at the end of the list on the inside back cover.

cost cost cost leave left left left creep • crept crept crept lend lent lent lent cut cut cut deal • dealt dealt lie lay lain dig dug dug light lighted/lit lighte	Simple Form	Simple Past	Past Participle	Simple Form	Simple Past	Past Participle
awake awoke awoken been foreast* foreast foreast boar bore borne/born forget forgot forgot forgot forgot beat beat beaten/beat forgive forgave forgiven become become become become besen bemand beat beaten/beat forgive forgave forgiven betwome begin began begun freeze froze frozen got gotten/got* betwome betwo	arise	arose	arisen	fly	flew	flown
bear bore borne/born forget forgot forgotten beat beat beat beat beat beat beat beat	awake	awoke	awoken		forbade	forbidden
bear bore borne/born forget forgot forgotten beat beat beat beat beat beaten/beat forgive forgave forgave forgiven become become become forsake* forsook forsaken begin began begun freeze froze frozen frozen betwend bent bent get got gotten/got* betwend bid bid bid go went gone bid* bitwend bitwend bitwend bid* bid bid grow grown grown grown grown bid* bid bid bid grow grown grown grown bid* bid bid bid grow grown grown grown bid* bid* bid bid hang** hung hung blow blew blown have had had had had break broke broken hear heard heard heard bring brought brought brought brought brought brought build burned/burnt keep kept kept kept burst	be	was, were	been	forecast•	forecast	forecast
beat became became become forsake* forgive forgave forgiven bebein begin began begun freeze froze frozen forsache* beden bent bent bent get got gotten/got* bet bet bet bid bid go went gone bild bid bid go went gone bild bid bid grind* ground ground ground bleed bled bled bled hang** hung hung blow blow blown have had had had breed bred bred bred bred hid hid hid hid hid hid bring brought bring brought bring brought built built built built built built built burned/burnt keep kept kept burst cast* cast cast lay laid laid catch caught caught clark cast* cost cost lean leaned/learnt learned/learnt learn	bear		borne/born	forget	forgot	forgotten
become became become forsake* forsook forsaken begin begin began begun freeze froze frozen bend bent bent get got gotten/got* bet* bet bet give gave given bind* bid bid go went gone bind* bound bound grind* ground ground ground bite bit bit bitten grow grew grown bleed bled bled hang** hung hung blow blew blown have had had had broadcast broadcast broadcast broadcast broadcast broadcast* broadcast burst cast cast cast cast cast cast cast ca	beat	beat	beaten/beat		•	-
bend bent bet bet bet give gave given bid* bid bid bid go went gone bind* bound bound grind* ground ground ground bite bit bit bitten grow grew grown bleed bled bled hag** hung hung how blew blown have had had had break broke broken hear heard heard hiden bring brought brought brought built built built hurt hurt hurt burn burned/burnt burned/burnt burned/burnt burned/burnt burst* busst was bush bush bought know knew known cast* cast cast lay laid laid catch caught caught caught cling* clung clung clung clung clung clung clung clung dug dug dug dug dug dug dug dug dug du	become	became	become		~	•
bend bet bet bet bet give gave given bid* bid bid bid go went gone bind* bound bound bound grind* ground ground bleed bled bled bled hang** hung hung hung blow blew broken hear heard heard heard breed* brought brought built built built built hurt hurt hurt hurt burn burned/burnt burned/burnt burned/burnt burned/burnt burned/burnt burned/burnt burst* burst cast cast lay laid laid catch caught caught caught lean leaned/leant leaned/leant leaned/leant leaned/leant leaned/leant leaned/leant leaned/leant leaned/leant leated* done did done lost lost lost draw dream dreamd dreamt dream dreamd dreamt dreamed dreamt meant meant meant meant meant diffee* fled fied fild ride ridden ridden fild fild fild fild fild fild fild fild	begin	began	begun	freeze	froze	frozen
bet* bet bid bid bid bid go went gone bind* bid bid bid bid go went gone bind* bound grind* ground ground ground bite bit bitten grow grew grew grown bleed bled bled hang** hung hung blow blew blown have had had had break broke broken hear heard heard breed* bred broken hid hid hidden bring brought brought hit hit hit hit hit proadcast* broadcast broadcast hold held held build built built hurt hurt hurt hurt hurt burned/burnt keep kept kept kept burst* burst burst kneel kneeled/knelt kneeled/knelt buy bought cast* cast cast lay laid laid laid laid ledchoose chose chose chosen lean leaned/leant leaned/leant cost cost cost cost cost cost cost cos	bend	bent		get	got	gotten/got*
bid* bid bid bid bid grind* ground ground bind* bound bound grind* ground ground ground bite bit bit bitten grow grew grown grew grown bleed bled bled bled hang** hung hung blow blown have had had had break broke broken hear heard heard breed* bred bred brought brought hit hit hit hit broadcast* broadcast broadcast hold held held build build built built hurt hurt hurt hurt burned/burnt burned/burnt burned/burnt keep kept kept burst* burst kneel kneeled/knelt kneeled/knelt kneeled/knelt buy bought cast* cast lay laid laid catch caught caught lean leaned/leant leaned/leant leaned/leant leaned/leant come came come learn learned/learnt learned/learnt learned/learnt cut cut cut cut cut cut cut cut cut cu	bet•	bet	bet	"		•
bind* bound bound grind* ground ground bite bit bitten grow grew grown grown bleed bled bled hang** hung hung blow blew blown hear heard heard heard breed* bred bred bred hide hid hid hidden bring brought brought brought hit hit hit hit built built built built hurt hurt hurt burn burned/burnt burst kneel kneeled/knelt kneeled/knelt buy bought bought know knew known cast* cast cast lay laid laid laid catch caught caught lead led led led chose chose chose chosen lean leaned/leant leaned/leant cost cost cost cost cost cost cost cos	bid•	bid	bid		•	•
bite bit bit bitten bleed bled bled bled bled bled bled ble	bind•	bound	bound	"	ground	~
bleed bled bled bled hang** hung hung blow blow blow blow have had had had break broke broken hear heard heard breed* bred bred brought hid hid hidden bring brought brought broadcast* broadcast broadcast broadcast broadcast but built built hurt hurt hurt burn burned/burnt burned/burnt keep kept kept kept burst burst kneel kneeled/knelt kneeled/knelt buy bought bought know knew known cast* cast cast lay laid laid catch caught caught lead led led led led choose chose chose chosen lean leaned/leant leaned/leant cling* clung clung leap leaped/leapt leaped/leapt come came come learn learned/learnt learned/learnt cut cut cut cut cut cut let let let let cut cut cut cut cut let let let let deal* do did done do did done done dose lost lost made dream dreamed/dreamt drawn drawn drawn drawn drawn made made dreamed field feld feld feld feld feld feld feld f	bite	bit	bitten	1 0	•	•
blow blew blown have had had break broke broken hear heard heard breed breed breed hide hid hidden bring brought brought hit hit hit hit hit broadcast* broadcast broadcast hold held held build build built built hurt hurt hurt burn burned/burnt burned/burnt keep kept kept kept burst* burst burst kneel kneeled/knelt kneeled/knelt buy bought bought know knew known cast* cast cast lay laid laid catch caught caught lead led led led led choose chose chose chosen lean leaned/leant leaned/leant come came come learn learned/learnt learned/learnt cut cut cut cut cut cut cut cut cut cu	bleed	bled	bled	"	•	•
breed * bred bred brought brought brought brought brought brought brought brought broadcast broadcast broadcast broadcast hold held held build built built hurt hurt hurt hurt burn burned/burnt burned/burnt keep kept kept burst burst burst kneel kneeled/knelt kneeled/knelt buy bought bought know knew known cast cast cast lay laid laid catch caught caught lead led led led choose chose chose chose chose lean leaned/leant leaned/leant cost cost cost cost cost leave left left left left left left left lef	blow	blew	blown	1	•	
bring brought brought brought hit hit hit broadcast broa	break	broke	broken		heard	heard
broadcast* broadcast broadcast build build built built built hurt hurt hurt hurt burn burned/burnt burned/burnt burned/burnt keep kept kept burst* burst burst kneel kneeled/knelt kneeled/knelt buy bought bought know knew known cast* cast cast lay laid laid catch caught caught lead led led choose chose chosen lean leaned/leant leaned/leapt come came come learn learned/learnt learned/learnt cost cost cost leave left left left creep* crept crept lend lent lent cut cut cut cut let let let let deal* dealt dealt dealt dealt dig done lose lost lost draw drew drawn drawn drew drawn make made made dreamed/dreamt dreamed/dreamt mean meant meant drink drove driven mislay mislaid mislaid eat ate eaten mistake mistook mistaken found found found feld fied ride ride ride ride ride fideling	breed.	bred	bred	hide	hid	hidden
broadcast* broadcast broadcast build build built built built hurt hurt hurt hurt burn burned/burnt burned/burnt burned/burnt keep kept kept burst* burst burst kneel kneeled/knelt kneeled/knelt buy bought bought know knew known cast* cast cast lay laid laid catch caught caught lead led led choose chose chosen lean leaned/leant leaned/leant cling* clung clung leap leaped/leapt leaped/leapt come came come learn learned/learnt learned/learnt cost cost cost leave left left left creep* crept crept lend lent lent cut cut cut cut let let let let let deal* dealt dealt dealt did done lose lost lost draw drew drawn make made made dreamed/dreamt dreamed/dreamt mean meant meant drink drank drunk meet met met drive drove driven mislay mislaid mislaid eat ate eaten mistake mistook mistaken feld field fled ride rode ridden ridden id drid rid rid rid filffitted f	bring	brought	brought	hit	hit	hit
burn burned/burnt burned/burnt keep kept kept burst burst burst burst burst kneel kneeled/knelt kneeled/knelt buy bought bought know knew known cast cast cast lay laid laid catch caught caught lead led led led choose chose chosen lean leaned/leant leaned/leant cling clung clung leap leaped/leapt leaped/leapt come came come learn learned/learnt learned/learnt cost cost cost cost leave left left left left creep crept crept lend lend lent lent lent cut cut cut let let let let let deal dug dug dug dug dug light lighted/lit lighted/lit lighted/lit lighted/lit lighted/lit lost draw drew drawn make made made dream dreamed/dreamt dreamed/dreamt mean meant meant meant drink drank drunk meet met met met drive drove driven mislay mislaid mislaid pay paid paid feed fed fed prove proved proven/proved feel felt felt found found read read fit fil/fitted fit/fitted fit/fitted rid rid rid rid filee* fled feld feld ride rode ridden	~	~	•	hold	held	held
burn         burned/burnt         burned/burnt         keep         kept         kept           burst         burst         burst         kneel         kneeled/knelt         kneeled/knelt           buy         bought         bought         know         know         known           cast         cast         lay         laid         laid           catch         caught         lead         led         led           choose         chose         chosen         lean         leaned/leant         leaned/leant           cling         clung         clung         lean         leaped/leapt         leaped/leapt           come         came         come         learn         leaped/leapt         leaped/leapt           cost         cost         cost         lear         leaped/leapt         leaped/leapt           cost         cost         cost         lear         leaped/leapt         leaped/leapt           cost         cost         cost         lear         leaped/leapt         leaped/leapt           cost         cost         cost         leat         lett         lett         lett         lett         lett         lett         lett         lett	build	built	built	hurt	hurt	hurt
burst burst burst burst kneel kneeled/knelt kneeled/knelt buy bought bought know knew known cast cast cast lay laid laid laid catch caught caught lead led led led choose chose chosen lean leaned/leant leaned/leant cling clung clung leap leaped/leapt leaped/leapt come came come learn learned/learnt learned/learnt cost cost cost cost leave left left left cut cut cut cut let let let let let let deal deal deal deal deal deal deal led lend lent lent cut cut cut lie let let let let let let let let let le	burn	burned/burnt	burned/burnt	keep		kept
buy bought cast cast cast lay laid laid laid catch caught caught lead led led led led led choose chose chose chosen lean leaned/leant leaned/leapt leaped/leapt come came come learn learned/learnt learned/learnt cost cost cost cost leave left left left creep* crept crept lend lent let let let deal* dealt dealt dealt lie lay lain dig dug dug light lighted/lit lighted/lit lose draw drew drawn make made made dreamed/dreamt dreamed/dreamt mean meant meant drink drank drunk meet met met met drove driven mislaid mislaid paid paid paid feed fed prove proved proven/proved feel felt felt put put put find flee* fled fled ride ride ride ridden fidden dridden ridden fideles* fled fled fled ride rode ridden ridden ridden dridden ridden dridden ridden ridd	burst•	burst	burst			
cast • cast caught caught lead led led led choose chose chosen lean leaned/leant leaned/leant leaned/leant cling • clung clung leap leaped/leapt leaped/leapt leaped/leapt come came come learn learned/learnt learned/learnt learned/learnt cost cost cost leave left left left creep • crept crept lend lent lent lent cut cut cut let let let let let deal dug dug dug light lighted/lit lighted/lit lighted/lit lighted/lit lighted/lit lost draw drew drawn make made made dreamed dreamed dreamed dreamed dreamed drove driven mislay mislaid mislaid eat ate eaten mistake mistook mistaken fall fell fallen pay paid paid feed fed fed prove proved proven/proved feel felt found found found read read read fit fit/fitted fit/fitted fit/fitted rid rid rid rid flee ridden	buy	bought	bought	know	knew	
catch caught caught caught lead led led choose chose chose chosen lean leaned/leant leaned/leant cling clung clung leap leaped/leapt leaped/leapt come came come learn learned/learnt learned/learnt cost cost cost leave left left left creep crept crept crept lend lent lent let let deal* dealt dealt lie lay lain dig dug dug light lighted/lit lighted/lit lighted/lit lost draw drew drawn make made made dreamed/dreamt drank drunk meet met met drive drove driven mislay mislaid mislaid eat ate eaten mistake mistook mistaken fall fell fallen pay paid paid feed fed prove proved proven/proved feel felt felt put put put find found found found read read read fit fit/fitted fit/fitted fit/fitted rid rid rid rid rid fidele*				lav	laid	laid
choose chose chosen lean leaned/leant leaned/leant cling clung clung leap leaped/leapt leaped/leapt come came come learn learned/learnt learned/learnt cost cost cost cost leave left left left creep crept crept lend lent lent lent cut cut cut deal dealt lie lay lain dig dug dug light lighted/lit mean meant lighted little lighted lighted misslaid misslaid lighted lighted lighted misslaid misslaid lighted	catch	caught	caught		led	led
cling clung clung leap leaped/leapt leaped/leapt come came come learn learned/learnt learned/learnt cost cost cost cost leave left left left creep crept crept lend lent lent lent cut cut cut dealt dealt lie lay lain dig dug dig light lighted/lit lighted/lit lighted/lit lighted/lit lost draw drew drawn make made made dream dreamed/dreamt dreamed/dreamt mean meant meant drink drank drunk meet met met met drive drove driven mislay mislaid mislaid eat ate eaten mistake mistook mistaken fell fell fallen pay paid paid feed fed prove proved provend provendight fought fought fought fought quit** quit find found found read read read read fit fit/fitted fit/fitted rid rid rid rid flee*	choose	•	•	lean	leaned/leant	leaned/leant
come came come learn learned/learnt learned/learnt cost cost cost cost leave left left left creep crept crept lend lent lent lent cut cut deal dealt dealt lie lay lain dig dug dug light lighted/lit lighted/lit lighted/lit lose lost lost draw drew drawn make made made dreamed/dreamt dreamed/dreamt mean meant meant drink drank drunk meet met met drive drove driven mislay mislaid mislaid eat ate eaten mistake mistook mistaken fall fell fallen pay paid paid feed fed fed prove proved proven/proved feel felt felt put put put fight found found found read read read read fit fit/fitted fit/fitted rid rid rid rid rid fidele fidlen	clina•			leap	leaped/leapt	leaped/leapt
cost cost cost cost leave left left left creep* crept crept lend lent lent lent cut cut cut deal* dealt lie lay lain dig dug dug light lighted/lit lig	-	•	•			learned/learnt
creep* crept crept cut cut cut cut let let let let deal* dealt dealt die lije lay lain dig dug dug light lighted/lit lighted/lit lighted/lit lighted/lit lighted/lit lighted/lit lighted/lit lost draw drew drawn make made made dream dreamed/dreamt dreamed/dreamt mean meant meant drink drank drunk meet met met met drive drove driven mislay mislaid mislaid eat ate eaten mistake mistook mistaken fall fell fallen pay paid paid feed fed prove proved proven/proved feel felt felt put put put fight fought fought found read read read fit fit/fitted fit/fitted fited rid rid rid rid rid flee*		cost	cost		left	left
cut cut cut let let let let deal deal deal deal lie lay lain dig dug dug light lighted/lit					lent	lent
deal* dealt dealt lie lay lain dig dug dug light lighted/lit lighted/lit do did done lose lost lost draw drew drawn make made made dream dreamed/dreamt dreamed/dreamt mean meant met drink drank drunk meet met met drive drove driven mislay mislaid mislaid eat ate eaten mistake mistook mistaken fall fell fallen pay paid paid feed fed prove proved proven/proved feel felt felt put put put fight fought fought quit*** quit find found found read read read fit fit/fitted fit/fitted rid rid rid flee* fled fled ride rode ridden				let	let	let
dig dug dug light lighted/lit lighted/lit do did done lose lost lost draw drew drawn make made made dreamed/dreamt dreamed/dreamt mean meant meant drink drank drunk meet met met drive drove driven mislay mislaid mislaid eat ate eaten mistake mistook mistaken fall fell fallen pay paid paid feed fed prove proved proven/proved feel felt fought fought fought quit*** quit quit find found found read read read fit fit/fitted filed ride rode ridden	deal•	dealt	dealt	lie		lain
do did done lose lost lost draw drew drawn make made made dreamed/dreamt dreamed/dreamt mean meant meant drink drank drunk meet met met drive drove driven mislay mislaid mislaid eat ate eaten mistake mistook mistaken fall fell fallen pay paid paid feed fed prove proved proven/proved feel felt felt put put put fight fought found found read read read fit fit/fitted filed ride rode ridden					•	
draw drew drawn make made made dream dreamed/dreamt dreamed/dreamt mean meant meant drink drank drunk meet met met drive drove driven mislay mislaid mislaid eat ate eaten mistake mistook mistaken fall fell fallen pay paid paid feed fed prove proved proven/proved feel felt felt put put put fight fought fought quit*** quit quit find found found read read read fit fit/fitted fit/fitted rid rid rid flee• fled made made made made made made made mate meant meant met met met met met met met met met me	~		•			
dream dreamed/dreamt dreamed/dreamt mean meant met drink drank drunk meet met met met drive drove driven mislay mislaid mislaid eat ate eaten mistake mistook mistaken fall fell fallen pay paid paid feed fed prove proved proven/proved feel felt felt put put put fight fought found found read read read fit fit/fitted filed ride rode ridden				1		
drink drank drunk meet met met drive drove driven mislay mislaid mislaid eat ate eaten mistake mistook mistaken fall fell fallen pay paid paid feed fed prove proved proven/proved feel felt felt put put put fight fought found found read read read fit fit/fitted filed ride rode ridden						
drive drove driven mislay mislaid mislaid eat ate eaten mistake mistook mistaken fall fell fallen pay paid paid feed fed prove proved proven/proved feel felt felt put put put fight fought fought quit*** quit quit find found found read read read fit fit/fitted fit/fitted rid rid rid flee• fled fled ride rode ridden						
eat ate eaten mistake mistook mistaken fall fell fallen pay paid paid paid feed fed prove proved proven/proved feel felt felt put put put fight fought fought quit*** quit quit find found found read read read fit fit/fitted fit/fitted rid rid rid flee fled fled ride rode ridden						
fall fell fallen pay paid paid feed feed feed prove proved proven/proved feel felt felt put put put fight fought found found read read read fit fit/fitted fled ride rode ridden						
feed fed fed prove proved proven/proved feel felt felt put put put fight fought found found read read read fit fit/fitted fited fled ride rode ridden						
feel felt felt put put put fight fought fought quit*** quit quit find found found read read read fit fit/fitted fit/fitted rid rid rid flee fled fled ride rode ridden						
fight fought fought quit*** quit quit find found found read read fit fit/fitted fit/fitted rid rid flee fled fled ride rode ridden						
find found found read read read fit fit fit/fitted fit/fitted rid rid rid ride rode ridden						
fit fit/fitted fit/fitted rid rid rid flee fled ride rode ridden			•			•
flee• fled fled ride rode ridden						
tlind tlind rind rand rund	fling•	flung	flung	ring	rang	rung

<sup>\*</sup>In British English: get-got-got. In American English: get-got-gotten/got.

<sup>\*\*</sup>Hang is a regular verb when it means to kill someone with a rope around his/her neck.

Compare: I hung my clothes in the closet. They hanged the murderer by the neck until he was dead.

<sup>\*\*\*</sup>Also possible in British English: quit-quited-quitted.

UNDERSTANDING AND USING

## mglish Grammar

FOURTH EDITION

with ANSWER KEY



Betty S. Azar Stacy A. Hagen

#### Understanding and Using English Grammar, Fourth Edition with Answer Key

Copyright © 2009, 2002, 1989, 1981 by Betty Schrampfer Azar All rights reserved.

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior permission of the publisher.

Azar Associates: Shelley Hartle, Editor, and Sue Van Etten, Manager

Pearson Education, 10 Bank Street, White Plains, NY 10606

Staff credits: The people who made up the *Understanding and Using English Grammar Fourth Edition* team, representing editorial, production, design, and manufacturing, are Janice Baillie, Dave Dickey, Ann France, Amy McCormick, Robert Ruvo, and Ruth Voetmann.

Text composition: S4Carlisle Publishing Services

Text font: 10/12.5 Plantin

Illustrations: Don Martinetti, pages 2, 3, 4, 5, 14, 16, 17, 18, 23, 26, 27, 31, 36, 37, 47, 50, 51, 65, 72, 73, 81, 84, 88, 91, 99, 103, 107, 109, 115, 119, 120, 121, 123, 127, 131, 135, 139, 143, 145, 148, 152, 161, 169, 183, 185, 188, 190, 194, 201, 213, 220, 223, 232, 236, 238, 247, 255, 256, 259, 260 (top), 275, 278, 280, 286, 287, 292, 301, 303, 308, 316, 319, 321, 328, 340, 342, 347, 353, 355, 357, 362, 371, 373, 389, 396, 408, 413, 420, 424, 425, 432, 441, 446; Chris Pavely, pages 8, 41, 43, 45, 47, 54, 56, 60, 68, 70, 71, 74, 75, 77, 79, 86, 98, 100, 113, 116, 138, 142, 146, 153, 158, 170, 174, 175, 178, 181, 196, 198, 206, 211, 228, 235, 251, 257, 260 (bottom), 265, 272, 284, 289, 293, 309, 315, 331, 345, 349, 360, 363, 367, 378, 385, 393, 394, 403, 414, 422, 428; Kris Wiltse, pages 17, 19, 28, 29

#### Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Azar, Betty Schrampfer, 1941-

Understanding and using English grammar. -- 4th ed. / Betty S. Azar, Stacy A. Hagen.

p. cm.

ISBN-13: 978-0-13-233333-7 (with audio)

ISBN-10: 0-13-233333-3 (with audio)

ISBN-13: 978-0-13-233331-3 (with audio and answer key)

ISBN-10: 0-13-233331-7 (with audio and answer key)

[etc.]

1. English language--Textbooks for foreign speakers. 2. English

language--Grammar--Problems, exercises, etc. I. Hagen, Stacy A., 1956-II. Title.

PE1128.A97 2009

428.2'4--dc22

2008050357

Printed in the United States of America

ISBN 13: 978-0-13-233331-3

ISBN 10: 0-13-233331-7

5 6 7 8 9 10-V011-14 13 12 11 10

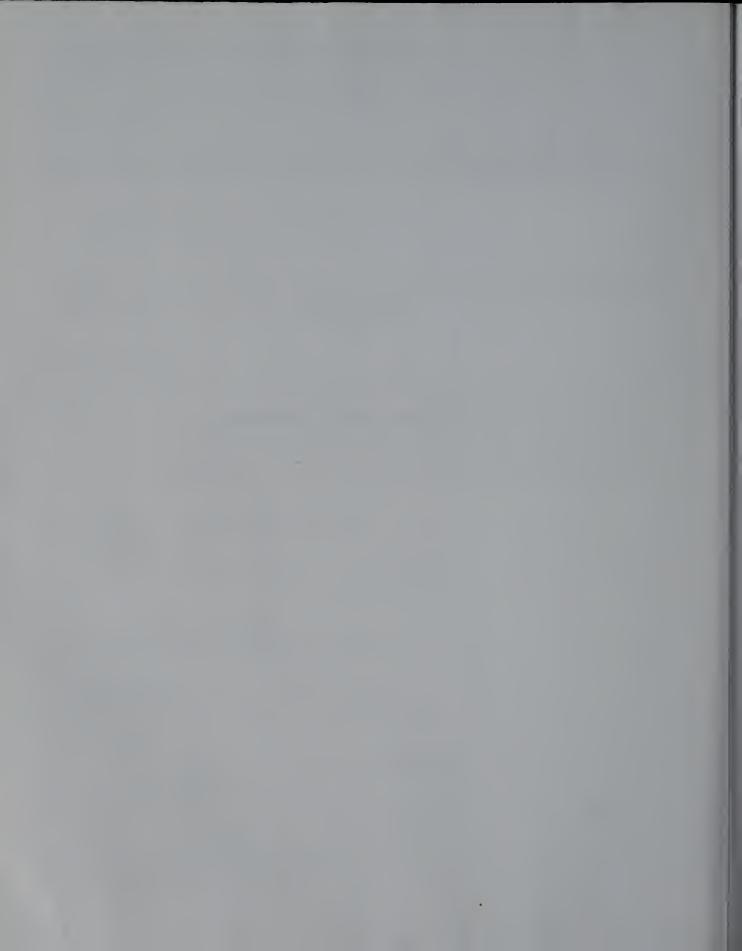
ISBN 13: 978-0-13-246450-5 (International Edition)

ISBN 10: 0-13-246450-0 (International Edition)

3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10-V011-14 13 12 11 10

For Larry
B.S.A.

For Andy and Julianna s.h.





## Contents

	ne Fourth Edition	
Chapter 1	OVERVIEW OF VERB TENSES  1-1 The simple tenses 1-2 The progressive tenses 1-3 The perfect tenses 1-4 The perfect progressive tenses 1-5 Summary chart of verb tenses 1-6 Spelling of -ing and -ed forms	2 3 4 5 6
Chapter 2	PRESENT AND PAST; SIMPLE AND PROGRESSIVE  2-1 Simple present 2-2 Present progressive 2-3 Non-progressive verbs 2-4 Regular and irregular verbs 2-5 Irregular verb list 2-6 Regular verbs: pronunciation of -ed endings 2-7 Simple past 2-8 Past progressive 2-9 Using progressive verbs with always 2-10 Using expressions of place with progressive verbs	14 14 16 20 27 29 33
Chapter 3	PERFECT AND PERFECT PROGRESSIVE TENSES  3-1 Present perfect  3-2 Have and has in spoken English  3-3 Present perfect vs. simple past  3-4 Present perfect progressive  3-5 Past perfect  3-6 Had in spoken English  3-7 Past perfect progressive	38 12 13 16 50
Chapter 4	FUTURE TIME  4-1 Simple future: will and be going to  4-2 Will vs. be going to  4-3 Expressing the future in time clauses  4-4 Using the present progressive and the simple present to express future time	51 53 57

	4-5 4-6	Future progressive	
Chapter 5	REVIE	W OF VERB TENSES	76
Chapter 6	SUBJE 6-1 6-2 6-3 6-4 6-5	Final -s/-es: use, pronunciation, and spelling Basic subject-verb agreement Subject-verb agreement: using expressions of quantity Subject-verb agreement: using there + be Subject-verb agreement: some irregularities	85 87 89 91
Chapter 7		Regular and irregular plural nouns Possessive nouns Nouns as adjectives Count and noncount nouns Noncount nouns Some common noncount nouns Basic article usage General guidelines for article usage Expressions of quantity used with count and noncount nouns Using a few and few; a little and little Singular expressions of quantity: one, each, every Using of in expressions of quantity	. 100 . 101 . 105 . 107 . 109 . 110 . 114 . 118 . 122 . 126 . 129
Chapter 8	8-1 8-2 8-3 8-4 8-5 8-6 8-7	Personal pronouns Personal pronouns: agreement with generic nouns and indefinite pronouns Personal pronouns: agreement with collective nouns Reflexive pronouns Using you, one, and they as impersonal pronouns Forms of other Common expressions with other	. 136 . 140 . 142 . 143 . 147
Chapter 9	9-1 9-2 9-3 9-4 9-5 9-6 9-7 9-8 9-9 9-10 9-11 9-12	Basic modal introduction Polite requests with "I" as the subject Polite requests with "you" as the subject Polite requests with would you mind Expressing necessity: must, have to, have got to Lack of necessity and prohibition: have to and must in the negative Advisability: should, ought to, had better The past form of should Obligation: be supposed to Unfulfilled intentions: was/were going to Making suggestions: let's, why don't, shall I/we Making suggestions: could vs. should	. 157 . 158 . 159 . 160 . 164 . 165 . 167 . 170 . 173 . 176

Chapter 10	MODALS, PART 2
	10-1Degrees of certainty: present time18010-2Degrees of certainty: present time negative18310-3Degrees of certainty: past time18610-4Degrees of certainty: future time18910-5Progressive forms of modals19310-6Ability: can and could19810-7Using would to express a repeated action in the past20010-8Expressing preference: would rather20110-9Combining modals with phrasal modals20210-10Summary chart of modals and similar expressions204
Chapter 11	THE PASSIVE
	11-1       Active vs. passive       211         11-2       Tense forms of the passive       213         11-3       Using the passive       214         11-4       The passive form of modals and phrasal modals       220         11-5       Non-progressive passive       227         11-6       Common non-progressive passive verbs + prepositions       229         11-7       The passive with get       233         11-8       Participial adjectives       236
Chapter 12	NOUN CLAUSES
	12-1Introduction24212-2Noun clauses beginning with a question word24412-3Noun clauses beginning with whether or if24912-4Question words followed by infinitives25212-5Noun clauses beginning with that25312-6Quoted speech25812-7Reported speech: verb forms in noun clauses26112-8Using -ever words268
Chapter 13	ADJECTIVE CLAUSES
	13-1Adjective clause pronouns used as the subject27013-2Adjective clause pronouns used as the object of a verb27313-3Adjective clause pronouns used as the object of a preposition27413-4Using whose27713-5Using where in adjective clauses27913-6Using when in adjective clauses28013-7Using adjective clauses to modify pronouns28313-8Punctuating adjective clauses28513-9Using expressions of quantity in adjective clauses29013-10Using which to modify a whole sentence29113-11Reducing adjective clauses to adjective phrases294
Chapter 14	GERUNDS AND INFINITIVES, PART 1
	14-1Gerunds: introduction30114-2Using gerunds as the objects of prepositions30214-3Common verbs followed by gerunds307

	14-4 Go + gerund  14-5 Special expressions followed by -ing  14-6 Common verbs followed by infinitives  14-7 Common verbs followed by either infinitives or gerunds  14-8 It + infinitive; gerunds and infinitives as subjects  14-9 Reference list of verbs followed by gerunds  14-10 Reference list of verbs followed by infinitives	310 313 317 322
Chapter 15	GERUNDS AND INFINITIVES, PART 2	331
	15-1 Infinitive of purpose: <i>in order to</i> 15-2 Adjectives followed by infinitives 15-3 Using infinitives with <i>too</i> and <i>enough</i> 15-4 Passive infinitives and gerunds 15-5 Using gerunds or passive infinitives following <i>need</i> 15-6 Using verbs of perception 15-7 Using the simple form after <i>let</i> and <i>help</i> 15-8 Using causative verbs: <i>make</i> , <i>have</i> , <i>get</i>	333 335 338 341 343
Chapter 16	COORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS	352
	16-1 Parallel structure	
	16-2 Parallel structure: using commas	
	eitheror; neithernor	
Chapter 17	ADVERB CLAUSES	365
опортот т	17-1 Introduction	
	17-2 Using adverb clauses to show time relationships	
	17-3 Using adverb clauses to show cause and effect	
	17-4 Expressing contrast (unexpected result): using <i>even though</i>	
	17-5 Showing direct contrast: <i>while</i>	376
	17-6 Expressing conditions in adverb clauses: <i>if</i> -clauses	
	17-7 Shortened <i>if</i> -clauses	
	17-8 Adverb clauses of condition: using whether or not and even if	
	17-9 Adverb clauses of condition: using <i>in case</i>	
	17-10 Adverb clauses of condition: using <i>antess</i>	
Chapter 18	REDUCTION OF ADVERB CLAUSES TO MODIFYING ADVERBIAL PHRASES	397
	18-1 Introduction	
	18-2 Changing time clauses to modifying adverbial phrases	
	adverbial phrases	
	18-4 Expressing cause and effect in modifying adverbial phrases	
	TO DESCRIPTION OF THE PROPERTY AND MAINTAIN MAINTAIN DISTRICTOR OF THE PROPERTY AND THE PRO	

Chapter 19	CONNECTIVES THAT EXPRESS CAUSE AND EFFECT, CONTRAST,	
	AND CONDITION	397
	19-1 Using because of and due to	397
	19-2 Cause and effect: using therefore, consequently, and so	
	19-3 Summary of patterns and punctuation	400
	19-4 Other ways of expressing cause and effect: suchthat and sothat	402
	19-5 Expressing purpose: using so that	
	19-6 Showing contrast (unexpected result)	
	19-7 Showing direct contrast	
	19-8 Expressing conditions: using otherwise and or (else)	
	19-9 Summary of connectives: cause and effect, contrast, and condition	411
Chapter 20	CONDITIONAL SENTENCES AND WISHES	416
	20-1 Overview of basic verb forms used in conditional sentences	416
	20-2 True in the present or future	
	20-3 Untrue (contrary to fact) in the present or future	
	20-4 Untrue (contrary to fact) in the past	
	20-5 Using progressive verb forms in conditional sentences	
	20-6 Using "mixed time" in conditional sentences	
	20-8 Implied conditions	
	20-9 Verb forms following <i>wish</i>	
	20-10 Using would to make wishes about the future	
Appendix	SUPPLEMENTARY GRAMMAR CHARTS	439
Unit A:	Basic Grammar Terminology	439
2,	A-1 Subjects, verbs, and objects	
	A-2 Adjectives	
	A-3 Adverbs	
	A-4 Prepositions and prepositional phrases	
	A-5 The verb <b>be</b>	
	A-6 Linking verbs	
Unit B:	Questions	
	B-1 Forms of yes/no and information questions	
	B-2 Question words	
	B-3 Shortened yes/no questions	
	B-5 Tag questions	
Unit C:	Contractions	
Unit D:	Negatives	448
	D-1 Using <i>not</i> and other negative words	
	D-2 Avoiding double negatives	
	D-3 Beginning a sentence with a negative word	448
Unit E:	Preposition Combinations	449
	E Preposition combinations with adjectives and verbs	

Unit F:	The Subjunctive	
Unit G:	Troublesome Verbs	
Listening Sc	ript	451
Answer Key		465
Index		517
Audio CD Tr	acking List	530



Understanding and Using English Grammar is a developmental skills text for intermediate to advanced English language learners. It uses a grammar-based approach integrated with communicative methodologies to promote the development of all language skills in a variety of ways. Starting from a foundation of understanding form and meaning, students engage in meaningful communication about real actions, real things, and their own real lives in the classroom context. Understanding and Using English Grammar functions principally as a classroom teaching text but also serves as a comprehensive reference text for students and teachers.

The eclectic approach and abundant variety of exercise material remain the same as in the earlier editions, but each new edition incorporates new ways and means. In particular:

#### • WARM-UP EXERCISES FOR THE GRAMMAR CHARTS

Newly created for the fourth edition, these innovative exercises precede the grammar charts and introduce the point(s) to be taught. They have been carefully crafted to help students discover the target grammar as they progress through each warm-up exercise.

#### LISTENING PRACTICE

Numerous listening exercises help students interact with the spoken language in a variety of settings that range from the relaxed, casual speech of everyday conversation to the academic content of classroom lectures. An audio CD accompanies the student text, and a full audio script can be found in the back of the book.

#### ACADEMIC READINGS

Students can read and respond to a wide selection of carefully crafted readings that focus on the target grammar structure.

#### EXPANDED SPEAKING ACTIVITIES

Students have even more opportunities in this fourth edition to share their experiences, express their opinions, and relate the target grammar to their personal lives. The text often uses the students' own life experiences as context and regularly introduces topics of interest to stimulate the free expression of ideas in structured as well as open discussions.

#### CORPUS-INFORMED CONTENT

Based on the findings of our corpus researcher, Gena Bennett, grammar content has been added, deleted, or modified to reflect the discourse patterns of spoken and written English.

#### Understanding and Using English Grammar is accompanied by

- A comprehensive *Workbook*, consisting of self-study exercises for independent work.
- An all-new *Teacher's Guide*, with step-by-step teaching suggestions for each chart, notes to the teacher on key grammar structures, vocabulary lists, and expansion activities and *PowerPoint* presentations for key chapters.
- An expanded *Test Bank*, with additional quizzes, chapter tests, and mid-term and final exams.
- *Test-Generator* software that allows teachers to customize their own tests using quizzes and tests from the *Test Bank*.
- *Azar Interactive*, a computer-based program keyed to the text, provides easily understood content, all-new exercises, readings, listening and speaking activities, and comprehensive tests.
- **PowerPoint** presentations for key chapters. Based on real-world readings, these lessons are designed for use in the classroom as "beyond-the-book" activities. They can be found in the new *Teacher's Guide* or downloaded from AzarGrammar.com.
- A *Chartbook*, a reference book consisting only of the grammar charts.
- AzarGrammar.com. This Web site provides a variety of supplementary classroom materials and is a place where teachers can support each other by sharing their knowledge and experience.
- Fun with Grammar, a teacher resource text by Suzanne Woodward with communicative activities correlated with the Azar-Hagen Grammar Series. It is available as a text or as a download on AzarGrammar.com.

#### The Azar-Hagen Grammar Series consists of

- Understanding and Using English Grammar (blue cover), for upper-level students.
- Fundamentals of English Grammar (black), for mid-level students.
- Basic English Grammar (red), for lower or beginning levels.

# Acknowledgments

A revision of this scope could not have been done without the skills of top-notch professionals. We began with a group of outstanding reviewers whose detailed comments guided our writing. We wish to express our gratitude for their thoughtful reviews. They are Tonie Badillo, El Paso Community College; Edina Bagley, Nassau Community College; Michael Berman, Montgomery College; Elizabeth Bottcher, Columbia University; Eric Clinkscales, Teikyo Loretto Heights University; Cathy Costa, Edmonds Community College; Ms. Carlin Good, Columbia University; Deanna Cecil Ferreira, English Language Institute; Linda Gossard, DPT Business School ESL Program; Dr. Sheila Hakner, St. John's University; Martha Hall, New England School of English; Jennifer Hannon, Massachusetts Community College; Alyson Hanson, Gateway Community College; Joan Heiman, Community College of Denver; Steven Lasswell, Santa Barbara City College; Linda Leary, Albany Education; Louis Lucca, LaGuardia Community College; Kate Masterson, Boston Center for Adult Education; Phyllis McCollum, DPT Business School ESL Program; David Moody, El Paso Community College; Jan Peterson, Edmonds Community College; Antonina Rodgers, Northern Virginia Community College; Lenka Rohls, LaGuardia Community College; Rebecca Suarez, The University of Texas at El Paso; Ann Marie Tamayo, Queens Community College; and Kelly Roberts Weibel, Edmonds Community College.

We would like to thank a terrific support team that allows us to do what we do with enjoyment and ease: Shelley Hartle, managing editor par excellence, who worked magic on every page; Amy McCormick, Azar product manager, who oversaw our project and handled our myriad requests with unfailing grace, humor, and skill; Ruth Voetmann, development editor, whose attention to detail helped polish each chart and exercise; Janice Baillie, expert production editor and copy editor; Sue Van Etten, our skilled and multi-talented business and Web site manager; Gena Bennett, corpus researcher, whose findings helped keep us abreast of the nuances and changes in spoken and written discourse; and Robert Ruvo, our invaluable production liaison at Pearson Education.

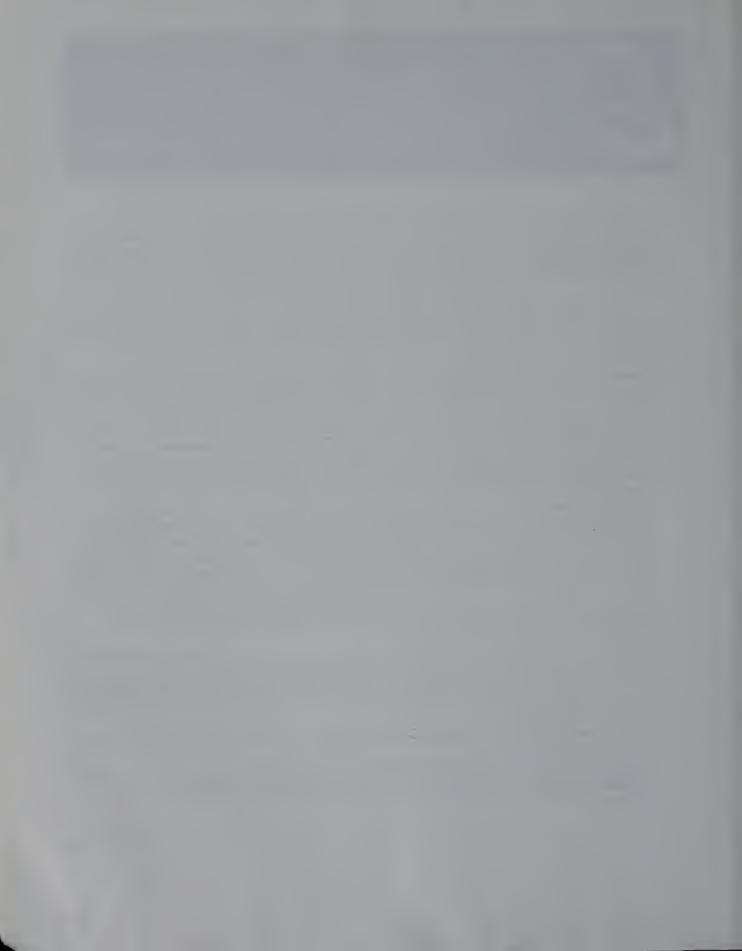
Finally, we'd like to thank the dedicated leadership team from Pearson Education that guided this project: JoAnn Dresner, Anne Boynton-Trigg, Rhea Banker, and Sherry Preiss.

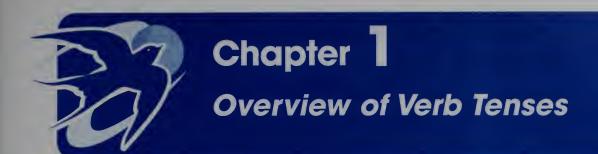
For the new design of this fourth edition we were lucky to have had the combined talents of Michael Cimilluca from Lindsay Communications, Ann France from Pearson Education, and freelance artist Kris Wiltse.

Our appreciation also goes to illustrators Don Martinetti and Chris Pavely for their humor and inspired artwork.

Finally, we would like to thank our families for their unflagging patience and encouragement throughout this extensive revision. Their insights and support are a continual source of inspiration.

Betty S. Azar Stacy A. Hagen





#### ☐ Exercise 1. Let's talk: interviews and introductions.

Interview a classmate, and then introduce this person to the rest of the class or to a small group of classmates. Use the given topics or topics of your own choosing.

- 1. name
- 2. spelling of name
- 3. country of origin
- 4. birthplace
- 5. current residence

- 6. reason for coming here
- 7. length of time, both past and future, in this city/country
- 8. field of study or work
- 9. activities in free time
- 10. comments on living here

#### $\square$ Exercise 2. Let's talk: preview of verb tenses. (Chapters $1 \rightarrow 5$ )

Work with a partner. Take turns asking questions with what + a form of do. Help each other decide which verb tense should be used. When you finish asking and answering the questions, discuss your use of verb forms with the rest of the class.

Example: every morning

PARTNER A: What do you do every morning?

PARTNER B: I (go to classes / eat breakfast / etc.) every morning. What do you do every morning?

PARTNER A: I (eat breakfast / do my homework / etc.).

	Partner A		Partner B
1.	every day before you leave home	1.	last night
2.	since you got up this morning	2.	tomorrow
3.	right now	3.	for the past five minutes
4.	at (this exact time) yesterday	4.	at (this exact time) tomorrow
5.	by the time you got here today	5.	by the time you go to bed tonight

#### ☐ Exercise 3. Warm-up. (Chart 1-1)

Do you agree or disagree with each sentence? Circle *yes* or *no*. Discuss the verbs in blue. What information do the verb tenses provide?

1. Warm air rises.	yes	no
2. I talk on the phone a lot.	yes	no
3. I sent an email today.	yes	no
4. I'm going to make a phone call today.	yes	no

#### The Simple Tenses

This basic diagram will be used in all tense descriptions.



Tense	Examples	Meaning	
Simple Present  X X X X X X X X X X X X X X X X X X X	(a) It snows in Alaska. (b) Tom watches TV every day.	In general, the simple present expresses events or situations that exist <i>always</i> , <i>usually</i> , <i>habitually</i> ; they exist now, have existed in the past, and probably will exist in the future.	
Simple Past X	(c) It <i>snowed</i> yesterday. (d) Tom <i>watched</i> TV last night.	At one particular time in the past, this happened. It began and ended in the past.	
Simple Future	(e) It will snow tomorrow. It is going to snow tomorrow.  (f) Tom will watch TV tonight. Tom is going to watch TV tonight.	At one particular time in the future, this will happen.	

#### Exercise 4. Let's listen and talk. (Chart 1-1)

CD 1 Track 2

Listen to the sentences and write the words you hear. Are the sentences true for you? Choose yes or no. Share your answers with the class, adding information if you like.

example:	You will near:	I wore jeans to ci	ass yesterday.		
	You will write:	I <u>wore</u>	jeans to class yesterday.	yes	no
	You might say:	I didn't wear jear	ns to class yesterday.		
		I wore a skirt.			
1. I		my own dinner	last night.	yes	no
2. I		a textbook yest	erday.	yes	no
3. I	on	the internet every	y day.	yes	no
4. I		home tonight.		yes	no
5 T			a mayia this waskand	TIAC	no

#### Exercise 5. Warm-up. (Chart 1-2)

Answer the questions.

- 1. What are you doing right now? Look around the room. What are your classmates doing right now? What is happening outside the classroom right now?
- 2. Where were you at two o'clock this morning? What were you doing?
- 3. Where will you be at two o'clock tomorrow? What will you be doing?

#### The Progressive Tenses

be + -ing (present participle)

Meaning: The progressive tenses\* give the idea that an action is in progress during a particular time. The tenses say that an action begins before, is in progress during, and continues after another time or action.

Present Progressive	(a) Tom is sleeping right now.	It is now 11:00. Tom went to sleep at 10:00 tonight, and he is still asleep. His sleep began in the past, is in progress at the present time, and probably will continue.
Past Progressive	(b) Tom was sleeping when I arrived.	Tom went to sleep at 10:00 last night. I arrived at 11:00. He was still asleep. His sleep began before and was in progress at a particular time in the past. It continued after I arrived.
Future Progressive	(c) Tom will be sleeping when we arrive.	Tom will go to sleep at 10:00 tomorrow night. We will arrive at 11:00. The action of sleeping will begin before we arrive, and it will be in progress at a particular time in the future. Probably his sleep will continue.

<sup>\*</sup>The progressive tenses are also called the "continuous" tenses: present continuous, past continuous, and future continuous.

#### Exercise 6. Let's listen and talk. (Chart 1-2)

6

CD 1 Track 3

Listen to the sentences and write the words you hear. Are the sentences true for you? Choose yes or no. Share your answers with the class, adding information if you like.

1. At midnight last night, I		yes	no
2. Right now I	about grammar.	yes	no
3. Tomorrow I	in class at this time.	yes	no
4. Tonight at 9:00, I	TV.	yes	no
5. Last night at 9:00, I	TV.	yes	no

LACICISE 7. Walling up. (Chair is	Warm-up. (Chart 1-3)	Warr	se 7	Exerci	
-----------------------------------	----------------------	------	------	--------	--

Answer the questions.

- 1. Have you eaten today? When did you eat?
- 2. Had you eaten before you went to bed last night?
- 3. Will you have eaten by the time you go to bed tonight?

#### 1-3 The Perfect Tenses

Form: have + past participle

Meaning: The perfect tenses all give the idea that one thing happens before another time or event

Present Perfect	(a) Tom has already eaten.	Tom finished eating sometime before now. The exact time is not important.
Past Perfect  Early Carl  A X X	(b) Tom <i>had</i> already <i>eaten</i> when his friend arrived.	First Tom finished eating. Later his friend arrived. Tom's eating was completely finished before another time in the past.
Future Perfect    cat   x	(c) Tom will already have eaten when his friend arrives.	First Tom will finish eating. Later his friend will arrive. Tom's eating will be completely finished before another time in the future.

#### ☐ Exercise 8. Let's listen and talk. (Chart 1-3)

Listen to the sentences and write the words you hear. Are the sentences true for you? Choose yes or no. Share your answers with the class, adding information if you like.

1.	I my homework already.		yes	no
2.	Before I went to bed last night, I my homework.	all	yes	no
3.	By the time I finish this chapter, Iseveral verb exercises.	<del></del>	yes	no
4.	I all the English verb tenses.		yes	no
5.	Before I began this class, Iall the English verb tenses.		yes	no

CD 1 Track 4

#### Exercise 9. Warm-up. (Chart 1-4)

Answer the questions.

- 1. What are you doing right now? How long have you been (doing it)?
- 2. What were you doing last night at nine o'clock? What time did you stop (doing it)? Why did you stop (doing it)? How long had you been (doing it) before you stopped?
- 3. What are you going to be doing at nine o'clock tomorrow night? What time are you going to stop (doing it)? Why? How long will you have been (doing it) before you stop?

#### The Perfect Progressive Tenses Form: have + been + -ing (present participle) Meaning: The perfect progressive tenses give the idea that one event is in progress immediately before, up to, until another time or event. The tenses are used to express the duration of the first event. **Present Perfect** (a) Tom has been studying for two Event in progress: studying. **Progressive** When? Before now, up to now. hours. How long? For two hours. **Past Perfect** (b) Tom had been studying for two Event in progress: studying. **Progressive** hours before his friend came. When? Before another event in the past. How long? For two hours. **Future Perfect** (c) Tom will have been studying for two Event in progress: studying. **Progressive** hours by the time his friend arrives. When? Before another event in the future. How long? For two hours.

#### Exercise 10. Looking at grammar. (Chart 1-4)

Complete the sentences with your own words.

1.	I'm in class right now. I arrived in cl	lass today and	d sat down at
	(time). Right now the time is		That means that I have been sitting
	in this seat for	minutes.	
2.	I had been sitting here for		minutes before class started.
3.	By the time class finishes at		, I will have been sitting here for
	minutes.		

#### 1-5 Summary Chart of Verb Tenses

V	V	V	V	V		X	V	V	V	V	
*	۸	۸	٨	۸	1	٨	X	X	۸	*	

**Present Progressive** 



Tom studies every day.

Simple Present

Tom is studying right now.

#### Simple Past



Past Progressive



Tom studied last night.

Tom was studying when they came.

#### Simple Future



Future Progressive



Tom *will study* tomorrow.

Tom *is going to study* tomorrow.

Tom will be studying when they come.
Tom is going to be studying when they come.

#### $\square$ Exercise 11. Looking at grammar. (Charts 1-1 $\rightarrow$ 1-5)

Complete the sentences with a form of *study* and any words in parentheses. Then compare your completions with the sentences in Chart 1-5.

- 1. Tom is a student. He \_\_\_\_studies \_\_\_\_\_ every day.
- 2. Tom is at his desk. He \_\_\_\_\_ right now.
- 3. Tom had some homework to do, so he \_\_\_\_\_\_ last night.
- 4. Tom began studying at 7:00 last night. His friends came over around 7:30. Tom was still at his desk when they arrived. In other words, Tom \_\_\_\_\_\_ last night when his friends came over.
- 5. Tom \_\_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow.
- 6. Tom is going to begin studying at 7:00 tomorrow. His friends are going to come over at 7:30. Tom \_\_\_\_\_\_ when they arrive.

Present Perfect	Present Perfect Progressive				
	<u> </u>				
Tom <i>has</i> already <i>studied</i> Chapter 1.	Tom has been studying for two hours.				
Past Perfect	Past Perfect Progressive				
— X X	<del>*</del>				
Tom <i>had</i> already <i>studied</i> Chapter 1 before he began studying Chapter 2.	Tom <i>had been studying</i> for two hours before his friends came.				
Future Perfect	Future Perfect Progressive				
Tom <i>will</i> already <i>have studied</i> Chapter 4 before he studies Chapter 5.	Tom will have been studying for two hours by the time his roommate gets home.				
7. Tom is studying Chapter 2. He (already Chapter 1.	y)				
8. Last week Tom finished studying Chapte (already)	er 1. This week he's studying Chapter 2. He  Chapter 1 when he started Chapter 2.				
9. Next week Tom will finish Chapters 4 ar	nd 5. Before Tom studies Chapter 5, he (already)  Chapter 4.				
10. Today Tom began studying at 8:00. No					
11. Yesterday Tom began studying at 8:00.	Tom's friends came over at 10:00. Before his for two hours.				
	10:00. By the time Tom's roommate gets home,				

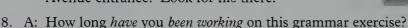
Tom \_

\_ for two hours.

#### **Exercise 12. Let's talk.** (Charts $1-1 \rightarrow 1-5$ )

In the following dialogues, many of the verbs are in *italics*.\* In pairs, in small groups, or as a class, discuss the meanings of the *italicized* verbs. What information do the verb tenses provide?

- 1. A: What do you do in the evening?
  - B: I do my homework and watch a little TV.
    - -> The speakers are talking about daily habits.
- 2. A: What did you do last night?
  - B: I watched a movie on television.
- 3. A: What are you doing?
  - B: I am working on English grammar.
- 4. A: I called you last night around 9:00, but no one answered. Where were you?
  - B: I was home, but I was studying. I always turn my phone off when I want to study.
- 5. A: Have you ever seen a comet?
  - B: I've seen shooting stars, but I've never seen a comet.
- 6. A: Have you talked to Mrs. Chang yet?
  - B: I will talk to her after lunch.
- 7. A: Let's meet at the park after work today.
  - B: Okay. I will be sitting on a bench near the Forest Avenue entrance. Look for me there.



- B: About ten minutes.
  - B: Yes. I had never eaten there before. Thanks for the recommendation.

#### **Exercise 13. Let's talk.** (Charts 1-1 $\rightarrow$ 1-5)

9. A: Did you like the food at Paul's Café?

Answer the questions in complete sentences. If you work in pairs, alternate asking and answering the sets of questions. You may want to take notes and later share a few of the answers with the rest of the class.

If you work in small groups, select a leader who will ask the questions and elicit two or three responses to each. You may wish to rotate the role of leader.

If you work as a class, close your book and answer the teacher's questions.

- 1. a. What do you do every day?
  - b. What are you doing now?
- 2. a. What did you do last week?
  - b. What had you done before that?
- 3. a. What will you do next week?
  - b. What will you be doing at this time next week?
  - c. What will you have done by this time next year?

<sup>\* 11 -</sup>

<sup>\*</sup>Words that are "italicized" or "in italics" have slanted print. Regular print looks like this. Italic print looks like this.

- 4. a. What were you doing at this time yesterday?
  - b. What will you be doing at this time tomorrow?
- 5. a. What have you done since you got up this morning?
  - b. What are you doing right now? How long have you been doing that?
- 6. a. What were you doing before you walked into the classroom today? How long had you been doing that?
  - b. What will you be doing before our teacher walks into the classroom tomorrow? How long will you have been doing that?

#### Exercise 14. What do I already know? (Appendix Charts B-1, B-2, and D-1)

This exercise covers question and negative verb forms you will use in the following chapters. Check your understanding of these forms by correcting the errors in these sentences.\*

- 1. Does Pedro walks to work every morning?
- 2. What you are talking about?
- 3. Did you finished your work?
- 4. My friend doesn't liking her apartment.
- 5. Do you are working for this company?
- 6. What time your plane did it arrive?
- 7. How long have you are living in this city?
- 8. Ali won't to be in class tomorrow.

Exercise 1	15.	Warm-up:	listening.	(Chart	1-6)
------------	-----	----------	------------	--------	------

You will be using many verbs in their -ing and -ed forms in the following chapters. Use this pretest to check your spelling.

Example: You will hear: Listened. We listened to music. Listened.

	You will write:listened		
1		6	
2		7	
3		8	
4		9.	_
5.		10	

<sup>\*</sup>For information about forming questions and negatives, see these self-study charts in the Appendix: B-1 (Forms of Yes/No and Information Questions), B-2 (Question Words), and D-1 (Using Not and Other Negative Words).

1-6 Spelling	of -	ing an	d -ed For	ms	
(1) VERBS THAT END IN A CONSONANT AND -e		hope date injure	hoping dating injuring	hoped dated injured	-ING FORM: If the word ends in -e, drop the -e and add -ing.* -ED FORM: If the word ends in a consonant and -e, just add -d.
(2) VERBS THAT END		ONE	-SYLLABLE VER	BS	
IN A VOWEL AND A CONSONANT	' '	stop rob	stopping robbing	stopped robbed	1 vowel → 2 consonants**
	(-/ .	rain fool	raining fooling	rained fooled	2 vowels → 1 consonant
		TWO	-SYLLABLE VER	BS	
	()	listen offer	listening offering	listened offered	1st syllable stressed → 1 consonant
		begin prefer	begi <b>nn</b> ing prefe <b>rr</b> ing	(began) preferred	2nd syllable stressed → 2 consonants
(3) VERBS THAT END IN TWO CONSONANTS	f	start fold demand	starting folding demanding	started folded demanded	If the word ends in two consonants, just add the ending.
(4) VERBS THAT END IN -y	1 (0)	enjoy pray	enjoying praying	enjoyed prayed	If -y is preceded by a vowel, keep the -y.
	l `´ t	stu <b>dy</b> t <b>ry</b> reply	studying trying replying	studied tried replied	If -y is preceded by a consonant: -ING FORM: keep the -y; add -ingED FORM: change -y to -i; add -ed.
(5) VERBS THAT END IN -ie	1 \ / .	die lie	dying lying	died lied	- <i>ING</i> FORM: Change - <i>ie</i> to - <i>y</i> ; add - <i>ing</i> . - <i>ED</i> FORM: Add - <i>d</i> .

<sup>\*</sup>Exception: If a verb ends in -ee, the final -e is not dropped: seeing, agreeing, freeing.

### **Exercise 16. Looking at spelling.** (Chart 1-6) Write the correct forms of the given verbs.

Part I. Write the -ing form of these verbs in the correct columns.

√date	grade	stay
dine	happen	stop
enjoy	put	win

Drop the <b>-e</b> .	Double the consonant.	Just add <i>-ing</i> .
dating		

<sup>\*\*</sup>Exception: -w and -x are not doubled:  $plow \rightarrow plowed$ ;  $fix \rightarrow fixed$ .

Part II. Write the -ed form of these verbs in the correct columns.

<b>/</b>	answer control	listen offer	open permit	plan prefer	
	Do no	ot double the cons	onant.		Double the consonant.
		answered			
Prac	ctice spelling	Looking at spe			
		e correct <b>-ing</b> for	_		
1.	hold	holding	7.	eat	
2.	hide		8.	pat	
3.	run		9.	lie	
4.	ruin		10.	begin	
5.	come		11.	earn	
6.	write		12.	fly	
Par	t II. Write t	he correct <b>-ing</b> ar	nd -ed forms of	the given ver	bs.
1.	boil	boiling, boiled	1		
2.	plan				
3.	rain		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		
4.	tape				
5.	tap				
6.	enter				
7.	prefer				
8.	translate				
9.	die				
10.	employ				

11.	bury						
12.	adm	it					
13.	3. visit						
14.	4. wait						
	Exercise 18. Listening. (Chart 1-6) Listen to the sentences and write the words you hear.						
Exa	mple:	You will hear:	We are visiting family this weekend.				
		You will write:	We family this weekend.				
1.	We .		an apartment in the city.				
2.	We .		to rent and see how we liked city life.				
3.	The	earthquake	the town.				
4.	Our	children	their grandparents.				
5.	We .		a little weight on our vacation.				
6.	I		a short trip this summer.				
7.	I		a few weeks off from work.				
8.	Righ	t now I	to several emails.				

#### Exercise 19. Let's talk and write. (Chapter 1)

Do one or more of these activities.

9. I'm done. I \_\_

#### Activities:

- 1. Interview a classmate outside of class and write a story of his/her life.
- 2. Interview a native speaker of English and write a story of his/her life.
- 3. With a classmate, take a trip to a particular place, such as a museum, a park, or a restaurant. Write a report of your trip, or give an oral report to your classmates.
- 4. Write a brief paragraph about yourself, telling who you are, what you have done in the past two years, and what your plans are for the next two years. Then exchange papers with a classmate. Read your classmate's paragraph and ask questions if you need more information or clarification. Next, join two other students to form a group of four. Tell the others in the group about your classmate. Use the information from the paragraph he/she wrote.

to all of them.



#### ☐ Exercise 1. What do I already know? (Chapter 2)

Correct the errors in verb forms.

do

- 1. I am not agree with your opinion.
- 2. I'm not knowing Sam's wife.
- 3. My roommate usually watch television, listen to music, or going out in the evening.
- 4. When I turned the key, the car was starting.
- 5. Air is consisting of oxygen, nitrogen, and other gases.
- 6. The children drawed some pictures in school this morning.
- 7. Right now Sally in the kitchen eating breakfast.
- 8. While I'm driving home last night, I heared a strange noise in the engine.
- 9. A: What you are talking about?
  - B: I talking about the political situation in my country.

#### Exercise 2. Warm-up. (Charts 2-1 and 2-2)

Work individually and then as a class.

Part I. Read each sentence and circle yes or no. If the information is not true, restate it.

1.	I read a newspaper every day.	yes	no

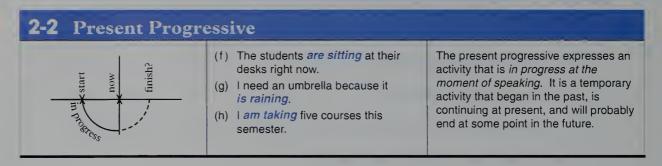
2. I am sitting next to someone from Asia. yes no

3. The sun revolves around the earth. yes no

#### Part II. Answer the questions.

- 4. Which sentence discusses a general truth?
- 5. Which sentence talks about a daily habit?
- 6. Which sentence talks about something that is happening right now?

2-1 Simple Present					
* * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *	<ul> <li>(a) Water <i>consists</i> of hydrogen and oxygen.</li> <li>(b) The average person <i>breathes</i> 21,600 times a day.</li> <li>(c) The world <i>is</i> round.</li> </ul>	The simple present says that something was true in the past, is true in the present, and will be true in the future. It expresses general statements of fact and general truths.			
	(d) I <i>get</i> up at seven <i>every morning</i> .  (e) I <i>always eat</i> a salad for lunch.	The simple present is used to express habitual or everyday activities.			



#### Exercise 3. Let's talk. (Charts 2-1 and 2-2)

Work in small groups.

**Part I.** Discuss the given topics. Each member of the group should contribute one sentence for each topic. Share some of your sentences with the class.

Topics:

Tell your group one daily habit you have.

Look around the room. Describe one activity that is happening right now.

Describe something that is happening in the world right now.

Part II. Use the simple present to make generalizations about some of the given topics. Use your own verbs or those in the list.

beat	consist	eat	make	save	
breathe	contain	have	produce	sleep	
cause	drink	live	revolve	use	
Topics:	on overf	lakos	200		

the earth snowflakes
air the average person
trees hybrid cars\*
the human heart mammals



snowflakes

<sup>\*</sup>hybrid cars = cars that use both gasoline and electricity for power.

_	Exercise 4. Looking at grammar. (Charts 2-1 and 2-2)							
)	Con	nplete the sentences warentheses.				rm of the verbs		
	1.	Kristin can't come to	the phone because sh	e (wash)	is washing	her hair.		
	2.	Kristin (wash)	her ha	ir every other	day or so.			
	3.	Tony (sit, usually)		in the	front row during	g class, but today		
		he (sit)	he (sit) in the last row.					
	4.	Please be quiet. I (try	y)	to con	centrate.			
	5.	(you, lock, always)		ti	he door to your	apartment when		
		you leave?						
	6.	I wrote to my friend l	ast week. She hasn't a	answered my l	etter yet. I (wai	t, still)		
	for a reply.							
	7.	. After six days of rain, I'm glad that the sun (shine) today						
	8.	Every morning, the sun (shine) in my bedroom window and			n window and			
		(wake)	me up.					
		rcise 5. Listening.	•		ore than one co	mpletion		
D 1		be possible.	,	(5)				
ack 7	1.	right now.	every day.	in the summe	er.			
	2.	today.	in the winter.	every April.				
	3.	every year.	right now.	this week.				
	4.	right now.	today.	every winter.				
	5.	every summer.	right now.	in the spring.				
	6.	this week.	every January.	every winter.				
ב	Exe	rcise 6. Let's talk:	class activity. (C	harts 2-1 and	2-2)			

On a piece of paper, write an action that a classmate can demonstrate (e.g., stand up, smile, open the door, sneeze, write on the board). Give your paper to the teacher, who will redistribute the papers at random to the class. Everyone will take turns performing these actions for the entire class. Describe the actions using the present progressive.

#### Exercise 7. Warm-up. (Chart 2-3)

Choose the correct completions.

1. The chef is in his kitchen right now. He a. cooks

b. is cooking

2. He \_\_\_\_\_ some soup.

a. tastes

b. is tasting

3. It \_\_\_\_\_ too salty.

a. tastes

b. is tasting

4. He \_\_\_\_\_ it.

a. doesn't like

b. isn't liking



#### 2-3 Non-Progressive Verbs

(a) I know your cousin.

(b) INCORRECT: I am knowing your cousin.

Some verbs, like know, are non-progressive; \* i.e., they are rarely used in progressive tenses. They describe states, not actions. ("States" are conditions or situations that exist.)

#### Common Verbs That Are Usually Non-Progressive (like *know*)

know believe doubt	like appreciate care about	dislike fear hate	belong possess own	consist of contain	hear sound	agree disagree mean
recognize remember suppose understand	please prefer	mind	desire need want wish	exist matter	seem look like resemble	promise amaze surprise

(c) I think that your cousin is very nice.

(d) 1'm thinking about my trip to Rome.

Some verbs, like think, have both non-progressive meanings and progressive meanings.

In (c): think means "believe."

In (d): am thinking means "thoughts are going around in my mind right now."

#### Common Verbs with Both Non-Progressive and Progressive Meanings (like think)

	NON-PROGRESSIVE	PROGRESSIVE
look	It looks cold outside.	Olga is looking out the window.
appear think	Jack <i>appears</i> to be tired today.  I <i>think</i> that Mr. Liu is a good teacher.	She's appearing on a TV show today.  I'm thinking about my family right now.
feel	I <i>feel</i> that Mr. Liu is a good teacher.	I'm feeling a little tired today.
have	I <i>have</i> a bicycle.	I'm having a good time.
see	Do you see that bird?	The doctor is seeing a patient right now.
taste	The soup <i>tastes</i> salty.	The chef is tasting the soup.
smell	Something <i>smells</i> bad. What is it?	Ann <i>is smelling</i> the perfume to see if she wants to buy it.
love be	Ken <i>loves</i> his baby daughter. Mary <i>is</i> old and wise.	Ken is enjoying parenthood. In fact, he's loving it!  Al is ill but won't see a doctor. He is being foolish.**

<sup>\*</sup>Non-progressive verbs are also called "stative verbs" or non-action verbs.

<sup>\*\*</sup>Am/is/are being + an adjective describes temporary behavior. In the example, Al is usually not foolish, but right now he is acting that way.

#### Exercise 8. Let's talk. (Chart 2-3)

Discuss the differences in meaning of the italicized verbs in each group of sentences. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

- 1. a. These flowers smell good.
  - b. James is smelling the flowers.
- 2. a. I think Roberto is a kind man.
  - b. I am thinking about this exercise.
- 3. a. I see a butterfly. Do you see it too?
  - b. Alex is seeing a doctor about his headaches.
  - c. Jack and Ann are seeing each other. They go out together every weekend.
- 4. a. Astrid *looks* cold. I'll lend her my coat.
  - b. Tina is looking out the window. She sees a butterfly.
- 5. a. Sue is feeling the cat's fur.
  - b. The cat's fur feels soft.
  - c. I'm not feeling well today.
  - d. I feel that it is important to respect other people's opinions.
- 6. a. I remember my first teacher. Do you remember yours?
  - b. Aunt Sara is looking through an old picture album. She is remembering the wonderful days of her childhood.
- 7. a. The children want a snack. They're hungry.
  - b. Like many kids, our children are often quite noisy when they play. They're playing right now in the next room. Hmmm. They're being awfully quiet. What do you suppose they're doing?
- 8. a. Our son is appearing in a school play this week.
  - b. The grocer is weighing the bananas. He appears to be busy.



	ercise 9. Looking at cose the correct completi		2-3)		
1.	This isn't my notebook.  (a.) belongs	It to Mai. b. is belonging			
2.	Ask Ahmed for your no a. has	tebook. He	it.		
3.	Your notebook is over the a. holds	here. Ahmed b. is holding	_ it.		
4.	Look at Olga. She's sm	iling and dancing. Slb. is having	ne a go	od time.	
5.	Relax. You don't have t	o tell me any more ab b. am believing	oout it. I	_ you.	
6.	Dinosaurs became extir a. don't exist		They an	lymore.	
Con in pa	ercise 10. Looking an	e the simple present	or the present p		
1.	Look. It (begin)is be	my umbrella with			
	an umbrella. Spiro is lu				
2.					
	any of the acid. She (be	to spill  and an are to spill  careful when			
	she does a chemistry ex	periment.			0,0

<sup>\*</sup>A form of *do* is usually used in the negative when the main verb is *have*, especially in American English (AmE) but also commonly in British English (BrE): *I don't have a car.* Using *have* without a form of *do* is also possible but less common: *I haven't a car.* 

3.	Right now I (look)	at Nicole. She (look	at Nicole. She (look)		
	angry. I wonder what's the mate	ter. She (have) a	frown on her face.		
	She certainly (have, not)	any fun right now.			
4.	A: How (you, like)	the soup? (it, need	)		
	more §	garlic?			
	B: No, it (taste)	delicious. It (remind)	me of		
	my grandmother's soup.				
5.	A: What (you, look)	at?			
	B: You! You (look)	like your father.			
	A: (you, think)	so? Many people tell r	me I (resemble)		
	n	ny mother.			
	B: I (see)	your father's face when I look at y	you.		
6.	Right now I (look)	around the classroom. Yo	oko (write)		
	in he	er book. Carlos (bite)	his pencil.		
		his head. Ali (stare)			
		to be daydreaming, b			
	(think)	hink)			
	Ali (do) _				



#### Exercise 11. Let's write. (Charts 2-1 → 2-3)

Go to a place where there are many people (such as a zoo, a hotel lobby, a street corner) or imagine yourself to be there. Describe what you see. Let your reader "see" what you see by drawing a picture in words. Use present tenses. Write one paragraph. Begin with a description of what you are doing: I am sitting on a bench at the zoo.

2-4 Regular and Irregular Verbs					
Regular Verb	English verbs have				
SIMPLE FORM	SIMPLE PAST	PAST PARTICIPLE	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	four principal parts: (1) simple form	
hope stop listen study start	hoped stopped listened studied started	hoped stopped listened studied started	hoping stopping listening studying starting	(2) simple past (3) past participle (4) present participle	
Irregular Verl	bs: The simple p	past and past partic	ciple do not end in -ed.	Some verbs have	
SIMPLE FORM	SIMPLE PAST	PAST PARTICIPLE	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	irregular past forms.  Most of the irregular	
hit find swim break	hit found swam broke	hit found swum broken	hitting finding swimming breaking	verbs in English are given in the alphabetical list on the inside front and back covers.	

	_		
7-5	Irregul	ar Vei	rh I iet
	ILLUEUI	lai VU	IO LIST

SIMPLE FORM	SIMPLE PAST	PAST PARTICIPLE	SIMPLE FORM	SIMPLE PAST	PAST PARTICIPLE
bet	bet	bet	let	let	let
burst	burst	burst	put	put	put
cost	cost	cost	quit	quit	quit
cut	cut	cut	shut	shut	shut
fit	fit/fitted	fit/fitted	split	split	split
hit	hit	hit	spread	spread	spread
hurt	hurt	hurt	upset	upset	upset

#### Group 2: Past participle ends in -en.

awake	awoke	awoken	hide	hid	hidden
bite	bit	bitten	prove	proved	proven/proved
break	broke	broken	ride	rode	ridden
choose	chose	chosen	rise	rose	risen
drive	drove	driven	shake	shook	shaken
eat	ate	eaten	speak	spoke	spoken
fall	fell	fallen	steal	stole	stolen
forget	forgot	forgotten	swell	swelled	swollen/swelled
forgive	forgave	forgiven	take	took	taken
freeze	froze	frozen	wake	woke/waked	woken
get	got	gotten/got*	write	wrote	written
give	gave	given			

#### Group 3: Vowel changes from a in the simple past to u in the past participle.

begin began	begun	shrink	shrank	shrunk	
drink drank	drunk	sing	sang	sung	
ring rang	rung	sink	sank	sunk	
run ran	run	swim	swam	swum	

pend	bent	bent	mislay	mislaid	mislaid
oleed	bled	bled	pay	paid	paid
oring	brought	brought	read	read	read
ouild	built	built	say	said	said
ourn	burnt	burnt	seek	sought	sought
ouy	bought	bought	sell	sold	sold
catch	caught	caught	send	sent	sent
dig	dug	dug	shoot	shot	shot
feed	fed	fed	sit	sat	sat
feel	felt	felt	sleep	slept	slept
fight		fought	slide	slid	slid
	fought		1		
find	found	found	sneak	snuck/sneaked	snuck/sneaked
flee	fled	fled	speed	sped/speeded	sped/speeded
grind	ground	ground	spend	spent	spent
hang	hung	hung	spin	spun	spun
have	had	had	stand	stood	stood
hear	heard	heard	stick	stuck	stuck
hold	held	held	sting	stung	stung
keep	kept	kept	strike	struck	struck
lay	laid	laid	sweep	swept	swept
lead	led	led	swing	swung	swung
leau leave	left	left	teach	taught	taught
					•
lend	lent	lent	tell	told	told
light	lit/lighted	lit/lighted	think	thought	thought
lose	lost	lost	understand	understood	understood
make	made	made	weep	wept	wept
mean	meant	meant	win	won	won
	Past participle ac	met dds -n to the simp	le form, with	or without a spe	elling change.
Group 5:		met  dds -n to the simp	le form, with	or without a spe	elling change.
Group 5:	Past participle ac	dds -n to the simp		<del>-</del>	
Group 5:	Past participle ac	dds -n to the simp	see swear	saw swore	seen sworn
Group 5: blow do draw	Past participle ad blew did drew	dds -n to the simp  blown done drawn	see swear tear	saw swore tore	seen sworn torn
Group 5: blow do draw fly	Past participle ac	blown done drawn flown	see swear tear throw	saw swore tore threw	seen sworn torn thrown
Group 5: blow do draw fly grow	Past participle ad blew did drew flew grew	blown done drawn flown grown	see swear tear throw wear	saw swore tore threw wore	seen sworn torn thrown worn
Group 5: blow do draw fly grow know	Past participle ac blew did drew flew grew knew	blown done drawn flown grown known	see swear tear throw	saw swore tore threw	seen sworn torn thrown
Group 5: blow do draw fly grow know	Past participle ad blew did drew flew grew	blown done drawn flown grown	see swear tear throw wear	saw swore tore threw wore	seen sworn torn thrown worn
Group 5: blow do draw fly grow know lie	Past participle ad blew did drew flew grew knew lay	blown done drawn flown grown known	see swear tear throw wear withdraw	saw swore tore threw wore	seen sworn torn thrown worn
Group 5: blow do draw fly grow know lie Group 6:	Past participle ad blew did drew flew grew knew lay	blown done drawn flown grown known lain	see swear tear throw wear withdraw	saw swore tore threw wore	seen sworn torn thrown worn
Group 5: blow do draw fly grow know lie Group 6:	blew did drew flew grew knew lay	blown done drawn flown grown known lain	see swear tear throw wear withdraw	saw swore tore threw wore	seen sworn torn thrown worn
Group 5: blow do draw fly grow know lie	blew did drew flew grew knew lay  The first and thir became	blown done drawn flown grown known lain  rd forms are the sa	see swear tear throw wear withdraw	saw swore tore threw wore	seen sworn torn thrown worn
Group 5: blow do draw fly grow know lie Group 6: become come run	blew did drew flew grew knew lay  The first and thir became came ran	blown done drawn flown grown known lain  become come	see swear tear throw wear withdraw	saw swore tore threw wore	seen sworn torn thrown worn
Group 5: blow do draw fly grow know lie  Group 6: become come run  Group 7:	blew did drew flew grew knew lay  The first and thir became came ran  One of the three	blown done drawn flown grown known lain  d forms are the sa become come run  forms is very diffe	see swear tear throw wear withdraw	saw swore tore threw wore	seen sworn torn thrown worn
Group 5: blow do do draw fly grow know lie  Group 6: become come run  Group 7:	blew did drew flew grew knew lay  The first and thir became came ran  One of the three was, were	blown done drawn flown grown known lain  d forms are the sa  become come run  forms is very difference	see swear tear throw wear withdraw	saw swore tore threw wore	seen sworn torn thrown worn
Group 5: blow do do draw fly grow know lie  Group 6: become come run  Group 7:	blew did drew flew grew knew lay  The first and thir became came ran  One of the three	blown done drawn flown grown known lain  d forms are the sa become come run  forms is very diffe	see swear tear throw wear withdraw	saw swore tore threw wore	seen sworn torn thrown worn
Group 5: blow do do draw fly grow know lie  Group 6: become come run  Group 7:	blew did drew flew grew knew lay  The first and thir became came ran  One of the three was, were went	blown done drawn flown grown known lain  d forms are the sa  become come run  forms is very difference	see swear tear throw wear withdraw  ame.	saw swore tore threw wore withdrew	seen sworn torn thrown worn withdrawn
Group 5: blow do do draw fly grow know lie  Group 6: become come run  Group 7: be go Group 8:	blew did drew flew grew knew lay  The first and thir became came ran  One of the three was, were went  Both regular and common in AmE	blown done drawn flown grown known lain  d forms are the sa  become come run  forms is very diffe  been gone  l irregular forms a  , and the irregular	see swear tear throw wear withdraw  ame.  crent.  cre used. (The	saw swore tore threw wore withdrew	seen sworn torn thrown worn withdrawn
Group 5:  blow do do draw fily grow know iie  Group 6: become come run  Group 7: be go Group 8:	blew did drew flew grew knew lay  The first and thir became came ran  One of the three was, were went  Both regular and common in AmE	blown done drawn flown grown known lain  d forms are the sa become come run  forms is very diffe been gone  l irregular forms at t, and the irregular	see swear tear throw wear withdraw  ame.  crent.  cre used. (The form is more)	saw swore tore threw wore withdrew  e regular form in Besterned/learnet	seen sworn torn thrown worn withdrawn
Group 5: blow do do draw fly grow know lie  Group 6: become come run  Group 7:	blew did drew flew grew knew lay  The first and thir became came ran  One of the three was, were went  Both regular and common in AmE	blown done drawn flown grown known lain  d forms are the sa  become come run  forms is very diffe  been gone  l irregular forms a  , and the irregular	see swear tear throw wear withdraw  ame.  crent.  cre used. (The	saw swore tore threw wore withdrew	seen sworn torn thrown worn withdrawn

Note: See the inside front and back covers for an alphabetical list of these verbs as well as some additional irregular verbs that occur less frequently. Also included are definitions of the lesser-known verbs.

CD 1 rack 8	<b>Exercise 12. Listening.</b> (Charts 2-4 and 2-5) Listen to the questions. Complete each answer with the correct form of the verb you hear. NOTE: Exercises 12 through 19 are quick reviews of the simple past of irregular verbs. Which irregular verbs are easy for you? Which ones are more troublesome? Which ones don't you know? Make a note of the verbs that are difficult for you and review them.						
	Example: You will hear: Did S	ara go to class yesterday?					
	You will write: Yes, s	he <u>went</u> to class yesterday.					
	SITUATION 1: Sara is a lazy stuyesterday.	dent. She doesn't care about studying. She was at school					
	1. Yes, she	her notebook.					
	2. Yes, she	her homework.					
	3. Yes, she	a lot of mistakes on the writing test.					
	4. Yes, she	several words incorrectly.					
	5. Yes, she	another student's homework to copy.					
	SITUATION 2: Jim is a serious s	student. He loves to learn. He was at school yesterday.					
	6. Yes, he	his homework.					
	7. Yes, he	the homework.					
	8. Yes, he	his homework to class.					
	9. Yes, he	a good grade on the test.					
	10. Yes, he	all the answers on the test.					
	SITUATION 3: Ms. Brooks is a	good English teacher. She's also friendly. She taught yesterday.					
	11. Yes, she	class on time.					
	12. Yes, she	clearly.					
	13. Yes, she	a fair test.					
	14. Yes, she	extra time helping her students.					
	15. Yes, she	her students jokes.					
	16. Yes, she	her students a song.					

with her students.

17. Yes, she \_

### **Exercise 13. Let's talk: pairwork.** (Charts 2-4 and 2-5)

Work with a partner. Partner A asks the questions. Partner B answers the questions with Yes and a complete sentence. NOTE: Although a short answer is usually given to a yes/no question (Did you sit down? Yes, I did.), practice the long answer in these exercises.

SITUATION: Imagine that you came to class today with a big bandage on your finger. You were in a pet store yesterday. You were thinking of buying a parrot, but it bit you.

### Example:

PARTNER A (book open): Did you go somewhere?

PARTNER B (book closed): Yes, I went somewhere. OR Yes, I did. I went somewhere.

- 1. Did you find a pet store?
- 2. Did you buy a parrot?
- 3. Did you take it out of its cage?
- 4. Did you have some trouble with it?
- 5. Did it bite you?



- 6. Did you leave the pet store?
- 7. Did you go to a doctor?
- 8. Did you drive to the doctor's office?
- 9. Did she put a bandage on your finger?
- 10. Did you pay her?



# **Exercise 14. Listening.** (Charts 2-4 and 2-5)

Listen to the questions. Complete each answer with the correct form of the verb you hear.

SITUATION: A group of friends was at the beach yesterday.

- 1. Yes, they \_\_\_\_\_ in the water.
- 2. Yes, they \_\_\_\_\_ in the waves.
- 3. Yes, they \_\_\_\_\_ down in the waves.
- 4. Yes, they \_\_\_\_\_\_ barefoot on the sand.
- 5. Yes, they \_\_\_\_\_ in the sun.
- 6. Yes, they \_\_\_\_\_ sunscreen.
- 7. Yes, they \_\_\_\_\_\_ in the sand.
- 8. Yes, they \_\_\_\_\_ giant sandcastles.
- 9. Yes, they \_\_\_\_\_ their names in the sand.
- 10. Yes, they \_\_\_\_\_ pictures in the sand.
- 11. Yes, they \_\_\_\_\_ their feet in the sand.
- 12. Yes, they \_\_\_\_\_ songs.
- 13. Yes, some bees \_\_\_\_\_ them.
- 14. Yes, they \_\_\_\_\_ the sunset.

	Exercise	15.	Let's	talk:	pairwork.	(Charts 2-4	and 2-5)
--	----------	-----	-------	-------	-----------	-------------	----------

Work with a partner. Partner A asks the questions. Partner B answers the questions with Yes and a complete sentence.

SITUATION: You just came back from a vacation in Greece.

Example: Did you fly back last night?

PARTNER A (book open): Did you fly back last night? PARTNER B (book closed): Yes, I flew back last night.

- 1. Did you have a great trip?
- 2. Did you come back feeling rested?
- 3. Did you meet many people?
- 4. Did you hang out with\* local people?
- 5. Did you do a lot of tourist activities?
- 6. Did you stand on the Acropolis?
- 7. Did you spend time in museums?

### Change roles.

- 8. Did you buy some Greek sandals?
- 9. Did you speak a little Greek?
- 10. Did you eat in typical Greek restaurants?
- 11. Did you get my emails?
- 12. Did you bring me a present?
- 13. Did you send me a postcard?
- 14. Were you sad to leave Greece?

### **Exercise 16. Listening.** (Charts 2-4 and 2-5)

Listen to the questions. Complete each answer with the correct form of the verb you hear.

CD 1 SITUATION: Maria was sick yesterday.

- 1. Yes, she \_\_\_\_\_ up sick.
- 2. Yes, she \_\_\_\_\_\_ a cold.
- 3. Yes, her head \_\_\_\_\_
- 4. Yes, she \_\_\_\_\_ her temperature.
- 5. Yes, she \_\_\_\_\_ a fever.
- 6. Yes, she \_\_\_\_\_\_ bad.
- 7. Yes, she \_\_\_\_\_ her pajamas on.
- 8. Yes, she \_\_\_\_\_ on the couch.
- 9. Yes, she \_\_\_\_\_\_ for several hours.
- 10. Yes, she \_\_\_\_\_\_ about scary things.
- 11. Yes, she \_\_\_\_\_\_ some chicken soup.
- 12. Yes, she \_\_\_\_\_\_ to the doctor.
- 13. Yes, she \_\_\_\_\_\_ some medicine.
- 14. Yes, she \_\_\_\_\_ the instructions on the label.

<sup>\*</sup> hang out with = spend time with.

#### **Exercise 17. Let's talk: pairwork.** (Charts 2-4 and 2-5)

Work with a partner. Partner A asks the questions. Partner B answers the questions with Yes and a complete sentence. NOTE: Use the appropriate pronoun (he/she) in the questions.

SITUATION: You come to class very, very tired. You live with a noisy roommate and didn't get much sleep. NOTE: Tell your partner if you have a male or female roommate.

Example: Did you have a bad night?

PARTNER A (book open): Did you have a bad night? PARTNER B (book closed): Yes, I had a bad night.

- 1. Did your roommate wake you up a lot?
- 2. Did you hear a lot of noise?
- 3. Did your roommate's cell phone ring many times?
- 4. Did she/he fight with someone?
- 5. Did she/he put on a CD?
- 6. Did she/he sing loudly?

CD 1 Track 11

Track 12

7. Did she/he make breakfast at midnight?

Change roles.

- 8. Did she/he grind some coffee beans
- 9. Did she/he feed the neighbor's cats?
- 10. Did she/he sweep the floor afterwards?
- 11. Did she/he know you were awake?
- 12. Did she/he mean to wake you up?
- 13. Did she/he upset you?
- 14. Were you upset?

### **Exercise 18. Listening.** (Charts 2-4 and 2-5)

Listen to the beginning of each sentence. Circle the correct completion(s). More than one completion may be possible.

- 1. happy. good about my decision. on some ice.
- 2. two classes. about his wife. at night.
- 3. the car with gas? okay? sick?
- 4. with colored pencils. for several hours. several faces.
- 5. in the woods. some money. the rain.
- 6. a picture. from the math class. some money from the bank.
- 7. my hand. some rice. was cooking.
- 8. the washing machine? these jeans? my shirt?
- 9. at the sad ending. the actors. when the play finished.
- 10. over the fence. very quickly. in a sunny spot.

# **Exercise 19. Listening.** (Charts 2-4 and 2-5)

Part I. Anna had a bad experience last night. Listen to her story with your book closed. Then open your book and listen to the statements. Circle "T" for true and "F" for false.

- 1. T F 4. T F
- 2. T F 5. T F
- 3. T F 6. T F

I a terrible experience last night. You won't believe
what happened! A thief into my apartment
while I was asleep. There I was, just sleeping peacefully when
someone the glass in the sliding door!
The sound me up. I 5
the sliding door open, so I reached for the phone by the bed and
called the police. My voice as I told the
operator there was an intruder in my home.
I in my bedroom closet while the thief was sneaking around my office. So
I sirens as the police to my building. From the crack in
the closet door, I the thief as he outside with my computer.
The police jumped out of their cars and followed the thief, but he managed to get away in a
car that was waiting for him. The police back in their cars and drove aft
him. Later I learned that they the thief a few miles from my building.
I really frightened by all this. It really me, as yo
can imagine. I think I'll stay at my sister's house tonight.
<b>Exercise 20. Warm-up: listening.</b> (Chart 2-6) Listen to each pair of verbs. Decide if the verb endings have the same sound or a different sound.
Examples: You will hear: talked, pushed You will choose: same different
You will choose: same different You will hear: rented, called
You will choose: same different  You will hear: rented, called You will choose: same different

Part II. Listen again. Complete the sentences with the verbs you hear.

# **2-6** Regular Verbs: Pronunciation of *-ed* Endings

Final -ed has three different pronunciations: /t/, /d/, and /əd/. The schwa /ə/ is an unstressed vowel sound. It is pronounced like a in alone in normal, rapid speech (e.g., She lives alone.).

(a)	looked → look/t/ clapped → clap/t/ missed → miss/t/ watched → watch/t/ finished → finish/t/ laughed → laugh/t/	Final <i>-ed</i> is pronounced /t/ after voiceless sounds.  Voiceless sounds are made by pushing air through your mouth; no sound comes from your throat.  Examples of voiceless sounds: "k," "p," "s," "ch," "sh," "f."
(b)	smelled → smell/d/ saved → save/d/ cleaned → clean/d/ robbed → rob/d/ played → play/d/	Final <i>-ed</i> is pronounced /d/ after voiced sounds.  Voiced sounds come from your throat. If you touch your neck when you make a voiced sound, you can feel your voice box vibrate.  Examples of voiced sounds: "I," "v," "n," "b," and all vowel sounds.
(c)	decided → decide/əd/ needed → need/əd/ wanted → want/əd/ invited → invite/əd/	Final -ed is pronounced /əd/ after "t" and "d" sounds. The sound /əd/ adds a whole syllable to a word.  COMPARE: looked = one syllable → look/t/ smelled = one syllable → smell/d/ needed = two syllables → need/əd/





Listen to each word. Circle the pronunciation of the -ed ending you hear.

- 1. /t/ /d/ /ad/
- d//ad/
- 7. /t/ d//ad/

/ad/

- /d/ 2. /t/ /ad/
- 5. /t/ /d/ /əd/
- 8. /t/ /d/ /ad/

- 3. /t/ /d/ /əd/
- 6. /t/ /d/ /əd/
- 9. /t/ /d/

# CD 1

Track 15

# **Exercise 22. Listening and pronunciation.** (Chart 2-6)

Listen to the sentences. Practice saying them aloud. Write the pronunciations of the -ed endings you hear.

- 1. Olga blinked /t/, yawned / /, and stretched /
- 2. Mrs. Olsen mopped / / the kitchen floor, vacuumed / the carpet, and dusted / / the furniture.
- 3. The meeting started / / late and ended / / early.
- 4. My friend jumped / / up and down and yelled / when she got the news.
- 5. The airplane departed / / at six and landed / / at eight.
- 6. When I asked / / the doctor about some medication, he suggested / / a new one.

	Exercise	23.	Let's	talk:	small	groups.	(Chart 2-6)
_				1 41171	91114111	<b>3.34.50.</b>	(Origin 2 0)

Work in small groups. Take turns choosing a verb from the list in any order you wish. Say the simple past. Your classmates will write that word in the correct column.

accept	complain	miss	push	thank
believe	die	need	rain	work
chase	fix	play	request	worry

/t/	/d/	/əd/

## Exercise 24. Let's talk: pairwork. (Chart 2-6)

Practice pronouncing the -ed endings.

**Part I.** Check  $(\checkmark)$  all the activities you did yesterday. Tell your partner about them.

- \_\_\_ surfed the internet \_\_\_ combed my hair \_\_\_ washed clothes
- \_\_ translated some words \_\_\_ brushed my teeth \_\_\_ typed an email
- \_\_\_ cooked breakfast \_\_\_ worked on a computer \_\_ added some numbers
- \_\_ exercised \_\_\_ cleaned my room \_\_\_ waited for a bus
- \_\_ listened to music \_\_\_ walked to school \_\_\_ talked on the phone

Part II. Choose four to six activities your partner talked about. Tell the class about them.

### **Exercise 25. Warm-up.** (Charts 2-7 and 2-8)

Write the complete sentence (a. or b.) that correctly describes each scene.

- a. Rita was standing under a tree when it began to rain.
- b. Rita stood under a tree when it began to rain.

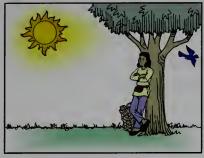


1st: It began to rain.



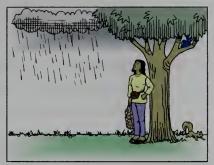
2nd: Rita stood under a tree.

Scene 1: \_



1st: Rita stood under a tree.

SCENE 2:



**2nd:** It began to rain.

2-7 Simple Past		
X	<ul> <li>(a) I walked to school yesterday.</li> <li>(b) John lived in Paris for ten years, but now he lives in Rome.</li> <li>(c) I bought a new car three days ago.</li> <li>(d) Rita stood under a tree when it began to rain.</li> </ul>	The simple past indicates that an activity or situation began and ended at a particular time in the past.  If a sentence contains when and has the simple past in both
	<ul> <li>(e) When Mrs. Chu heard a strange noise, she got up to investigate.</li> <li>(f) When I dropped my cup, the coffee spilled on my lap.</li> </ul>	clauses, the action in the when-clause happens first.  In (d): 1st: The rain began.  2nd: Rita stood under a tree.

2-8 Past Progres	sive	
	(g) I was walking down the street when it began to rain.	In (g): 1st: I was walking down the street. 2nd: It began to rain.
	(h) While I was walking down the street, it began to rain.	Both actions occurred at the same time, but one action began earlier
	(i) Rita was standing under a tree when it began to rain.	and was in progress when the other action occurred.
	(j) At eight o'clock last night, I was studying.	In (j): My studying began before 8:00, was in progress at that time, and probably continued.
	(k) While I was studying in one room of our apartment, my roommate was having a party in the other room.	Sometimes the past progressive is used in both parts of a sentence when two actions are in progress simultaneously.

#### Exercise 26. Let's talk. (Charts 2-7 and 2-8)

Choose the question or statement you would expect the speaker to say. Discuss your answers. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

- 1. When I went to bed late last night, I noticed that the light was on in your bedroom.
  - a. Were you reading?
- b. Did you read?

3.	3. A small airplane flew over our house s	everal times last night.	
	a. We were sitting out on the patio,	, and it made us nervous.	
	b. We sat out on the patio, and it m	nade us nervous.	
4.	a. What was she wearing?		
	kercise 27. Looking at grammar. complete the sentences. Use the simple pas	(Charts 2-7 and 2-8) st or the past progressive of the verbs in parenthes	ses.
1.	. I am sitting in class right now. I (sit)	was sitting in class at this ex	act
	same time yesterday.		
2.	c. I (call) Roger at	nine last night, but he (be, not)	
	at home. He (study)		
3.		the thunder during the storm last night	
٥.	because I (sleep)		
1		ent for a walk in the park. The sun (shine)	
4.	·	ool breeze (blow)	
	The birds (sing)		
سے			
Э.	I (walk) int	about something when	
6.		ppen) it, I (find)	
	a surprise.		
7.		the little boy a story, he (	
		she (close) the book ar	nd
	quietly (sneak)	out of the room.	
8.	. A: (you, hear)	what the teacher just said?	
	B: No, I (listen, not)	I (think)	
	about something else.		
9.	. I really enjoyed my last vacation. Whil	le it (snow) in Io	wa,
	the sun (shine)	in Florida. While you (shovel)	
	snow	in Iowa all last week, I (lie)	
	on a beach in Florida.		

b. Did you meet him?

2. Jane's cousin was at the party last night.a. Were you meeting him?b. 1

	Wor pare the	ercise 28. Let's talk: pairwork. (Charts 2-7 and rk with a partner. Complete the sentences with the giventheses. Use the simple past or the past progressive. rest of the class or a small group of classmates. Try not form the dialogue.	ven verbs and the words in Role-play one of the dialogues for
	1.	call, wait	
		A: Why weren't you at the meeting?	
		B: I for an overseas	call from my family.
		A: (they)?	
		B: Yes. It was wonderful to hear from them.	
	2.	break, cross, slip	<b>*</b>
		A: How (you)	
		your arm?	
		B: I on the ice while	
		I the street in	
		front of the dorm.	
	3.	find, look, park	
		A: You're late again! You were supposed to be here to	en minutes ago. Where were you?
		B: I for a place to pa	rk.
		A: (you) one?	
		B: Well, yes and no. I my	car illegally.
	4.	ask, decide, look, see, work	
		A: How did it go? (you)	the manager for a raise when
		you her yesterday?	
		B: No, she on a big p	presentation for next week. She
		pretty busy. I	
	5.	drive, get, happen, keep, pay, see	
		A: I had a bad day yesterday.	
		B: Oh? What?	
		A: I a traffic ticket.	
		B: Really? That's too bad. What was it for?	
		A: For running a red light. I	home and (not)
		attention to the ro	
		the red light and just d	

	Complete the sentences. Unter the listen to the passage					
		ook sit	speak	stop	walk	
	It was my first day of cl	ass. I finally _	1	tł	ne right room	. The room
	2.	already full o	f students.			
	On one side of the roor	n, students we	re talking to ea	ch other in Ja	apanese or Ar	abic. On the
	other side, students	3	in	Spanish or F	Portuguese. I	t sounded like
	the United Nations. Som	e of the studer	nts, however, _	······································	4	quietly by
	themselves, not talking to	anyone.				
	I5	for an en	npty seat in the	last row and	l sat down. Ir	n a few
	minutes, the teacher		into th	e room, and	all the multili	ingual
	conversation suddenly		·			
•	Watch a classmate perform the actions in the pantom in the descriptions. SUGG for the next week or two is	n a pantomim ime step by sto ESTION: Watcl	e. Then in pai ep. Pay special n and describe	attention to a few pantor	the use of pa	ast verb forms
	dropped to th	ling at a sink. he was washin he floor. She b	She turned on g her hands, th ent over to picl ucet. At the en	e soap slippe k it up. Then	ed out of her l she finished	hands and washing her
	Possible pantomime subjects opening a door with a latest taking a picture with a	key	reading a news		_	_
	Exercise 31. Let's wr In writing, describe one of pantomime and identify to the actions were performed	r more of your he pantomimis	classmates' pa st. Use a few t	ime words to	show the ord	
	Exercise 32. Let's wr	ite. (Charts 2	-1 → 2-8)			

First, write about your first day or two in this country or city. Use past tense verbs. What did you do? What did you think? What did you see? Who did you meet? Did you have any

Second, write about how you feel about this place now. In what ways are your present

interesting experiences? How did you feel about this place?

experiences here different from your earlier experiences?

Exercise 29. Grammar and listening. (Charts 2-7 and 2-8)

### Exercise 33. Warm-up. (Chart 2-9)

Check () the sentences that are correct. What do you notice about the use of *always* with verb tenses in these sentences?

- 1. \_\_\_ Nadia is always talking on the phone when I'm trying to study.
- 2. \_\_ Frank always studies in the library after school.
- 3. \_\_\_ My friends always do their homework together.
- 4. \_\_ Our math teacher is always giving us surprise quizzes.

2	-9 Using Progressive Verbs wi	th Always
(a)	Mary always leaves for school at 7:45.	In sentences referring to present time, usually the simple present is used with <i>always</i> to describe habitual or everyday activities, as in (a).
(b)	Mary <i>is always leaving</i> her dirty socks on the floor for me to pick up! Who does she think I am? Her maid?	In special circumstances, a speaker may use the present progressive with <i>always</i> to express annoyance, as in (b).
(c)	I am <i>always/forever/constantly picking</i> up Mary's dirty socks!	In addition to <i>always</i> , the words <i>forever</i> and <i>constantly</i> are used with progressive verbs to express annoyance.

### Exercise 34. Let's talk. (Chart 2-9)

Your roommate, Jack, has many bad habits. These bad habits annoy you. Pretend you are speaking to a friend and complaining about Jack. Use the present progressive of a verb in Column A and complete the sentence with a phrase from Column B. Use always, constantly, or *forever* in each sentence. Say your sentence aloud with annoyance in your voice.

Example: He's always messing up the kitchen!

	Column A		Column B
1.	mess up	a.	about himself
2.	leave	<b>√</b> b.	the kitchen
3.	borrow	c.	my clothes without asking me
4.	try	d.	to give me my phone messages
5.	brag	e.	his dirty dishes on the table
6.	crack	f.	to show me he's smarter than me*
7.	forget	g.	his knuckles while I'm trying to study

### Exercise 35. In your own words. (Chart 2-9)

Complete the sentences with your own words.

- A: I don't know if I can stand Sue as a roommate one more day. She's driving me crazy.
- B: Oh? What's wrong?
- A: Well, for one thing she's always \_

<sup>\*</sup>In formal English, a subject pronoun follows than: He's older than I (am). In everyday informal English, an object pronoun is frequently used after than: He's older than me.

B: Really?	
A: And not only that. She's	s forever!
B: That must be a hassle for	-
A: It is. And what's more,	she's constantly!
Can you believe that? A	nd she's always!
	need to find a new roommate.
B. I think you'le light. Iou	Treed to find a new roommate.
<b>Exercise 36. Warm-up.</b> Read the two short dialogues. different?	(Chart 2-10) What do you notice about the word order? How is the focus
1. A: What was Hans doing B: He was reading a book	
2. A: Where was Hans when B: He was in bed reading	•
10 Using Expression	ns of Place with Progressive Verbs
— What is Kay doing? — She <i>'s studying <b>in her room</b>.</i>	In usual word order, an expression of place follows a verb.  In (a): is studying + in her room = the focus is on Kay's activity.
— Where's Kay? — She's <i>in her room</i> studying.	An expression of place can sometimes come between the auxiliary <i>be</i> and the <i>-ing</i> verb in a progressive verb form.  In (b): was + in her room + studying = the focus is on Kay's location.
to complete the dialogues. Us the focus is on the person's loo 1. listen to music \ in her room A: Where's Sally?	oups, or as a class. Use the given verbs and expressions of place e usual word order if the focus is on an activity in progress. If cation, put the expression of place between <i>be</i> and the <i>-ing</i> verb.  I listening to music.
	music in the living room.
3. watch TV\ in his bedroom	
A: Where was Jim when	you got home?

B: He was \_

(a)

(b)

4.	watch $TV \setminus in$ his bedroom		
	A: What was Jim doing when you got home?		
	B: He was		
5.	take a nap \ on the couch in the living room		
	A: What's Kurt doing?		
	B: He's		
6.	take a nap \ on the couch in the living room		
	A: Where's Kurt?		
	B: He's		
7.	attend a conference \ in Singapore		
	A: Where's Ms. Chang this week?		
	D. Chain		

# Exercise 38. Check your knowledge. (Chapter 2)

Correct the errors.

- 1. Breakfast is an important meal. I'm always eating breakfast.
- 2. While I was working in my office yesterday, my cousin stops by to visit me.
- 3. Yuki staied home because she catched a bad cold.
- 4. My brother is looks like our father, but I am resembling my mother.
- 5. Jun, are you listen to me? I am talk to you!
- 6. While I was surfing the internet yesterday, I was finding a really interesting Web site.
- 7. Did you spoke English before you were come here?
- 8. Yesterday, while I was working at my computer, Shelley was suddenly coming into the room. I wasn't knowing she was there. I was concentrate hard on my work. When she suddenly speak, I am jump. She startle me.



### Exercise 1. Let's talk: pairwork. (Charts 2-4 and 2-5)

Work with a partner to review past participles. Partner A asks questions beginning with *Have you ever*. Partner B answers the questions with *No, I haven't. I've never...*.

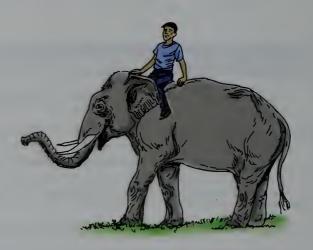
Example: see a silent film

PARTNER A (book open): Have you ever seen a silent film?

PARTNER B (book closed): No, I haven't. I've never seen a silent film.

- 1. buy a boat
- 2. break a window
- 3. hide from the police
- 4. teach English
- 5. make ice cream
- 6. win a contest
- 7. ride an elephant
- 8. fly an airplane
- 9. catch a butterfly
- 10. leave your umbrella at a restaurant
- 11. dig a hole to plant a tree
- 12. drive a school bus
- 13. draw a picture of yourself





### Change roles.

- 14. build a house
- 15. forget your own name
- 16. fall off a ladder
- 17. hold a poisonous snake
- 18. steal anything
- 19. eat a duck egg
- 20. swing a baseball bat
- 21. feed a lion
- 22. split wood with an axe
- 23. hit a baseball
- 24. read a play by Shakespeare
- 25. grow tomatoes from seed
- 26. tear a page out of a library book

# Exercise 2. Let's listen and talk. (Charts 1-6 and 2-4)

You will hear a sentence and the beginning of a question. Complete the question with the past participle of the verb you heard in the first sentence. Have you ever done these things? Circle Track 17 yes or no. Tell another student some of the things you have and haven't done.

Exa	mple: You will hear: I took an English	test. Have you ever?		
	You will write: Have you ever _	taken an English test?	yes	ne
1.	Have you ever	a book?	yes	n
2.	Have you ever	your wallet?	yes	n
3.	Have you ever	a mountain?	yes	n
4.	Have you ever	a speech to a large audience?	yes	n
5.	Have you ever	a lie?	yes	n
6.	Have you ever	in public?	yes	n
7.	Have you ever	on a motorcycle?	yes	n
8.	Have you ever	Turkish coffee?	yes	n
9.	Have you ever	a cooking class?	yes	n
10.	Have you ever	hands with a famous person?	yes	n
11.	Have you ever	another person with English?	yes	n
12.	Have you ever	in a tent?	yes	n
13.	Have you ever	a truck?	yes	n
14.	Have you ever	a car accident?	yes	n
15.	Have you ever	biology?	yes	n
16.	Have you ever	a violin?	yes	n
Con	ercise 3. Warm-up. (Chart 3-1) applete the sentences with your own work.  In which sentences do the situation	ords. What do you notice about the verb to so continue from the past until now?	tenses in	
1.	I got up at (time	e) today.		
2.	I have been awake since	(time).		
3.	I am studying English grammar in th (number) times			
4.	I took my first English class in			

#### **Present Perfect** (a) Mrs. Oh has been a teacher since The present perfect is often used with (a) 2002. since and for to talk about situations 2002 that began in the past and continue up (b) I have been in this city since last May. In (a): SITUATION = being a teacher (c) We have been here since nine TIME FRAME = from 2002 up to now up to now o'clock. (d) Rita knows Rob. They met two Notice the use of since vs. for in the months ago. She has known him examples: for two months. I met him three since + a specific point in time (e.g., years ago. I have known him for 2002, last May, nine o'clock) three years. + a length of time (e.g., two (e) I have known Rob since I was in months, three years) high school. In (e): since + a time clause (i.e., a subject and verb may follow since).\* (f) (f) - Have you ever seen snow? The present perfect can talk about events that have (or haven't) happened - No, I haven't. I've never seen snow. But Anna has seen before now. The exact time of the snow. event is unspecified. (g) Have you finished your The adverbs ever, never, yet, still, and homework yet? I still haven't already are often used with the present finished mine. Jack has already perfect. finished his. In (f): EVENT = seeing snow TIME FRAME = from the beginning of their lives up to now In (g): EVENT = doing homework TIME FRAME = from the time the people started up to now (h) (h) We have had three tests so far The present perfect can also express this term. an event that has occurred repeatedly beginning of term from a point in the past up to the (i) I've met many people since I present time. The event may happen came here. again. In (h): REPEATED EVENT = taking tests TIME FRAME = from the beginning of the term up to now up to now In (i): REPEATED EVENT = meeting people TIME FRAME = from the time I came here up to now

#### CONTRACTIONS:

(j) I've been there. You've been there. We've been there. They've been there.

He's been there. She's been there. It's been interesting.

Have and has are usually contracted with personal pronouns in informal writing, as in (j).

NOTE: He's there. He's = He is He's been there. He's = He has

<sup>\*</sup>See Chart 18-2, p. 388, for more information about time clauses.

	Cor	mplete the sentences with <i>since</i> or <i>fe</i>	or.	
	1.	There has been snow on the ground	d New Year's Day.	
	2.	The weather has been cold	a long time.	
	3.	Maria has studied English	less than a year.	
	4.	Mr. and Mrs. Roberts have been to	gether they were in college.	
	5.	They have known each other	more than fifty years.	
	6.	We haven't seen Aziz	last month.	
	7.	I've had a cold ove	r a week.	
	8.	I haven't heard from my sister	the beginning of March.	
0	Cor	ercise 5. Let's talk. (Chart 3-1) mplete the sentences with any appropriate a class.	oriate time expression. Work in pairs, in small group	s,
	1.	Today isthe 14th of June	. I bought this booktwo weeks ago.	
		I have had this book sincethe	first of June	
		I have had this book fortwo w	veeks .	
	2.	I moved to this city		
		I have been in this city since		
		I have been here for	<del></del>	
	3.	It is the year	·	
		I started going to school in the year	•	
		I've been a student for	·	
		I've been a student since	·	
	4.	I first met our teacher		
		I've known her/him for		
		I've known her/him since		
	5.	I have (a/an)		go.
		I have had it since		
		I have had it for		

☐ Exercise 4. Looking at grammar. (Chart 3-1)

### Exercise 6. Let's talk. (Chart 3-1)

Answer the questions in complete sentences. Student B will use *for*. Student C will use *since*. Close your book.

Example: To A: When did you come here? To B: Use for. To C: Or, using since?

TEACHER: When did you come here? STUDENT A: I came here on June 2nd.

TEACHER: How long has (Student A) been here? Use for.

STUDENT B: He/She has been here for two weeks.

TEACHER: Or, using since?

STUDENT C: He's/She's been here since June 2nd.

1. To A: When did you get to class today?

To B: How long has (\_\_\_\_\_) been in class? Use for. To C: Or, using since?

2. To A: What time did you get up this morning?

To B: How long has (\_\_\_\_) been up? Use for. To C: Or, using since?

3. To A: Who in this class owns a car/bicycle? When did you buy it?

To B: How long has (\_\_\_\_\_) had a car/bicycle? Use for. To C: Or, using since?

4. To A: Who is wearing a watch? When did you get it?

To B: How long has (\_\_\_\_\_) had his/her watch? Use for. To C: Or, using since?

5. To A: Who is married? When did you get married?

To B: How long has (\_\_\_\_) been married? Use for. To C: Or, using since?

6. To A: Do you know (\_\_\_\_)? When did you meet him/her?

To B: How long has (\_\_\_\_\_) known (\_\_\_\_\_)? Use for. To C: Or, using since?

### ☐ Exercise 7. Looking at grammar. (Chart 3-1)

<u>Underline</u> the present perfect verbs. What is the time frame in each situation?

Example: I haven't attended any parties since I came to this city. I don't know anyone here.

- → Present perfect verb: haven't attended
- > Time frame: from the time the speaker arrived in this city to the present time
- 1. So far this week, I've had two tests and a quiz. And it's only Wednesday!
- 2. Try not to be absent from class again for the rest of the term. You've already missed too many classes.
- 3. I'm really hungry. I haven't eaten since I got up.
- 4. Nadia started her homework right after dinner, but she still hasn't finished it. She probably won't be able to go to bed until after midnight.
- 5. A: Hi, Judy. Welcome to the party. Have you ever met my cousin? B: No, I haven't.

- 6. A: Do you like lobster?
  - B: I don't know. I've never eaten it.
- 7. A: How did you like the book I lent you?
  - B: Gosh, I'm sorry, but I haven't read it yet. I haven't had time.

#### Exercise 8. Let's talk. (Chart 3-1)

Answer the questions. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

### Example:

SPEAKER A (book open): How many tests have you taken since you started coming to this class? SPEAKER B (book closed): I have taken (three, several, many) tests since I started coming to this class. OR I haven't taken any tests since I started coming to this class.

- 1. How many textbooks have you bought since the beginning of the year?
- 2. How many emails have you gotten so far this week/month?
- 3. How many emails have you written since the beginning of the week/month?
- 4. How many questions have I asked so far?
- 5. How many times have you flown in an airplane?

### (Change roles if working in pairs.)

- 6. How many people have you met since you came here?
- 7. How many classes have you missed since the beginning of the semester?
- 8. How many cups of coffee have you had since you got up this morning?
- 9. How many classes have you had so far today?
- 10. How many times have you eaten your native food at a restaurant this month?

# Exercise 9. Let's write and talk. (Chart 3-1)

What are some interesting and unusual things you have done in your lifetime? Answer this question by writing four to six sentences, some of them true and some of them false. Then share your sentences with a partner, a small group, or the class, who will guess whether your statement is true or false.

### Example:

SPEAKER A: I have jumped from an airplane.

SPEAKER B: I think that's false.

SPEAKER A: You're right. I've never jumped from an airplane, but I've thought about going skydiving sometime.

# Exercise 10. Warm-up: listening. (Chart 3-2)

Listen for reduced speech in these sentences. How are have and has pronounced?

- 1. The Browns have decided to grow their own vegetables.
- 2. It's past midnight. Where have you been?
- 3. Laura has offered to help us move into our new apartment.
- 4. Is Nick in trouble again? What has he done this time?
- 5. Janet has traveled all over the world.
- 6. Her parents have traveled a lot too.



3-	2	Have and Has in Spoken	English
(a)		have you been? ren: How/v/ you been? OR How/əv/ you been?	In spoken English, the present perfect helping verbs <i>has</i> and <i>have</i> are often reduced following nouns and question words.*  In (a): <i>have</i> can sound like /v/ or /əv/.
(b)	Jane	has already eaten lunch.	In (b): has can sound like /z/ or /əz/.
	Spok	ren: Jane/z/ already eaten lunch. on Jane/əz/ already eaten lunch.	In (c): has can sound like /s/ or /əs/.**
(c)		has already left. en: Mike/s/ already left. OR	NOTE: Jane/z/ eaten. Jane's = Jane has Jane/z/ here. Jane's = Jane is
		Mike/əs/ already left.	Mike/s/ left. Mike's = Mike has Mike/s/ here. Mike's = Mike is
and	t has verified the Chart	with pronouns. See Appendix Chart C for more 6-1, p. 85, for the pronunciation of final -s after ercise 11. Listening. (Chart 3-2)	r voiced and voiceless sounds.
CD 1	thei	en to the sentences. You will hear red r full (non-reduced) forms and any o	duced forms for <i>have</i> , <i>has</i> , and <i>is</i> , but you will write other words you hear.
rack 19	Exa	mple: You will hear: Sorry I'm late.	How long have you been here?
		You will write: How long	have you been here?
	1.	My teacher in the c	classroom.
	2.	Your teacher	
	3.	All of the other teachers	too.
	4.	You're late! Where	?
	5.	Susan has a guilty look on her face.	What?
	6.	Finally! The mail	
	7.	My neighbors	in the same apartment for over thirty years.
	8.	Vicky	a trip to Brazil.
	9.	It's great to see you. How	?
	10.	India an	independent country since 1947.
	11.	The weather	very nice.
	12.	The weather	warm lately.
	13.	The children	their drawings.
	14.	Ruth	_ four novels so far this month.

### Exercise 12. Warm-up. (Chart 3-3)

What do you notice about the verb tenses in blue? Discuss the differences.

I've heard a lot of good things about Professor Stevens, but I haven't taken any of her classes. Have you?



Yes. I took one of her classes last year. I loved it.

3-3 Present Perfec	et vs. Simple Past	
Present Perfect  iii ou up to now	(a) I've met Linda, but I haven't met her husband. Have you met them?	The PRESENT PERFECT is used to talk about past events when there is no specific mention of time.  In (a): The speaker is talking about some unspecified time before now.
Simple Past  A  A	(b) I <i>met</i> Helen <i>yesterday</i> at a party. Her husband <i>was</i> there too, but I <i>didn't meet</i> him. <i>Did</i> you <i>meet</i> them at the party?	The SIMPLE PAST is used when there is a specific mention of time.  In (b): The speaker is thinking of a specific time: yesterday.
Present Perfect  Other Street	(c) Sam <i>has been</i> a teacher <i>for</i> ten years. He loves teaching.	The PRESENT PERFECT is used for situations that began in the past and continue to the present.  In (c): The present perfect tells us that Sam is still a teacher now.
Simple Past  5007-5661	(d) Jim was a teacher for ten years, from 1995 to 2005. Now he is a salesman.	The SIMPLE PAST is used for situations that began and ended in the past.  In (d): The simple past tells us that Jim is not a teacher now.

	entheses.  Fatima is from a hot, arid part of her country. She (see, never)
1.	snow.
2.	Last January, I (see) snow for the first time in my life.
3.	Last night my friend and I (have) some free time, so we (go) to a show.
4.	Since classes began, I (have, not) much free time. My classes keep me really busy.
5.	Ming Won (be) in this class for three months. His English is getting better and better. He plans to take this class until the end of May.
6.	Mrs. Perez (be) in our class for three months, but then she left school to get a job.
7.	Late-breaking news! A major earthquake (occur, just) at 9:25 A.M. Pacific Standard Time.
8.	I admit that I (get*) older since I last (see)
	you, but with any luck at all, I (get, also) wiser.
9.	A: Are you taking Chemistry 101 this semester?  B: No, I (take, already**) it. I (take) it last semester. This semester I'm in 102.
10.	Greg Adams? Yes, I know him. I (know) him since college.
11.	Joe North passed away? I'm sorry to hear that. I (know) him well when we were in college together.

**Exercise 13. Looking at grammar.** (Charts 2-6 and 3-3)

Complete the sentences. Use the simple past or the present perfect form of the verbs in

<sup>\*</sup>COMPARE:

<sup>(</sup>a) I have gotten OR have got four letters so far this week. In this sentence, have gotten / have got is present perfect. (NOTE: Got is used as the past participle of get in both American English and British English. Gotten occurs only in American

<sup>(</sup>b) I have got a problem. In this sentence, have got is NOT present perfect. I've got a problem = I have a problem. The expression have got means "have" and is common in informal spoken English. Its meaning is present; it has no past form.

<sup>\*\*</sup>Typically, the present perfect is used in sentences with already, yet, and just, but in some situations the simple past is also commonly used with these adverbs in informal English, especially American English, with no difference in meaning.

### **Exercise 14. Let's talk: find someone who . . . .** (Charts 3-1 and 3-3)

Walk around the room. Ask a complete question for each item using the present perfect of the given verb. Begin your questions with Have you ever. When you find someone who answers "yes," ask a follow-up question using the wh-word and the simple past.

Example: see a bear? Where?

SPEAKER A: (Hassan), have you ever seen a bear?

SPEAKER B: No, I haven't. SPEAKER A: Okay. Thanks.

(Maria), have you ever seen a bear?

SPEAKER C: Yes, I have.

SPEAKER A: Really? Where did you see it?

SPEAKER C: In a zoo.

### Have you ever...

- 1. break something valuable? What . . . ?
- 2. lose something important? What . . . ?
- 3. stay up all night? Why ...?
- 4. travel to an interesting place? Where . . . ?
- 5. be in a car accident? When . . . ?
- 6. play a team sport? Which . . . ?

### Exercise 15. Warm-up. (Chart 3-4)

Check (✓) each correct sentence. NOTE: One sentence in each group is incorrect.

- 1. Anita is at the bus stop.
  - a. \_\_\_ She is waiting for the bus.
  - b. \_\_\_ She is waiting for the bus for fifteen minutes.
  - c. \_\_\_ She has been waiting for the bus for fifteen minutes.
- 2. Tarik is at the bus stop too.
  - a. \_\_\_ He is standing beside Anita.
  - b. \_\_\_ He is standing there since five o'clock.
  - c. \_\_\_ He has been standing there since five o'clock.



#### **Present Perfect Progressive** (a) Right now I am sitting at my COMPARE: desk. In (a): The PRESENT PROGRESSIVE expresses an activity in progress right now. (See Chart (b) I have been sitting at my desk 2-2, p. 14.) since seven o'clock. I have been sitting here for two hours. In (b): The PRESENT PERFECT PROGRESSIVE expresses how long an activity has been in (c) It's been raining all day. It's still progress. In other words, it expresses the raining right now. how long duration of an activity that began in the past up to now? and continues to the present. Time expressions often used with this tense • since and for, as in (b). • all day/all morning/all week, as in (c). NOTE: In (c): It's been raining. It's = It has It's still raining. It's = It is (d) I've known Alex since he was a For non-progressive verbs such as know, the present perfect (not the present perfect progressive) is used to express the duration INCORRECT: I've been knowing Alex of a situation that began in the past and since he was a child. continues to the present. (See Charts 2-3, p. 16, and 3-1, p. 38.) (e) How long have you been living For some (not all) verbs, the idea of how here? long can be expressed by either tense — the present perfect progressive or the present (f) How long have you lived here? perfect. NOTE: (e) and (f) have the same meaning; (q) Al has been wearing glasses (g) and (h) have the same meaning. since he was ten. (h) Al has worn glasses since he Either tense can be used only when the verb was ten. expresses the duration of present activities or situations that happen regularly, usually, habitually: e.g., live, work, teach, study, wear glasses, play chess, etc. (i) I've been thinking about When the tense is used without any mention looking for a different job. This of time, it expresses a general activity in one doesn't pay enough. progress recently, lately. For example, (i) means I've been thinking about this recently, (j) All of the students have been lately. studying hard. Final exams recently start next week.

آ آ		ercise 16. Looking at grammar. (Chart 3-4)	
		nplete the sentences. Use the present progressive or the present per- verbs in parentheses.	fect progressive form of
	1.	Mr. and Mrs. Jones (sit) are sitting outside	de on their porch right
		now. They (sit) have been sitting there since aft	er dinner.
	2.	The test begins at 1:00. Right now it's 11:00. Sara is at the library.	She (review)
		her notes right now. She (revi	iew)
		her notes all morning.	
	3.	Marco is in a store. He (stand)	_ at a checkout
		counter right now. He (stand)	there for over five
		minutes. He wishes he could find a salesperson. He wants to buy a	pair of jeans.
	4.	The little girl is dirty from head to foot because she (play)	
		in the mud.	
	5.	The children are excited about the concert. They (practice)	
		a lot in the last few week	s.
		They're going to sing for their parents.	

**Exercise 17. Let's write.** (Charts 2-6, 3-1, and 3-4)

a pad on the floor lately. The bed is too soft.

6. My back hurts, so I (sleep)

Write about the picture using the verbs in the list and the verb form given in each item.



cook fix memorize plant wash vacuum

- 1. Tom has had a busy day so far. Right now, he's taking a break. What has Tom been doing? Write at least four sentences on another piece of paper. Use the present perfect progressive.
- 2. Rewrite your sentences using yesterday. Use the simple past.
- 3. Rewrite your sentences using *just*. Use the present perfect.

Liste	ercise 18. Listening. (Charts 3-1 and 3-4) en to the dialogue one time with your book closed. Then, with your book open, listen and write the words you hear.
A	: Good to see you! So what up to lately?
	: Not too much it easy.
	: How nice! Glad to hear you too hard.
	By the way, your parents? I them
	for a while.
В	: great now
	that they're retired.
A	: How long retired?
В	: Gosh, I don't know a couple of years now.
А	: So a lot*?
	10
D	: Yeah in warm, sunny places in the winter and
	summers here.
A	: What a great way to spend retirement! I'm glad to hear
	themselves.
Con the 1	rcise 19. Looking at grammar. (Charts 3-1 and 3-4) applete the sentences. Use the verb in <i>italics</i> in the first sentence of each item to complete remaining sentence(s). Use the present perfect or the present perfect progressive. In some ences, either verb form is correct.
1.	I'm trying to study. I <u>have been trying</u> to study <b>for</b> the last hour, but something
	always seems to interrupt me. I think I'd better go to the library.
2.	Joe has an old bicycle. He has had the same bicycle for twenty years.
3.	Matt works at the ABC Company. Hehas worked / has been working there
	since 2005.
4.	Toshi is waiting for his friend. He for her since
	five o'clock. She's late for their date.
5.	I like cowboy movies. I cowboy movies ever
	since I was a child.

6 CD 1 Track 20

<sup>\*</sup>Notice: A statement form (not a question form) can sometimes be used to ask a question by using a rising intonation at the end of a sentence.

	0.	over two hours with	•	one		n tor		
	7.	Dr. Chang teaches n	nath. He is an ex	xcellent teacher. He _		<del>,,</del>		
			math at t	this school <b>for</b> more th	an 25 years.			
	8.	Sue and Rick are playing tennis right now and they're getting tired. They  since nine o'clock this morning. Sue's						
		winning. She's the	better tennis pla	yer. She				
		tennis <b>since</b> she wa	s ten. Rick start	ed playing only last ye	ar.			
CD 1 Track 21	Exercise 20. Listening. (Charts 3-1 and 3-4) Listen to the description of each item and complete the sentence that follows it. Use the present perfect and the present perfect progressive.  **Example: You will hear: Manuel has called Eva five times in the last hour, but her line is busy. He'll keep trying until he reaches her.							
		You will write:	Manuel (try)	has been trying	to reach Eva for			
			<u>an hour</u>	to talk about the	ir plans for the wee	kend.		
	1.	Susan (wait)		in the d	loctor's office since			
			She hopes sh	e doesn't have to wait	much longer.			
	2.	Alexi (own)		his motorcycl	e for	·		
	3. Joe (decide, not)			whic	h job to take yet. H	<b>I</b> e'll		
		decide soon.						
	4.	Mika is frustrated.	She (sit)		in rush-hou	ır traffic since		
	5.	Andrew and Donna	ı (play)		chess for	hours.		
		ercise 21. Let's woose one topic to wri		-1, 3-3, and 3-4)				
		Write about your fit about what you have Describe your last was about when the control of the co	re done and have week at home bef	ass. What did you see, been doing in this class fore you came to this c since you arrived here	ss since the first day ity/country. Then c	7.		
	Exe	ercise 22. Warm-	<b>up.</b> (Chart 3-5	)				

Each of the following talks about two events. Which event happened first?

- 1. The teacher stood up. Someone had knocked on the classroom door.
- 2. I looked at the chalkboard. The teacher had written my name there.

# Past Perfect





Ann left.	< Sam arrived.	
	^	

(a) Sam arrived at 10:00. Ann left at 9:30. In other words, Ann had already left when Sam arrived.

The past perfect expresses an activity that was complete before another activity or time in the past.

(b) By the time Sam got there, Ann had already left.

In (a): 1st: Ann left. 2nd: Sam arrived.

Adverb clauses with by the time are frequently used with the past perfect in the main clause, as in (b).\*

- (c) Sam had left before Ann got there.
- (d) Sam left before Ann got there.
- (e) After the guests had left, I went to bed.
- (f) After the guests left, I went to bed.

If either before or after is used in the sentence, the past perfect is often not necessary because the time relationship is already clear. The simple past may be used, as in (d) and (f).

- NOTE: (c) and (d) have the same meaning;
  - (e) and (f) have the same meaning.

- (g) Actual spoken words: I lost my keys.
- (h) Reported words: Jenny said that she had lost her keys.

The past perfect is commonly used in reported speech.\*\* If the actual spoken words use the simple past, the past perfect is often used in reporting those words, as in (h).

Common reporting verbs include tell (someone), say, find out, learn, and discover.

(i) Written: Bill felt great that evening. Earlier in the day, Annie had caught one fish, and he had caught three. They had had a delicious picnic near the lake and then had gone swimming again. It had been a nearly perfect vacation day.

The past perfect is often found in more formal writing such as fiction.

In (i), the fiction writer uses the simple past to say that an event happened (Bill felt great), and then uses the past perfect to explain what had happened before that event.

(j) I'd finished. You'd finished. We'd finished. They'd finished. She'd finished. He'd finished.

Had is often contracted with personal pronouns in informal writing.

NOTE: I'd finished. I'd = I had I'd like to go. I'd = I would

It'd finished.

<sup>\*</sup>For more information about by the time, see Chart 17-2, p. 368.

<sup>\*\*</sup>For more information about verb form usage in reported speech, see Chart 12-7, p. 261.

	the simple past or the past perfect form of the verbs in parentheses to complete the ences. In some cases, either tense is correct.
1.	Samir (be) <u>was / had been</u> a newspaper reporter before he (become)
	<u>became</u> a businessman.
2.	I (feel) a little better after I (take)
	the medicine.
3.	I was late. The teacher (give, already) a quiz when I
	(get) to class.
4.	It was raining hard, but by the time class (be) over, the
	rain (stop)
5.	Millions of years ago, dinosaurs (roam) the earth, but they
	(become) extinct by the time people first (appear)
6.	I (see, never) any of Picasso's paintings before I (visit
	the art museum.
7.	After work, I went to Rosa's office to give her a ride home, but I couldn't find her. She
	(leave) with someone else.
8.	I got ready to pay the bill, but when I (look) in my pocket, I
	discovered that I (leave) my wallet at home. With some
	embarrassment, I told my friend that I ( forget) my wallet
	She kindly (affer) to pay my part of the hill for me

Exercise 23. Looking at grammar. (Charts 2-6 and 3-5)

9.	Yesterday at a meeting, I (see) Rick Collins, an old friend of	
	mine. I (see, not) him in years. At first, I (recognize, not)	
	him because he (lose)	
	a great deal of weight.	
10.	In 1980, my parents (emigrate) to the United States from	
	China. They (travel, never) outside of China and	
	were, of course, excited by the challenge of relocating to a foreign country. Eventually,	
	they (settle) in California. My sister and I were born there and	l
	(grow) up there. Last year, I (go) to	)
	China for the first time to study at Beijing University. I (want, always)	
	to visit China and learn more about my own	
	family background. My dreams finally came true.	

### **Exercise 24. Looking at grammar.** (Chart 3-5)

Underline the past perfect verbs. Which of the passages is typical of fiction writing? Which of the passages is typical of spoken English? What are the differences in verb form usage?

- 1. The thief simply walked in. Mrs. Garcia had forgotten to lock the door. Her son's school had called to say that he was ill, so she had rushed out the door without thinking to lock it.
- 2. Hey, Anna! Did you hear? A thief got into Mrs. Garcia's house. Yeah. She forgot to lock the door. The school called and told her that her son was sick, so she rushed out the door without locking it.
- 3. Sometime in 1995, Mr. Parvaz took a long, hard look at his life. He had had the same job for almost three decades. His dear wife had passed away. His children had grown and moved away. So he quit his job, packed everything he owned, and moved to London. That was the beginning of his adventure.

### Exercise 25. Warm-up: listening. (Chart 3-6)

Listen for reduced speech in these sentences. How is *had* pronounced?

- 1. I'm sorry we missed the meeting. We had forgotten about it.
- 2. The movie had already begun by the time we got there.
- 3. I couldn't change my schedule. I had already planned my day.
- 4. I got home late. My roommate had already gone to bed.

### **3-6** Had in Spoken English (a) Joe had already heard the story. In spoken English, the helping verb had in the past perfect Spoken: Joe/d/ already heard the story. OR is often reduced following nouns and question words. It can Joe/ad/ already heard the story. be pronounced as /d/ or as /ad/.\* (b) Who had been there before you? Spoken: Who/d/ been there before you? OR Who/ad/ been there before you? (c) The dog had a bone. *Had* is not reduced when it is a main verb, as in (c). Spoken: The dog had a bone.

### **Exercise 26. Listening.** (Chart 3-6)



Listen for reduced forms of had. If you hear a reduced form, underline had and the word it is combined with. Practice saying the reduced forms.

Examples: You will hear: Anna had missed the bus. You will underline: Anna had missed the bus.

> You will hear: She had a headache.

You will underline: (nothing)

- 1. We had never seen it. He had never seen it. They had never seen it.
- 2. We got home late. The children had already fallen asleep.
- 3. My roommates had finished dinner by the time I got home.
- 4. My roommates had dinner early.
- 5. We couldn't drive across the river. The flood had washed away the bridge.
- 6. You were at Jim's at 8:00. Where had you been before that?
- 7. I had never visited there before. I'd like to go again. I had a good time.

# Exercise 27. Listening. (Charts 3-2 and 3-6)



Listen to the sentences. You will hear reduced forms for have, had, is, and would, but you will write their non-reduced forms.

1.	You're a new student, aren't you?	How long	have	you been in this
	country?			
2.	You must miss your old neighbor. If before he moved away?	How long		you known Mr. Kim
3.	You're looking for Jack? Jack		_ left. He isn't h	ere.
4.	We were late, and Natasha		left by the time w	e got there.
5.	Unfortunately, I didn't have my cell	phone with n	ne when we got lo	ost. I
	left it at home			

<sup>\*</sup>See Chart 3-5 for written contractions of *had* with pronouns.

6.	Since we're teachers, we have the summers off and do a lot of traveling. We
	like to travel to Africa next.
7.	Talk about long marriages! Can you believe that Mr. and Mrs. Chobeen married for 65 years?
8.	Serena an amazing chef. She created so many
	new and popular dishes that it's almost impossible to get a reservation at her restaurant.

# Exercise 28. Listening. (Charts 3-5 and 3-6)

First listen to the whole passage. Then listen again, and write the words that you hear.



### A Pleasant Surprise

Last night, Amy got home from work two hours late.	Usually she's home by	7:30, but last
night she didn't get there until almost 9:30.		
When she got home, her husband, Jamal,		dinner
and was washing the dishes. With a worried tone in his	voice, he <b>asked</b> her who	ere
She <b>told</b> him	3	to work late,
and then, on her way home,	a big accident that	had
slowed traffic to a crawl. He <b>asked</b> her why she	5	She said
to recharge her cell pho	ne, so she couldn't call	him.
Jamal smiled warmly and said that he was just glad th	at she was safely home.	Then he
offered to make her dinner — which she gratefully accep	oted. A home-cooked	meal sounded
wonderful a long day!		

CD 1 Track 25

	Exercise	29.	Warm-up.	(Chart 3-7)
_	EVCIOIO		Truiti up:	(Ondir o /

Which sentence (a. or b.) logically follows each statement? Discuss the meanings of the verbs in blue.

- 1. I have been working outside for almost an hour.
- 2. I had been working outside for almost an hour.
  - a. It's hot. I think I'll go inside.
  - b. But I got too hot and came inside.
- 3. I have been waiting for Jack since 5:00.
- 4. I had been waiting for Jack since 5:00.
  - a. Then I left.
  - b. And I'm still here.

3-7 Past Perfect Progressive							
duration of waiting	<ul> <li>(a) Eric finally came at six o'clock. I had been waiting for him since four-thirty.</li> <li>(b) The police had been looking for the criminal for two years before they caught him.</li> </ul>	The past perfect progressive emphasizes the duration of an activity that was in progress before another activity or time in the past.  NOTE: The past perfect progressive is used infrequently compared to other verb tenses.					
close in time	<ul> <li>(c) When Judy got home, her hair was still wet because she <i>had been</i> swimming.</li> <li>(d) I went to Ed's house after the funeral. His eyes were red because he <i>had been crying</i>.</li> </ul>	This tense also may express an activity in progress close in time to another activity or time in the past.					
(e) Actual spoken words: I have (f) Reported words: Lia told m	e been waiting for you. The that she had been waiting for me.	The past perfect progressive also occurs in reported speech. See Chart 3-5, examples (g) and (h).					

# Exercise 30. Looking at grammar. (Charts 3-4 and 3-7)

Complete the sentences. Use the present perfect progressive or the past perfect progressive form of the verbs in parentheses.

- 1. We (wait) have been waiting for Nancy for the last two hours, but she still hasn't arrived.
- 2. We (wait) \_\_\_\_\_had been waiting \_\_\_\_\_ for Nancy for over three hours before she finally arrived yesterday.
- 3. It is midnight. I (study) \_\_\_\_\_ for five straight hours. No wonder I'm getting tired.

4.	It was midnight. I (study)	for five straight
	hours. No wonder I was getting tired.	
5.	Jack suddenly realized that the teacher was asking him a question.	He couldn't answer
	hacques ha (daudraam)	for the last ten minutes

#### Exercise 31. Looking at grammar. (Chart 3-7)

6. Wake up! You (sleep)

Complete the sentences. Use the past perfect progressive form of the verbs in the list (or your own words).

long enough. It's time to get up.



dance draw look √ sing study talk play

SITUATION: Ms. Reed, a teacher, left the classroom for fifteen minutes. During that time, her

	students did whatever they wanted. When she came back,	
1.	She learned that a few students <u>had been singing</u>	loudly.
2.	She found out that a couple of students	on cell phones
3.	Someone told her that one student	loud music.
4.	She heard that several students	_ in the aisles.
5.	She found out that a group of students	in her grade book
6.	She saw that a couple of students	pictures on
	the board.	
7.	She happily discovered that a few students	

the whole time.

# Exercise 32. Let's talk: class activity. (Chapters 1 -> 3)

Discuss the meaning of the verb forms and answer the questions about each pair of sentences. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

1. a. When the rain stopped, Gloria was riding her bicycle to work.

b. When the rain stopped, Paul jumped on his bicycle and rode to work.

QUESTION: Who got wet on the way to work?

ANSWER: Gloria.

2. a. Ms. Lincoln taught at this school for nine years.

b. Mr. Sanchez has taught at this school for nine years.

QUESTION: Who is teaching at this school now?

- 3. a. Alice was opening the door when the doorbell rang.
  - b. George walked to the door after the doorbell rang.

QUESTION: Who had been expecting a visitor?

- 4. a. Donna lived in Chicago for five years.
  - b. Carlos has been living in Chicago for five years.

QUESTION: Who still lives in Chicago?

- 5. a. Jane put some lotion on her face because she had been lying in the sun.
  - b. Sue put some lotion on her face because she was lying in the sun.

QUESTION: Who put lotion on her face after she finished sunbathing?

- 6. a. I looked across the street. Mr. Fox was waving at me.
  - b. I looked across the street. Mrs. Cook waved at me.

QUESTION: Who began to wave at me before I looked across the street?

- 7. a. Dan was leaving the room when I walked in.
  - b. Sam had left the room when I walked in.

QUESTION: Who did I see when I came into the room?

- 8. a. Ken went to the store because he was running out of food.
  - b. Ann went to the store because she had run out of food.

QUESTION: Who is better at planning ahead?

- 9. a. Jack had been studying Spanish since he was in elementary school. He spoke it very well by the time he moved to Peru.
  - b. Robert has been studying Spanish since he was in elementary school. His Spanish is getting quite good.

QUESTION: Who is studying Spanish in school?

# **Exercise 33. Listening.** (Chapters $1 \rightarrow 3$ )

Listen to each situation. Choose the sentence (a. or b.) that correctly describes it.

Haven't you finished your term paper yet? You've been working on Example: You will hear:

it for three days. It's due tomorrow, you know, Alice.

(a.) Alice has been working on her term paper. You will circle:

b. Alice finished her term paper three days ago.

- 1. a. Yoko knows how to ski now.
  - b. Yoko is learning to ski.
- 2. a. Yoko knows how to ski now.
  - b. Yoko is learning to ski.
- 3. a. Mia is working as an auto mechanic right now.
  - b. Mia has experience as an auto mechanic.
- 4. a. Jon is traveling now.
  - b. Jon has traveled in the past, but he isn't traveling now.
- 5. a. Jon is currently working in sales.
  - b. Jon no longer works in sales.

# Exercise 34. Check your knowledge. (Chapters $1 \rightarrow 3$ )

Correct the errors.

- 1. Since I came to this country, I am learning a lot about the way of life here.
- 2. I arrive here only a short time ago. I am here since last Friday.
- 3. How long you been living here? I been here for almost two years.
- 4. Why you no have been in class for the last couple of days?
- 5. I am coaching a soccer team for the last two months.
- 6. My grandfather had lived in a small village in Italy when he was a child. At nineteen, he had moved to Rome, where he had met and had married my grandmother in 1957. My father had been born in Rome in 1960. I am born in Rome in 1989.
- 7. I'm living in my cousin's apartment since I have arrived here. It very small, and we are sharing the bedroom. I am needing my own place, but I don't find one so far.
- 8. When I was a child, I had lived with my grandmother instead of my parents. Grandpa has die before I am born, so I never knew him. Grandma raised me alone.

## **Exercise 35. Let's talk.** (Chapters $1 \rightarrow 3$ )

From the given situation, make up a "chain story." One person begins the story; then others continue the story in turn, using cue words from the list. The cue words may be used in any order and may be used more than once. Work in small groups or as a class.

(Pierre) had a terrible day yesterday. The trouble began early in the morning. His Example: alarm clock rang at 7:00.

SPEAKER A: When his alarm clock rang, he got out of bed and stepped on a snake. He was nearly frightened to death, but the snake got away without biting him.

SPEAKER B: After the snake left, Pierre got dressed in a hurry and ran downstairs to have breakfast.

SPEAKER C: While he was running downstairs, he fell and broke his arm. Etc.

after	as soon as	by the time	never	then
after that	before	for (a length of time)	next	when
already	because	later	since	while

#### Possible beginning sentences:

- 1. (\_\_\_\_) had a terrible day yesterday.
- 2. (\_\_\_\_) had a great vacation last summer.
- 3. (\_\_\_\_\_) got into a lot of trouble a couple of days ago.
- 4. (\_\_\_\_\_) had an interesting experience last week.
- 5. (Make up your own beginning sentence.)

# Exercise 36. Let's write and talk: small groups. (Chapters $1 \rightarrow 3$ )

Form a group and sit in a circle. On a separate sheet of paper, write the following sentence, using the name of the person sitting to your right: (...) had a strange experience yesterday.

Then write two or three additional sentences and pass your paper to the person sitting to your left, who will continue the story. Continue to pass the papers to the left until everyone in the group has had a chance to write part of each story.

Then decide which story in your group is the most entertaining or the most interesting. As a group, make any necessary corrections in grammar or spelling. Read the story aloud to the rest of the class. NOTE: You may wish to establish a time limit for each contribution to the story. (Use a buzzer or bell, or appoint someone to say "pass.") When the time limit is up, each person must pass his/her paper to the left even if it contains an unfinished sentence. The next person will then have to finish the sentence and continue writing the story.

# Exercise 37. Let's write. (Chapters 1 → 3)

Choose one to write about.

- 1. Describe the state of the world in the year of your birth. What significant or historical events occurred or were occurring at that time? Who were the leaders of your country? Then describe the changes that have occurred since that time and discuss the state of the world today.
- 2. Describe your family in the year you were born. Where were they living and working? Were they in a good situation? Who did your family consist of? Who in your family hadn't been born yet? Then describe the changes in your family that have occurred since the year of your birth and your family's current situation.



# Exercise 1. What do I already know? (Chapter 4)

Look at the verbs in italics. Do the sentences express present or future time?

1.	The students are going to give oral reports today.	present	future
2.	I'm beginning a new job next week.	present	future
3.	Look. It's beginning to rain.	present	future
4.	The teacher will be in her office after class today.	present	future
5.	When class is over, the teacher will be in her office.	present	future
6.	Finally, class is over. Let's get a cup of coffee.	present	future
7.	Oh no! We have only five minutes to make our train!	present	future
8.	Our train leaves from Track 37 in five minutes.	present	future
9.	The soccer team is playing in Barcelona next week.	present	future
10.	The soccer team is playing well today. They're winning.	present	future



# Exercise 2. Warm-up. (Chart 4-1)

Correct the errors.

- 1. Marie will cooks some chicken and rice for dinner tonight.
- 2. Where you will be tomorrow morning?
- 3. I no will ride the bus to work tomorrow.
- 4. Marco will probably to call us this evening.
- 5. I going to look for a new apartment.

# Simple Future: Will and Be Going To



- (a) Jack will finish his work tomorrow.
- Jack is going to finish his work tomorrow.

Will and be going to express future time and often have essentially the same meaning. Examples (a) and (b) have the same meaning. See Chart 4-2 for differences in meaning between the two forms.

#### Will

(c) Anna will come tomorrow around 5:00.  INCORRECT: Anna -will- come.  INCORRECT: Anna -will- to come.	Will typically expresses predictions about the future, as in (c). Will does not take a final -s. Will is followed immediately by the simple form of a verb.
(d) Alex will not be here tomorrow.  Peter won't be here either.	NEGATIVE: will + not = won't
(e) Will you be here tomorrow? How will you get here?	OUESTION: will + subject + main verb In (e): The speaker is asking for information about a future event.*
(f) Spoken or written: I'll be there. (g) Spoken: Tom'll be there too. Written: Tom will be there too.	CONTRACTIONS WITH PRONOUNS AND NOUNS:  Will is often contracted with pronouns in both speaking and informal writing: I'll, you'll, she'll, he'll, it'll, we'll, they'll.
(h) Spoken or very informal writing: Nobody'll notice. That'll be fun. There'll be a test tomorrow.	Will is also often contracted with nouns in speaking but usually not in writing, as in (g).  In very informal writing, will may be contracted with other kinds of pronouns and there, as in (h).

#### Be Going To

- (i) Anna is going to come tomorrow around 5:00.
- (j) Informally spoken: Anna's gonna come tomorrow around 5:00.
- (k) Tom isn't going to come.
- (I) Are you going to come?

Be going to also commonly expresses predictions about the future. In informal speech, going to is often pronounced "gonna."

NEGATIVE: be + not + going to, as in (k)

QUESTION: be + subject + going to, as in (1)

# Exercise 3. Listening. (Chart 4-1)



If you hear a form of will, choose yes. If not, choose no.

Example: I'll have time to see you tomorrow. I have time to see you tomorrow.



no (no)

- no
- 5. yes no

2. yes no

1. yes

6. yes no

3. yes no

7. yes no

4. yes

8. yes no

<sup>\*</sup>Will can also be used in questions to make polite requests: Will you open the door for me, please? See Chart 9-3, p. 159.

☐ Exercise 4. Pronunciation. (C)	(hart 4-1)
----------------------------------	------------

Practice pronouncing contractions with will.

- 1. Bob will be here soon.
  - → Bob'll be here soon.
- 2. I'll come. He'll come. You'll come.
- 3. She'll help us. They'll help us too.
- 4. I'm sure we'll do well on the test.
- 5. It'll probably rain tomorrow.
- 6. The weather will be hot in August.
- 7. Mary will come tomorrow.

- 8. Bill will be here too.
- 9. The children will be home at 3:00.
- 10. Who will be at the meeting?
- 11. Where will you be around five?
- 12. How long will Tom be here?
- 13. Nobody will recognize you in that wig.
- 14. That will be interesting.
- 15. What will you do?

# Exercise 5. Listening. (Chart 4-1)

Complete the sentences with the words you hear. Write the non-contracted forms of the verbs you hear.

- to turn in all your assignments by tomorrow.
- \_\_\_\_\_ for the final exam on Monday.
- 3. The \_\_\_\_\_\_ 50 questions.
- 4. 50 questions on the exam.
- the whole hour to complete the test.
- 6. It's a long exam. Sorry, but \_\_\_\_\_\_ early.
- 7. \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of work. Study hard!
- available in my office the next day.

# Exercise 6. Listening. (Chart 4-1)

Listen to the sentences. Circle whether you hear "going to" or "gonna."

1. going to gonna 3. going to gonna

2. going to gonna

4. going to gonna

# Exercise 7. Let's talk: small groups. (Chart 4-1)

Choose a leader for your group. Practice using be going to. Follow these steps:

- (1) Every person in the group, including the leader, will hand the leader a slip of paper on which is written the name of an occupation or any kind of work adults do. Examples: movie star, teacher, plumber, peace activist, artist, stay-at-home dad, civil engineer, architect, politician.
- (2) The leader will redistribute the slips of paper to the group.
- (3) Each member of the group will then explain what he/she is going to be or do according to what is written on the slip of paper. Example: "I'm going to be a famous movie star."
- (4) The group will ask the speaker questions about his/her future career. Example: "What kind of movies are you going to be in? Where will you live?" Etc.

CD 1 Track 28

# Exercise 8. Warm-up. (Chart 4-2)

Read the sentences and answer the questions.

- a. It's going to rain tomorrow.
- b. I'm going to paint the house next week.
- c. Here. I'll help you carry that box. It looks heavy.
- d. It will be cloudy this weekend.

1.	Which	sentence	expresses	a prior	r plan?	
	** 111011	COLLECTION	Chiprodood	a price	Pruni	

- 2. Which sentences are predictions? and
- 3. Which sentence expresses willingness?

# Will vs. Be Going To

#### Prediction

- (a) According to the weather report, it will be cloudy tomorrow.
- (b) According to the weather report, it is going to be cloudy tomorrow.

Will and be going to mean the same when they make *predictions* about the future (*prediction* = a statement about something the speaker thinks will be true or will occur in the future).

Examples (a) and (b) have the same meaning.

#### Prior Plan

- (c) —Why did you buy this paint?
  - —I'm going to paint my bedroom tomorrow.

Be going to (but not will) is used to express a prior plan (i.e., a plan made before the moment of speaking).\*

In (c): The speaker already has a plan to paint his/her bedroom.

#### Willingness

- (d) —The phone's ringing.
  - I'll get it.
- (e) How old is Aunt Agnes?
  - -I don't know. She won't tell me.
- (f) The car won't start. Maybe the battery is dead.

Will (but not be going to) is used to express willingness. In this case, will expresses a decision the speaker makes at the moment of speaking.

In (d): The speaker decides to answer the phone at the immediate present moment; she/he does not have a prior

Will not / won't can express refusal, as in (e) with a person or in (f) with an inanimate object.

Situation 1: A: Are you busy this evening?

B: Yes. I'm going to meet Jack at the library at seven. We're going to study together.

In Situation 1, only be going to is possible. The speaker has a prior plan, so he uses be going to.

Situation 2: A: Are you busy this evening?

B: Well, I really haven't made any plans. I'll eat (OR I'm going to eat) dinner, of course. And then I'll probably watch (OR I'm probably going to watch) TV for a little while.

In Situation 2, either will or be going to is possible. Speaker B has not planned his evening. He is "predicting" his evening (rather than stating any prior plans), so he may use either will or be going to.

<sup>\*</sup>COMPARE:

### Exercise 9. Looking at grammar. (Chart 4-2)

Discuss the italicized verbs in these short conversations. Decide if the speakers are expressing

- (a) predictions,
- (b) decisions they are making at the moment of speaking (willingness), or
- (c) plans they made before the moment of speaking.
- 1. A: Are you busy Saturday night? I've got front-row seats for the baseball game.
  - B: Oh, I wish I could, but I can't. I'm going to be at my niece's wedding on Saturday.
- 2. A: Masako's such a creative artist. And she's so patient with children.
  - B: She'll be very successful as an elementary art teacher.
- 3. A: We're going to go out to dinner in a few minutes. Do you want to join us?
  - B: Sure. Give me just a minute. I'll grab my coat.
- 4. A: I heard Sue and David are engaged for the third time!
  - B: They won't ever get married. They fight too much.
- 5. A: How do you spell "accustomed"?
  - B: I'm not sure. I'll look it up for you.
- 6. A: That's great news about your new job.
  - B: Well, actually, I've changed my mind about it. I'm not going to take it after all. I've decided to stay with my old job.

# ☐ Exercise 10. Looking at grammar. (Chart 4-2)

Decide if each italicized verb expresses a prediction, a prior plan, or willingness.

1.	Dinner's almost ready. I'll set the table.	prediction	plan	willingness
2.	Ivan has some vacation time. He is going to take next week off.	prediction	plan	willingness
3.	Heidi will love her birthday present. It's just what she wants.	prediction	plan	willingness
4.	I don't like my job. I'm going to quit when I get back from vacation.	prediction	plan	willingness
5.	That's okay. Don't worry about the spilled coffee. I'll clean it up.	prediction	plan	willingness
6.	Someday, there <i>are going to be</i> computers in every classroom in the world.	prediction	plan	willingness
7.	The light bulb is burned out. I'll get a new one from the supply room.	prediction	plan	willingness
8.	I'm going to the bookstore. Do you want to go with me?	prediction	plan	willingness

# ☐ Exercise 11. Looking at grammar. (Chart 4-2)

Complete the sentences with **be going to** if you think the speaker is expressing a prior plan. If you think she/he has no prior plan, use **will**. Use **won't** if the speaker is expressing refusal.

- 1. A: This letter is in French, and I don't speak French. Can you help me?
  - B: Sure. I (translate) will translate it for you.
- 2. A: Do you want to go shopping with me? I (go) \_\_\_\_\_ am going to go \_\_\_\_ to the shopping mall downtown.
  - B: Sure. What time do you want to leave?
  - A: How about 1:00?
  - B: Great! See you then.



- 3. A: Who wants to erase the board?

  Are there any volunteers?
  - B: I (*do*) \_\_\_\_\_\_ it!
  - C: I (do) \_\_\_\_\_\_ it!

- 4. A: Why does he have an eraser in his hand?
  - B: He (erase) \_\_\_\_\_ the board.



- 5. A: How about getting together for dinner tonight?
  - B: Sounds good. Where?
  - A: How about Alice's Restaurant or the Gateway Café? You decide.
  - B: Alice's Restaurant. I (meet) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ you there around six.
  - A: Great. I (see) \_\_\_\_\_\_ you then.
  - B: It's a date.

	6.	A: Do you have plans for dinner?
		B: Yes. I (meet*) a co-worker for dinner at Alice's
		Restaurant. Want to join us?
	7.	A: Why is that little boy crying?
		B: I don't know. He (tell, not) me. I wonder where his parents are.
	8.	A: What's wrong?
		B: The door (open, not)
		A: Well, of course not. It's locked.
		ercise 12. Listening. (Chart 4-2) en to the sentences and choose the expected response (a. or b.).
0	1.	a. I'm going to work at a summer resort in the mountains.
		b. I'll work at a summer resort in the mountains.
	2.	a. Sure. I'm going to drop it off on my way to work.
		b. Sure. I'll drop it off on my way to work.
	3.	a. I'm going to attend my cousin's funeral.
		b. I'll attend my cousin's funeral.
	4.	a. Here, give it to me. I'm going to fix it for you.
		b. Here, give it to me. I'll fix it for you.
	5.	a. I'm going to sweep the front steps.
		b. I'll sweep the front steps.
		ercise 13. Warm-up. (Chart 4-3)
		nplete the sentences with your own words. All the sentences talk about future time. What you notice about the verbs in blue?
	1.	After I leave this class, I'm going to
	2.	As soon as I get home tonight, I'll
	3.	When I finish my English studies, I'm going to

I am going to meet Larry at Alice's Restaurant at six.

I am meeting Larry at Alice's Restaurant at six.

<sup>\*</sup>When be going to expresses a prior plan, it is often also possible to use the present progressive with no change in meaning. See Chart 4-2, p. 63. There is no difference in meaning between these sentences:

# 4-3 Expressing the Future in Time Clauses

- (a) Bob will come soon. When Bob comes, we will see him.
- (b) Linda is going to leave soon. *Before she leaves*, she is going to finish her work.
- (c) I will get home at 5:30. After I get home, I will eat dinner.
- (d) The taxi will arrive soon. As soon as it arrives, we'll be able to leave for the airport.
- (e) They are going to come soon. I'll wait here until they come.

In (a): When Bob comes is a time clause.\*

when + subject + verb = a time clause

When the meaning of the time clause is future, the SIMPLE

PRESENT tense is used. Will or be going to is not used in
the time clause.

A time clause begins with such words as when, before, after, as soon as, until, and while and includes a subject and a verb. The time clause can come either at the beginning of the sentence or in the second part of the sentence:

When he comes, we'll see him. OR We'll see him when he comes.

Notice: A comma is used when the time clause comes first in a sentence.

- (f) While I am traveling in Europe next year, I'm going to save money by staying in youth hostels.
- (h) I will go to bed after I have finished my work.

(g) I will go to bed after I finish my work.

Sometimes the PRESENT PROGRESSIVE is used in a time clause to express an activity that will be in progress in the future, as in (f).

Occasionally, the PRESENT PERFECT is used in a time clause, as in (h). Examples (g) and (h) have the same meaning. The present perfect in the time clause emphasizes the completion of one act before a second act occurs in the future.

# ☐ Exercise 14. Looking at grammar. (Chart 4-3)

Draw brackets around the time clause in each sentence and <u>underline</u> its verb. Identify and discuss the use of verb tenses.

- 1. We'll be here [when you arrive tomorrow.]
- 2. After the rain stops, I'm going to sweep the front porch.
- 3. I'm going to start making dinner before my wife gets home from work today.
- 4. I'm going to wait right here until Sonya comes.
- 5. As soon as the war is over, there will be new elections.
- 6. Right now the tide is low, but when the tide comes in, the ship will leave the harbor.
- 7. While I'm driving to work tomorrow, I'm going to listen to my Greek language CD.

# ☐ Exercise 15. Looking at grammar. (Chart 4-3)

Use will/be going to or the simple present. (In this exercise, both will and be going to are possible when a future verb is necessary, with little or no difference in meaning.)

1.	Pete is going to leave in half an hour. He (finish)	<u>will finish / is going to finish</u> :	al
	of his work before he (leave)leaves		

<sup>\*</sup>A time clause is an adverb clause. See Charts 17-1 (p. 365) and 17-2 (p. 368) for more information.

2.	I'm going to eat lunch at 12:30. After I (eat),
	I (take, probably) a nap.
3.	I'll get home around six. When I (get) home, I (give)
	Sharon a call.
4.	I'm going to watch a TV program at nine, but before I (watch)
	the program, I (call) my parents.
5.	Bakir will come soon. I (wait) here until he (come)
	<del></del>
6.	I'm sure it will stop raining soon. As soon as the rain (stop)
	I (walk) to the store to get some film.
7.	I'm a junior in college this year. After I (graduate) with a B.A.
	next year, I (intend) to enter
	graduate school and work for an M.A. Perhaps I
	(go) on for a Ph.D. after
	I (get) my master's degree.
8.	I (listen) to
	an English language course while I (sleep)
	tonight. Do you
	think it will help me learn English faster?
xe	rcise 16. Let's talk: interview. (Chart 4-3)

# 

Make questions using the given words. Ask two students each question. Share some of their answers with the class. Use be going to for the future verb.

- 1. What \ you \ do \ after \ you \ wake up \ tomorrow?
- 2. What \you \ do \ as soon as \ class \ end \ today?
- 3. Before \ you \ go \ to bed \ tonight \ what \ you \ do?
- 4. What \ you \ do \ when \ you \ have \ free time \ this weekend?
- 5. When \ you \ finish \ school \ what \ you \ do?

# Exercise 17. Warm-up. (Chart 4-4)

Decide if each sentence has a present or future meaning. What do you notice about the verb tense in each sentence?

1.	I'm meeting a friend for dinner tonight.	present meaning	future meaning
2.	We're taking a flight at midnight.	present meaning	future meaning
3.	Class starts in ten minutes.	present meaning	future meaning

# **4-4** Using the Present Progressive and the Simple Present to Express Future Time

#### **Present Progressive**

- (a) My wife has an appointment with a doctor. She *is seeing* Dr. North *next Tuesday*.
- (b) Sam has already made his plans. He *is leaving* at noon tomorrow.
- (c) What are you going to do this afternoon?
  - After lunch, I am meeting a friend of mine. We are going shopping. Would you like to come along?

The PRESENT PROGRESSIVE may be used to express future time when the idea of the sentence concerns a planned event or definite intention.

COMPARE: A verb such as *rain* is not used in the present progressive to indicate future time because rain is not a planned event.

A future meaning for the present progressive tense is indicated either by future time words in the sentence or by the context.

#### Simple Present

- (d) The museum opens at 10:00 tomorrow morning.
- (e) Classes begin next week.
- (f) John's plane arrives at 6:05 P.M. next Monday.

The SIMPLE PRESENT can also be used to express future time in a sentence concerning events that are on a definite schedule or timetable. These sentences usually contain future time words. Only a few verbs are used in this way: e.g., open, close, begin, end, start, finish, arrive, leave, come, return.

	<b>Exercise</b>	18.	Looking	at g	grammar.	(Chart 4-4	1)
--	-----------------	-----	---------	------	----------	------------	----

11. When I am home alone in the evening, I like to read or

watch television.

Decide the meaning of each italicized verb. Write in the future, now, or habitually.

in the future 1. I am taking four courses next semester. 2. I am taking four courses this semester. now habitually 3. Students usually *take* four courses every semester. 4. I'll mail this letter at the corner when I take Susan home. 5. My brother's birthday is next week. I am giving him a sweater. 6. Shhh. The broadcaster is giving the latest news about the crisis overseas. I want to hear what she's saying. 7. When I graduate, I'm going to return home. 8. When students graduate, they receive diplomas. 9. I'm tired. I am going to bed early tonight. 10. When I am in New York, I'm going to visit the Museum of Modern Art.

12. A: Are you busy?	
B: Not really.	
A: What are you doing?	
B: I'm writing a letter to my folks.	

A: \_\_\_\_\_

A: When you *finish* your letter, do you want to play a game of chess?

13. A: What are you doing after work today?

B: I'm playing tennis with Brown at the health club. And you?

A: I'm meeting Smith for a round of golf.



# **Exercise 19. Looking at grammar.** (Chart 4-4) Complete each sentence with any present progressive verb.

	_							•			
1.	A:	How	about	going	across	the	street	for	a cup	of	coffee?

B: I can't. I \_\_\_\_\_ Jennifer at the library at 5:00.

- 2. A: Why are you in such a hurry?
  - B: I have to be at the airport in an hour. I \_\_\_\_\_\_ the four o'clock plane to New York. I have an important meeting there tomorrow.
- 3. A: I see you're smoking. I thought you stopped last month.
  - B: I did. I don't know why I started again. I \_\_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow, and this time I mean it.

- 4. A: Your cough sounds terrible! You should see a doctor.
- 5. A: Where are you and your family going for your vacation this summer?
  - B: Ontario, Canada.
  - A: Are you planning to fly?
  - B: No, we \_\_\_\_\_\_ so we can take our time and enjoy the scenery.
  - A: That sounds wonderful.

## Exercise 20. Let's write. (Chart 4-4)

Pretend that you are going to take your ideal vacation next week. All of your plans are made, and your itinerary is in front of you. Write your travel plans. Use present tenses where appropriate.

Example: This coming Saturday, I am beginning my "vacation of a lifetime." The first place I'm going to is Bali. My plane leaves at six-thirty Saturday morning. I arrive in Bali late that afternoon. I'm staying at the Nusa Dua Beach Hotel. I leave Bali on the fifteenth and travel to the Philippines. While I'm there, I'm staying with some friends. Etc.

# ☐ Exercise 21. Warm-up. (Chart 4-5)

Notice the verbs in blue. What do they have in common?

- 1. Right now, I'm sitting in class.
- 2. Yesterday at this time, I was sitting in class.
- 3. Tomorrow at this time, I will be sitting in class.

4-5 Future Prog	ressive	
	<ul><li>(a) I will begin to study at seven. You will come at eight. I will be studying when you come.</li></ul>	The future progressive expresses an activity that will be in progress at a time in the future.
	(b) Don't call me at nine because I won't be home. I <i>am going to be studying</i> at the library.	The progressive form of be going to: be going to + be + -ing, as in (b)
	(c) Don't worry. She <i>will be coming</i> soon. (d) Don't worry. She <i>will come</i> soon.	Sometimes there is little or no difference between the future progressive and the simple future, especially when the future event will occur at an indefinite time in the future, as in (c) and (d).

		preise 22. Looking at grammar. (Chart 4-5) Inplete the sentences. Use the future progressive form of the given verbs.
	1.	finish, sleep, study
		Please don't call our house after 9:00 tonight. The babyis going to be sleeping
		OR will be sleeping . My husband
		for a test. I a project for work.
	2.	talk, do, see
		Dr. Roberts is the town's only medical doctor and works long hours. Tomorrow she has an
		especially busy schedule. From early in the morning until lunch, she
		patients at her clinic. After lunch, she
		research at the hospital. In the evening, she to
		medical students about rural health care.
	•	Tomorrow I'm going to leave for home. When I (arrive) at the
		airport, my whole family (wait) for me.
	2.	When I (get) up tomorrow morning, the sun (shine)
		, the birds (sing), and my
		roommate (lie, still) in bed fast asleep.
	3.	A: When do you leave for Florida?
		B: Tomorrow. Just think! Two days from now
		I (enjoy)
		my vacation in the sun.
		A: Sounds great! I (think)
		about you.
	4.	A: Are you going to be in town next Saturday?
		B: No. I (visit, in Chicago*)
		my aunt.
	5.	A: Where are you going to be this evening?
		B: I (work, at the library)
		on my research paper.

<sup>\*</sup>Expressions of place can often be used between the helping verb and the main verb in progressive tenses. See Chart 2-10, p. 34.

# Exercise 24. Warm-up. (Chart 4-6)

Notice the verbs in blue. What do they have in common?

- 1. Eric isn't here. He has left.
- 2. Eric wasn't there. He had left by the time we got there.
- 3. Eric won't be there. He will have left by the time we get there.

#### 4-6 Future Perfect and Future Perfect Progressive NOTE: These two tenses are rarely used compared to the other verb tenses. **Future Perfect** (a) I will graduate in June. I will see The FUTURE PERFECT expresses an you in July. By the time I see you, activity that will be completed before I will have graduated. another time or event in the future. **Future Perfect Progressive** (b) I will go to bed at 10:00 P.M. Ed will The FUTURE PERFECT PROGRESSIVE get home at midnight. At midnight emphasizes the duration of an activity I will be sleeping. I will have been that will be in progress before another sleeping for two hours by the time time or event in the future. Ed gets home. (c) When Professor Jones retires next Sometimes the future perfect and the month, he will have taught OR future perfect progressive have the will have been teaching for 45 same meaning, as in (c). years. Also, notice that the activity expressed by either of these two tenses may begin in the past.

# Exercise 25. Looking at grammar. (Chapter 3; Charts 4-5 and 4-6)

Complete the sentences. Use any appropriate tense of the verbs in parentheses.

- 1. Ann and Andy got married on June 1st.

  Today is June 15th. They (be) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_

  married for two weeks.

  By June 8th, they (be) \_\_\_\_\_\_

  married for one week.
  - married for one week.

    By June 29th, they (be) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_
    married for four weeks.
- 2. This traffic is terrible. We're going to be late. By the time we

(get)	(get)	to the airport, Yuri's plane (arrive, already*)
		, and he'll be wondering where we ar

**June** 

19

15

22

28 29

10 11 12 13

23 24 25 26

<sup>\*</sup>With the future perfect, already has two possible midsentence positions: I will already have finished.

I will have already finished.

3.	The traffic was very heavy. By the time we (get) to the airport,
	Yuri's plane (arrive, already)
4.	This morning I came to class at 9:00. Right now it is 10:00, and I am still in class. I (sit)  at this desk for an hour. By 9:30, I (sit)
	here for half an hour. By 11:00, I (sit)
	here for two hours.
5.	Classes start at 9:00 every day. It's 9:30 and the school bus is late. When the bus gets to
	school, classes (begin) The teachers (teach)
	since 9:00.
6.	I'm getting tired of sitting in the car. Do you realize that by the time we arrive in Phoenix,
	we (drive) for twenty straight hours?
7.	Go ahead and leave on your vacation. Don't worry about this work. By the time you (get)
	back, we (take) care of
	everything.
8.	I don't understand how those marathon runners do it! The race began more than an hour ago. By the time they reach the finish line, they (run)
	steadily for more than two hours. I don't think I can run more than two minutes!
9.	We have been married for a long time. By our next anniversary, we (be)
	married for 43 years.

# Exercise 26. Let's talk or write. (Chapter 4)

These sentences describe typical events in a day in the life of a man named Bill. The sentences are in the past, but all of these things will happen in Bill's life tomorrow. Change all of the sentences to the future.

- 1. When Bill got up yesterday morning, the sun was shining. And tomorrow?
  - → When Bill gets up tomorrow morning, the sun will be shining.
- 2. He shaved and showered, and then made a light breakfast. And tomorrow?
- 3. After he ate breakfast yesterday, he got ready to go to work. And tomorrow?
- 4. By the time he got to work yesterday, he had drunk three cups of coffee. And tomorrow?
- 5. Between 8:00 and 9:00, Bill answered his email and planned his day. And tomorrow?
- 6. By 10:00 yesterday, he had called new clients. And tomorrow?
- 7. At 11:00 yesterday, he was attending a staff meeting. And tomorrow?
- 8. He went to lunch at noon and had a sandwich and a bowl of soup. And tomorrow?

- 9. After he finished eating, he took a short walk in the park before he returned to the office. And tomorrow?
- 10. He worked at his desk until he went to another meeting in the middle of the afternoon. And tomorrow?
- 11. By the time he left the office, he had attended three meetings. And tomorrow?
- 12. When Bill got home, his children were playing in the yard. And tomorrow?
- 13. They had been playing since 3:00 in the afternoon. And tomorrow?
- 14. As soon as he finished dinner, he took the children for a walk to a nearby playground. And tomorrow?
- 15. Afterward, the whole family sat in the living room and discussed their day. And tomorrow?
- 16. They watched television for a while, and then he and his wife put the kids to bed. And tomorrow?
- 17. By the time Bill went to bed yesterday, he had had a full day and was ready for sleep.
  And tomorrow?



## **Exercise 27. Let's talk or write.** (Chapter 4)

What do you think the world will be like in a hundred years? What changes will have occurred between then and now? Use your imagination and make some predictions. NOTE: You may wish to make comparisons among the past, the present, and the future.

Example: A hundred years ago, the automobile hadn't been invented. Today it is one of the most common means of transportation and has greatly changed the way people lead their lives. By the year \_\_\_\_\_\_, the automobile will have become obsolete. A hundred years from now, people will use small, jet-propelled, wingless flying machines in place of cars.

#### Possible topics:

- 1. types of transportation
- 2. energy sources
- 3. population growth
- 4. food sources
- 5. extinction of animal species
- 6. architecture
- 7. clothing styles
- 8. exploration of the oceans or of the earth's interior

- 9. space exploration; contact with beings from outer space
- 10. weapon technology
- 11. role of computers in daily life
- 12. long-term solutions to today's political crises
- 13. international language
- 14. international world government

# **Exercise 1. What do I already know?** (Chapters $1 \rightarrow 4$ )

Correct the errors in verb tense usage.

- 1. I am studying here since last January.
- 2. By the time Hassan returned to his country, he is away from home for more than three years.
- 3. After I will graduate, I going to return to my hometown.
- 4. By the end of the 21st century, man will had discovered the cure for the common cold.
- 5. I want to get married, but I don't meet the right person yet.
- 6. I have been seeing that movie three times, and now I am wanting to see it again.
- 7. I am not like my job. My brother wants me to quit. I am thinking he is right.
- 8. While I'm study tonight, I'm going to listen to classical music.
- 9. We washed the dishes and clean up the kitchen after our dinner guests were leaving.
- 10. My neighbors are Mr. and Mrs. Sanchez. I know them ever since I am a child.
- 11. Many scientists believe there is a major earthquake in California in the near future.

☐ Exercise 2. Looking at grammar. (Cha	apters	$1 \rightarrow 4$
--	--------	-------------------

Complete the sentences with any appropriate tense of the verbs in parentheses.

- 1. John is in my English class. He (study) \_\_\_\_\_\_ English this semester. He (take, also) \_\_\_\_\_\_ some other classes. His classes (begin) \_\_\_\_\_\_ at 9:00 every day.
- 2. Yesterday John ate breakfast at 8:00. He (eat, already) \_\_\_\_\_\_ for class at 8:45.

Э.	John (eat, always) breakfast before he (go)							
	to class. Tomorrow before he (go) to							
	class, he (eat) breakfast.							
4.	John is in class every morning from 9:00 to 12:00. Two days ago, I (call)							
	him at 11:30, but I could not reach him because he (attend)							
	class at that time.							
5.	Don't try to call John at 11:30 tomorrow morning because he (attend)							
	class at that time.							
6	Yesterday John took a nap from 1:00 to 2:00. I arrived at 1:45. When I (get)							
<i>J</i> .	there, John (sleep) He (sleep)							
	for 45 minutes by the time I got there.							
7.	Right now John (take) a nap. He (fall)							
	asleep an hour ago. He (sleep) for an hour.							
3.	Tomorrow, after he (eat) dinner, John (go)							
	to a movie. In other words, he (eat) dinner by the							
	time he (go) to the movie.							
9.	Three days ago, John (start)							
	to read The Old Man and the Sea, a novel by							
	Ernest Hemingway. It is a long novel. He							
	(finish, not)							
	reading it yet. He (read)							
	it because his English							
	teacher assigned it.							
`	Since the hearinging of the competer July							
).								
	(finish) three							
	novels. Right now he (read)  The Old Man							
	and the Sea. He (read) that novel for the past three days. He (intend) to finish it by next week. In his lifetime, he							
	(read) many novels, but this is the first Hemingway novel he							
	(read, ever)							

Exercise	3.	Let's	talk.	(Chapters	$1 \rightarrow 4$
FVCICISC	, V.	LC! 3	I CAIR.	(Chapleis	1 4)

Practice verb tenses by answering the questions in complete sentences. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class. Only the questioner's book is open.

- 1. What have we been studying? What is one tense we have studied since the beginning of the term? When, as best as you can remember, did we study it?
- 2. What else will we have studied in this class by the time the term ends?
- 3. This class began on (date). Had you studied verb tenses before that?
- 4. We're going to finish studying Chapter 5 on (day or date). How long will we have been studying Chapter 5 by that time?
- 5. Where are you going to be living in five years?
- 6. Think about recent news. What's happening in world affairs? What's happened recently?

(Change roles if working in pairs.)

- 7. What are you doing right now? How long have you been doing that?
- 8. What were you doing at this time yesterday? What did you do after that?
- 9. What will you be doing tonight at midnight? What were you doing last night at midnight?
- 10. What places have you been to since you came to (this city)?
- 11. What are some of the things you have done in your lifetime? When did you do them?
- 12. What countries/cities have you visited? When did you visit (\_\_\_\_\_)? Why did you go there? What did you like about (\_\_\_\_\_)? What did you dislike about (\_\_\_\_\_)? Are you planning to go there again someday?

<b>Exercise 4.</b>	Listening.	(Chapters	$1 \rightarrow 4)$
--------------------	------------	-----------	--------------------

CD 1 Track 31

Part I. Listen to the story with your book closed. Then open your book and read the statements. Circle "T" for true and "F" for false.

1.	The man broke the lock on the door.	T	F
2.	The man thought a stranger was in his apartment.	T	F
3.	The man's wife opened the door.	T	F
4.	The man felt he had done something stupid.	Т	F

Part II. Listen again. Complete the sentences with the verbs you hear.

When I	home	to my apart	ment last n	ight, I	2	out my key
to open the	door as usual. As alv	vays, I	3	it in the loo	ck, but the o	loor
	I	5	_ my key ag	ain and ag	ain with no	luck. So I
	on the doo	r for my wife	to let me i	n. Finally	the door	
7	, but I	8	n	ny wife on	the other si	de. I
9	a stranger. I		10		to get into	the wrong
apartment!	I quickly	11	and	12	to my ov	vn. I
12	very stupid abou	ıt what I	14			

Exercise 5. Let's talk and write. (Chapters 1 → 4) Before you come to class, think of an interesting, dangerous, or amusing exp had. Tell the story to a classmate, who will report your experience in a comp	
Exercise 6. Looking at grammar. (Chapters 1→ 4) Complete the sentences with any appropriate tense of the verbs in parenthes	es.
Dear Anna,	
I ( get) your long email about two weeks ago and (try)	
to find time to write you back ever since. I (be)	
very busy lately. In the past	3
two weeks, I (have) four tests, and	
I have another one next week. In addition, a friend (stay)	
with me since last Thursday. She	
city, so we (spend) a lot of time vis	
interesting places here. We (be) to the zoo, the	ne art museum,
and the botanical gardens.	
Yesterday we (go) to the park and (watch)	a
balloon race. Between showing her the city and studying for my exams, I (ha	ve, barely)
enough time to breathe.	
Right now it (be) 3:00 A.M., and I (sit)	at my
desk. I (sit) here for five hours doing m	v studving. My
15	y ocumy mage 1019
friend's plane (leave) in a few hours, so I (decide)	
not to go to bed. That's why I (write)	to
you at such an early hour in the day. I (get)	
would rather stay up. I (take) a nap after I (get)	
back from taking her to the airport.	19
How ( you, get) along	P How
20	
(your classes, go)? Please	e write soon.

21

Yours, Yoko

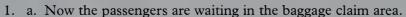
# Exercise 7. Let's write. (Chapters $1 \rightarrow 4$ )

Write a letter to a friend or family member. Discuss your activities, thoughts, feelings, and adventures in the present, past, and future.

Use as many different tenses as seems natural. For example, in the course of your letter, tell your reader what you are doing, do every day, have done since a certain time, have been doing lately, did at some particular time, had done before you did something else, are going to do, etc.

#### **Exercise 8. Listening.** (Chapters $1 \rightarrow 4$ )

Listen to each situation and choose the sentence that comes next (a. or b.).



- b. After the plane lands, the passengers will be waiting in the baggage claim area.
- 2. a. Then his boss called.
  - b. He's finding it very relaxing.
- 3. a. When did it stop?

Track 32

- b. When's it going to stop?
- 4. a. Some people in the audience said "Shhh" as we sat down.
  - b. We missed the first half hour.
- 5. a. She's glad that she's finished her training.
  - b. She's going to take another one next month.
- 6. a. They never caught him.
  - b. They'll never catch him.

Exercise 9. Looking at grammar. (Chapters $1 \rightarrow 4$ ). Complete the sentences with the words in parentheses. Use any appropriate tense.							
Almost every part of the world (experience) an							
earthquake in recent years, and almost every part of the world (experience)							
earthquakes in the years to come. Since the ancient							
Chinese (begin) to keep records several thousand years ago, more than 13							
million earthquakes (occur) worldwide by some estimates.							
What (cause) earthquakes? Throughout time, different cultures							
(develop) myths to explain these violent earth movements							
From India comes the story of six strong elephants who (hold) up the							
earth on their heads. Whenever one elephant (move) its head, the earth							
trembles.							

According to a Japanese myth, a playful ca	atfish lives in the mud under the earth. Whenever it
feels like playing, it (wave)	its fat tail around in the mud. The result?
Earthquakes.	
Nowadays, although scientists	
(know) more	
about the causes of earthquakes, they	
still cannot prevent the terrible	
damage. One of the strongest quakes	
in the last hundred years (happen)	in Anchorage, Alaska, on March
24, 1964, at about six o'clock in the evening.	When the earthquake (strike)
that evening, many fan	nilies (sit) down to
eat dinner. People in the city (find, suddenly)	
themselves in the dark because most of the li	ghts in the city went out when the earthquake
occurred. Many people (die)	instantly when tall buildings (collapse)
and (cond)	tons of bright and congrets greeking
	tons of brick and concrete crashing
into the streets. When (the next earthquake, or	
18	
Interestingly enough, throughout history a	nnimals (help, often)
people predict earthquakes shortly before the	ey happen. At present, some scientists (study)
	use catfish swim excitedly just before an
earthquake.	
According to some studies, snakes, monke	ys, and rodents (appear, also)
to be sensitive	ve to the approach of violent movement in the
earth's surface. Some animals (seem)	to know a great deal more than
humans about when an earthquake will occu	
In recent years, scientists (develop)	many extremely
	instruments (be) able to
give us a sufficiently early warning so that we	e can be waiting calmly in a safe place when the
next earthquake (strike)25	

Exercise 10. Let's talk: pairwork. (Chapters 1→ 4)

Work with a partner.

- PARTNER A: Pretend to be a famous living person. Agree to an interview by a nosy newspaper reporter (Partner B). Tell the reporter all about yourself. Invent answers. Use your imagination. Begin with  $I \dots$
- PARTNER B: You're the reporter. Ask the famous person (Partner A) all sorts of questions about his/her past, present, and future.

After the interview, write an article with your partner about this person.

# Exercise 11. Let's talk: small groups. (Chapters $1 \rightarrow 4$ )

Divide up the tasks within your group. Put together a news release about your class. It should contain the following:

- · a few sentences about each class member and the teacher
- · activities you have done in this class
- a description of the classroom, the building it's in, and the surrounding area
- · some information about the school you're attending
- other interesting information about your class

#### Exercise 12. Let's talk and write. (Chapters $1 \rightarrow 4$ )

In a short talk (two or three minutes), summarize a recent news event. Present your talk to a small group or to the class. If necessary, you may speak from brief notes (an outline of only the most important points). Listeners can write short summaries of each presentation.

# Exercise 13. Check your knowledge. (Chapters $1 \rightarrow 4$ )

Correct the errors in verb tense usage.

- 1. I haven't been in this town very long. I come here just two weeks ago.
- 2. Dormitory life is not quiet. Everyone shouted and make a lot of noise in the halls.
- 3. My friends will meet me when I will arrive at the airport.
- 4. Hasn't anyone ever tell you to knock on the door before you enter someone else's room? Didn't your parents taught you that?
- 5. The phone rung while I doing the dishes. I dry my hands and answer it. When I am hear my husband's voice, I very happy.
- 6. I am in the United States for the last four months. During this time, I had done many things and saw many places.
- 7. When the old man started to walk back to his hut, the sun has already hided itself behind the mountain.

- 8. While I am writing my composition last night, someone knocks on the door.
- 9. Why did you writing a children's book?
- 10. I'm really glad you to visit my hometown next year.
- 11. While I was visitting my cousin in Los Angeles, we went to a restaurant and eat Thai food.
- 12. When I was a child, I viewed things from a much lower height. Many physical objects around me appear very large. When I want to move something such as a chair, I need help.
- 13. When I was in my country, I am afraid to come to the United States. I thought I couldn't walk outside at night because of the terrible crime. But now I am having a different opinion. I live in this small town for three months and learn that there is very little crime here.

# ☐ Exercise 1. What do I already know? (Chart 6-1)

Add -s or -es where necessary. Do not change or omit any other words. All of the sentences are simple present. Discuss the use, spelling, and pronunciation of final -s/-es.

69

- 1. Erica miss, her mother and father.
- 2. My parent visit many countries when they travel in Europe.
- 3. Robert sing when he take a shower.
- 4. Chicken, duck, and turkey lay egg.
- 5. Anna wear glove on her hand when she work in her garden.
- 6. She scratch her chin when it itch.



# ☐ Exercise 2. Warm-up. (Chart 6-1)

Look at the words that end in -s. Are they singular or plural? Are they nouns or verbs?

	Singular	Plural	Noun	Verb
1. A new car <i>costs</i> a lot of money.	X			X
2. New cars cost a lot of money.				
3. My neighbor <i>makes</i> a lot of noise.				
4. My neighbors make a lot of noise.				
5. Bill <i>drinks</i> tea for breakfast.				
6. Cold <i>drinks</i> taste good on a hot day.				

#### Final -s/-es: Use, Pronunciation, and Spelling Use (a) Noun + -s: Friends are important. A final -s or -es is added to a noun to make the noun plural. Noun + -es: I like my classes. **Friend** and **class** = singular nouns Friends and classes = plural nouns (b) Verb + -s: Mary works at the bank. A final -s or -es is added to a simple present verb when the Verb + -es: John watches birds. subject is a singular noun (e.g., Mary, my father, the machine) or third person singular pronoun (she, he, it). Mary works = singular She works = singular The students work = plural They work = plural Pronunciation (c) seats seat/s/ Final -s is pronounced /s/ after voiceless sounds, as in (c): "t," "p," and "k" are examples of voiceless sounds.\* rope/s/ ropes backs back/s/ seed/z/ Final -s is pronounced /z/ after voiced sounds, as in (d): "d," "b," "g," (d) seeds robes robe/z/ and "ee" are examples of voiced sounds.\* bags bag/z/ sees see/z/ (e) dishes dish/əz/ Final -s and -es are pronounced /əz/ after "sh," "ch," "s," "x," "z," and "ge"/"dge" sounds. catches catch/az/ kisses kiss/əz/ The /əz/ ending adds a syllable. mix/əz/ All of the words in (e) are pronounced with two syllables. mixes prizes prize/az/ COMPARE: All of the words in (c) and (d) are pronounced with one edge/əz/ syllable. edges Spelling (f) sing sings For most words (whether a verb or a noun), simply add a final -s song songs to spell the word correctly. (g) wash washes Final -es is added to words that end in -sh, -ch, -s, -z, and -x. watch watches class classes buzz buzzes box boxes toys For words that end in -y: (h) toy buy buys In (h): If -y is preceded by a vowel, only -s is added. (i) baby babies In (i): If -y is preceded by a consonant, the -y is changed to cry cries -i and -es is added. \*See Chart 2-6, p. 27, for an explanation of voiced vs. voiceless sounds.

# **Exercise 3. Listening and pronunciation.** (Chart 6-1)

CD 1 Track 33 Listen to the words. Practice saying them aloud. Write the pronunciation of final -s/-es after each word.

1.	rides	/ <u>z/_</u>	4.	rugs	 7.	wishes	
2.	writes		5.	sleeps	 8.	pages	
3.	robs		6.	locks	 9.	months	

	_	nunciation for each	_	7.	season		
	2.	tax <u>es</u>	/əz/_	8.	develop		
	3.	talk <u>s</u>	<u>                                      </u>	9.	touch		
	4.	bush		10.	cough		
	5.	hat		11.	method		
1	<b>Exe</b> Con	aplete the sentenc		ronuncia	language  tion. (Chart 6-1) ear. Practice pronou		<i>-es</i> by reading
0 1	Exe Con the	ercise 5. Listen aplete the sentences aloud.	es with the w	r <b>onuncia</b> vords you h	tion. (Chart 6-1) ear. Practice pronot	uncing final <i>-s</i> /	-es by reading
	Exe Con the s	precise 5. Listen applete the sentence aloud.	es with the w	ronuncia vords you h	fion. (Chart 6-1) ear. Practice pronou	uncing final <b>-s</b> /	<b>-es</b> by reading
0 1	Exe Con the s	precise 5. Listen applete the sentence aloud.	es with the w	ronuncia vords you h	tion. (Chart 6-1) ear. Practice pronot	uncing final <b>-s</b> /	<b>-es</b> by reading
0 1	Exe Con the s	rcise 5. Listen applete the sentence sentences aloud.  People come in r	nany	ronuncia vords you h	fion. (Chart 6-1) ear. Practice pronou	uncing final <i>-s/</i> a day. 	
0 1	Exe Con the s 1. 2.	People come in r	nany	ronuncia vords you h eig pronun	tion. (Chart 6-1) ear. Practice pronou ghteen and	uncing final <i>-s/</i>	aloud.
0 1	Exe Con the s 1. 2. 3. 4.	People come in r	nany	ronuncia vords you h eig pronun	tion. (Chart 6-1) ear. Practice pronou ghteen and aciation by reading _	nncing final <i>-s/</i> a day.	aloud.

Work with a partner. Each item contains a subject and a verb. Make two sentences for each item. Help each other with the use of final -s/-es if necessary. Partner A uses a plural subject. Partner B uses a singular subject and begins with A/An.

Example: alarm clock \ ring PARTNER A: Alarm clocks ring. PARTNER B: An alarm clock rings.

- 1. opera singer \ sing
- 2. teacher \ teach
- 3. butterfly \ fly
- 4. ball \ bounce
- 5. door \ open and close

#### Change roles.

- 6. mosquito bite \ itch
- 7. hungry baby \ cry
- 8. student \ ask questions
- 9. snake \ hiss
- 10 dog \ say "arf-arf" in English



#### Exercise 7. Warm-up. (Chart 6-2)

Look at the verbs in blue in each pair of sentences. How do you know when to use a singular or a plural verb?

- 1. a. A girl is in the classroom.
  - b. Some girls are in the classroom.
- 2. a. A girl and a boy are in the classroom.
  - b. Every girl and boy is in the classroom.
- 3. a. The fruit at those markets is cheap.
  - b. The apples at that market are cheap.
- 4. a. Vegetables are good for you.
  - b. Eating vegetables is good for you.

Sing	ular Verb	Plural Verb	
(a) My friend liv	ves in Boston.	(b) My friends live in Boston.	Verb + -s/-es = third person singular in the simple present tense  Noun + -s/-es = plural
		<ul> <li>(c) My brother and sister live in Boston.</li> <li>(d) My brother, sister, and cousin live in Boston.</li> </ul>	Two or more subjects connected by <b>and</b> require a plural verb.
\ /			EXCEPTION: <i>Every</i> and <i>each</i> are always followed immediately by singular nouns. (See Chart 7-11, p. 129.) In this case, even when there are two (or more) nouns connected by <i>and</i> , the verb is singular.
(g) That book of parties is in (i) The book the my parents interesting.	teresting. at I got from	<ul> <li>(h) The ideas in that book are interesting.</li> <li>(j) The books I bought at the bookstore were expensive.</li> </ul>	Sometimes a phrase or clause separates a subject from its verb. These interrupting structures do not affect basic agreement.  For example, in (g) the interrupting prepositional phrase <i>on political parties</i> does not change the fact that the verb <i>is</i> must agree with the subject <i>book</i> .  In (i) and (j): The subject and verb are separated by an adjective clause. (See Chapter 13.)
(k) Watching ol	d movies <i>is</i> fun.		A gerund (e.g., <i>watching</i> ) used as the subject of the sentence requires a singular verb. (See Chart 14-8, p. 322.)

# Exercise 8. Looking at grammar. (Chart 6-2)

Choose the correct completions.

- 1. Lettuce (is, are) good for you.
- 2. The subjects you will be studying in this course (is, are) listed in the syllabus.
- 3. The extent of Fatima's knowledge on various subjects (astounds, astound) me.
- 4. Oranges, tomatoes, fresh strawberries, cabbage, and lettuce (is, are) rich in vitamin C.

- 5. Every man, woman, and child (is, are) protected under the law.
- 6. The professor and the student (agrees, agree) on that point.
- 7. Almost every professor and student at the university (*approves*, *approve*) of the choice of Dr. Brown as the new president.
- 8. Each girl and boy in the sixth-grade class (has, have) to do a science project.
- 9. Tomatoes (is, are) easy to grow. Growing tomatoes (is, are) especially easy in hot climates.
- 10. Getting to know students from all over the world (is, are) one of the best parts of my job.
- 11. Where (does, do) your parents live?
- 12. Annie had a hard time when she was coming home from the store because the bag of groceries (*was*, *were*) too heavy for her to carry.
- 13. Why (was, were) Yoko and Alex late for the meeting?
- 14. (*Is*, *Are*) having the responsibility for taking care of pets good for young children?
- 15. I like to go shopping when I'm on vacation, but I don't buy many things. A lot of the stuff\* in tourist shops (is, are) cheaply made and overpriced.



# Exercise 9. Listening. (Chart 6-2)

Listen to the beginning of each sentence. Choose the correct verb.

Example: You will hear: The student . . .

You will choose: (know, knows) the assignment.

- 1. (know, knows) basic math calculations.
- 2. (know, knows) when the assignments are due.
- 3. (*know*, *knows*) how to use a thesaurus.
- 4. (know, knows) the classroom routine.
- 5. (know, knows) her expectations.
- 6. (*know*, *knows*) how to use the internet.
- 7. (know, knows) how to use sign language.
- 8. (know, knows) where to go in case of fire.

# Exercise 10. Warm-up. (Chart 6-3)

Look at the verbs in blue. How do you know when to use a singular or a plural verb?

- 1. Some of this book is interesting.
- 2. Some of those books are interesting.
- 3. Most of those books are interesting.
- 4. Most of the book is interesting.
- 5. One of those books is Linda's.
- 6. Each of those books is yours.

<sup>\*</sup> tuff = a noun used in informal English to refer to a group of things. For example: My stuff is in my backpack. My stuff = my books, pens, gym clothes, etc.

#### 6-3 Subject-Verb Agreement: Using Expressions of Quantity Singular Verb Plural Verb (a) Some of the book is good. (b) Some of the books are In most expressions of quantity, the verb is (c) A lot of the equipment is good. determined by the noun (or pronoun) that follows (d) A lot of my friends are new. (e) Two-thirds of the money is For example, in (a) and (b): Two-thirds of the boys are some of + singular noun = singular verb (g) Most of our homework is some of + plural noun = plural verb (h) Most of our assignments easy. are easy. EXCEPTIONS: One of, each of, and every one of (i) One of my friends is here. take singular verbs. (i) Each of my friends is here. one of (k) Every one of my friends is + plural noun = singular verb each of every one of (I) None of the boys is here. (m) None of the boys are here. Subjects with none of used to be considered singular in very formal English, but plural verbs are often used in informal English and sometimes even in formal writing. (n) The number of students in (o) A number of students COMPARE: the class is fifteen. were late for class. In (n): The number is the subject. In (o): A number of is an expression of quantity meaning "a lot of." It is followed by a plural noun and a plural verb.

# ☐ Exercise 11. Looking at grammar. (Chart 6-3)

Choose the correct completions. <u>Underline</u> the word(s) that determine whether the verb is singular or plural.

- 1. Some of the <u>fruit</u> in this bowl (is, are) rotten.
- 2. Some of the apples in that bowl (is, are) rotten.
- 3. Most of the movie (is, are) funny.
- 4. Most of the movies (is, are) funny.
- 5. Half of the students in the class (is, are) from Arabic-speaking countries.
- 6. Half of this money (is, are) yours.
- 7. A lot of the students in the class (is, are) from Southeast Asia.
- 8. A lot of clothing in those stores (is, are) on sale this week.
- 9. One of my best friends (is, are) coming to visit me next month.
- 10. Each boy in the class (has, have) his own notebook.
- 11. Each of the boys in the class (has, have) his own notebook.

- 12. Every one of the students (is, are) required to take the final test.
- 13. None of the animals at the zoo (is, are) free to roam. All of them (is, are) in enclosures.
- 14. A number of students (is, are) absent today.
- 15. The number of employees in my company (is, are) approximately ten thousand.
- 16. One of the chief materials in bones and teeth (is, are) calcium.
- 17. (Does, Do) all of the students have their books?
- 18. (Does, Do) all of this homework have to be finished by tomorrow?
- 19. Why (was, were) some of the students excused from the examination?
- 20. Why (was, were) one of the students excused from the examination?

# Exercise 12. Looking at grammar. (Chart 6-3)

... is/are unusual.

2. The stories

2 Sama of the at

1. The story  $\rightarrow$  *The story is unusual.* 

Take turns making sentences. Work with a partner or in small groups.

٦.	Some of the story	15.	A lot of the chairs	
4.	Some of the stories	14.	Some of the furnity	ure
5.	Two-thirds of the story	15.	Half of the furnitur	re
6.	One of the stories	16.	None of the furnitu	are
7.	Each of the stories	17.	Some of the chairs	
8.	None of the story	18.	Three-fourths of th	ne furniture
9.	None of the stories	19.	Seventy-five percer	nt of the furniture
10.	A number of stories	20.	Half of the chairs	
	ercise 13. Warm-up. (Chart 6-4) applete the sentences with your own words.			
1.	Think about (or look around) your classroom.			
	There are			in my classroom
	There is			_ in my classroom
2.	Think about (or look around) your bedroom.			

... is/are secondhand.

in my bedroom.

in my bedroom.

12. A lot of the furniture 12 A lot of the chairs

11. The furniture

There are \_

There is \_

6-4 Subject-Verb Agreeme	nt: Using <i>There</i> + <i>Be</i>
<ul><li>(a) There is a fly in the room.</li><li>(b) There are three windows in this room.</li></ul>	There + be introduces the idea that something exists in a particular place.  There + be + subject + expression of place*
	The subject follows <b>be</b> when <b>there</b> is used. In (a): The subject is a fly. (singular) In (b): The subject is three windows. (plural)
(c) INFORMAL: There's two sides to every story.	In informal spoken English, some native speakers use a singular verb even when the subject is plural, as in (c). The use of this form is fairly frequent but is not generally considered to be grammatically correct.

<sup>\*</sup>Sometimes the expression of place is omitted when the meaning is clear. For example, *There are seven continents*. The implied expression of place is clearly *in the world*.

# ☐ Exercise 14. Looking at grammar. (Chart 6-4)

Choose the correct completions.

- 1. There (isn't, aren't) any letters in the mail for you today.
- 2. There (isn't, aren't) any mail for you today.
- 3. There (is, are) a lot of problems in the world.
- 4. There (is, are) a hole in his sock.
- 5. How many kinds of birds (is, are) there in the world?
- 6. Why (isn't, aren't) there a hospital close to those villages?
- 7. There (was, were) a terrible earthquake in Iran last year.
- 8. Why (is, are) there a shortage of available apartments for rent in this city at present?
- 9. There (is, are) more women than men in my office.
- 10. There (has been, have been) a line in front of that theater every night for the past two weeks.
- 11. How many wars do you suppose there (has been, have been) in the history of the world?

# **Exercise 15. Listening.** (Chart 6-4)

Choose the words you hear. For many of the sentences, you will hear reductions of the given words. NOTE: **Is** + **there** can sound like "ih-zehr." For example, **Is there** ("ih-zehr") a doctor in the house?

Example: You will hear: There's a spider on the wall.

You will choose: There is There are

- 1. There is There are 5. Is there Are there
- 2. there is there are 6. Is there Are there
- 3. There is There are 7. there is there are
- 4. There is There are 8. Is there Are there

## Exercise 16. Let's talk. (Chart 6-4)

Using there and be, name four or five things that exist in the given places. Work in small groups or as a class.

Example: in this book

Speaker A: There are exercises in this book. Speaker B: There's an index in this book.

SPEAKER C: There are illustrations in this book.

- 1. on this page
- 4. on an airplane
- 2. in this room
- 5. in the world
- 3. in this city
- 6. in outer space

### **Exercise 17. Let's talk and write.** (Chart 6-4)

Choose the correct verb in each sentence. Based on the city/town you're in now, do you agree or disagree with each statement? Circle yes or no. Afterward, write four more true sentences about this city/town. Begin your sentences with *There is/There are*. Share some of them with the class.

1.	There (is, are) good public transportation.	yes	no
2.	There (is, are) clean air.	yes	no
3.	There (is, are) enough recreation areas.	yes	no
4.	There (is, are) good restaurants.	yes	no
5.	There (is, are) excellent medical facilities.	ves	no

# Exercise 18. Warm-up. (Chart 6-5)

Look at the subjects and verbs (in blue) in each pair of sentences. Some of them are "exceptions to the rule." For example, nouns that end in -s usually take a plural verb, but sometimes not. Look for these irregularities.

- 1. a. Nations are groups of people who share a common identity.
  - b. The United Nations is an international organization.
- 2. a. Kilometers are measures of distance.
  - b. Seven kilometers is too far for me to run.
- 3. a. Mix and fix are verbs.
  - b. Six and six is twelve.
- 4. a. Whales are mammals.
  - b. People are mammals.
- 5. a. English is a language.
  - b. The English are concerned about global warming.

# 6-5 Subject-Verb Agreement: Some Irregularities

Singular Verb				
<ul> <li>(a) The United States is to</li> <li>(b) The Philippines considered</li> <li>(c) The United Nations has York City.</li> <li>(d) Harrods is a department</li> </ul>	sts of more than 7,000 islands. as its headquarters in New	Sometimes a proper noun that ends in -s is singular.  In the examples, if the noun is changed to a pronoun, the singular pronoun it is used (not the plural pronoun they) because the noun is singular.  In (a): The United States = it (not they)		
(e) The news is interesting	g.	News is singular.		
(f) Mathematics is easy f	or her. Physics is easy for her too.	Fields of study that end in -ics require singular verbs.		
(g) <i>Diabetes is</i> an illness.		Certain illnesses that end in -s are singular: diabetes, measles, mumps, rabies, rickets, shingles.		
(h) Eight hours of sleep is (i) Ten dollars is too muc (j) Five thousand miles is	h to pay.	Expressions of time, money, and distance usually require a singular verb.		
(k) Two and two is four. Two and two equals to Two plus two is/equal (1) Five times five is twen	s four.	Arithmetic expressions require singular verbs.		
Plural Verb				
<ul> <li>(m) Those people are from Canada.</li> <li>(n) The police have been called.</li> <li>(o) Cattle are domestic animals.</li> <li>(p) Fish live under water.</li> </ul>		People,* police, cattle, and fish do not end in -s, but they are plural nouns in the example sentences and require plural verbs.		
Singular Verb	Plural Verb			
<ul> <li>(q) English is spoken in many countries.</li> <li>(s) Chinese is his native language.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>(r) The English drink tea.</li> <li>(t) The Chinese have an interesting history.</li> </ul>	In (q): <i>English</i> = language In (r): <i>The English</i> = people from England Some nouns of nationality that end in <i>-sh</i> , <i>-ese</i> , and <i>-ch</i> can mean either language or people, e.g., <i>English</i> , <i>Spanish</i> , <i>Chinese</i> , <i>Japanese</i> , <i>Vietnamese</i> , <i>Portuguese</i> , <i>French</i> .		
	(u) The poor have many problems. (v) The rich get richer.	A few adjectives can be preceded by <i>the</i> and used as a plural noun (without final -s) to refer to people who have that quality. Other examples: <i>the young, the elderly, the living, the dead, the blind, the deaf, the disabled.</i>		

<sup>\*</sup>The word people has a final -s (peoples) only when it is used to refer to ethnic or national groups: All the peoples of the world desire peace.

# ☐ Exercise 19. Looking at grammar. (Chart 6-5)

Choose the correct completions.

- 1. The United States ((has, )have) a population of around 300 million.
- 2. The news about Mr. Gonzalez (is, are) surprising.
- 3. The New York Times (is, are) an established and respected newspaper.
- 4. Physics (seek, seeks) to understand the mysteries of the physical world.
- 5. Statistics (is, are) a branch of mathematics.
- 6. The statistics in that report on oil production (is, are) incorrect.\*
- 7. Fifty minutes (is, are) the maximum length of time allowed for the exam.
- 8. Twenty dollars (is, are) an unreasonable price for the necklace.
- 9. Many people in the world (does, do) not have enough to eat.
- 10. The police (is, are) prepared in case there is a riot.
- 11. Rabies (is, are) an infectious and often fatal disease.
- 12. The French (is, are) proud, independent people.
- 13. French (is, are) not my native language.
- 14. Many Japanese (commutes, commute) to their places of work.
- 15. Portuguese (is, are) somewhat similar to Spanish, (isn't it, aren't they)?
- 16. The poor (is, are) helped by government programs.
- 17. The blind (want, wants) the rest of us to treat them the same way we treat everyone else.
- 18. The effect of a honeybee's sting on a human being (*depends*, *depend*) on that person's susceptibility to the bee's venom. Most people (*is*, *are*) not in danger if they are stung, but there (*has*, *have*) been instances of allergic deaths from a single honeybee sting.

# Exercise 20. Game. (Chart 6-5)

Check your knowledge by choosing the correct words (or numbers) in parentheses. Then complete the sentences with *is* or *are*. Work in pairs or small groups. (The correct answers can be found on page 476.)

- 1. (The Scots, The Irish, The English) \_\_are\_\_ famous for educational institutions like Oxford and Cambridge.
- 2. (Statistics, Linguistics, Physics) \_\_\_\_\_ the study of the structure and nature of language.
- 3. (Diabetes, Measles, Rabies) \_\_\_\_\_\_ a blood-sugar illness.
- 4. (English, French, Afrikaans) \_\_\_\_\_\_ the official language of Namibia.

<sup>\*</sup>Statistics is singular when it refers to a field of study (e.g., Statistics is an interesting field of study.). When it refers to particular numbers, it is used as a count noun: singular = one statistic (no final -s); plural = two statistics. For example, This statistic is correct. Those statistics are incorrect.

- 5. People from Canada \_\_\_\_\_ called (Canadas, Canadians, Canadese).
- 6. Approximately (60 percent, 70 percent, 80 percent) of the earth \_\_\_\_\_ covered by water, but only (one percent, ten percent, twenty percent) of the earth's water \_\_\_\_\_ drinkable.
- 7.  $312 \times .5 + 100$  \_\_\_\_\_ (227, 275, 256).
- 8. (The United Arab Emirates, The Netherlands, The Philippines) \_\_\_\_\_\_ in the Northern Hemisphere (i.e., north of the equator).
- 9. (Fish, Whales, Cattle) \_\_\_\_\_ not mammals.

#### Exercise 21. Let's talk. (Chart 6-5)

Work in small groups. Take turns giving answers.

- 1. How many hours of sleep is enough for you? How are you affected if you don't get that amount of sleep?
- 2. Write one math equation for each answer: 250, 75, 700, and 1,000. Use addition, subtraction, multiplication, or division. Read the equations aloud for others to answer.
- 3. What do you think is a reasonable amount of money to pay for school supplies and textbooks for one term?
- 4. What do you think is a manageable distance for a person to commute to and from a job? Give your answer in miles or kilometers.
- 5. In your opinion, what advantages do the old have over the young? The young over the old?
- 6. Consider various school subjects: science (biology, chemistry, etc.), mathematics (algebra, geometry, etc.), languages, etc. Which class is easy for you to understand? Which is difficult for you? Which is the most enjoyable?
- 7. Think of a country that has a history you're familiar with. Share some information about the people (the Chinese, the French, the Egyptians, etc.) of this country. Which country has a history you'd like to know more about?

## **Exercise 22. Looking at grammar.** (Charts $6-2 \rightarrow 6-5$ )

Your teacher will give you phrases to complete with is or are. Close your book for this activity.

#### Example:

TEACHER (book open): Women SPEAKER A: (book closed): are

TEACHER (book open): Every man, woman, and child

SPEAKER B (book closed): is

- 1. A woman and her child
- 2. One of the countries I would like to visit
- 3. Some of the cities I would like to visit
- 4. A number of students
- 5. Ten minutes
- 6. Most people

- 7. Chinese
- 8. The Chinese
- 9. The poor in my country
- 10. Washing the dishes
- 11. The United States
- 12. This exercise on subject-verb agreement

			(Charts 6-2 $\rightarrow$ 6-5) are with <i>is</i> or <i>are</i> . Close your book for	this	
TEA	mple: CHER (book open): His idea \ inte DENT A (book closed): His idea is inte				
<ul><li>2.</li><li>3.</li></ul>	His ideas \ interesting  Some of the people \ friendly  One of the girls \ absent  Italian \ a Romance language	6. 7.			·d
Cho	ercise 24. Let's talk. (Charts 6-2 cose the correct verb in each sentence). Share some of your answers with	e. A	are the sentences true in your opinion?	Circle	yes
1.	The United Nations (has, have) and	impo	ortant role in today's world.	yes	no
2.	Mathematics (is, are) an interesting	subj	ect.	yes	no
3.	Both boys and girls (needs, need) to	lear	n how to do housecleaning.	yes	no
4.	Every girl and boy in my country (n	ieeds <sub>.</sub>	, need) to have		
	immunizations for certain diseases	befo	re entering public school.	yes	no
5.	Two hours of homework per day (is school children.	, are	) too much for elementary	yes	no
6.	Having good computer skills (is, are	e) ne	cessary if you want to get a	*****	<b>n</b> 0
7	high-paying job.	1	deader (' ) also los fo	yes	no
1.	One of the biggest problems in the clean, fresh drinking water for significant			MAC	no
Q	We may come from different culture		• •	yes	110
0.	but I believe that people across the				
	different.	W 011	a (s) are more and than	yes	no
Wor		are (	correct (C) or incorrect (I). If incorrect u a time limit. The team with the mos		
С	I		was		
_	$\checkmark$ 1. The news about the econo	my	were- disappointing.		
<u>✓</u>	2. The economy is not doing	well	l		
	3. Economists is worried.				

4. Economics is a field of study.

C	
	5. Where's Kenya on the map?
_	6. Where's my gloves? I can't find them.
_	7. More men than women are left-handed.
	8. Chinese have more than fifty thousand written characters.
	9. About two-thirds of the Vietnamese works in agriculture.
_	10. Two hours is too long to wait, don't you think?
	11. How many people is there in Canada?
	12. What is the population of Canada?
_	13. Everybody in my family enjoys music and reading.
	14. Some of the movies these days contains too much violence.
	ercise 26. Looking at grammar. (Chapter 6) applete the sentences. Use the simple present form of the verbs in parentheses.
1.	My alarm clock (ring) <u>rings</u> at seven every morning.
2.	There (be) a lot of sheep in the field.
3.	One of my friends (keep) a goldfish bowl on her kitchen table.
4.	Sensitivity to other people's feelings (make) Giorgio a kind person.
5.	Each car, truck, and motorcycle (be) stopped at the border by customs officials
6.	My driver's license (be) in my wallet.
7.	(Do) Sergei's uncle live in the suburbs?
8.	(Do) most of the students live in the dormitories?
9.	An orange and black bird (be) sitting in that tree.
10.	An orange bird and a black bird (be) sitting in that tree.
11.	The insurance rates on our car (be) high because we live in a city.
12.	(Be) January and February the coldest months of the year in the Northern Hemisphere?
13.	Almost two-thirds of the land in the southwestern areas of the country (be) unsuitable for farming.
14	A car with poor brokes and no broke lights (ba) dangerous

- 15. Almost all the information in those texts on the Aztec Indians and their civilization \_\_\_\_\_ to be well researched. (appear).
- 16. Every day there (be) \_\_\_\_\_ more than a dozen traffic accidents in the city.
- 17. No news (*be*) \_\_\_\_\_\_ good news.
- 18. Four hours of skiing (provide) of exercise.

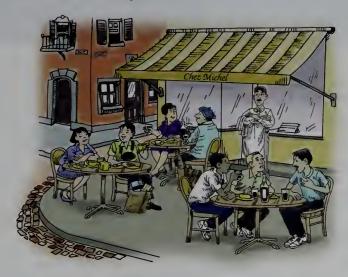


#### Exercise 27. Check your knowledge. (Chapter 6)

Correct the errors in subject-verb agreement. Some sentences contain no errors.

- 1. The books in my office is very valuable to me.
- 2. All of the windows in our house were broken in the earthquake. (no errors)
- 3. A lot of the people in my class works during the day and attends class in the evening.
- 4. Many of the satellites orbiting the earth is used for communications.
- 5. The news about the long-range effects of air pollution on the development of children's lungs is disturbing.
- 6. Studying a foreign language often lead students to learn about the culture of the countries where it is spoken.
- 7. One of the most common names for dogs in the United States are "Rover."
- 8. A number of planes were delayed due to the snowstorm in Denver.
- 9. Most of the mountain peaks in the Himalayan Range is covered with snow the year round.
- 10. The number of passengers affected by the delays was great.
- 11. Seventy-five percent of the people in New York City lives in upstairs apartments, not on the ground floor.
- 12. Approximately 76 percent of all the data in computers around the world is in English.

- 13. Unless there are a profound and extensive reform of government policies in the near future, the economic conditions in that country will continue to deteriorate.
- 14. While I was in Paris, some of the best food I found were not at the well-known eating places but in small out-of-the-way cafés.



#### Exercise 28. Let's talk. (Chapter 6)

Work in small groups. Share your experiences as second language learners. Discuss the following questions and any other thoughts that occur to you. Summarize some of your group's conclusions for the rest of the class. Listen to each other for subject-verb agreement.

- 1. How much English do you speak and read outside the classroom? Is using English in class sufficient for you to meet your language-learning goals? What are some good ways to get practice with English outside the classroom?
- 2. Do you avoid certain situations if you have to speak English? For example, speaking on the phone? Attending a party? Participating in class discussion?
- 3. Are you afraid of making mistakes when you speak? Everyone who is learning a second language makes mistakes. It's part of the process. Do mistakes matter?

#### Exercise 29. Let's talk and write. (Chapter 6)

Tell a fairy/folk tale from your country or from your imagination. Present your story to a small group or to the class in five minutes or less. Begin your tale with Once upon a time, there was/were. Listeners can write short summaries of each story.

Example: Once upon a time, there was a mother duck who was sitting on her nest of eggs. Suddenly they began to hatch. Six cute, yellow ducklings popped out of their shells, but the seventh had gray feathers and looked very strange. The ugly duckling struggled to fit in, but he felt that nobody wanted him because he looked so different from all the others.\* Etc.

<sup>\*</sup>Adapted from The Ugly Duckling by Hans Christian Andersen.

	Exercise 1. What do I already know	<b>N?</b> (Chart 7-1)
	Write the plural forms of the given nouns.	
	1. one child, two <u>children</u>	8. one woman, two
	2. one branch, two	9. one echo, two
	3. one mouse, two	10. one photo, two
	4. one enemy, two	11. one zero, two
	5. one valley, two	12. one crisis, two
	6. one shelf, two	13. one curriculum, two
	7. one belief, two	14. one offspring, two
0	<b>Exercise 2. Warm-up.</b> (Chart 7-1) Complete the sentences with the plural form	
	Last night I ate a lot of	Did you see any at the zoo?
	1. tomato <u>tomatoes</u>	7. kangaroo
	2. potato	8. goose
	3. fish	9. donkey
	4. sandwich	10. deer
	5. carrot	11. wolf
	6. vegetable	12. sheep
		N. W

(a)	·1 Regular and				
	song—songs				The plural of most nouns is formed by adding final -s.*
(b)	box— <i>boxes</i>				Final <b>-es</b> is added to nouns that end in <b>-sh</b> , <b>-ch</b> , <b>-s</b> , <b>-z</b> , and <b>-x</b> .*
(c)	baby— <i>babies</i>				The plural of words that end in a consonant + -y is spelled -ies.*
(d)	man— <i>men</i> woman— <i>women</i> child— <i>children</i>	ox—oxen foot—feet goose—gee	se	tooth—teeth mouse—mice louse—lice	The nouns in (d) have irregular plural forms that do not end in -s.
(e)	echo— <i>echoes</i> hero— <i>heroes</i>	potato—potato—tomato—tom			Some nouns that end in -o add -es to form the plural.
(f)	auto— <i>autos</i> ghetto— <i>ghettos</i> kangaroo— <i>kangaroos</i> kilo— <i>kilos</i> memo— <i>memos</i>	photo—photo piano—pian radio—radio solo—solos soprano—so	os os	studio—studios tatoo—tatoos video—videos zoo—zoos	Some nouns that end in -o add only -s to form the plural.  NOTE: When in doubt, use your dictionary or spellcheck.
(g)	memento— <i>mementoes/m</i> mosquito— <i>mosquitoes/m</i> tornado— <i>tornadoes/torna</i>	osquitos		–volcanoes/volcanos eroes/zeros	Some nouns that end in -o add either -es or -s to form the plural (with -es being the more usual plural form).
(h)	calf— <i>calves</i> half— <i>halves</i> knife— <i>knives</i> leaf— <i>leaves</i>	life—lives loaf—loaves self—selves shelf—shelv		thief—thieves wolf—wolves scarf—scarves/scarfs	Some nouns that end in -f or -fe are changed to -ves to form the plural.
	ieai—ieaves	Sileil—Sileil			
(i)	belief—beliefs chief—chiefs	cliff—cliffs roof—roofs			Some nouns that end in -f simply add -s to form the plural.
	belief—beliefs	cliff—cliffs roof—roofs	one sheep one shrim	two series two sheep ptwo shrimp*** estwo species	

<sup>\*</sup>For information about the pronunciation and spelling of words ending in -s/-es, see Chart 6-1, p. 85.

<sup>\*\*</sup>Fishes is also possible but rarely used.

<sup>\*\*\*</sup>Especially in British English, but also occasionally in American English, the plural of shrimp can be shrimps.

#### Exercise 3. Game. (Chart 7-1)

Divide into teams of three to five members. The leader has paper and a pen. Use Chart 7-1 to list plural nouns that fit the given categories.

The team that comes up with the most words within the given time limit wins. Be ready to explain a choice if another team questions it. Your teacher will decide if the word belongs on the list.

Example: things that cause people physical problems

TEAM A LEADER writes: mosquitoes, lice, tornadoes, autos, etc.

TEAM B: How do autos cause physical problems?

TEAM A: They hit people.

TEACHER: We'll accept autos on the list.

#### Make a list of:

- 1. things that you find in nature
- 2. things that you see every day
- 3. things in life that can be dangerous
- 4. things that you can hear

## **Exercise 4. Looking at spelling.** (Chart 7-1)

Write the plural form of each word in the correct column. Some forms have two possible spellings.

<b>√</b> belief	√deer	leaf	photo	tomato
box	fish	life	potato	video
chief	√hero	loaf	scarf	wolf
class	kilo	match	sheep	zoo
cloud	√knife	memo	shelf	

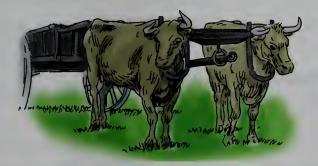
-8	-es	-ves	no change
beliefs	heroes	knives	deer

# Exercise 5. Looking at grammar. (Chart 7-1)

Write the correct forms of the given nouns. Use each noun only one time.

attorney	discovery	√match	piano	non
beach	laboratory	medium	phenomer	
box	man	ox	✓tooth	
	·			

- 1. The baby has been crying and not sleeping well at night because she is getting her first teeth .
- 2. I need some <u>matches</u> to light the fire.
- 3. Studies are showing that \_\_\_\_\_\_ process information differently from women.
- 4. Maria needed some legal advice for her businesses, so she contacted two
- 5. New scientific \_\_\_\_\_\_ are made every day in \_\_\_\_\_ throughout the world.
- 6. The farmer loaded his cart with \_\_\_\_\_\_ of fresh vegetables to take to market. His cart was pulled by two \_\_\_\_\_.



- 7. The north side of the island has no \_\_\_\_\_\_ for people to walk on. There are only steep \_\_\_\_\_. No one can climb these steep walls of rock.
- 8. The music building at the university has 27 \_\_\_\_\_\_ for students to play on. Students need to sign up for practice times.
- 9. Thunder and lightning are \_\_\_\_\_\_ of nature.
- 10. People get most of their news about the world through the mass \_\_\_\_\_\_\_, that is, through radio, television, the internet, newspapers, and magazines.

#### Exercise 6. Looking at grammar. (Chart 7-1)

Change the nouns to plural as necessary. Do not change any other words.

Bacteria

- (1) Bacterium are the smallest living thing. They are simple organism that consist of one cell.
- (2) Bacterium exist almost everywhere. They are in the air, water, and soil\* as well as in the body of all living creature.
- (3) There are thousand of kind of bacterium. Most of them are harmless to human being, but some cause diseases such as tuberculosis and pneumonia.
- (4) Virus are also microscopic organism, but virus live in the cell of other living thing. By themselves, they are lifeless particle that cannot reproduce, but inside a living cell they become active and can multiply hundred of time.
- (5) Virus cause many disease. They infect human being with such illness as influenza, the common cold, measles, and AIDS (Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome).
- (6) Virus are tiny. The virus that causes AIDS is 230 million\*\* times smaller than the period at the end of this sentence. Some viral infection are difficult or impossible to treat.

## Exercise 7. Warm-up. (Chart 7-2)

Decide if the words in blue refer to one person or more than one person. If the meaning is one, write 1. If the meaning is more than one, write 2.

- 1. his sisters' opinions \_\_\_\_
- 4. my sons' school \_\_\_\_
- 2. his sister's opinions \_\_\_\_
- 5. the men's hats \_\_\_\_
- 3. my son's school \_\_\_\_
- 6. the man's hats \_\_\_\_

<sup>\*</sup>Air, water, and soil are used as noncount nouns and thus have no plural form. See Chart 7-4 for information about noncount nouns.

<sup>\*\*</sup>When the words hundred thousand, million, and billion are used with numerals, they remain in their singular form: Six hundred employees will attend the company picnic this year. There are three thousand entrants in the photo contest.

When they are used without numerals to indicate an indefinite but large number of something, they are used in their plural form: Hundreds of people came to the concert. There are thousands of earthquakes in the world every year. Millions of people in the world are starving.

7-2 Possessive Nouns					
Singular Noun	Possessive Form	To show possession, add an apostrophe (') and -s to a			
(a) the girl	the girl's	singular noun: The girl's book is on the table.			
(b) Tom Tom's (c) my wife my wife's (d) a lady a lady's (e) Thomas Thomas's/Thomas'		If a singular noun ends in -s, there are two possible forms:  1. Add an apostrophe and -s: Thomas's book.  2. Add only an apostrophe: Thomas' book.			
Plural Noun	Possessive Form	Add only an apostrophe to a plural noun that ends in -s:			
(f) the girls	the girls'	The girls' books are on the table.			
(g) their wives	their wives'	Add an apostrophe and -s to plural nouns that do not end			
(h) the ladies	the ladies'	in -s: The men's books are on the table.			
(i) the men	the men's				
(j) my children	my children's				
(k) Alan and Lisa's apartment is on the third floor.		When two (or more) names are connected by <i>and</i> , only the final name shows possession.			

<b>Exercise 8. Looking at grammar.</b> (Chart 7		<b>Exercise</b>	8.	Looking	at	grammar.	(Chart 7-2	2)
---	--	-----------------	----	---------	----	----------	------------	----

Complete the sentences. Use the possessive form of the nouns in parentheses.

- 1. (Mrs. Smith) Mrs. Smith's husband often gives her flowers.
- 2. The (*boy*) \_\_\_\_\_ hat is red.
- 3. The (boys) \_\_\_\_\_ hats are red.
- 4. The (children) \_\_\_\_\_ toys are all over the floor.
- 5. I fixed the (*child*) \_\_\_\_\_\_ bicycle.
- 6. (Sally) \_\_\_\_\_ last name is White.
- 7. (Bess) \_\_\_\_\_\_ last name is Young.
- 8. There are many problems in (today) \_\_\_\_\_ world.
- 9. It would cost me a (month) \_\_\_\_\_\_ salary to buy that refrigerator.
- 10. We went to (Jack and Larry) \_\_\_\_\_\_ house for dinner.

# Exercise 9. Looking at grammar. (Chart 7-2)

Correct the errors. Use the possessive nouns by adding apostrophes and final -s/-es as necessary.

friends'

1. I enjoy visiting friend houses.

friend's

- 2. When I was in Chicago, I stayed at a -friend- house.
- 3. My uncle is my father brother.

- 4. I have four aunts. All of my aunt homes are within walking distance of my mother apartment.
- 5. Esteban's aunt oldest son is a violinist.
- 6. Bill wife is a factory worker.
- 7. I walked into my boss office.
- 8. I borrowed the secretary pen to fill out the application form.
- 9. Five astronauts were aboard the space shuttle. The astronaut safe return to earth was a welcome sight to millions of television viewers.
- 10. It is the people right to know what the city is going to do about the housing problem.
- 11. Quite a few diplomats are assigned to our city. Almost all of the diplomat children attend a special school.
- 12. A diplomat work invariably involves numerous meetings.

#### **Exercise 10. Looking at grammar.** (Chart 7-2)

Correct the errors in the use of possessive nouns by adding apostrophes as necessary.

- 1. Texas is a leading producer of petroleum and natural gas. It is one of the world stargest storage areas for petroleum.
- 2. Psychologists have developed many different kinds of tests. A "personality test" is used to evaluate an individuals personal characteristics, such as friendliness or trustworthiness.
- 3. Many mythological stories tell of heroes encounters with giants or dangerous animals. In one story, the heros encounter with a dragon saves a village from destruction.
- 4. Childrens play is an important part of their lives. It teaches them about their environment while they are having fun. For instance, they can learn that boats float and can practice ways to make boats move across water. Toys are not limited to children. Adults have their own toys, such as pleasure boats, and children have theirs, such as miniature boats. Adults toys are usually much more expensive than childrens toys.

	<b>Exercise</b>	11.	Warm-up.	(Chart 7-3)
--	-----------------	-----	----------	-------------

Which nouns in the list commonly follow the nouns computer and airplane?

	error	passenger	pilot	scre	en	skills	ticket
1.	computer			2.	airplane		
	computer			;	airplane _		
	computer				airplane		

7-3 Nouns as Adjective	S
The soup has vegetables in it. (a) It is <i>vegetable</i> soup.  The building has offices in it. (b) It is an <i>office</i> building.	When a noun is used as an adjective, it is in its singular form.*  INCORRECT: vegetable -s- soup
The test lasted two hours. (c) It was a <i>two-hour test</i> .  Her son is five years old. (d) She has a <i>five-year-old son</i> .	When a noun used as a modifier is combined with a number expression, the noun is singular and a hyphen (-) is used.  INCORRECT: She has a five year-s- old son.

<sup>\*</sup>Adjectives never take a final -s (INCORRECT: beautiful -s pictures). See Appendix Chart A-2.

☐ Exercise 12. Looking at grammar. (Ch
--

Complete the sentences with the words in *italics*. Use the singular or plural form as appropriate. Include hyphens (-) as necessary.

ppi	ropriate. Include	e hyphens (-) as necessary.
1.	shoe	They sellshoes at that store. It is ashoe store.
2.	flower	My garden has in it. It is a garden.
3.	bean	This soup is made from black It is black soup.
4.	baby	People can buy special food in small jars for  It is called food.
5.	child	Dr. Adams is trained as a psychologist for  She is a psychologist.
6.	salad	At a formal dinner, there are usually two forks on the table. The smaller fork is for fork.
7.	mosquito	In tropical climates, sometimes it is necessary to hang a net over a bed to protect the sleeper from  It is called a

	8. two + hour	The plane	was late. We ha	d a		wait
		We had to	wait for			
	9. $ten + year + old$	d My brothe	er is			I have a
	10. three + letter	Arm and $a$	log are		wor	ds. Eacl
					·	
j	Exercise 13. Ga	<b>me.</b> (Chart 7-3	3)			
	Work in teams. This other nouns. The te		_			
	Example: flower → d	a flower vase, a flo	ower garden, a flo	wer shop, etc.		
	1. cotton	5. telephone	9. mc	rning	13. kitchen	
	2. grammar	6. mountain	10. str	eet	14. baby	
	3. birthday	7. government	11. nev	wspaper	15. vegetable	
	4. chicken	8. football	12. ho	tel	16. bicycle	
D 1 ck 37	You will h	near: Ted is a professor	professor at two professor highly respecte	o well-known o	colleges essor.	
	1. taxi	taxis	driver	drivers	,	
	2. driver	drivers	taxi	taxis		
	3. office	offices		managers		
	4. manager		office			
	5. airplane	airplanes	seat	seats		
	6. airplane	airplanes	seat	seats		
	7. school	schools	activity	activities		
	8. school	schools	activity	activities		
	8. SCHOOL	schools	activity	activities		
)	Exercise 15. Wo		7-4)			
	1. I got one	<u> </u>				
	a. letter	b. postca	rd c.	package	d. mail	
	2. My room has o	ne				
	a. chair	b. furnitu	ire c.	table	d. bed	

## 7-4 Count and Noncount Nouns

(a) I bought a chair. Sam bought three chairs.

(b) We bought some furniture.

INCORRECT: We bought some furniture s.

INCORRECT: We bought a furniture.

**Chair** is called a "count noun." This means you can count chairs: one chair, two chairs, etc.

**Furniture** is called a "noncount noun." In grammar, you cannot use numbers (*one, two, etc.*) with the word **furniture**.

	Singular	Plural	
Count Noun	a chair one chair	two chairs some chairs a lot of chairs many chairs Ø chairs*	A count noun:  (1) may be preceded by <i>a</i> / <i>an</i> or <i>one</i> in the singular.  (2) takes a final <i>-s</i> / <i>-es</i> in the plural.
Noncount Noun	some furniture a lot of furniture much furniture Ø furniture*		A noncount noun:  (1) is not immediately preceded by <i>a</i> / <i>an</i> or <i>one</i> .  (2) has no plural form, so does not add a final <i>-s</i> / <i>-es</i> .

<sup>\*</sup>Ø = nothing (i.e., no article or other determiner).

#### ☐ Exercise 16. Looking at grammar. (Chart 7-4)

Look at the *italicized* nouns. Write "C" above the count nouns and "NC" above the noncount nouns.

C

NC

- 1. I bought some chairs, tables, and desks. In other words, I bought some furniture.
- 2. Michiko likes to wear jewelry. Today she is wearing four rings, six bracelets, and a necklace.
- 3. We saw beautiful mountains, fields, and lakes on our trip. We saw beautiful scenery.
- 4. Gold and iron are metals.
- 5. I used an iron to press my wrinkled shirt.
- 6. They have a rusty *car* without an *engine*, broken *furniture*, and an old *refrigerator* in their front yard. Their yard is full of *junk*.



7-5 Noncount Nouns	
(a) I bought some chairs, tables, and desks. In other words, I bought some <i>furniture</i> .	Many noncount nouns refer to a "whole" that is made up of different parts.  In (a): furniture represents a whole group of things that is made up of similar but separate items.
(b) I put some <i>sugar</i> in my <i>coffee</i> .	In (b): sugar and coffee represent whole masses made up of individual particles or elements.*
(c) I wish you <i>luck</i> .	Many noncount nouns are abstractions.  In (c): <i>luck</i> is an abstract concept, an abstract "whole."  It has no physical form; you can't touch it; you can't count it.
(d) Sunshine is warm and cheerful.	A phenomenon of nature, such as <i>sunshine</i> , is frequently used as a noncount noun, as in (d).
(e) NONCOUNT: Ann has brown <i>hair</i> .  COUNT: Tom has a <i>hair</i> on his jacket.  (f) NONCOUNT: I opened the curtains to let in some <i>light</i> .  COUNT: Don't forget to turn off the <i>light</i> before you go to bed.	Many nouns can be used as either noncount or count nouns, but the meaning is different, e.g., <i>hair</i> in (e) and <i>light</i> in (f).  (Dictionaries written especially for learners of English as a second language are a good source of information on count/noncount usage of nouns.)

<sup>\*</sup>To express a particular quantity, some noncount nouns may be preceded by unit expressions: a spoonful of sugar, a glass of water, a cup of coffee, a quart of milk, a loaf of bread, a grain of rice, a bowl of soup, a bag of flour, a pound of meat, a piece of furniture, a piece of paper, a piece of jewelry.

#### **7-6** Some Common Noncount Nouns

This list is a sample of nouns that are commonly used as noncount nouns. Many other nouns can also be used as noncount nouns.

- (a) WHOLE GROUPS MADE UP OF SIMILAR ITEMS: baggage, clothing, equipment, food, fruit, furniture, garbage, hardware, jewelry, junk, luggage, machinery, mail, makeup, money/cash/change, postage, scenery, stuff, traffic, etc.
- (b) FLUIDS: water, coffee, tea, milk, oil, soup, gasoline, blood, etc.
- (c) solips: ice, bread, butter, cheese, meat, gold, iron, silver, glass, paper, wood, cotton, wool, etc.
- (d) GASES: steam, air, oxygen, nitrogen, smoke, smog, pollution, etc.
- (e) PARTICLES: rice, chalk, corn, dirt, dust, flour, grass, hair, pepper, salt, sand, sugar, wheat, etc.
- (f) ABSTRACTIONS:
  - —beauty, confidence, courage, education, enjoyment, fun, happiness, health, help, honesty, hospitality, importance, intelligence, justice, knowledge, laughter, luck, music, patience, peace, pride, progress, recreation, significance, sleep, truth, violence, wealth, etc.
  - -advice, information, news, evidence, proof, etc.
  - —time, space, energy, etc.
  - -homework, work, etc.
- —grammar, slang, vocabulary, etc.
- (g) LANGUAGES: Arabic, Chinese, English, Spanish, etc.
- (h) FIELDS OF STUDY: chemistry, engineering, history, literature, mathematics, psychology, etc.
- (i) RECREATION: baseball, soccer, tennis, chess, bridge, poker, etc.
- (j) ACTIVITIES: driving, studying, swimming, traveling, walking (and other gerunds)
- (k) NATURAL PHENOMENA: weather, dew, fog, hail, heat, humidity, lightning, rain, sleet, snow, thunder, wind, darkness, light, sunshine, electricity, fire, gravity, etc.

## Exercise 17. Looking at grammar. (Charts 7-3, 7-5, and 7-6)

Add final -s/-es to the nouns in italics if necessary. Do not add or change any other words.

- 1. Isabel always has fresh  $egg_{\wedge}$  available because she raises  $chicken_{\wedge}$  in her yard.
- 2. I had chicken and rice for dinner last night. (no change)
- 3. Outside my window, I can see a lot of tree, bush, grass, dirt, and flower.
- 4. Abdullah gave me some good advice. Nadia also gave me some good suggestion.
- 5. Yoko learned several new word today. She increased her vocabulary today.
- 6. I drank two glass of water.

- 7. Window are made of glass.
- 8. Mr. Chu wears glass because he has poor eyesight.
- 9. It took me a lot of time to finish my homework. I had a lot of assignment.
- 10. I have been in Mexico three time. I've spent a lot of time there.
- 11. The air is full of *smoke*, *dust*, carbon *monoxide*, and many other harmful *substance*. We must try to reduce air *pollution*.
- 12. I like to read good *literature*. I especially like to read *novel*, *poetry*, and *essay*. My favorite *poet* are Longfellow and Wordsworth. I have always liked their *poem*.
- 13. I like to experience different season. I like both hot and cold weather.
- 14. Being a parent has brought me a lot of *happiness*. Parenting requires a lot of *patience*, but it provides many *reward*.
- 15. There are more star in the universe than there are grain of sand on all the beaches on earth.
- 16. The true sign of intelligence is not knowledge but imagination.\*

## ☐ Exercise 18. Game. (Chart 7-6)

Work in teams. The leader has paper and a pen. The teacher will say a noncount noun. Working together, make a list of things that belong to this category until the teacher says "Stop." The team with the most nouns in a list is the winner of that list.

#### Example:

TEACHER (book open): mail

LEADER writes (book closed): mail

TEAM to LEADER (book closed): letters, postcards, packages, etc.

- 1. fruit
- 4. garbage
- 2. jewelry
- 5. traffic
- 3. clothing
- 6. office equipment

<sup>\*</sup>This is a quote from Albert Einstein, Nobel Prize winner in physics.

Con	<b>Exercise 19. Looking at grammar.</b> (Charts 7-5 and 7-6) Complete the sentences with the given nouns. Add final <i>-s/-es</i> if necessary. Use each noun only one time. In one sentence, you will need to choose the correct word in parentheses.							
	advice change coin computer	definition equipment homework information	music problem progress river	symphony traffic truck vocabulary				
1.		oney. I have a few nange in my p		n my pocket. In other words,				
2.	The Mississippi, the	Amazon, and the Nile	e are well-known _	<del></del>				
3.	I like to listen to ope	eras,	, and	l folk songs. I enjoy				
		_ and listen to it often	on my iPod.					
4.	The street is full of	cars,	, and buses. In	other words, it is full of				
5.	There are, copiers, telephones, and staplers in a typical business office. A business office needs a lot of							
6.	5. Tonight I have to read 20 pages in my history book, do 30 algebra							
	and write a composition. In other words, I have a lot of							
	to do tonight.							
7. Antonio is studying the meaning of English words. He learned some new								
	today. For example, he learned that the word fly has a least two							
8.	3. Toronto is 365 feet/109 meters above sea level. The average annual precipitation in							
	Toronto is 32 inches	s/81 centimeters. The	population of the r	netropolitan area is over				
	3,000,000. I found	(this / these)		on the internet.				
9.	I didn't feel good. A	Ann said, "You should	see a doctor." Nicl	k said, "You should go home				
	and go to bed." Ma	rtha said, "You should	l drink fruit juice ar	nd rest." I got				
		_ from three people.						
10.				ing. It's getting easier for me				
				people even when they talk				
	fast. I'm satisfied w	ith the	I've made in	l learning English.				

#### Exercise 20. Warm-up. (Chart 7-7)

Read the dialogues. Notice the words in blue, and notice whether or not the speaker and the listener are thinking of the same specific cats. Then answer the questions.

#### Dialogue 1



Tom: Sally will take care of the cat while we're away.

ANNA: Good.

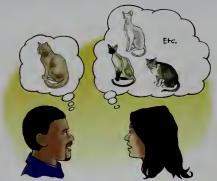
#### Dialogue 3



Tom: A cat has an independent nature.

Anna: That's true. But cats can also express a lot of affection when they want to.

## Dialogue 2



Tom: Our new neighbor has a cat. It's very friendly.

ANNA: Oh? What does it look like?

#### Questions:

- 1. In dialogue 1, why do you think Tom uses the?
- 2. In dialogue 2, Tom is thinking of a particular cat, but he uses a (not *the*) when he is talking to Anna. Why?
- 3. In dialogue 3, Tom and Anna do not use *the*. Are they talking about specific cats, or are they talking about any and all cats in general?

# 7-7 Basic Article Usage

#### I. Using A or Ø: Generic Nouns

Singular Count Noun	(a) A banana is yellow.*	A speaker uses generic nouns to make generalizations. A generic noun represents a whole class of things; it is not a specific, real, concrete thing, but rather a symbol of a whole group.
Plural Count	(b) Ø Bananas are yellow.	In (a) and (b): The speaker is talking about any banana, all bananas, bananas in general.
Noun		In (c): The speaker is talking about any and all fruit, fruit in general.
Noncount Noun	(c) Ø Fruit is good for you.	Notice that no article (Ø) is used to make generalizations with plural count nouns, as in (b), and with noncount nouns, as in (c).

#### II. Using A or Some: Indefinite Nouns

Singular Count Noun	(d) I ate a banana.	Indefinite nouns are actual things (not symbols), but they are not specifically identified.  In (d): The speaker is not referring to "this banana" or "that
Plural Count Noun	(e) I ate <i>some</i> bananas.	banana" or "the banana you gave me." The speaker is simply saying that she/he ate one banana. The listener does not know or need to know which specific banana was eaten; it was simply one banana out of all bananas.
Noncount Noun	(f) I ate <i>some</i> fruit.	In (e) and (f): <b>Some</b> is often used with indefinite plural count nouns and indefinite noncount nouns. In addition to <b>some</b> , a speaker might use <i>two</i> , <i>a few</i> , <i>several</i> , <i>a lot of</i> , <i>etc.</i> , with plural count nouns, or <i>a little</i> , <i>a lot of</i> , <i>etc.</i> , with noncount nouns. (See Chart 7-4.)

#### III. Using The: Definite Nouns

	T	
Singular Count	(g) Thank you for <i>the</i> banana.	A noun is definite when both the speaker and the listener are thinking about the same specific thing.
Noun		In (g): The speaker uses <i>the</i> because the listener knows which
Plural Count	(h) Thank you for the bananas.	specific banana the speaker is talking about, i.e., that particular banana which the listener gave to the speaker.
Noun		Notice that <i>the</i> is used with both singular and plural count nouns
Noncount Noun	(i) Thank you for the fruit.	and with noncount nouns.

<sup>\*</sup>Usually a/an is used with a singular generic count noun. Examples: A window is made of glass. A doctor heals sick people. Parents must give a child love. A box has six sides. An apple can be red, green, or yellow.

However, *the* is sometimes used with a singular generic count noun (not a plural generic count noun, not a generic noncount noun). "Generic *the*" is commonly used with, in particular:

- (1) species of animals: The blue whale is the largest mammal on earth. The elephant is the largest land mammal.
- (2) inventions: Who invented the telephone? the wheel? the refrigerator? the airplane? The computer will play an increasingly large role in all of our lives.
- (3) instruments: I'd like to learn to play the piano. Do you play the guitar?

#### Exercise 21. Looking at grammar. (Chart 7-7)

Add a/an if necessary. Write  $\emptyset$  if the noun is noncount. Capitalize as necessary.

- 1. A bird has wings.
- 2. An animal needs a regular supply of food.
- 3. Ø food is a necessity of life.
- 4. \_\_\_\_ tennis is a sport.
- 5. \_\_\_\_ tennis player has to practice long hours.
- 6. \_\_\_\_ island is a piece of land surrounded by water.
- 7. \_\_\_\_ gold is a metal.
- 8. \_\_\_\_ bridge is a structure that spans a river.
- 9. \_\_\_\_ health is one of the most important things in life.
- 10. \_\_\_\_ adjective is a word that modifies a noun.
- 11. \_\_\_\_ tree needs water to survive.
- 12. \_\_\_\_ water is composed of oxygen and hydrogen.
- 13. \_\_\_\_ knowledge is a source of power.
- 14. \_\_\_\_ homework is a necessary part of a course of study.
- 15. \_\_\_\_ grammar is interesting and fun.
- 16. \_\_\_\_ sentence usually contains a subject and a verb.
- 17. \_\_\_\_ English is used in airports throughout much of the world.
- 18. \_\_\_\_ air is free.
- 19. \_\_\_\_ fruit is good for you.
- 20. \_\_\_\_ orange is green until it ripens.
- 21. \_\_\_\_ iron is a metal.
- 22. \_\_\_\_ iron is an appliance used to take wrinkles out of cloth.
- 23. \_\_\_\_ basketball is round.
- 24. \_\_\_\_ basketball is a sport.



Con	npiete the sentences w	with $a$ , $an$ , or $some$ .	
1.	The teacher made _	an announcement.	
2.	I sawa	_ bird.	
3.	I sawsome	_ birds.	
4.	Rosa borrowed	some money from her uncle.	
5.	I had	_ accident.	
6.	I have	_ homework to do tonight.	
7.	There is	table in the room.	
8.	There is	furniture in the room.	
9.	There are	chairs in the room.	
10.	My father gave me _	advice.	
11.	Sonya is carrying	bag.	
12.	Sonya is pulling	luggage.	
13.	There was	earthquake in California.	
14.	I got	letters in the mail.	
15.	Helen got	letter from her mother.	
16.	Mr. Alvarez got	mail yesterday.	
17.	A computer is	machine that can solve p	roblems.
18.	The factory bought	new machinery.	
19.	mac	hines are powered by electricity. So	ome use other sources of energy.
20.	I threw away	junk.	
21.	I threw away	old basket that was falling	apart.
22.	I threw away	old boots that had holes in	them.

☐ Exercise 22. Looking at grammar. (Chart 7-7)

#### Exercise 23. Listening. (Chart 7-7)

CD 1 Track 38 A and an can be hard to hear. Listen to each sentence and choose the word you hear. If you do not hear a or an, circle O.

Exai	mple:		ill hear: ill choose:	r's ar	n ex	cellent id Ø	ea.
1.	a	an	Ø	5.	a	an	Ø
2.	a	an	Ø	6.	a	an	Ø
3.	a	an	Ø	7.	a	an	Ø
4.	a	an	Ø	8.	a	an	Ø

#### $\Box$ **Exercise 24. Game.** (Charts 7-4 $\rightarrow$ 7-7)

A favorite game played with a group of people is called "My Grandfather's Store." Each person begins his/her turn by saying "I went to my grandfather's store and bought . . . ." The first person names something that begins with the letter "A." The second person repeats what the first person said, and then names something that begins with the letter "B." The game continues to the letter "Z," the end of the alphabet. The people in the group have to listen carefully and remember all the items previously named.

Assume that "grandfather's store" sells just about anything anyone would ever think of. Pay special attention to the use of a/an and some.

#### Example:

SPEAKER A: I went to my grandfather's store and bought an apple.

SPEAKER B: I went to my grandfather's store and bought an apple and some bread.

SPEAKER C: I went to my grandfather's store and bought an apple, some bread, and a camel.

SPEAKER D: I went to my grandfather's store and bought an apple, some bread, a camel, and some dark socks.

Etc.

#### Alternative beginnings:

Tomorrow I'm going to (name of a place). In my suitcase, I will pack . . . . My friends are having a party. I'm going to bring . . . .

## ☐ Exercise 25. Warm-up. (Chart 7-8)

Correct the errors.

- 1. Oh, look at moon! It's beautiful tonight.
- 2. I saw a cat and a bird outside my window. Cat was trying to catch a bird, but it didn't succeed. Bird flew away.
- 3. The birds have the wings. Many insects have wings too.
- 4. We all look for the happiness.
- 5. I have book.

#### **7-8** General Guidelines for Article Usage (a) The sun is bright today. GUIDELINE: Use the when you know or assume that your Please hand this book to the teacher. listener is familiar with and thinking about the same Please open the door. specific thing or person you are talking about. Omar is in the kitchen. (b) Yesterday I saw some dogs. The dogs were GUIDELINE: Use the for the second mention of an indefinite chasing a cat. The cat was chasing a mouse. The noun.\* In (b): first mention = some dogs, a cat, a mouse ran into a hole. The hole was very small. mouse, a hole; second mention = the dogs, the cat, the mouse, the hole CORRECT: Apples are my favorite fruit. GUIDELINE: Do NOT use the with a plural count noun (e.g., apples) or a noncount noun (e.g., gold) when you are INCORRECT: The apples are my favorite fruit. making a generalization. (d) CORRECT: Gold is a metal. INCORRECT: The gold is a metal. (e) CORRECT: (1) I drove a car. / I drove the car. GUIDELINE: A singular count noun (e.g., car) is always (2) I drove that car. preceded by: (3) I drove his car. (1) an article (a/an or the); OR (2) this/that; OR INCORRECT: I drove car. (3) a possessive pronoun. \*The is NOT used for the second mention of a generic noun. COMPARE:

- (1) What color is a banana (generic noun)? A banana (generic noun) is yellow.
- (2) Joe offered me a banana (indefinite noun) or an apple. I chose the banana (definite noun).

Com	rcise 26. Looking at grammar. (Charts 7-7 and 7-8) plete the dialogues with a, an, or the. Capitalize as necessary.  A: I havean idea. Let's go ona picnic Saturday.  B: Okay.
	A: Did you have fun at <u>the</u> picnic yesterday?  B: Sure did. And you?
	A: You'd better have good reason for being late! B: I do.
	A: Did you think reason Mike gave for being late was believable?  B: Not really.
	A: Where's my blue shirt?  B: It's in washing machine.  A: That's okay. I can wear different shirt.
	A: I wish we had washing machine.  B: So do I. It would make it a lot easier to do our laundry.
	A: Have you seen my boots?  B: They're in closet in front hallway.

8.	A: Can you repair my car for me?
	B: What's wrong with it?
	A: radiator has leak, and one of
	windshield wipers doesn't work.
	B: Can you show me where leak is?
9.	A: What happened to your bicycle? front wheel is bent.
	B: I ran into parked car when I swerved to avoid big pothole.
	A: Did you damage car?
	B: A little.
	A: What did you do?
	B: I left note for owner of car.
	A: What did you write on note?
	B: My name and address. I also wrote apology.
1.	$\mathcal{B}$ $\mathcal{B}$ weef is a kind of $\mathcal{D}$ meat.
2.	
	Lucy is wearing a straw hat today.
4.	Lucy likes to wear hats.
5.	hat is article of clothing.
6.	hats are articles of clothing.
7.	brown hat on that hook over there belongs to Mark.
8.	Everyone has problems in life.
9.	That book is about life of Helen Keller.*
10.	The Brooklyn Bridge was designed by engineer.
11.	John Roebling is name of engineer who designed the Brooklyn
	Bridge. He died in 1869 from infection before bridge was
	completed.

<sup>\*</sup>The first blind and deaf person to graduate from college, Helen Keller (1880–1968) overcame her double handicap to become a noted American author, activist, and lecturer.

1.	Everyone needs to have cell phone.	yes	no
2.	If you have a cell phone, you don't need to wear watch.	yes	n
3.	cell phones are replacing watches.	yes	n
4.	One key to healthy life is daily physical exercise.	yes	n
5.	You'd like to read a book about life and art of Pablo Picasso.	yes	n
6.	jewelry looks good on both men and women.	yes	n
7.	English is easy language to learn.	yes	n
8.	beings similar to human beings exist somewhere in universe.	yes	n
9.	Listening to loud rock music is fun.	yes	n
0.	music you like best is rock 'n roll.	yes	n
xe Con	vocabulary in this exercise is easy.  Procise 29. Looking at grammar. (Charts 7-7 and 7-8)  Inplete the sentences with a, an, the, or Ø. Capitalize as necessary.  We need to get new phone.	yes	n
Exe Con 1.	ercise 29. Looking at grammar. (Charts 7-7 and 7-8) applete the sentences with <i>a</i> , <i>an</i> , <i>the</i> , or Ø. Capitalize as necessary.	yes	r
2.	ercise 29. Looking at grammar. (Charts 7-7 and 7-8) replete the sentences with <i>a</i> , <i>an</i> , <i>the</i> , or Ø. Capitalize as necessary.  We need to get new phone.	ly us w	vith
1. 2. 3.	Precise 29. Looking at grammar. (Charts 7-7 and 7-8) Inplete the sentences with <i>a</i> , <i>an</i> , <i>the</i> , or Ø. Capitalize as necessary.  We need to get new phone.  Alex, would you please answer phone?  people use plants in many different ways. Plants suppoxygen. They are a source of lifesaving medicines. We use plant produces	ly us w	
1. 2. 3.	Precise 29. Looking at grammar. (Charts 7-7 and 7-8) Inplete the sentences with a, an, the, or Ø. Capitalize as necessary.  We need to get new phone.  Alex, would you please answer phone?  people use plants in many different ways. Plants suppoxygen. They are a source of lifesaving medicines. We use plant product houses and to make paper and textiles.  The biggest bird in the world is the ostrich. It eats just about anything it can reach, including stones, glass,	ly us w	vith
1. 2. 3.	Procise 29. Looking at grammar. (Charts 7-7 and 7-8) Implete the sentences with a, an, the, or Ø. Capitalize as necessary.  We need to get new phone.  Alex, would you please answer phone?  people use plants in many different ways. Plants suppoxygen. They are a source of lifesaving medicines. We use plant product houses and to make paper and textiles.  The biggest bird in the world is the ostrich. It eats just about anything it can reach, including stones, glass, and keys. It can kill person with one kick.	ly us w	vith
1. 2. 3.	Precise 29. Looking at grammar. (Charts 7-7 and 7-8) inplete the sentences with a, an, the, or Ø. Capitalize as necessary.  We need to get new phone.  Alex, would you please answer phone?  people use plants in many different ways. Plants suppoxygen. They are a source of lifesaving medicines. We use plant product houses and to make paper and textiles.  The biggest bird in the world is the ostrich. It eats just about anything it can reach, including stones, glass, and keys. It can kill person with one kick.  In recent newspaper article, I read about	ly us w	vit

Exercise 28. Grammar and speaking. (Charts 7-7 and 7-8)

- 6. I heard on the radio that there is \_\_\_\_\_\_ evidence that \_\_\_\_\_ dolphins suffer in captivity. Dolphins that are free in \_\_\_\_\_ nature live around 40 years. Captive dolphins live \_\_\_\_\_ average of 12 years. It is believed that some captive dolphins commit \_\_\_\_\_ suicide.
- 7. Look. There's \_\_\_\_\_ fly walking on \_\_\_\_\_ ceiling. It's upside down. Do you suppose \_\_\_\_\_ fly was flying rightside up and flipped over at the last second, or was it flying upside down when it landed on \_\_\_\_\_ ceiling?

# Exercise 30. Listening. (Charts 7-7 and 7-8)



Listen to this informal talk with your book closed. Then open your book and listen again. Complete the sentences with a, an, or the.



#### **Computer Bugs**

When there is \_\_\_\_\_ problem with \_\_\_\_ computer, we often say we have \_\_\_\_\_ 
"computer bug." Of course, it's not \_\_\_\_\_ real insect. It refers to \_\_\_\_\_ technical difficulty we are having. \_\_\_\_ expression actually goes back to Thomas Edison, who was \_\_\_\_ 
famous inventor. When he was working on his first phonograph, he had a lot of problems. He attributed \_\_\_\_ problems to \_\_\_\_ imaginary insect that had hidden inside \_\_\_\_ 
machine. He was quoted in \_\_\_\_ newspaper as saying there was "\_\_\_\_ bug" in his phonograph. This was in 1889, and it is \_\_\_\_ first recorded use of \_\_\_\_ word bug in such \_\_\_\_ context.

# Exercise 31. Warm-up. (Chart 7-9)

Before you look at the next chart, try this exercise. Draw a line through the words/expressions that <u>cannot</u> be used to complete the sentences.

Example: I bought furniture.

- 1. some
- 2. a couple of
- 3. several-
- 4. too much
- 5. too many

I received letters.			reived mail.
1.	two	16.	two
2.	a couple of	17.	a couple of
3.	both	18.	both
4.	several	19.	several
5.	some	20.	some
6.	a lot of	21.	a lot of
7.	plenty of	22.	plenty of
8.	too many	23.	too many
9.	too much	24.	too much
10.	a few	25.	a few
11.	a little	26.	a little
12.	a number of	27.	a number of
13.	a great deal of	28.	a great deal of
14.	hardly any	29.	hardly any

	pressions of antity	Used with Count Nouns	Used with Noncount Nouns		
(/	one each every	one apple each apple every apple	Ø* Ø Ø	An expression of quantity may precede a noun.  Some expressions of quantity are	
	two, etc. both a couple of a few several many a number of	two apples both apples a couple of apples a few apples several apples many apples a number of apples	0 0 0 0 0	used only with count nouns, as in and (b).	
(-/	a little much a great deal of	0 0 0	a little rice much rice a great deal of rice	Some are used only with noncount nouns, as in (c).	
	no hardly any some/any a lot of/lots of plenty of most all	no apples hardly any apples some/any apples a lot of/lots of apples plenty of apples most apples all apples	no rice hardly any rice some/any rice a lot of/lots of rice plenty of rice most rice all rice	Some are used with both count and noncount nouns, as in (d).	

30. no

15. no

<sup>\*00</sup> not used. For example, one is not used with noncount nouns. You can say "I ate one apple" but NOT "I ate one rice."

	<b>Exercise</b>	32.	Looking	at	grammar.	(Chart	7-9)
--	-----------------	-----	---------	----	----------	--------	------

Draw a line through the expressions that cannot be used to complete the sentences. The first column has been started for you.

Jake has \_\_\_\_\_ homework.

Isabel has \_\_\_\_ assignments.

1. three-

13. three

2. several 3. some

14. several 15. some

4. a lot of

16. a lot of

5. too much

6. too many

17. too much

18. too many

7. a few

19. a few

8. a little

20. a little

9. a number of

21. a number of

10. a great deal of

22. a great deal of

11. hardly any

23. hardly any

12. no

24. no

#### Exercise 33. Looking at grammar. (Chart 7-9)

Complete the sentences with *much* or *many*. Also write the plural form of the nouns as necessary. In some sentences, you will need to choose the correct verb in parentheses.

cities

2. There ((isn't,) aren't) \_\_\_\_ much \_\_\_ money in my bank account.

3. I haven't gotten \_\_\_\_\_ mail lately.

4. I don't get \_\_\_\_\_ letter.

5. There (*is*, *are*) too \_\_\_\_\_ furniture in Anna's living room.



0.	I can't go with you	because I have too	)	work to do.
7.	A: How	side does a	pentagon have?	
	B: Five.			
8.	I couldn't find	inform	mation in that bo	ok.
9.	I haven't met	people	since I came her	e.
10.	How	_ postage does th	nis letter need?	
11.	I think there (is, are	) too	violence on t	elevision.
12.	I don't have	patience	e with incompete	nce.
13.	The doctor has so .	pa	atient that she ha	s to work at least twelve hours a day
14.	A: How	tooth does	the average perso	n have?
	B: Thirty-two.			
15.	There (isn't, aren't)	i	nternational new	s in the local paper.
If th plur	ercise 34. Looking e given noun can be all. If the given noun Helen bought several	used to complete in cannot be used	to complete the	rite it in its correct form (singular o sentence, write Ø.  Jack bought too much
	lamp	lamps		shoe
		Ø		salt
	jewelry	Ø		equipment
	necklace	necklaces		tool
2.	Sam bought a lot of	·	4.	Alice bought a couple of
	stamp			bread
	rice			loaf of bread
	stuff			honey
	thing			jar of honey

٦.	1 reau a jew	,	Nick has a number of
	novel		shirt
	literature		homework
	poem		pen
	poetry		chalk
6.	I bought some	10.	I don't have a great deal of
	orange juice		patience
	light bulb		wealth
	hardware		friend
	computer software		pencil
7.	We need plenty of	11.	I need a little
	sleep		money
	information		advice
	fact		time
	help		minute
8.	I saw both	12.	The author has many
	woman		idea
	movie		theory
	scene		hypothesis
	scenery		knowledge
E <b>xe</b> Inte	ercise 35. Let's talk: interview. (Crview two other students. Ask them to determine the control of the control	hart 7-9)	iven sentences. Share some of their

# 

answers with the class.

- 1. I have a number of . . . .
- 2. I need to have a lot of . . . .
- 3. Teachers need to have a great deal of . . . .
- 4. People in (name of a country) have too much / too many . . . .

#### Exercise 36. Warm-up. (Chart 7-10)

Choose the correct answers.

- 1. Which sentence gives a negative meaning of "not many people"?
  - a. Deserts are largely uninhabited. Very few people live in the middle of a desert.
  - b. We had a good time. We met a few people and had some nice conversations.
- 2. Which sentence gives a negative meaning of "not much water"?
  - a. It's hot today. You should drink a little water.
  - b. A desert is a dry place. There is little water in a desert.

7-	10 Using A Few and Few; A Little and	Little
NC	COUNT: (a) We sang <i>a few songs</i> .  ONCOUNT: (b) We listened to <i>a little music</i> .	A few and few are used with plural count nouns, as in (a).  A little and little are used with noncount nouns, as in (b).
(c)	She has been here only two weeks, but she has already made <i>a few friends</i> .  (Positive idea: She has made some friends.)  I'm very pleased. I've been able to save <i>a little money</i> this month.  (Positive idea: I have saved some money instead of spending all of it.)	A few and a little give a positive idea; they indicate that something exists, is present, as in (c) and (d).
(e)	I feel sorry for her. She has (very) few friends.  (Negative idea: She does not have many friends; she has almost no friends.)	Few and little (without a) give a negative idea; they indicate that something is largely absent, as in (e).
(f)	I have ( <i>very</i> ) <i>little money</i> . I don't even have enough money to buy food for dinner.  (Negative idea: I do not have much money; I have almost no money.)	Very (+ few/little) makes the negative stronger, the number/amount smaller, as in (f).

## Exercise 37. Looking at grammar. (Chart 7-10)

Without changing the meaning of the sentence, replace the *italicized* words with *a few*, (very) few, a little, or (very) little.

a little

1. I think that some lemon juice on fish makes it taste better.

(verv) few

- 2. Many people are multilingual, but *not many* people speak more than ten languages.
- 3. Some sunshine is better than none.
- 4. January is a cold and dreary month in the northern states. There is *not much* sunshine during that month.
- 5. My parents like to watch TV. Every evening they watch *two or three* programs on TV before they go to bed.

- 6. I don't watch TV very much because there are hardly any television programs that I enjoy.
- 7. If a door squeaks, *several* drops of oil in the right places can prevent future trouble.
- 8. If your door squeaks, put some oil on the hinges.

9. Mr. Adams doesn't like to wear rings on his fingers. He wears almost no jewelry.



	ercise 38. Looking at grammar. (Chart 7-10) unplete the sentences with a few, (very) few, a little, or (very) little.
1.	Do you have a few minutes? I'd like to ask you a few
	questions. I need more information.
2.	Diana's previous employer gave her a good recommendation because she makes
	(very) few mistakes in her work.
3.	Ben is having a lot of trouble adjusting to high school. He seems to be unpopular.
	Unfortunately, he has friends.
4.	We're looking forward to our vacation. We're planning to spend days
	with my folks and then days with my husband's folks. After that,
	we're going to go to a fishing resort in Canada.
5.	I was hungry, so I ate nuts.
6.	Because the family is very poor, the children have toys. And the
	parents have to work two jobs, so they have time to spend with their
	children.
7.	Into each life, rain must fall.*
8.	Natasha likes sweet tea. She usually adds honey to her tea.
	Sometimes she adds milk too.

<sup>\*</sup>This is a common English saying that means "no life is perfect."

	<b>Exercise 39. Listening.</b> (Chart 7-10) Choose the sentence (a. or b.) that best describes the situation you hear.						
CD 1 Track 40	Example: You will hear: Rosie was still hungry. Some was still hungry. Some wanted a little b. Rosie wanted little ri			rice.		2.	
	1. a. I add a little b. I add little sa			5.	a. Linda has a few prob. Linda has few prob		
	2. a. I packed a fe b. I packed few			6.	a. Billy has a few prob. Billy has very few p		
	3. a. Mr. Hong kr. b. Mr. Hong kr		_	7.	<ul><li>a. A few people like v</li><li>b. Few people like wo</li></ul>		
	4. a. His daughter b. His daughter						
ū	<b>Exercise 40. Let's talk.</b> (Charts 7-9 and 7-10) Read the list of the food in Dan and Eva's kitchen. Do they have enough food for the next week? Give your opinion using the given expressions of quantity. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.						
	Example: 36 eggs  → They have too many eggs.						
		oo little oo few	(not) enough (not) nearly enoug	;h	just the right amount just the right number		
	The food in Dan and A 40 apples 1 banana 6 oranges 1 quart of orange 4 gallons of ice cre	juice	n: 10 bags of rice 20 cans of tomato 0 fresh vegetables 1 bottle of olive of		1 kilo of coffee 2 teabags 1 box of breakfas 2 slices of bread 5 pounds of chee		
a	Exercise 41. Was			with	country or countrie	·s.	
	1. One		I would like to	o visi	t is Malaysia.		
	2. One of the		my wife	e wou	ıld like to visit is Brazil		
	3. I'd like to visit e	every		_ in '	the world before I die.		
	Each						
	4. I've had wonder during my trave		nces in each of the			I've visited	

<sup>\*</sup>In spoken English, too is often modified by way or far: They have way/far too many eggs. They have way/far too few teabags.

# 7-11 Singular Expressions of Quantity: One, Each, Every (a) One student was late to class. (b) Each student has a schedule. (c) Every student has a schedule. (d) One of the students was late to class. (e) Each (one) of the students has a schedule (f) Every one of the students has a schedule. One, each, and every are followed immediately by singular count nouns (never plural nouns, never noncount nouns). One of, each of, and every one of\* are followed by specific plural count nouns (never singular nouns; never noncount nouns). \*Compare: Every one (two words) is an expression of quantity (e.g., I have read every one of those books).

Everyone (one word) is an indefinite pronoun. It has the same meaning as everybody (e.g., Everyone/Everybody has a schedule).

NOTE: Each and every have essentially the same meaning.

Each is used when the speaker is thinking of one person/thing at a time: Each student has a schedule. = Mary has a schedule. Hiroshi has a schedule. Carlos has a schedule. Sabrina has a schedule. Etc.

Every is used when the speaker means all: Every student has a schedule. = All of the students have schedules.

Exercise 42.	Looking	at	grammar.	(Chart 7-11)
C 11				

Complete the sentences. Use the singular or plural form of the nouns in parentheses.

- 1. There is only one (girl) \_\_\_\_\_ girl \_\_\_\_ on the sixth-grade soccer team.
- 2. Only one of the (girl) \_\_\_\_\_\_ in the sixth grade is on the soccer team.
- 3. Each of the (child) \_\_\_\_\_ got a present.
- 4. Mr. Hoover gave a present to each (child) \_\_\_\_\_\_.
- 5. We invited every (*member*) \_\_\_\_\_\_ of the club.
- 6. Every one of the (member) \_\_\_\_\_ came.
- 7. One (student) \_\_\_\_\_ stayed after class to ask a question.
- 8. One of the (student) \_\_\_\_\_\_ stayed after class.
- 10. Each of the (student) \_\_\_\_\_\_ joined the conversation.

### ☐ Exercise 43. Check your knowledge. (Chart 7-11)

Correct the errors. Some of the sentences do not contain any errors.

### student

- 1. It's important for every -students to have a book.
- 2. Each of the students in my class has a book. (no change)
- 3. The teacher gave each of students a test paper.
- 4. Every student in the class did well on the test.

- 5. Spain is one of the country I want to visit.
- 6. Every furniture in that room is made of wood.
- 7. One of the equipment in our office is broken.
- 8. I gave a present to each of the woman in the room.
- 9. One of my favorite place in the world is an island in the Caribbean Sea.
- 10. Each one of your suitcases will be checked when you go through customs.
- 11. It's impossible for one human being to know every languages in the world.
- 12. I found each of the error in this exercise.

### ☐ Exercise 44. Warm-up. (Chart 7-11)

Complete the sentences with of or O. How do you know when to use of in expressions of quantity?

I sar	v	
1.	some	students.
2.	some <u>of</u>	the students.
3.	several	students.
4.	several	the students.
5.	several	your students.
6.	most	your students.
7.	most	them.
I kn	ow	
8.	many	students.
9.	many	those students.
10.	many	them.
11.	a lot	students.
10	- 1	those students.
12.	a lot	those students.
		those students.

### **7-12** Using Of in Expressions of Quantity (a) I bought one book. With some expressions of quantity, of is not used when the noun is nonspecific, as in (a) and (b). (b) I bought many books. (c) One of those books is mine. Of is used with: • specific nouns, as in (c), (d), and (e). (d) Some of the books are yours. (e) Many of my books are in Spanish. • pronouns, as in (f). (f) Most of them are paperbacks. (g) I have a lot of books. Some expressions of quantity, like a lot of, always include of, whether the noun is nonspecific, as in (g), or specific, as in (h). (h) I've read a lot of those books. **Expressions of quantity** one (of) all (of) some (of) two (of) each (of) several (of) half of every (a) few (of) 50 percent of almost all (of) (a) little (of) three-fourths of most (of) hardly any (of) a majority of many (of) none of hundreds of much (of) no thousands of a number of millions of a great deal of a lot of

	Exercise 45.	Looking	at	grammar.	(Chart	7-12
_	EXCIDISC 40.	Looking	OI.	grannan	CHAIL	1-12

Complete the sentences with of or Ø.

- 1. I know several \_\_of\_ Jack's friends.
- 2. I've made several  $\underline{\mathscr{Q}}$  friends lately.
- 3. Some \_\_\_\_\_ students are lazy. Most \_\_\_\_\_ students are hard-working.
- 4. Some \_\_\_\_\_ the students in Mrs. Gray's class are a little lazy.
- 5. I usually get a lot \_\_\_\_\_ mail.
- 6. A lot \_\_\_\_\_ the mail I get is junk mail.
- 7. Most \_\_\_\_\_ books have an index.
- 8. Most \_\_\_\_\_ Ali's books are written in Arabic.
- 9. I bought a few \_\_\_\_\_ books yesterday.
- 10. I've read a few \_\_\_\_\_ those books.
- 11. I'm new here. I don't know many \_\_\_\_\_ people yet.
- 12. I've just moved into a new apartment. I don't know many \_\_\_\_\_ my neighbors yet.
- 13. Millions \_\_\_\_\_ people watch World Cup soccer.

mailbox

### **Exercise 46. Let's talk.** (Charts 7-11 and 7-12)

Use the expressions of quantity in the list to make sentences about the given situation. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

all of the majority of several of a couple of almost all of some of a few of hardly any of most of about half of very few of one of

SITUATION: There are 15 students taking a basic Chinese language class.

Example: Three have studied Chinese before.

SPEAKER A: Several of them have studied Chinese before.

SPEAKER B: Most of them have never studied Chinese before.

- 1. Thirteen speak English as their native language.
- 2. One speaks Thai, and one speaks Arabic.
- 3. No one speaks Spanish.
- 4. Two have studied several languages already.
- 5. Fifteen think Chinese is very difficult.
- 6. Fourteen are enjoying the class.
- 7. Five have already bought the textbook.
- 8. Four are men; eleven are women.

### $\Box$ Exercise 47. Let's talk: interview. (Charts 7-9 $\rightarrow$ 7-12)

Conduct a poll among your classmates and report your findings.

**Part I.** Prepare five yes/no questions that ask for opinions or information about your classmates' likes, dislikes, habits, or experiences. Record their responses.

### Sample questions:

Do you read an English-language newspaper every day?

Do you like living in this city?

Do you have a car?

Have you ever ridden a horse?

Are you going to be in bed before midnight tonight?

**Part II.** Report your findings to the class using expressions of quantity to make generalizations about what you learned.

### Sample report:

Only a few of the people in this class read an English newspaper every day.

Most of them like living in this city.

Three of the people in this class have cars.

About half of them have ridden a horse at some time in their lives.

Almost all of them are going to be in bed before midnight tonight.

### Exercise 48. Let's talk. (Charts $7-9 \rightarrow 7-12$ )

Most of the statements are overgeneralizations. Make each statement clearer or more accurate by adding an expression of quantity. Add other words to the sentences or make any other changes you wish. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

Example: My classmates are from Japan.

- → Most of my classmates are from Japan.
- → All (of) my classmates are from Japan.\*
- → One of my classmates is from Japan.
- → Hardly any of my classmates are from Japan.
- → None of my classmates is from Japan.
- 1. My classmates speak Arabic.
- 2. People are friendly.
- 3. The pages in this book contain illustrations.
- 4. Babies are born bald.
- 5. The students in my class are from South America.
- 6. People like to live alone.
- 7. The people I know like to live alone.
- 8. The countries in the world are in the Northern Hemisphere.
- 9. The citizens of the United States speak English.
- 10. Children like to read scary stories.
- 11. The children in my country go to school.
- 12. Airplanes depart and arrive precisely on time.
- 13. The rivers in the world are polluted.
- 14. The pollution in the world today is caused by human beings.

### Exercise 49. Let's talk. (Charts 7-9 $\rightarrow$ 7-12)

As a class, make a list of controversial topics (i.e., topics that generate opinions not everyone agrees with) that you think are interesting. From this list, choose topics that you would like to discuss with your classmates; then, divide into groups to talk about them.

At the end of the discussion time, the leader of each group will report on the opinions of his or her group using expressions of quantity to make generalizations (e.g., *Most of us believe that*... OR *Only a few of us think that*...). The number of topics you choose to discuss depends on the time available.

### Sample topics:

physician-assisted suicide for terminally ill patients birth control education in public schools a current war or other political crisis the dangers posed by global warming

CORRECT: **All** of my classmates . . . . CORRECT: **All** my classmates are . . . .

<sup>\*</sup>Using of after all is optional with a specific noun.

- Exercise 50. Check your knowledge. (Chapter 7)
  - Correct the errors.
    - 1. That book contain many different kind of story and article.
    - 2. In my country, there is alot of schools.
    - 3. She is always willing to help her friends in every possible ways.
  - 4. In the past, horses was the principal mean of transportation.
  - 5. He succeeded in creating one of the best army in the world.
  - 6. There are a lot of equipments in the research laboratory, but undergraduates are not allowed to use them.
  - 7. I have a five years old daughter and a three years old son.
  - 8. Most of people in my apartment's building is friendly.
  - 9. Everyone seek the happiness in the life.
  - 10. Writing compositions are very hard for me.
  - 11. Almost of the student in my class are from Asia.
  - 12. It's difficult for me to understand English when people uses a lot of slangs.



### Exercise 1. What do I already know? (Chart 8-1)

Correct the errors in pronoun usage.

- 1. My friends and I ordered Indian food at the restaurant. I wasn't very hungry, but I ate most of them.
- 2. When we were in school, my sister and me used to play tennis after school every day.
- 3. If you want to pass you're exams, you had better study very hard for it.
- 4. A hippopotamus spends most of it's time in the water of rivers and lakes.



- 5. After work, Mr. Gray asked to speak to Mona and I about the company's new policies. He explained it to us and asked for ours opinions.
- 6. My friends asked to borrow my car because their's was in the garage for repairs.

### Exercise 2. Warm-up. (Chart 8-1)

Talk about names, paying special attention to pronouns.

**Part I.** Use personal pronouns to refer to people in the classroom. Begin your sentence with the given pronoun.

Examples: She  $\rightarrow$  She is Marika.

Their → Their names are Marika, Carlos, and Talal.

1.	He	5.	Their	9.	Her
2.	They	6.	Our	10.	His
3.	I	7.	You (singular)	11.	She
4.	We	8.	You (plural)	12.	You

Part II. Discuss these topics. Listen for pronouns.

- 1. In many cultures, first names have special meanings. For example, in Japanese, *Akira* means "intelligent." In Spanish, *Amanda* means "loveable." In Chinese, *Liang* means "kindhearted." Does your name have a special meaning?
- 2. What kind of names do people in your culture give pets? What are some common names?

	Subject Pronoun	Object Pronoun	Possessive Pronoun	Possessive Adjective		
Singular	l you she, he, it	me you her, him, it	mine yours hers, his, its	my (name) your (name) her, his, its (name)		
Plural	we you they	us you them	ours yours theirs	our (names) your (names) their (names)		
(a) I read a book. It was good.  (b) I read some books. They were good.			A PRONOUN is used in place of a noun. The noun it refers to is called the "antecedent."  In (a): The pronoun <i>it</i> refers to the antecedent noun <i>book</i> .  A singular pronoun is used to refer to a singular noun as in (a). A plural pronoun is used to refer to a plural noun, as in (b).			
(c) / like tea	a. Do <i>you</i> like tea too	9?	Sometimes the antecedent noun is understood, not explicitly stated.  In (c): I refers to the speaker, and you refers to the person the speaker is talking to.			
(d) John ha	s as a car. <i>He drives</i> to	work.	SUBJECT PRONOUNS are used as subjects of sentences as <i>he</i> in (d).			
(e) John works in my office. I <i>know him</i> well.  o (f) I talk <i>to him</i> every day.			OBJECT PRONOUNS are used as the objects of verbs, as <i>him</i> in (e), or as the objects of prepositions, as <i>him</i> in (f).			
(g) That bo	ok is <i>hers</i> .		POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS are not followed immediately by a noun; they stand alone, as in (g).			
(h) INCORRE	That book is the Your's is over the		Possessive pronouns do Not take apostrophes, as in (h).			
			(See Chart 7-2, p. 105, for the use of apostrophes with possessive nouns.)			
(i) Her boo	ok is here.		POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES are followed immediately by a noun; they do not stand alone.			
(j) A bird uses <i>its</i> wings to fly. (k) INCORRECT: A bird uses it's wings to fly.			COMPARE: <i>Its</i> has NO APOSTROPHE when it is used as a possessive, as in ( j ).			
<ul> <li>(1) It's cold today.</li> <li>(m) The Harbour Inn is my favorite old hotel. It's been in business since 1933.</li> </ul>			It's has an apostrophe when it is used as a contraction of it is, as in (1), or it has when has is part of the present perfect tense, as in (m).			
			NOTE: <i>It's</i> vs. <i>its</i> is a common source of error for native speakers of English.			

## Exercise 3. Looking at grammar. (Chart 8-1) Identify the personal pronouns and their antecedents. 1. Jack has a part-time job. He works at a fast-food restaurant. $\rightarrow$ (**he** = a pronoun; **Jack** = the antecedent) 2. Most monkeys don't like water, but they can swim well when they have to. 3. The teacher graded the students' papers last night. She returned them during class today. 4. Nancy took an apple with her to work. She ate it at lunchtime. 5. A dog makes a good pet if it is properly trained. 6. Yuri's cat is named Maybelle Alice. She\* is very independent. She never obeys Yuri. His dogs, on the other hand, obey him gladly. They like to please him. **Exercise 4. Looking at grammar.** (Chart 8-1) Choose the words in italics that are grammatically correct. NOTE: A number of native English speakers commonly use subject pronouns after and, even when the grammatically correct choice is an object pronoun. 1. My parents always read bedtime stories to my sister and I/me.

- 2. Just between you and I/me, I think Ms. Lucas is going to lose her job.
- 3. There's Kevin. Let's go talk to him. I need to tell you and he / him something.
- 4. Mrs. Minski needs to know the truth. I'm going to tell Mr. Chang and she / her the truth, and you can't stop me.
- 5. Alex introduced Sally and I / me to his cousin from Mexico City.

☐ Exercise 5. Looking at grammar. (Chart 8-		Exercise 5	Looking	at grammar.	(Chart 8-1)
---	--	------------	---------	-------------	-------------

Complete the sentences in each situation with pronouns for the word in *italics*.

SITUATION 1: There's Sarah.

1.	I need to go talk to <u>her</u> .	
2.	and I have been friends since high school.	
3.	I went to elementary school with brother and	
4.	parents are best friends with my parents.	
5.	is getting married next month. Another friend and I are taking or	n a
	short trip before marriage.	
6.	Being with is a lot of fun. We laugh a lot.	
7.	always has a good time with friends.	

<sup>\*</sup>If the sex of a particular animal is known, usually she or he is used instead of it.

SIT	UATION 2: I'm not feeling well. I think I'd better stay home today.
8.	My friends and were planning to volunteer at our local food bank* today.
9.	The food bank often asks my friends and to help them with various projects.
10.	But my friends will have to go without
11.	I'd better call friend Sami to tell him I can't come today.
12.	Could I use your cell phone? I don't have with
	ercise 6. Looking at grammar. (Chart 8-1) cose the correct words in italics.
1.	This is my / mine umbrella. Your / Yours umbrella is over there.
2.	This umbrella is my / mine. The other one is
	your / yours.
3.	Mary and Bob have their / theirs books. In other
	words, Mary has her / hers, and Bob has his / him.
4.	Our / Ours house is almost the same as our / ours
	neighbors' house. The only difference in appearance is that our / ours is gray and
	their / theirs is white.
Pla	ercise 7. Let's talk. (Chart 8-1) ce a pen or pencil on your desk. Your teacher will say a sentence. One student will repeat sentence, indicating the person(s) the sentence refers to. Close your book for this activity.
Exa	ample:
	ACHER: This one is mine, and that one is hers. Ahmed?  MED: (Ahmed points to his pen and gestures toward himself): This one is mine. (Ahmed points to another pen and gestures toward Anita): And that one is hers.
1.	This pen is mine, and that pen is yours.  4. This one is yours, and that one is his.
2.	T T T T T T T T T T T T T T T T T T T
3.	These are ours, and those are theirs.  6. This isn't hers. It's his.
	ercise 8. Looking at grammar. (Chart 8-1) mplete the sentences with its or it's.
1.	Are you looking for the olive oil?!t's on the top shelf.
2.	A honeybee has two wings on each side of body.

<sup>\*</sup>food bank = a place that receives donations of food and gives them away to needy people.

3.	Tom has a pet.	_ name is Squeak	a turtle	been his pet
	for several years.			
4.	A nation that does not ed	ucate children h	as no future.	
5.	All of us can help create p	eace in the world. Indeed, _	our respo	onsibility to do so.
	ercise 9. Looking at goose the correct words in it			
V	When I was in Florida, I ob	served an interesting bird		4
calle	ed an anhinga. <i>(It's) / Its</i> a f	ish eater. It / They dives / d	ive	A .
into	the water and spears/spear	its / it's prey on its / it's lon	ig,	at some of the
poir	nted bill. After emerging fr	om the water, it / they		4
tosse	es / toss the fish into the air	and catches / catch		
it / t	hem in mid-air, and then so	vallows / swallow	The same of the sa	and and surfacement
it / t	hem headfirst. Its / It's inte	resting to watch anhingas in	1	راردی
acti	on. I enjoy watching it / the	em a lot.		
Prop Add spee	litionally, if the pronoun be ech. Complete each conve	in spoken English because egins with "h," the /h/ sound resation with the words you	d is often dropped	
1.	Where's Kim?			
		't seen this	morning.	
	B: I think			
	C: I'm looking for			
		assistant. He'll know.		
		g in office?	I know	not there
	much, but maybe	surprise you.		
2.		neir daughter a motorcycle f		
		like motorcycle		
	·	a motorcycle rid		
		wonder what	_	
		ns gave son	. I think	already had
	an accident.			CC.
	E: I'm not a fan of moto	rcycles. Cars just don't see	in	traffic.

\_\_\_\_\_ a wonderful gift! I've had \_

\_ been great.

F: I think \_\_\_\_

for years, and

### Exercise 11. Warm-up. (Chart 8-2)

Pretend you are writing an article about seat belts. Which sentence would you choose to include? Why? NOTE: All the sentences are correct.

- 1. A driver should put on his seat belt as soon as he gets in his car.
- 2. A driver should put on her seat belt as soon as she gets in her car.
- 3. A driver should put on his or her seat belt as soon as he or she gets in his or her car.
- 4. Drivers should put on their seat belts as soon as they get in their cars.

8-	-2 Persona Indefin	al Pronouns: Agr ite Pronouns	eement with (	Generic Nouns and		
(a)	A student walked looking for the tead	into the room. <i>She</i> was ther.	In (a) and (b): The pronouns refer to particular individuals whose gender is known. The nouns are not generic.			
(b)	A student walked looking for the tead	into the room. <i>He</i> was her.				
(c)	A student should a	always do <i>his</i> assignments.	A GENERIC NOUN* does particular; rather, it rep	not refer to any person or thing in resents a whole group.		
(d)	A student should a assignments.	always do <i>his or her</i>	In (c): A student is a generic noun; it refers to anyone who is a student.			
			With a generic noun, a singular masculine pronoun has been used traditionally, but many English speakers now use both masculine and feminine pronouns to refer to a singular generic noun, as in (d).			
(e)	Students should a	lways do <i>their</i> assignments.		g masculine and/or feminine pronouns y using a plural rather than a singular		
Ind	efinite pronouns			•		
	everyone	someone	anyone	no one**		
	everybody everything	somebody something	anybody anything	nobody nothing		
(f) (g)	Somebody left his book on the desk. Everyone has his or her own ideas.		In formal English, the use of a singular pronoun to refer to an INDEFINITE PRONOUN is generally considered to be grammatically correct, as in (f) and (q).			
(h)	INFORMAL: Somebody left the Everyone has the	eir book on the desk. ir own ideas.	In everyday, informal English (and sometimes even in more formal English), a plural personal pronoun is usually used to refer to an indefinite pronoun, as in (h).			

<sup>\*</sup>See Chart 7-7, p. 114, for basic article usage.

### Exercise 12. Looking at grammar. (Chart 8-2)

Change the sentences by using plural instead of singular generic nouns where possible. Change pronouns and verbs as necessary. Discuss the advantages of using plural rather than singular generic nouns.

- 1. When a student wants to study, he or she should find a quiet place.
  - → When students want to study, they should find a quiet place.

<sup>\*\*</sup>No one can also be written with a hyphen in British English: No-one heard me.

- 2. I talked to a student in my chemistry class. I asked to borrow her notes from the class I missed. She gave them to me gladly. (no change)
- 3. Each student in Biology 101 has to spend three hours per week in the laboratory where he or she does various experiments by following the directions in his or her lab manual.
- 4. A citizen has two primary responsibilities. He should vote in every election, and he should serve willingly on a jury.
- 5. We listened to a really interesting lecturer last night. She discussed her experiences as an archeologist in Argentina.

Exercise	13.	Looking	at	grammar.	(Chart 8-
				9. 4	(0110110

Complete each sentence with the pronoun(s) that seems appropriate to the given situation. Choose the correct verbs in parentheses as necessary. Discuss formal vs. informal pronoun usage.

- 1. One classmate to another: Look. Somebody left <u>their\*</u> book on my desk. Is it yours?
- 2. One friend to another: Of course you can learn to dance! Anyone can learn how to dance if \_\_\_\_\_\_ (wants, want) to.
- 3. Business textbook: An effective corporate manager must be able to motivate \_\_\_\_\_\_employees.
- 4. One roommate to another: If anyone asks where I am, tell \_\_\_\_\_\_ you don't know. I want to keep my meeting with Jim a secret.
- 5. Son to his mother: Gosh, Mom, everyone who came to the class picnic was supposed to bring \_\_\_\_\_\_ own food. I didn't know that, so I didn't have anything to eat. I'm really hungry!
- 6. *A university lecture:* I will end my lecture today by saying that I believe a teacher needs to work in partnership with \_\_\_\_\_\_ students.
- 7. A magazine article: People do not always see things the same way. Each person has \_\_\_\_\_\_ own way of understanding a situation.

### ☐ Exercise 14. Warm-up. (Chart 8-3)

All the pronouns in blue refer to the noun *team*. Discuss how the pronouns in the two sentences are different. NOTE: Both sentences are correct.

- 1. When the soccer **team** won in the closing moments of the game, they ran to the player who had scored the winning goal and lifted him on their shoulders.
- 2. A basketball **team** is relatively small. It doesn't have as many members as a baseball team.

<sup>\*</sup>also possible: his; his or her; her or his.

### 8-3 Personal Pronouns: Agreement with Collective Nouns (a) My family is large. It is composed of When a collective noun refers to a single impersonal unit, a singular nine members. gender-neutral pronoun (it, its) is used, as in (a). (b) My family is loving and supportive. When a collective noun refers to a collection of various individuals, a plural pronoun (they, them, their) is used, as in (b).\* They are always ready to help me. Examples of collective nouns audience couple family public crowd government staff class faculty committee group team

### **Exercise 15. Looking at grammar.** (Chart 8-3)

Complete the sentences with pronouns. In some of the sentences, there is more than one possibility. Choose the correct singular or plural verb in parentheses as necessary.

- 1. I have a wonderful family. I love \_\_\_\_\_\_ them\_\_\_\_ very much, and \_\_\_\_\_ they \_\_\_\_\_ (loves, love) me.
- 3. The audience clapped enthusiastically. Obviously \_\_\_\_\_ had enjoyed the concert.
- 4. The crowd at the soccer game was huge. \_\_\_\_\_ exceeded 100,000 people.



<sup>\*</sup>Note: When the collective noun refers to a collection of individuals, the verb may be either singular or plural: My family is OR are loving and supportive. A singular verb is generally preferred in American English. A plural verb is used more frequently in British English, especially with the words government or public. (American: The government is planning many changes. British: The government are planning many changes.)

6.	The audience filled the room to overflowing.	(was, were) larger than
	I had expected.	
7.	The class is planning a party for the last day of school.	(is, are) going to
	bring many different kinds of food and invite some of	friends to celebrate
	with	
8.	The class is too small (is, are) going to be can	iceled.

### ☐ Exercise 16. Warm-up. (Chart 8-4)

Draw a picture of yourself. Show it to the rest of the class. Answer the questions in complete sentences. Your teacher will supply student names in items 1 and 5.

- 1. (\_\_\_\_), what did you draw?
- 2. Who drew a picture of herself? Name someone.
- 3. Who drew a picture of himself? Name someone.
- 4. Who drew pictures of themselves? Name them.
- 5. (\_\_\_\_), did you and (\_\_\_\_) draw pictures of yourselves?



### **8-4** Reflexive Pronouns Singular Plural myself ourselves yourself yourselves herself, himself, itself, oneself themselves (a) Larry was in the theater. I saw him. Compare (a) and (b): Usually an object pronoun is used as the I talked to him. object of a verb or preposition, as him in (a). (See Chart 8-1.) (b) I saw myself in the mirror. I looked at A reflexive pronoun is used as the object of a verb or preposition myself for a long time. when the subject of the sentence and the object are the same person, as in (b).\* I and myself are the same person. (c) INCORRECT: I saw -me- in the mirror. — Did someone email the report to Mr. Lee? Reflexive pronouns are also used for emphasis. — Yes. In (d): The speaker would say "I myself" strongly, with emphasis. — Are you sure? The emphatic reflexive pronoun can immediately follow a noun (d) — Yes. I myself emailed the report to or pronoun, as in (d), or come at the end of the clause, as in (e). (e) — I emailed the report to him myself. (f) Anna lives by herself. The expression by + a reflexive pronoun means "alone."

<sup>\*</sup>Sometimes an object pronoun is used as the object of a preposition even when the subject and object pronoun are the same person. Examples: I took my books with me. Bob brought his books with him. I looked around me. She kept her son close to her.

ū	Exercise 17. Looking at grammar. (Chart 8-4) Complete the sentences with appropriate reflexive pronouns.	
	1. Everyone drew self-portraits. I drew a picture of	
	2. Rosa drew a picture of	
	3. Yusef drew a picture of	
	4. The children drew pictures of	
	5. We drew pictures of	
	6. Olga, you drew a picture of, didn't you?	
	7. All of you drew pictures of, didn't you?	
	8. When one draws a picture of, it is called a self-portrait.	
0	Exercise 18. Looking at grammar. (Chart 8-4) Complete the sentences with appropriate reflexive pronouns.	
	1. Tommy told a lie. He was ashamed of <u>himself</u> .	
	2. Masako cut while she was chopping vegetables.	
	3. People surround with friends and family during holidays.	
	4. Omar thinks Oscar is telling the truth. So does Ricardo. I don't	
	believe Oscar's story for a minute!	
	5. Now that their children are grown, Mr. and Mrs. Grayson live by	
	6. A: Should I marry Steve?	
	B: No one can make that decision for you, Ann. Only you can make such an important decision about your own life.	te
	7. Emily and Ryan, be careful! You're going to hurt!	
	8. A: I hate my job.	
	B: Me too. I envy Jacob. He's self-employed.	
	A: Yeah. I'd like to work for too.	
	9. Jason, you need to eat better and get more exercise. You should take better care of	
	, and I take care of	
	Your father and I are healthy because we take good care of	
	have a better chance	
	of staying healthy than those who don't.	

Exercise	19.	Looking	at	grammar.	(Chart 8-4	1)
FYCICISC	17.	LOOKING	u	grannan.	(Chan o -	٠,

angry at

forgetting to fill the tank.

Complete each sentence with a word or expression from the list and an appropriate reflexive pronoun. Use each word/expression only one time.

promised

introduced

killed proud of enjoy talking to entertained laugh at √ taught feeling sorry for pat 1. Karen Williams never took lessons. She <u>taught herself</u> how to play the piano. 2. Did Roberto have a good time at the party? Did he \_\_\_\_\_ 3. All of you did a good job. You should be \_\_\_\_\_ 4. You did a good job, Barbara. You should \_\_\_\_\_\_ on the back. 5. A man down the street committed suicide. We were all shocked by the news that he had 6. The children played very well without adult supervision. They \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_ by playing school. 7. I had always wanted to meet Hong Tran. When I saw her at a party last night, I walked over and \_\_\_\_\_\_ to her. 8. Nothing good ever comes from self-pity. You should stop \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_, George, and start doing something to solve your problems. 9. People might think you're a little crazy, but \_\_\_\_\_\_ one way to practice using English. 10. Humor can ease the problems we encounter in life. Sometimes we have to be able to 11. Carol made several careless mistakes at work last week, and her boss is getting impatient to do better work in the future. with her. Carol has 12. Yesterday Fred's car ran out of gas. He had to walk a long way to a gas station. He is still

\_ for

### **Exercise 20. Listening.** (Chart 8-4)

Listen to the beginning of each sentence. Choose the correct completion.

CD 1 Example: You will hear: We wanted to save money, so we painted the inside of our apartment \_\_\_\_\_.

You will circle: myself ourselves yourselves

1.	himself	herself	yourself
2.	yourself	myself	ourselves
3.	ourselves	themselves	myself
4.	themselves	himself	herself
5.	ourselves	yourselves	themselves
6.	himself	herself	myself

### $\Box$ Exercise 21. Looking at grammar. (Chapters $6 \rightarrow 8$ )

Choose the correct words in italics.

- 1. (Penguin, Penguins) are interesting (creature, creatures). They are (bird, birds), but (it, they) cannot fly.
- 2. (Million, Millions) of (year, years) ago, they had (wing, wings). (This, These) wings changed as the birds adapted to (its, their) environment.
- 3. (*Penguin's*, *Penguins'*) principal food (*was*, *were*) ( *fish*, *fishes*). Penguins needed to be able to swim to find their food, so eventually their (*wing*, *wings*) evolved into (*flipper*, *flippers*) that enabled (*it*, *them*) to swim through water with speed and ease.
- 4. Penguins (spends, spend) most of their lives in (water, waters). However, they lay their (egg, eggs) on (land, lands).
- 5. Emperor penguins have interesting egg-laying (habit, habits).
- 6. The female (*lays*, *lay*) one (*egg*, *eggs*) on the (*ice*, *ices*) in Antarctic regions and then immediately (*returns*, *return*) to the ocean.
- 7. After the female lays the egg, the male (takes, take) over. (He, They) (covers, cover) the egg with (his, their) body until (she, he, it, they) (hatches, hatch).
- 8. (*This, These*) process (*takes, take*) seven to eight (*week, weeks*). During (*this, these*) time, the male (*doesn't, don't*) eat.
- 9. After the egg (hatches, hatch), the female returns to take care of the chick, and the male (goes, go) to the ocean to find food for (himself, herself), his mate, and their (offspring, offsprings).
- 10. (Penguin, Penguins) live in a harsh (environment, environments). (He, They) (need, needs) endurance to survive.

### Exercise 22. Warm-up. (Chart 8-5)

Read the dialogue. Discuss the pronouns in blue. Who or what do they refer to?

MRS. COOK: Jack Woods bought a used car. Did you hear?

MR. COOK: Yes, I heard all about his car. He paid next to nothing for it.

MRS. COOK: Right. And now it doesn't run.

MR. COOK: Well, as they say, you get what you pay for.

MRS. COOK: That's certainly true. One gets what one pays for.

8-5 Using You, One, and They	y as Impersonal Pronouns
<ul><li>(a) One should always be polite.</li><li>(b) How does one get to Fifth Avenue from here?</li></ul>	In (a) and (b): <i>One</i> means "any person, people in general."  In (c) and (d): <i>You</i> means "any person, people in general."
<ul><li>(c) You should always be polite.</li><li>(d) How do you get to Fifth Avenue from here?</li></ul>	One is much more formal than you. Impersonal you, rather than one, is used more frequently in everyday English.
(e) lowa is an agricultural state. <i>They</i> grow a lot of corn there.	<b>They</b> is used as an impersonal pronoun in spoken or very informal English to mean "people in general" or "an undefined group of people."
	They has no stated antecedent. Often the antecedent is implied.
	In (e): <i>They</i> = farmers in Iowa

### ☐ Exercise 23. Looking at grammar. (Chart 8-5)

Discuss the meanings of the pronouns in italics.

- 1. I agree with Kyung's decision to quit his corporate job and go to art school. I think *you* need to follow *your* dreams.
  - → The pronouns refer to everyone, anyone, people in general, all of us.
- 2. Jake, if you really want my advice, I think you should find a new job.
  - → The pronouns refer to Jake, a specific person.
- 3. Wool requires special care. If *you* wash wool in hot water, it will shrink. *You* shouldn't throw a wool sweater into a washing machine with *your* cottons.
- 4. Alex, I told you not to wash your sweater in hot water. Now look at it. It's ruined!
- 5. Generosity is its own reward. You always get back more than you give.
- 6. Sonya, let's make a deal. If you wash the dishes, I'll take out the garbage.
- 7. The earth's environmental problems are getting worse all the time. *They* say that the ozone layer is being depleted more and more every year.
- 8. Memory is selective. Often *you* remember only what *you* want to remember. If *you* ask two people to tell *you* about an experience they shared, they might tell *you* two different stories.
- 9. I would have loved to have gone to the concert last night. *They* played Beethoven's Seventh Symphony. I heard it was wonderful.
- 10. I've grown to dislike airplane travel. *They* never give *you* enough room for *your* legs. And if the person in front of *you* puts his seat back, *you* can barely move. *You* can't even reach down to pick up something from the floor.

### Exercise 24. Let's talk. (Chart 8-5)

Discuss the meanings of these common English sayings. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

- 1. "You can't teach an old dog new tricks."
- 2. "You are what you eat."
- 3. "If you're not part of the solution, you're part of the problem."
- 4. "You can fool some of the people all of the time, and you can fool all of the people some of the time, but you can't fool all of the people all of the time." —Abraham Lincoln

### Exercise 25. Warm-up. (Chart 8-6)

Match each sentence to the picture it describes.

- 1. Some of the crows are flying. The others are sitting on a fence.
- 2. Some of the crows are flying. Others are sitting on a fence.



Picture A



Picture B

	Adjective	Pronoun	
Singular Plural	another book (is) other books (are)	another (is) others (are)	Forms of <i>other</i> are used as either adjectives or pronouns Notice:
Singular Plural	the other book (is) the other books (are)	the other (is) the others (are)	<ul> <li>Another is always singular.</li> <li>A final -s is used only for a plural pronoun (others).</li> </ul>
count Anota from	tudents in the class come f ries. One of the students is ther student is from Iraq. A Japan. Other students are rs are from Algeria.	from Mexico. Another is	The meaning of <i>another</i> : "one more in addition to or different from the one(s) already mentioned."  The meaning of <i>other/others</i> (without <i>the</i> ): "several more in addition to or different from the one(s) already mentioned."
	(b) I have three books. Two are mine. The other book is yours. (The other is yours.)		The meaning of <i>the other</i> (s): "all that remains from a
book	, ,	,	given number; the rest of a specific group."
book (c) I have	is yours. ( <i>The other is</i> yourse three books. One is mine s are yours. ( <i>The others a</i>	The other	given number; the rest of a specific group.

	rcise 26. Looking at grammar. (Chart 8-6) applete the sentences with a form of other.	
1.	I got three letters. One was from my father. Another	one was from my
	sister letter was from my girlfriend.	
2.	Look at your hand. You have five fingers. One is your thumb	o is
	your index finger is your middle fin	ger.
	finger is your ring finger. And finger little finger.	the last of the five) is your
3.	Look at your hands. One is your right hand.	is your left hand.
4.	I lost my dictionary, so I bought	
5.	Some people have red hair have bro	own hair.
6.	Some people have red hair people h	nave brown hair.
7.	I have four children. One of them has red hair.	children have
	brown hair.	
8.	I have four children. One of them has red hair.	have brown hair
	rcise 27. Looking at grammar. (Chart 8-6) d each pair of sentences and answer the question that follows.	
	<ul><li>a. One North African country Helen plans to visit is Algeria.</li><li>b. One North African country Alex plans to visit is Tunisia.</li><li>QUESTION: Who is planning to visit more than two country</li></ul>	The other is Algeria.
	<ul><li>a. Purple is one of Mai's favorite colors. The others she likes</li><li>b. Purple is one of Elaine's favorite colors. Others she likes</li><li>QUESTION: Who has only three favorite colors?</li></ul>	_
3.	a. Kazuo took a cookie from the cookie jar and ate it. Then ate it too.	he took another one and
	b. Susie took a cookie from the cookie jar and ate it. Then shate it too.	ne took the other one and
	QUESTION: Whose cookie jar had only two cookies?	
4.	a. Some of the men at the business meeting on Thursday wo wore black suits.	re dark blue suits. Others
	b. Some of the men at the business meeting on Friday wore wore black suits.	dark blue suits. The others
	QUESTION: Mr. Anton wore a gray suit to the business me attend the meeting, Thursday or Friday?	eeting. Which day did he

Con	nplete the sentences with a form of <i>other</i> .
1.	There are two women standing on the corner. One is Helen Jansen, and
2.	They have three children. One has graduated from college and has a job is at Yale University is still living at home.
3.	I would like some more books on this subject. Do you have any that you could lend me?
4.	I would like to read more about this subject. Do you have anybooks that you could lend me?
5.	Marina reads the New York Times every day. She doesn't read anynewspapers.
6.	Some people prefer classical music, but prefer rock music.
7.	I'm almost finished. I just need five minutes.
8.	One of the most important inventions in the history of the world was the printing press.  was the electric light were the telephone the television, and the computer.
9.	Some babies begin talking as early as six months; don't speak unt they are more than two years old.
10.	One common preposition is from common one is in are by, for, and of. The most frequently used prepositions in
	English are at, by, for, from, in, of, to, and with. What are some prepositions?
11.	That country has two basic problems. One is inflation, and is the instability of the government.
12.	I have been in only three cities since I came to the United States. One is New York, and are Washington, D.C., and Chicago.
13.	When his alarm went off this morning, Toshi shut it off, rolled over, and slept for hour.
14.	Individual differences in children must be recognized. Whereas one child might have a strong interest in mathematics and science, child might be more artistic.

Exercise 28. Looking at grammar. (Chart 8-6)

	Con	rcise 29. Let's talk. (Chart 8-6) applete the sentences, using an appropriate form of <i>other</i> . Work in pairs, is a class.	in small	groups,
	SPEA	AKER A (book open): There are two books on my desk. One is  AKER B (book closed): One is red. The other is blue.		
	<ol> <li>2.</li> <li>3.</li> <li>4.</li> <li>5.</li> </ol>	I speak two languages. One is  I speak three languages. One is  I lost my textbook, so I had to buy  Some people have brown hair, but  Hawaii is a popular tourist destination. Italy is  I have two books. One is		
	7. 8. 9. 10.	Some TV programs are excellent, but  Some people need at least eight hours of sleep each night, but  Only two of the students failed the quiz. All of  There are three colors that I especially like. One is  I have two candy bars. I want only one of them. Would you like ?  There are three places in particular I would like to see when I visit (a city One is	y/country)	).
		rcise 30. Listening. (Chart 8-6) uplete each sentence with the form of other you hear.		
CD 1 Frack 43	1.	This coffee is delicious. Could I please have cu	p?	
	2.	The coffee isn't in this grocery bag, so I'll look in	_ one.	
	3.	There are supposed to be ten chairs in the room, but I count only five. Y	Where are	e
	4.	No, let's not use this printer. Let's use one.		
	5.	Bob is a nickname for Robert are Rob and Rol	obie.	
	6.	The sky is clearing. It's going to be beautiful da	ıy.	
		rcise 31. Warm-up. (Chart 8-7) d about Kate and Lisa. Are the statements about them true? Circle "T" false.	for true	and "F"
		DATION: Lisa and Kate talk to each other every other day. Kate saw Lisa to bark. Lisa was with her five children. They were walking behind her, one		-
	1.	Kate talks to Lisa often.	Т	F
	2.	Kate talked to Lisa today. She'll talk to her again tomorrow.	T	F
	3.	Kate last saw Lisa a few weeks ago.	Т	F
	4.	Lisa's children were walking in a line.	T	F

8-7 Common Expressions v	vith Other
(a) Mike and I write to <i>each other</i> every week.  We write to <i>one another</i> every week.	Each other and one another indicate a reciprocal relationship.*  In (a): I write to him every week, and he writes to me every week.
(b) Please write on every other line.	Every other can give the idea of "alternate."  The meaning in (b) means:  Write on the first line.  Do not write on the second line.  Write on the third line.  Do not write on the fourth line. (Etc.)
(c) — Have you seen Ali recently? — Yes. I saw him just <i>the other day</i> .	The other is used in time expressions such as the other day, the other morning, the other week, etc., to refer to the recent past.  In (c): the other day means "a few days ago, not long ago."
<ul> <li>(d) The ducklings walked in a line behind the mother duck. Then the mother duck slipped into the pond. The ducklings followed her. They slipped into the water one after the other.</li> <li>(e) They slipped into the water one after another.</li> </ul>	In (d): one after the other expresses the idea that separate actions occurred very close in time.  In (e): one after another has the same meaning as one after the other.



(f) (g)	No one knows my secret <i>other than</i> Rosa.  No one knows my secret <i>except</i> ( <i>for</i> ) Rosa.	Other than is usually used after a negative to mean "except," as in (f).  Example (g) has the same meaning as (f).
(h)	Fruit and vegetables are full of vitamins and minerals. <i>In other words</i> , they are good for you.	In (h): <i>In other words</i> is used to explain, usually in simpler or clearer terms, the meaning of the preceding sentence(s).

<sup>\*</sup>In typical usage, each other and one another are interchangeable; there is no difference between them. Some native speakers, however, use each other when they are talking about only two persons or things, and one another when there are more than two.

ם		ercise 32. Looking at grammar. (Charts 8-6 and 8-7) inplete the sentences with a form of other.		
	1.	Two countries border on the United States. One is Canada Mexico.	The other	is
	2.	One of the countries I would like to visit is Sweden.  Of course, besides these two countries, there are many would like to see.		Malaysia. places I

3.	Louis and I have been friends for a long time. We've known since we were children.
4.	A: I talked to Sam day.  B: Oh? How is he? I haven't seen him for ages.
5.	In the Southwest there is a large area of land that has little or no rainfall, no trees, and very few plants than cactuses. In words, this area of the country is a desert.
6.	Thank you for inviting me to the picnic. I'd like to go with you, but I've already made plans.
7.	Some people are tall; are short. Some people are fat; are thin. Some people are nearsighted; people are farsighted.
8.	Mr. and Mrs. Jay love They support  They like words, they are a happily married couple.
9.	A: How often do you travel to Portland?  B: Every month I go there to visit my grandmother in a nursing home.
0.	Could I borrow your pen? I need to write a check, but I have nothing to write with than this pencil.
1.	My niece, Kathy, ate one cookie after until she finished the whole



	<b>Exercise 33. Looking at grammar.</b> (Charts 8-6 and 8-7) Complete the sentences with your own words. Use a form of <i>other</i> where indicated.									
	Example: Some people like while (other) prefer  Some people like coffee while others prefer tea.									
	<ol> <li>I have two One is, and (other) is</li> <li>One of the longest rivers in the world is (other) is</li> <li>Some people like to in their free time. (other) prefer</li> <li>There are three that I especially like. One is (other) is (other)</li> </ol>									
	is  5. There are many kinds of Some are, (other) are, and (other) are									
CD 1 Track 44	<b>Exercise 34. Listening.</b> (Chart 8-7) Listen to the way <i>other</i> and <i>except</i> are used. Choose the sentence that is closest in meaning to the one you hear.									
	Example: You will hear: I spend a lot of time with my grandmother. We enjoy each other's company.  You will choose: a. My grandmother and I like to spend time with others.  b. I enjoy spending time with my grandmother.									
	<ol> <li>a. All of the students had the wrong answer.</li> <li>b. Some students had the wrong answer.</li> </ol>									
	<ul><li>2. a. The Clarks each see others on weekends.</li><li>b. The Clarks spend time together on weekends.</li></ul>									
	<ul><li>3. a. Susan spoke with him a while ago.</li><li>b. Susan spoke with him recently.</li></ul>									
	<ul><li>4. a. Three people know about the engagement.</li><li>b. Four people know about the engagement.</li></ul>									
	<ul><li>5. a. Jan knows about the party.</li><li>b. Jan doesn't know about the party.</li></ul>									
	<b>Exercise 35. Check your knowledge.</b> (Chapters $6 \rightarrow 8$ ) Correct the errors.									
	are s s 1. There is many different kind of animal in the world.									
	2. My cousin and her husband moved to other city because they don't like a cold weather.									
	3. I like to travel because I like to learn about other country and custom.									
	4. Collecting stamps is one of my hobby.									
	5. I came here three and a half month ago. I think I have made a good progress in English.									

- 6. When I lost my passport, I had to apply for the another one.
- 7. When I got to class, all of the others students were already in their seats.
- 8. English has borrowed quite a few of word from another languages.
- 9. There is many student from differents countries in this class.
- 10. Thousand of athlete take part in the Olympics.
- 11. Education is one of the most important aspect of life. Knowledges about many different things allow us to live fuller lives.
- 12. All of the students names were on the list.
- 13. I live in a two rooms apartment. Its too small for my family.
- 14. Many of people prefer to live in small towns. Their attachment to their communities prevent them from moving from place to place in search of works.
- 15. Todays news is just as bad as yesterdays news.
- 16. Almost of the students in our class speaks English well.
- 17. The teacher gave us several homework to hand in next Tuesday.
- 18. In today's world, womans work as doctor, pilot, archeologist, and many other thing. Both my mother and father are teacher's.
- 19. Every employees in our company respect Mr. Ward.
- 20. A child needs to learn how to get along with another people, how to spend their time wisely, and how to depend on yourself.

### $\Box$ **Exercise 36. Let's write.** (Chapters $6 \rightarrow 8$ )

Write a paragraph on one of the given topics. Write as quickly as you can. Write whatever comes into your mind. Try to write 100 words in ten minutes.

When you finish your paragraph, exchange it with a classmate. Correct each other's errors before giving it to your teacher.

### Topics:

food computers
English families
this room movies
animals holidays

### **Exercise 37. Let's write and talk.** (Chapters $6 \rightarrow 8$ )

Choose an object and write a short paragraph about it. Do NOT include the name of the object in your writing; always use a pronoun to refer to it, not the noun itself.

Describe the object (What does it look like? What is it made of? What does it feel like? Does it make a noise? Does it have a smell? Etc.), and explain why people use it or how it is used. Begin with its general characteristics; then gradually get more specific.

Finally, read your paragraph aloud to the class or to a small group of classmates. They will try to guess what the object is.

Example: It is usually made of metal. It is hollow. It is round on one end. It can be very small — small enough to fit in your pocket — or large, but not as large as a car. It is used to make noise. It can be used to give a signal. Sometimes it's part of an orchestra. Sometimes it is electric and you push a button to make it ring. What is it?

### **Exercise 38. Let's talk.** (Chapters $6 \rightarrow 8$ )

Think of the best present you have ever been given. Maybe it was something for your birthday, maybe for an anniversary, or maybe it wasn't for any special occasion at all. It could be an object, an activity, or perhaps something someone did for you. Describe it to the class or a small group. Include what it looked like, how it made you feel, and why it was special. The class or group will try to guess what it was.

Example: The best present I ever received was something my son gave me. He had to work hard in order to be able to give me this gift. When he was 18, he decided to go to college. That made me very happy. Many times he didn't think he could finish, but I told him that a good education would be his key to success in life. He studied very hard and never quit. This present took place on one day. I was there and watched him with tears in my eyes. What was this gift?

Answer: Your son's graduation from college.



# Chapter 9 Modals, Part 1

### Exercise 1. Warm-up. (Chart 9-1)

Correct the errors in verb forms.

see.

- 1. She can -saw- it.
- 2. She can to see it.
- 3. She cans see it.
- 4. She can sees it.

- 5. Can pass you the rice, please?
- 6. Do you can see it?\*
- 7. They don't can go there.\*\*
- 8. They aren't able pay their rent.

### 9-1 Basic Modal Introduction

Modal auxiliaries generally express speakers' attitudes. For example, modals can express that a speaker feels something is necessary, advisable, permissible, possible, or probable; and, in addition, they can convey the strength of those attitudes. Each modal has more than one meaning or use. See Chart 10-10, p. 204–205, for a summary overview of modals.

### Modal auxiliaries in English

can could had better mav might must ought (to)

should will would

### **Modal Auxiliaries**

You He She It We You They can do it.
could do it.
had better do it.
may do it.
might do it.
must do it.
ought to do it.
shall do it.
should do it.
will do it.

Modals do not take a final -s, even when the subject is she, he, or it.

CORRECT: She can do it.
INCORRECT: She cans do it.

Modals are followed immediately by the simple form of a verb.

CORRECT: She can do it.

INCORRECT: She can to do it. / She can does it. / She can did it.

The only exception is ought, which is followed by an infinitive (to + the simple form of a verb).

CORRECT: He ought to go to the meeting.

### Phrasal Modals

be able to do it be going to do it be supposed to do it have to do it have got to do it Phrasal modals are common expressions whose meanings are similar to those of some of the modal auxiliaries. For example: *be able to* is similar to *can*; *be going to* is similar to *will*.

An infinitive (to + the simple form of a verb) is used in these similar expressions.

<sup>\*</sup>See Appendix Chart B-1 for question forms with modals.

<sup>\*\*</sup>See Appendix Chart D-1 for negative forms with modals.

### **Exercise 2. Warm-up.** (Charts 9-2 and 9-3)

Complete the requests with *I* or *you*. Which sentences have essentially the same meaning?

- 1. Could \_\_\_\_\_ see that book? Thanks.
- 2. Could \_\_\_\_\_ hand me that book? Thanks.
- 3. May \_\_\_\_\_ see that book? Thanks.
- 4. Can \_\_\_\_\_ hand me that book? Thanks.
- 5. Can \_\_\_\_\_ see that book? Thanks.
- 6. Would \_\_\_\_\_ hand me that book? Thanks.
- 7. Will \_\_\_\_\_ please hand me that book? Thanks.



9-2 1	Polite Requests with "I" as	the Subject
May I Could I	(a) May I borrow your pen (please)? (b) Could I (please) borrow your pen?	May I and could I are used to request permission. They are equally polite, but may I sounds more formal.*  NOTE in (b): In a polite request, could has a present or future meaning, not a past meaning.
Can I	(c) Can I borrow your pen?	Can I is used informally to request permission, especially if the speaker is talking to someone she/he knows fairly well.  Can I is usually considered a little less polite than may I or could I.
	TYPICAL RESPONSES Certainly. Yes, certainly. Of course. Yes, of course. INFORMAL: Sure.	Often the response to a polite request is an action, such as a nod or shake of the head, or a simple "uh-huh," meaning "yes."

<sup>\*</sup>Might is also possible: Might I borrow your pen? Might I is quite formal and polite; it is used much less frequently than may I or could I.

9-3 P	olite Requests with "You" as	the Subject
Would you Will you	(a) Would you pass the salt (please)? (b) Will you (please) pass the salt?	The meaning of would you and will you in a polite request is the same. Would you is more common and is often considered more polite. The degree of politeness, however, is often determined by the speaker's tone of voice.
Could you	(c) Could you pass the salt (please)?	Basically, <i>could you</i> and <i>would you</i> have the same meaning. The difference is slight.  Would you = Do you want to do this please?  Could you = Do you want to do this please, and is it possible for you to do this?  Could you and would you are equally polite.
Can you	(d) Can you (please) pass the salt?	Can you is often used informally. It usually sounds a little less polite than could you or would you.
	TYPICAL RESPONSES Yes, I'd (I would) be happy to / be glad to. Certainly. INFORMAL: Sure.	A person usually responds in the affirmative to a polite request. If a negative response is necessary, a person might begin by saying, "I'd like to, but" (e.g., "I'd like to pass the salt, but I can't reach it.").
	(e) INCORRECT: May you pass the salt?	May is used only with I or we in polite requests.

### Exercise 3. Let's talk. (Charts 9-2 and 9-3)

Ask and answer polite questions. Speaker A presents the situation to Speaker B. Speaker B makes a polite request using Would/Could you, and Speaker A gives a typical response. Work in pairs or as a class.

Example:

SPEAKER A (book open): You and I are co-workers. We don't know each other well.

We're at a lunch table in a cafeteria. You want the pepper.

SPEAKER B (book closed): Would/Could you please pass me the pepper? (Will is also possible

because the speaker uses please, but can is probably not appropriate in

this situation.)

Certainly. I'd be glad to. Here you are. Speaker A (book open):

- 1. You and I are good friends. We're in my apartment. You want to use the phone.
- 2. I'm your instructor. You want to leave class early.
- 3. I'm a student in your class. You hand me some papers. You want me to pass them out to the class.

### (Change roles if working in pairs.)

- 4. I'm your supervisor at work. You knock on my half-open office door. I'm sitting at my desk. You want to come in.
- 5. I'm Dr. North's assistant. You want to make an appointment to see Dr. North.
- 6. You are running toward the elevator. I'm already inside. The door is closing. You ask me to hold it open.

### Exercise 4. Warm-up. (Chart 9-4)

In each dialogue, choose the speaker (A or B) who is going to turn down the heat.

- 1. A: Would you mind turning down the heat?
  - B: No, not at all.
- 2. A: Would you mind if I turned down the heat?
  - B: No, not at all.

## 9-4 Polite Requests with Would You Mind

### **Asking Permission**

- (a) Would you mind if I closed the window?
- (b) Would you mind if I used the phone?

TYPICAL RESPONSES

No, not at all.

No, of course not.

No, that would be fine.

Notice in (a): Would you mind if I is followed by the simple past.\*

The meaning in (a): May I close the window? Is it all right if I close the window? Will it cause you any trouble or discomfort if I close the window?

Notice that the typical response is "no." "Yes" means *Yes, I mind.* In other words: *It is a problem for me.* Another typical response might be "unh-uh," meaning "no."

### Asking Someone to Do Something

- (c) Would you mind closing the window?
- (d) Excuse me. Would you mind repeating that?

TYPICAL RESPONSES

No. I'd be happy to.

Not at all. I'd be glad to.

INFORMAL: No problem. / Sure. / Okay.

Notice in (c): **Would you mind** is followed by the -ing form of a verb (a gerund).

The meaning in (c): I don't want to cause you any trouble, but would you please close the window? Would that cause you any inconvenience?

The informal responses "Sure" and "Okay" are common but not logical. The speaker means *No, I wouldn't mind* but seems to be saying the opposite: *Yes, I would mind*. Native speakers understand that the response "Sure" or "Okay" in this situation means that the speaker agrees to the request.

NOTE: The simple past does not refer to past time after *would you mind*; it refers to present or future time. See Chart 20-3, p. 419, for more information.

### **Exercise 5. Looking at grammar.** (Chart 9-4)

Make sentences using Would you mind.

- 1. a. I want to leave early. -> Would you mind if I left early?
  - b. I want you to leave early. > Would you mind leaving early?
- 2. a. I want you to speak with John.
  - b. I want to speak with John.
- 3. a. I want to turn on the air conditioner.
  - b. I want you to turn on the air conditioner.

<sup>\*</sup>Sometimes, in informal spoken English, the simple present is used: Would you mind if I close the window?

	Con	nple	se 6. Loolete the senterm of the verbent.	nces	with the	verbs in	parenth	eses. U				
	1.	A:	I'm very tir	red a	nd need to	o sleep.	Would y	ou mine	d (go) _	if I	went	to bed?
		B:	I'm sorry.	I did	ln't under	stand w	hat you s	aid. Wo	ould you	mind (	(repeat)	
			repea	ting	tha	t?						
	2.	A:	Are you con	ming	g with us?							
		B:	I know I pr	omi	sed to go v	with you	, but I'n	not fee	eling ver	y good.	Would y	ou mind
			(stay)			home	?					
		A:	Of course r	ot.								
	3.	A:	It's getting	hot	in here. W	Vould yo	u mind	(open) _			the	window?
		B:	No.									
	4.	A:	This is prol	babl	y none of	my busi	ness, but	would	you mir	nd (ask)		
			you a perso	nal	question?							
		B:	It depends.									Vicio (Color III)
	5.	A:	Would you	min	nd (smoke)				?	ALL A	i gulling	
		B:	I'd really ra	ther	you didn	t.						
	6.	A:	Excuse me.	. Wc	ould vou n	nind (spe	eak)				>	
					a li			I didn	't catch	what yo	ou said.	
		B:	Oh, of course. I'm sorry.									
	7.	A:	I don't like	this	TV progr	am. Wo	uld you :	mind (c	hange) <sub>-</sub>			the
			channel?									
		B:	Unh-uh.									
CD 1 Track 45	List	en t	se 7. Liste to each required to each required to the second to the secon	est.	Choose tl	he exped		onse (a	. or b.).	In rela	xed speed	ch, the <i>you</i>
	Exa	mpl	e: You will I You will o		: This is		•		ou mind b. Yes.	if I ope	ened the d	loor?
	1.	a.	Yes.	b.	Not at all	. I'd be	glad to.					
	2.	a.	Yes.	b.	No, that v	would be	e fine.					
	3.	a.	Yes.	b.	No, I'd be	e happy	to.					
	4.	a.	Sure.	b.	Yes.							
	5.	a.	Yes.	b.	No proble	em.						

### Let's talk: pairwork. (Chart 9-4)

Work with a partner. Read each situation and create a dialogue. Partner A makes a polite request using *Would you mind*. Partner B gives a typical response.

Example: You have a library book. You want the other person to take it back to the library for you.

PARTNER A: Are you going to the library?

PARTNER B: Yes.

PARTNER A: This book is due. Would you mind taking it back to the library for me?

PARTNER B: Not at all. I'd be glad to.

- 1. You've finished dinner. You're about to wash the dinner dishes. You want the other person to dry them.
- 2. You're feeling tired. A friend has arrived to pick you up for a party, but you've decided not to go.
- 3. One of you says that you're going to a particular store. The other one also wants something from that store but doesn't have time to go there.
- 4. One of you wants to ask the other a personal question.
- 5. You've bought a new cell phone. You don't know how to send a text message, but your friend does. You want to learn how to do it.

### ☐ Exercise 9. Looking at grammar. (Charts 9-2 → 9-4)

Complete the polite requests with your own words. Try to imagine what the speaker might say in the given situation.

1.	JACK:	What's the trouble, Officer?
	OFFICER:	You made an illegal U-turn.
	JACK:	I did?
	OFFICER:	Yes. Maysee your anversal cense
	JACK:	Certainly. It's in my wallet.
	Officer:	Would
2.	WAITER:	Good evening. Are you ready to order?
	CUSTOMER:	No, we're not. Could
	WAITER:	Certainly. I'll be back shortly.
3.	SALLY:	Are you driving to the meeting tonight?
	SAM:	Uh-huh, I am.
	SALLY:	Could
	SAM:	Sure. I'll pick you up at 7:00.
4.	MR. PENN:	Something's come up, and I can't meet with you Tuesday. Would you mind
	Mc Cow	Lat ma check my colander

5. MECHANIC: What seems to be the trouble with your car?

CUSTOMER: Something's wrong with the brakes, I think. Could

MECHANIC: Sure. Just pull the car into the garage.

6. Shelley: Are you enjoying the movie?

MIKE: Yeah, you?

SHELLEY: Yes, but I can't see over the man in front of me. Would you mind \_\_\_\_\_?

MIKE: Not at all. I see two empty seats across the aisle.

### $\Box$ Exercise 10. Let's talk: pairwork. (Charts 9-2 $\rightarrow$ 9-4)

Work with a partner. Make up a short dialogue for each situation. The dialogue should contain a polite request and a response to that request.

Example: Janet and Sara are roommates and good friends. Janet doesn't have enough money to go to a movie tonight. She wants to borrow some from Sara.

JANET: There's a movie I really want to see tonight, but I'm running a little low on money right now. Could I borrow a few dollars? I'll pay you back Friday.

SARA: Sure. No problem. How much do you need?

- 1. Rashid is walking down the hall of his office building. He needs to know what time it is. He asks Elena, a co-worker he's seen before but has never met.
- 2. Larry is trying to study. His roommate, Matt, is playing a CD very loudly. This is bothering Larry, who is trying to be polite even though he feels frustrated and a little angry.
- 3. Ms. Jackson is in the middle of the city. She's lost. She's trying to find the bus station. She stops a friendly-looking stranger on the street to ask for directions.
- 4. Paul just arrived at work and remembered that he left his stove on in his apartment. His neighbor Mrs. Wu has a key to the front door, and Paul knows that Mrs. Wu hasn't left for work yet. Anxiously, he telephones Mrs. Wu for help.

### $\Box$ **Exercise 11. Let's talk.** (Charts 9-2 $\rightarrow$ 9-4)

What are some polite requests you have heard (or have said) in the given locations? Create typical dialogues.

1. in this classroom

3. at a restaurant

5. on the telephone

2. at an airport

4. at a grocery store

6. at a clothing store

### Exercise 12. Warm-up. (Chart 9-5)

Read the statements. Choose the more typical context (a. or b.) for the words in blue. Discuss their meanings.

1. Gosh! Look at the time. I've got to go. I have class in five minutes!

a. everyday conversation

b. formal writing

2. All applicants must be 18 years of age and must have a valid driver's license.

a. everyday conversation

b. formal writing

3. We have to prepare a research paper on global warming in Dr. Chen's seminar this term. I think it'll be interesting.

a. everyday conversation

b. formal writing

# Q-5 Expressing Necessity: Must, Have To, Have Got To Must, Have To (a) All applicants must take an entrance exam. (b) All applicants have to take an entrance exam. (c) All applicants have to take an entrance exam. Must and have to both express necessity. The meaning is the same in (a) and (b): It is necessary for every applicant to take an entrance exam. There is no other

(c)	I'm looking for Sue. I <i>have to talk</i> to her about our lunch date tomorrow. I can't meet her for
	lunch because I have to go to a business
	meeting at 1:00.

In everyday statements of necessity, *have to* is used more commonly than *must*.

choice. The exam is required.

meeting at 1:00.

(d) Where's Sue? I *must talk* to her right away. I have an urgent message for her.

*Must* is usually stronger than *have to* and can indicate urgency or stress importance.

The meaning in (c): I need to do this, and I need to do that.

The meaning in (d) is stronger: *This is very important!*Because it is a strong word, *must* (meaning necessity) is relatively rare in conversation. It is usually found in legal or academic writing.

- (e) I have to ("hafta") be home by eight.(f) He has to ("hasta") go to a meeting tonight.
- NOTE: Native speakers often say "hafta" and "hasta," as in (e) and (f).

### Have Got To

(g) I have got to go now. I have a class in ten minutes. Have got to also expresses the idea of necessity: (g) and (h) have the same meaning.

(h) I  $\emph{have to go}$  now. I have a class in ten minutes.

*Have got to* is informal and is used primarily in spoken English.

(ii) That's is go now made a slass in terriminates

Have to is used in both formal and informal English.

(i) I have got to go ("I've gotta go / I gotta go") now.

The usual pronunciation of *got to* is "gotta." Sometimes *have* is dropped in speech: "I gotta do.it."

### **Past Necessity**

(j) PRESENT OF FUTURE

I have to / have got to / must study tonight.

### Had to expresses past necessity.

(k) PAST
I had to study last night.

In (j): had to = needed to: I needed to study last night.

There is no other past form for must (when it means necessity) or have got to.

# Exercise 13. Let's talk. (Chart 9-5)

Answer the questions in complete sentences using *must*, *have to*, *had to*, or *have got to*. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

- 1. What are some things you have to do after class today?
- 2. What have you got to do before you go to bed tonight? Is there any place you have got to go later today?
- 3. Think about everyday life. What are some things you must have in order to survive?
- 4. Think about your plans for the next week. What are some things you have to do?
- 5. Think about your activities last week. What were some things you had to do?
- 6. Think of the job of a doctor. What kinds of things must a doctor know about? What are some things a doctor has to do every day?

■ Exercise 14. Warm	-up.	(Chart	9-6
---------------------	------	--------	-----

Choose the sentences that Speaker B might say in response to Speaker A.

SPEAKER A: The meeting starts in an hour. We have plenty of time.

SPEAKER B: 1. We must not hurry.

- 2. We don't have to hurry.
- 3. We don't need to hurry.

# **9-6** Lack of Necessity and Prohibition: *Have To* and *Must* in the Negative

in the Negative	
Lack of Necessity	
(a) Tomorrow is a holiday. We <i>don't have to go</i> to class.	When used in the negative, <i>must</i> and <i>have to</i> have different meanings.
(b) I can hear you. You don't have to shout.*	Negative form: <i>do not have to</i> = lack of necessity.
	The meaning in (a): We don't need to go to class tomorrow because it is a holiday.
Prohibition	
You <i>must not tell</i> anyone my secret. Do you promise?	must not = prohibition (DO NOT DO THIS!)
	The meaning in (c): Do not tell anyone my secret. I forbid it. Telling anyone my secret is prohibited.
	Negative contraction: <i>mustn't</i> . (The first "t" is silent: "muss-ənt.")
(d) Don't tell anyone my secret. (e) You can't tell anyone my secret. (f) You'd better not tell anyone my secret.	Because <i>must not</i> is so strong, speakers also express prohibition with imperatives, as in (d), or with other modals, as in (e) and (f).

<sup>\*</sup>Lack of necessity may also be expressed by need not + the simple form of a verb: You needn't shout. The use of needn't as an auxiliary is chiefly British except in certain common expressions such as You needn't worry.

# ☐ Exercise 15. Looking at grammar. (Chart 9-6)

Complete the sentences with must not or do/does not have to.

- 1. I've already finished all my work, so I \_\_\_\_\_\_ don't have to \_\_\_\_\_ study tonight. I think I'll read for a while.
- 2. In order to be a good salesclerk, you \_\_\_\_\_\_ be rude to customers.
- 3. You \_\_\_\_\_ introduce me to Dr. Gray. We've already met.
- 4. A person \_\_\_\_\_\_ become rich and famous in order to live a successful life.
- 5. If you encounter a growling dog, you \_\_\_\_\_\_ show any signs of fear. If a dog senses fear, it is more likely to attack a person.

	6. I	go to the doctor. I'm feeling much better.			
	7. We	go to the concert if you don't want to, but it might be good.			
	8. A person	get married in order to lead a happy and fulfilling life.			
0	Exercise 16. Let's talk. (Chart 9-6) What do you look for in a leader? What qualities do you think a leader needs in order to be effective? Complete the sentences with <i>must</i> , <i>must not</i> , <i>has to</i> , or <i>doesn't have to</i> . Discuss your answers.				
	An effective leader of a country				
	1	be well educated.			
	2	be flexible and open to new ideas.			
	3	be wealthy.			
	4	have a family (spouse and children).			
	5	have a military background.			
	6	use his or her power for personal financial gain.			
	7	ignore the wishes of the majority of the people.			
	8	be a good public speaker.			
CD 1 Track 46	Exercise 17. Listening. (Chart 9-6) Complete the sentences with <i>must</i> , <i>must not</i> , or <i>don't have to</i> using the information you hear. Finish the first situation before moving on to the second.  SITUATION 1: Class registration				
	1. New students	register in person.			
		register in person.			
	3. New students	forget their ID.			
	SITUATION 2: Class changes and tuition				
	4. All students	make class changes in person.			
	5. Students	pay their tuition at the time of registration.			
	6. Students	pay their tuition late.			
٦	Exercise 18. Warm-u Read the situation. What	<b>p.</b> (Chart 9-7) advice would you give Amir?			
	SITUATION: Amir has a ba	d toothache.			

- 1. He should see a dentist immediately.
- 2. He should wait and see if the pain goes away.
- 3. He should call an ambulance.

- 4. He should put an ice-pack on his cheek.
- 5. He should take some pain medicine.
- 6. He should get his cousin to pull the tooth right away.

9	7 Advisability: Should, Ought	To, Had Better
	You <b>should study</b> harder. You <b>ought to study</b> harder. Drivers <b>should obey</b> the speed limit. Drivers <b>ought to obey</b> the speed limit.	Should and ought to both express advisability. Their meaning ranges in strength from a suggestion (This is a good idea) to a statement about responsibility or duty (This is a very important thing to do).  The meaning in (a): This is a good idea. This is my advice. In (b): This is an important responsibility.
(c)	You shouldn't leave your keys in the car.	Negative contraction: <b>shouldn't</b> .*  NOTE: the /t/ is often hard to hear in relaxed, spoken English.
(d)	I <i>ought to</i> ("otta") <i>study</i> tonight, but I think I'll watch TV instead.	Native speakers often pronounce <i>ought to</i> as "otta" in informal speech.
(e) (f)	The gas tank is almost empty. We had better stop at the next gas station.  You had better take care of that cut on your hand soon, or it will get infected.	In meaning, had better is close to should and ought to, but had better is usually stronger. Often had better implies a warning or a threat of possible bad consequences.  The meaning in (e): If we don't stop at a service station, there will be a bad result. We will run out of gas.  Notes on the use of had better:  It has a present or future meaning.  It is followed by the simple form of a verb.  It is more common in speaking than writing.
10,	You'd better take care of it. You better take care of it.	Contraction: 'd better, as in (g). Sometimes in speaking, had is dropped, as in (h).
(i)	You'd better not be late.	Negative form: <i>had better</i> + <i>not</i>
*Oug	ht to is not commonly used in the negative. If it is, the to is a <b>Exercise 19. Looking at grammar.</b> (Complete the dialogues with your own words give advice.	
	<ol> <li>A: The shoes I bought last week don't find B: You</li></ol>	
	B: No, not yet.  A: Flights fill up fast near the holidays.	You
	3. A: Yikes! My class starts in five minutes	. I wasn't watching the time.

B: You \_\_\_\_

5. A: I bought these organic apples, and all of them are rotten inside.

4. A: I have the hiccups.

B: You \_\_\_\_\_

B: You \_\_\_\_\_

	Exercise 20. Let's talk: pairwork. (Chart 9-7) Work with a partner. Partner A presents the problem. Partner B gives advice using should, ought to, or had better.
	Example:  PARTNER A (book open): I have a test tomorrow.  PARTNER B (book closed): You should / ought to / had better study tonight.
	<ol> <li>I can't see the board when I sit in the back row.</li> <li>My roommate snores, and I can't get to sleep.</li> <li>Pam's younger brother, who is 18, is using illegal drugs. How can she help him?</li> </ol>
	<ul> <li>Change roles.</li> <li>4. My apartment is a mess, and my mother is coming to visit tomorrow!</li> <li>5. I have six months to improve my English.</li> <li>6. The Taylors' daughter is very excited about going to Denmark for a vacation.</li> </ul>
	Exercise 21. Let's talk: pairwork. (Chart 9-7) Work with a partner. Complete the dialogues with your own words.
	A: Oops! I spilledcoffee on my shirt.  B: You'd betterrun it under hot water before the stain sets.
	2. A: My doctor said I should, but I  B: Well, I think you'd better
	3. A: I've been studying for three days straight.  B: I know. You should
	4. A: Do you think I ought to or  B: I think you'd better  If you don't,
	5. A: Lately I can't seem to concentrate on anything. I feel  B: Maybe you should  Or have you thought about
0	Exercise 22. Let's talk. (Charts 9-5 → 9-7) Which sentence in each pair is stronger? Discuss situations in which a speaker might say these

sentences.

- 1. a. You should go to a doctor.
  - b. You'd better go to a doctor.
- 2. a. Mary should go to work today.
  - b. Mary must go to work today.
- 3. a. We've got to go to class.
  - b. We ought to go to class.

- 4. a. I have to go to the post office.
  - b. I should go to the post office.
- 5. a. We shouldn't go into that room.
  - b. We must not go into that room.
- 6. a. You'd better not go there alone.
  - b. You shouldn't go there alone.

# Exercise 23. Looking at grammar. (Charts $9-5 \rightarrow 9-7$ )

Complete the sentences with **should** or **must/have to**. In some sentences either one is possible, but the meaning is different. Discuss the difference in meanings.

- 1. A person \_\_\_\_\_ must / has to \_\_\_\_ eat in order to live.
- 2. A person \_\_\_\_\_ should \_\_\_\_ eat a balanced diet.
- 3. If you want to become a doctor, you \_\_\_\_\_\_ go to medical school for many years.
- 4. I don't have enough money to take the bus, so I \_\_\_\_\_ walk home.
- 5. Walking is good exercise. You say you want to get more exercise. You

  walk to and from work instead of taking the bus.
- 6. We \_\_\_\_\_ go to Colorado for our vacation.
- 7. According to my advisor, I \_\_\_\_\_\_ take another English course.
- 8. Rice \_\_\_\_\_ have water in order to grow.
- 9. This pie is very good. You \_\_\_\_\_try a piece.
- 10. This pie is excellent! You \_\_\_\_\_try a piece.\*



# **Exercise 24. Listening.** (Charts $9-5 \rightarrow 9-7$ )

CD 1

Listen to each sentence and choose the answer (a. or b.) that has the same meaning. In some cases <u>both</u> answers are correct.

Example: You will hear: During the test, do not look at your neighbor's paper.
You will choose: a. You don't have to look at you neighbor's paper.

(b.) You must not look at your neighbor's paper.

- 1. a. You don't have to lock the door.
  - b. You must not lock the door.
- 2. a. You must show proof of citizenship.
  - b. You have to show proof of citizenship.
- 3. a. You ought to arrive early.
  - b. You should arrive early.
- 4. a. To enter the boarding area, passengers should have boarding passes.
  - b. To enter the boarding area, passengers must have boarding passes.

<sup>\*</sup>Sometimes in speaking, must has the meaning of a very enthusiastic should.

### Exercise 25. Warm-up. (Chart 9-8)

Choose the student (Jason or Jim) who said this sentence: "I should have studied."







Jim

# 9-8 The Past Form of Should

- (a) I had a test this morning. I didn't do well on the test because I didn't study for it last night. I should have studied last night.
- (b) You were supposed to be here at 10:00 P.M., but you didn't come until midnight. We were worried about you. You **should have called** us. (You did not call.)
- (c) My back hurts. I should not have carried that heavy box up two flights of stairs. (I carried the box, and now I'm sorry.)
- (d) We went to a movie, but it was a waste of time and money. We should not have gone to the movie.

Past form: should have + past participle.\*

The meaning in (a): I should have studied = Studying was a good idea, but I didn't do it. I made a mistake.

Usual pronunciation of **should have**: "should-əv" or "should-ə."

The meaning in (c): I should not have carried = I carried something, but it turned out to be a bad idea. I made a mistake.

Usual pronunciation of **should not have**: "shouldn't-əv" or "shouldn't-ə."

# Exercise 26. Listening. (Chart 9-8)



Listen to each situation and choose the best advice (a. or b.). In some cases, <u>both</u> answers are correct.

Example: You will hear: Your report had spelling errors because you didn't run a spellcheck.

You will choose: (a.) I should have run a spellcheck.

б. I shouldn't have run a spellcheck.

- 1. a. She should have spent more money.
  - b. She shouldn't have spent so much money.
- 2. a. I should have gone with them.
  - b. I shouldn't have stayed home.

<sup>\*</sup>The past form of ought to is ought to have + past participle (I ought to have studied.). It has the same meaning as the past form of should. In the past, should is used more commonly than ought to. Had better is used only rarely in a past form (e.g., He had better have taken care of it.) and usually only in speaking, not writing.

- 3. a. He shouldn't have had so much coffee.
  - b. He should have had more coffee.
- 4. a. She shouldn't have been dishonest.
  - b. She should have been more honest.

### Exercise 27. Let's talk. (Chart 9-8)

Speaker A presents the given situation. Speaker B comments on it using **should/shouldn't have** + past participle. Work in pairs, in groups, or as a class.

#### Example:

SPEAKER A (book open): I didn't invite Sonya to my party. That made her feel bad. I'm sorry I

didn't invite her.

SPEAKER B (book closed): You should have invited Sonya to your party.

- 1. Tim made a mistake yesterday. He left the door to his house open, and a bird flew in. He had a terrible time catching the bird.
- 2. There was an important meeting yesterday afternoon, but you decided not to go. That was a mistake. Now your boss is angry.
- 3. Emily didn't feel good a couple of days ago. I told her to see a doctor, but she didn't. That was a mistake. Now she is very sick.
- 4. Nick signed a contract to buy some furniture without reading it thoroughly. Now he has discovered that he is paying a higher interest rate than he expected. He made a mistake.

### **Exercise 28. Let's talk: pairwork.** (Chart 9-8)

Work with a partner. Partner A presents the situation. Partner B comments on it using **should/shouldn't have** + past participle.

#### Example:

PARTNER A (book open): You failed the test because you didn't study.

PARTNER B (book closed): I should have studied.

- 1. You are cold because you didn't wear a coat.
- 2. Your friend is upset because you didn't return his call.
- 3. The room is full of flies because you opened the window.
- 4. You don't have any food for dinner because you didn't go to the grocery store.
- 5. You bought a friend a box of candy for her birthday, but she doesn't like candy.

#### Change roles.

- 6. John loved Marta, but he didn't marry her. Now he is unhappy.
- 7. John loved Marta, and he married her. But now he is unhappy.
- 8. The weather was beautiful yesterday, but you stayed inside all day.
- 9. You lent your car to your friend, but she had an accident because she was driving on the wrong side of the road.
- 10. You overslept this morning because you didn't set your alarm clock.

### Exercise 29. Let's talk or write. (Chart 9-8)

Discuss or write what you think the people in the given situations **should have done** or **shouldn't have done**.

Example: Tom didn't study for the test. During the exam, he panicked and started looking at other students' test papers. He didn't think the teacher saw him, but she did. She warned him once to stop cheating, but he continued. As a result, the teacher took Tom's test paper, told him to leave the room, and failed him on the exam.

- → Tom should have studied for the test.
- → He shouldn't have looked at other students' papers during the test.
- → He shouldn't have started cheating.
- → He should have known the teacher would see him cheating.
- → He should have stopped cheating after the first warning.
- → The teacher should have ripped up Tom's paper and sent him out of the room the first time she saw him cheating.
- 1. Kazu and his wife, Julie, had good jobs as professionals in New York City. Kazu was offered a high-paying job in Chicago, which he immediately accepted. Julie was shocked when he came home that evening and told her the news. She liked her job and the people she worked with. She didn't want to move away and look for another job.
- 2. For three years, Donna had been saving her money for a trip to Europe. Her brother, Hugo, had a good job, but he spent all of his money on expensive cars, clothes, and entertainment. Suddenly, Hugo was fired from work and had no money to support himself while he looked for another job. Donna lent him nearly all of her savings, and within three weeks he spent it all on his car, more clothes, and expensive restaurants.

# ☐ Exercise 30. Warm-up. (Chart 9-9)

Correct the errors in the form of be supposed to.

is

- 1. The building custodian  $_{\wedge}$  supposed to\* unlock the doors every morning.
- 2. We're not suppose to open that door.
- 3. I have a meeting at seven tonight. I suppose to be there a little early to discuss the agenda.
- 4. I'm suppose to be at the meeting. I suppose\* I'd better go.
- 5. Where have you been? You suppose be here an hour ago!

<sup>\*</sup>COMPARE: He is supposed to = He is expected to.

I suppose = I guess, I think, I believe

9.	-9 Obligation: Be Supposed To	
(a) (b)	The game <i>is supposed to begin</i> at 10:00.  The committee <i>is supposed to vote</i> by secret ballot.	Be supposed to expresses the idea that someone (I, we, they, the teacher, lots of people, my father, etc.) expects something to happen.
		Be supposed to often expresses expectations about scheduled events, as in (a), or correct procedures, as in (b).
(c)	I am supposed to go to the meeting. My boss told me that he wants me to attend.	Be supposed to also expresses expectations about behavior.
(d)	The children are supposed to put away their toys before they go to bed.	The meaning is the same in (c) and (d): Someone else expects (requests or requires) certain behavior.
(e)	Jack was supposed to call me last night. I wonder why he didn't.	Be supposed to in the past (was/were supposed to) expresses unfulfilled expectations.  The meaning in (e): I expected Jack to call, but he didn't.

#### Exercise 31. Let's talk. (Chart 9-9)

Answer the questions in complete sentences. Use be supposed to. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

#### Example:

Speaker A (book open): If you're driving and a traffic light turns red, what are you supposed

to do?

Speaker B (book closed): You're supposed to come to a complete stop.\*

- 1. What are you supposed to do if you're involved in a traffic accident?
- 2. What are you supposed to do prior to takeoff in an airplane?
- 3. What are some things athletes in training are supposed to do, and some things they're not supposed to do?
- 4. If you're driving and an ambulance with flashing lights and blaring sirens comes up behind you, what are you supposed to do?

(Change roles if working in pairs).

- 5. Can you think of something you were supposed to do yesterday (or sometime in the past) but didn't do?
- 6. What are we supposed to be doing right now?
- 7. Tell me about any job you've had. What were you supposed to do on a typical day?
- 8. In the place you live or work, who is supposed to do what? In other words, what are the duties or responsibilities of the people who live or work with you?

<sup>\*</sup>Note the use of impersonal you. See Chart 8-5, p. 147.

# **Exercise 32. Looking at grammar.** (Charts $9-5 \rightarrow 9-9$ )

Which sentence in each pair is stronger?

- 1. a. You had better wear a seat belt.
  - b. You ought to wear a seat belt.
- 2. a. You *must wear* a seat belt.
  - b. You had better wear a seat belt.
- 3. a. You have to wear a seat belt.
  - b. You are supposed to wear a seat belt.

- 4. a. We are supposed to bring pens.
  - b. We have to bring pens.
- 5. a. We *ought to bring* pens.
  - b. We have got to bring pens.
- 6. a. We had better bring pens.
  - b. We should bring pens.

### $\Box$ Exercise 33. Let's talk or write. (Charts 9-5 $\rightarrow$ 9-9)

Choose an occupation from the list or any other occupation of your choosing. Make sentences about it using the given verbs.

Example: teacher  $\rightarrow$  A teacher should be very patient.

should be supposed to ought to had better have to have got to must shouldn't be not supposed to had better not do not have to must not

### Occupations:

- 1. tour guide
- 2. engineer
- 3. nurse
- 4. taxi driver
- 5. salesclerk
- 6. plumber
- 7. artist
- 8. veterinarian



# **Exercise 34. Let's write or talk.** (Charts $9-5 \rightarrow 9-9$ )

Choose one (or more) of the topics for writing, group discussion, or role-playing. Try to include the words from the given list on the next page.

Example: Pretend that you are the supervisor of a roomful of young children. The children are in your care for the next six hours. What would you say to them to make sure they understood your expectations and your rules, so that they would be safe and cooperative?

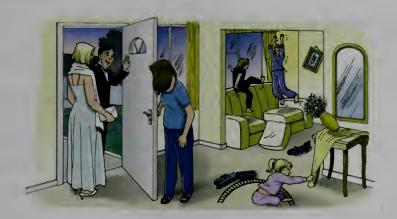
- → You should pick up your toys when you are finished playing with them.
- → You have to stay in this room. Do not go outside without my permission.
- → You're supposed to take a short nap at one o'clock. Etc.

should have to
be supposed to have got to
ought to must
had better shouldn't

be not supposed to had better not do not have to must not

#### Topics:

- 1. Pretend that you are a travel agent and you are helping two students who are traveling abroad for a vacation. You want them to understand the travel arrangements you have made, and you want to explain some of the local customs of the countries they will be visiting.
- 2. Pretend that you are the supervisor of a café and you are talking to two new employees. You want to acquaint them with their jobs and your expectations.
- 3. Pretend that you are instructing the person who will watch your three young children while you are out for the evening. They haven't had dinner, and they don't like to go to bed when they're told to.



# ☐ Exercise 35. Warm-up. (Chart 9-10)

Circle yes if the speaker is expressing an intention or plan; circle no if not. In which of these sentences do you know for sure that the speaker did not complete the plan?

	ones do journe. Tot oute une speuner did not complete une plum.	INTENTION	n/plan?
1.	I am going to call you at 9:00 tomorrow.	yes	no
2.	I was going to call you, but I couldn't find your phone number.	yes	no
3.	I was going to class when I ran into a friend from childhood.	yes	no
4.	I was planning to go to college right after high school but then decided		
	to work for a year first.	yes	no
5.	I was working at my computer when the electricity went off.	yes	no
6.	I had planned to talk to my manager today about a raise, but she was		
	out sick.	yes	no

(a) I'm going to go to the concert tomorrow I'm really looking forward to it.	Am/is/are going to is used to talk about intentions for future activities, as in (a).
(b) Jack was going to go to the movie last changed his mind.	night, but he  Was/were going to talks about past intentions. Usually, these are unfulfilled intentions, i.e., activities someone intended to do but did not do.  The meaning in (b): Jack was planning to go to the concert, but he didn't go.
	concert, but he didn't go.
<ul> <li>(c) I was planning to go, but I didn't.</li> <li>I was hoping to go, but I couldn't.</li> <li>I was intending to go, but I didn't.</li> <li>I was thinking about going, but I didn't.</li> </ul>	Other ways of expressing unfulfilled intentions are to use plan, hope, intend, and think about in the past progressive, as in (c), or in the past perfect, as in (d).
(d) I had hoped to go, but I couldn't. I had intended to go, but I didn't. I had thought about going, but I didn't. I had planned to go, but I changed my	

### ☐ Exercise 36. Looking at grammar. (Chart 9-10)

Restate each sentence in two other ways.

Example: I was going to call you, but I couldn't get cell phone reception.

- $\rightarrow$  I had planned to call you, but I couldn't get cell phone reception.
- ightarrow I was intending to call you, but I couldn't get cell phone reception.
- 1. I was going to stay home on my day off, but I had too much work at the office.
- 2. I was going to surprise you with jewelry for your birthday, but I wasn't sure what you'd like.
- 3. I was going to reply to your email right away, but I got distracted by my children.

# Exercise 37. Let's talk. (Chart 9-10)

Take turns completing the sentences. Work in pairs or small groups. Share some of your answers with the class.

- 1. I was going to get up early this morning, but . . . .
- 2. I had intended to meet you at the restaurant, but . . . .
- 3. I was planning to visit you this weekend, but . . . .
- 4. I had hoped to see you one more time before you left, but . . . .
- 5. We had thought about inviting the Smiths to our party, but . . . .
- 6. I was going to call you on your birthday, but . . . .
- 7. We were hoping to see that movie in a theater, but . . . .

# **Exercise 38. Warm-up.** (Chart 9-11)

Imagine that next Tuesday you have a holiday. You and your roommate are making plans. Read the list of activities. Which ones sound good to you?

#### Activities:

- 1. Let's go to a movie.
- 2. Why don't we study grammar all day?
- 3. Let's go shopping.

- 4. Why don't we fly to Paris for lunch?
- 5. Let's play video games.
- 6. Why don't we clean and do the laundry?

9-11 Making Suggestions: Let's	s, Why Don't, Shall I / We
(a) Let's go to a movie.	let's = let us Let's is followed by the simple form of a verb.
(b) Let's not go to a movie. Let's stay home instead.	Negative form: <i>let's</i> + <i>not</i> + <i>simple verb Let's</i> means <i>I have a suggestion for us.</i>
<ul> <li>(c) Why don't we go to a movie?</li> <li>(d) Why don't you come around seven?</li> <li>(e) Why don't I give Mary a call?</li> </ul>	Why don't is used primarily in spoken English to make a friendly suggestion.  The meaning in (c): Let's go to a movie. In (d): I suggest that you come around seven. In (e): Should I give Mary a call? Do you agree with my suggestion?
(f) Shall I open the window? Is that okay with you? (g) Shall we leave at two? Is that okay?	When <b>shall</b> is used with <b>I</b> or <b>we</b> in a question, the speaker is usually making a suggestion and asking another person if she/he agrees with this suggestion, as in (f) and (g). The use of <b>shall</b> + <b>I</b> / <b>we</b> is relatively formal and infrequent in American English.
(h) Let's go, <i>shall we</i> ? (i) Let's go, <i>okay</i> ?	Sometimes <b>shall we?</b> is used as a tag question after <b>let's</b> , as in (h). More informally, <b>okay?</b> is used as a tag question, as in (i).

**Exercise 39. In your own words.** (Chart 9-11) Complete the conversations with your own words.

B: I agree. Why don't \_

A: No. Sleeping in a tent is too uncomfortable. Let's \_

1.	A:	A new Japanese restaurant just opened downtown. Let'seat there tonight.
	B:	Great idea! I'd like some good sushi.
	A:	Why don'tyou call and make a reservation? Make it for about 7:30.
	B:	No, let's make it for 8:00. I'll be working until 7:30 tonight.
2.	A:	I don't feel like staying home today.
	B:	Neither do I. Why don't
	A:	Hey, that's a great idea! What time shall
	B:	Let's leave in an hour.
3.	A:	Shall or first:
	B:	Let's first; then we can take our time over dinner
	A:	Why don't
	B:	Good idea.
4.	A:	Let's over the weekend

It won't be that expensive, and we'll have hot water and all the comforts of home.

# Exercise 40. Warm-up. (Chart 9-12)

Read the conversation. Whose suggestion seems stronger, Alice's or Roberto's?



9	-12 Making Suggestions: Could	l vs. Should
(a) (b)	,	Could can be used to make suggestions.  The meanings in (a) and (b) are similar: The speaker is suggesting a picnic.
(c) (d)	<ul> <li>— I'm having trouble in math class.</li> <li>You should talk to your teacher.</li> <li>Maybe you should talk to your teacher.</li> <li>— I'm having trouble in math class.</li> <li>You could talk to your teacher.</li> <li>Or you could ask Ann to help you with your math lessons. Or I could try to help you.</li> </ul>	Should gives definite advice and is stronger than could.  The meaning in (c): I believe it is important for you to do this. This is what I recommend.  In (d), the use of maybe softens the strength of the advice.  Could offers suggestions or possibilities.  The meaning in (e): I have some possible suggestions for you. It is possible to do that.*
(f) (g)	<ul> <li>I failed my math class.</li> <li>You should have talked to your teacher and gotten some help from her during the term.</li> <li>I failed my math class.</li> <li>You could have talked to your teacher.</li> <li>Or you could have asked Ann to help you with your math. Or I could have tried to help you.</li> </ul>	Should have (past form) gives "hindsight" advice.**  The meaning in (f): It was important for you to talk to the teacher, but you didn't do it. You made a mistake.  Could have (past form) offers "hindsight" possibilities.  The meaning in (g): You had the chance to do this or that. It was possible for this or that to happen. You missed some good opportunities.

<sup>\*</sup>Might (but not may) can also be used to make suggestions (You might talk to your teacher.), but could is more common.

<sup>\*\*</sup>Hindsight refers to looking back at something after it happens.

### ☐ Exercise 41. Looking at grammar. (Chart 9-12)

Discuss Speaker B's and C's use of should and could. What are the differences in meaning?

- 1. A: Ted doesn't feel good. He has a bad stomachache. What do you think he should do?
  - B: He should see a doctor.
  - C: Well, I don't know. He *could call* a doctor. He *could call* Dr. Sung. Or he *could call* Dr. Jones. Or he *could* simply *stay* in bed for a day and hope he feels better tomorrow.
- 2. A: I need to get to the airport.
  - B: You should take the airport bus. It's cheaper than a taxi.
  - C: Well, you *could take* the airport bus. Or you *could take* a taxi. Maybe Matt *could take* you. He has a car.
- 3. A: I took a taxi to the airport, and it cost me a fortune.
  - B: You should have taken the airport bus.
  - C: You could have taken the airport bus. Or maybe Matt could have taken you.

## ☐ Exercise 42. Let's write: pairwork. (Chapter 9)

Work with a partner. Write a letter to an advice columnist in a newspaper. Make up a personal problem for the columnist to solve. Then give your letter to another pair, who will write an answer.

### Example letter:

### Dear Annie,

My husband and my sister had an argument over a year ago, and they haven't spoken to each other since. My husband accused my sister of insulting him about his baldness. Then he told my sister that her hair looked like straw. He said he'd rather be bald than have that kind of hair. My sister insists on an apology. My husband refuses until she apologizes to him first.

The problem is that I'm planning a graduation party for my daughter. My husband insists that I not invite my sister. I tell him I have to invite her. He says he'll leave the party if my sister walks in the door. My daughter is very close to my sister and very much wants her to come to the celebration.

What should I do? I feel I must include my sister in the graduation party, but I don't want to anger my husband.

Yours truly, Confused and Torn

### Example response:

#### Dear Confused and Torn,

Tell your husband that this party is your daughter's time to have her whole family around her and that you're going to invite your sister to the family celebration. This is certainly a time he has to put his daughter's needs first.

And you should tell both your husband and your sister that it's time to get past their silly argument and act like grownups instead of ten-year-olds. You could offer to serve as an intermediary to get them together to apologize to each other. If you present a reasonable, adult way of handling the problem, they may start behaving like adults. Good luck.

Annie



### Exercise 1. Warm-up. (Chart 10-1)

A man walked into Ramon's apartment and stole his guitar. The thief accidentally left his hat in the apartment. A policewoman at the scene asks Ramon, "Whose hat is this?" How would he answer her question? Match Ramon's thoughts in Column A to his statements in Column B.

#### Column A

- 1. Ramon thinks the hat looks familiar, but he's not certain whose it is.
- 2. Ramon thinks he recognizes the hat. He's almost sure he knows the owner.
- 3. Ramon has no doubts. He knows whose hat it is.

#### Column B

- a. "It is Joe Green's hat."
- b. "It could belong to Joe Green. It might be Al Goldberg's. Or it may belong to Mr. Perez across the hall."
- c. "It must be Joe Green's hat."

# 10-1 Degrees of Certainty: Present Time

- Why isn't John in class?

100% sure: He is sick.

95% sure: He must be sick.

50% sure or less: 
He *may be* sick.
He *might be* sick.

He could be sick.

NOTE: These percentages are approximate.

 $\label{eq:definition} \textit{Degree of certainty} \ \text{refers to how sure we are} \ -- \ \text{what we} \\ \text{think the chances are} \ -- \ \text{that something is true}.$ 

If we are sure something is true in the present, we don't need to use a modal. For example, if I say, "John is sick," I am sure; I am stating a fact that I am sure is true. My degree of certainty is 100%.

- Why isn't John in class?
- (a) He must be sick. (Usually he is in class every day, but when I saw him last night, he wasn't feeling good. So my best guess is that he is sick today. I can't think of another possibility.)

*Must* expresses a strong degree of certainty about a present situation, but the degree of certainty is still less than 100%.

In (a): The speaker is saying, "Probably John is sick. I have evidence to make me believe that he is sick. That is my logical conclusion, but I do not know for certain."

- Why isn't John in class?
- (b) He may be sick.
- (c) He might be sick.
- (d) He could be sick. (I don't really know. He may be at home watching TV. He might be at the library. He could be out of town.)

*May*, *might*, and *could* express a weak degree of certainty.

In (b), (c), and (d): The meanings are all the same. The speaker is saying, "Perhaps, maybe,\* possibly John is sick. I am only making a guess. I can think of other possibilities."

<sup>\*</sup>Maybe (one word) is an adverb: Maybe he is sick. May be (two words) is a verb form: He may be sick.

# ☐ Exercise 2. Looking at grammar. (Chart 10-1)

Complete the sentences by using *must* or *may/might/could* with the expressions in the list or your own words.

✓be very proud fit Jimmy miss them very much be at a meeting have the wrong number

- 1. A: I've heard that your daughter recently graduated from law school and that your son has gotten a scholarship to the state university. You <u>must be very proud</u> of them.
  - B: We are.
- 2. A: Hello?
  - B: Hello. May I speak to Ron?
  - A: I'm sorry. You \_\_\_\_\_

There's no one here by that name.



- 3. A: Where's Ms. Adams? She's not in her office.
  - B: I don't know. She \_\_\_\_\_\_\_, or maybe she's in the employee lounge.
- 4. A: This winter jacket is still in good shape, but Brian has outgrown it. Do you think it would fit one of your sons?
  - B: Well, it's probably too small for Danny too, but it \_\_\_\_\_
- 5. A: How long has it been since you last saw your family?
  - B: More than a year.
  - A: You \_\_\_\_\_

### Exercise 3. Let's talk. (Chart 10-1)

Make your best guess from the given information. Use *must* in your answers. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

### Example:

SPEAKER A (book open): Alice always gets the best grades in the class. Why? SPEAKER B (book closed): She must study hard. / She must be intelligent.

- 1. The students are yawning. Why?
- 2. Carol is shivering and has goose bumps. Why?
- 3. Lisa's stomach is growling. Why?
- 4. Bob is scratching his arm. Why?

### (Change roles if working in pairs.)

- 5. The teacher is smiling. Why?
- 6. Mrs. Allen is crying. Why?
- 7. The fans are jumping up and down and clapping. Why?
- 8. Don't look at a clock. What time is it?

### Exercise 4. Let's talk. (Chart 10-1)

Answer the questions with I don't know + may/might/could.

### Example:

SPEAKER A (*book open*): Amy's grammar book isn't on her desk. Where is it? SPEAKER B (*book closed*): I don't know. It may/might/could be in her backpack.

- 1. (name of a student) isn't in class today. Where is she/he?
- 2. Where does (name of a student) live?
- 3. What do you think I have in my briefcase/pocket/purse?
- 4. What kind of cell phone does our teacher have?
- 5. I can't find my pen. Do you know where it is?
- 6. How old do you think (someone famous) is?

# Exercise 5. Warm-up. (Chart 10-2)

Anna is checking some figures in her business records: 3,456 + 7,843 = 11,389. How certain is Anna in each of the sentences? Is she 100%, 99%, 95%, or 50% sure?

- 1. At first glance, she says to herself, "Hmmm. That may not be right."
- 2. Then she looks at it again and says, "That must not be right. 6 + 3 is 9, but 5 + 4 isn't 8."
- 3. So she says to herself, "That couldn't be right!"
- 4. Finally, she adds the figures herself and says, "That isn't right."

# 10-2 Degrees of Certainty: Present Time Negative

100% sure: Sam isn't hungry.

Sam couldn't be hungry. 99% sure: Sam can't be hungry.

95% sure: Sam must not be hungry.

Sam may not be hungry. 50% sure or less: Sam might not be hungry.

NOTE: These percentages are approximate.

(a) Sam doesn't want anything to eat. He isn't hungry. He told me his stomach is full. I heard him say that he isn't hungry. I believe him.

In (a): The speaker is sure that Sam is not hungry.

(b) Sam couldn't/can't be hungry. That's impossible. I just saw him eat a huge meal. He has already eaten enough to fill two grown men! Did he really say he'd like something to eat? I don't believe it.

In (b): The speaker believes that there is no possibility that Sam is hungry (but the speaker is not 100% sure). When used in the negative to show degree of certainty, couldn't and can't forcefully express the idea that the speaker believes something is impossible.

- (c) Sam isn't eating his food. He must not be hungry. That's the only reason I can think of.
- In (c): The speaker is expressing a logical conclusion, a "best guess."
- (d) I don't know why Sam isn't eating his food. He may not/might not be hungry right now. Or maybe he doesn't feel well. Or perhaps he ate just before he got here. Who knows?

In (d): The speaker uses may not/might not to mention a possibility.

## Exercise 6. Let's talk. (Charts 10-1 and 10-2)

Answer the questions based on the speakers' opinions of the given situation.

SITUATION: Tim is talking about Ed and says, "Someone told me that Ed quit his job, sold his

house, and moved to an island in the Pacific Ocean."

OPINIONS: Lucy says, "That may not be true." Linda says, "That must not be true." Hamid says, "That can't be true." Rob says, "That isn't true."

- 1. Who is absolutely certain?
- 2. Who is almost certain?
- 3. Who has an open mind and hasn't decided?



Complete the sentences with your best guess. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

- 1. A: Yuko has flunked every test so far this semester.
  - B: She must not . . .  $\rightarrow$  *She must not study very hard.*
- 2. A: Who are you calling?
  - B: Tarek. The phone is ringing, but there's no answer.
  - A: He must not . . .



		and a soft drink. She doesn't want anything.  B: She must not
	4.	<ul><li>A: I offered Mr. Chang some nuts, but he refused them. Then I offered him some candy, and he accepted.</li><li>B: He must not</li></ul>
		A: Mrs. Garcia seems very lonely to me.  B: I agree. She must not
		cise 8. Let's talk: pairwork. (Chart 10-2) with a partner. Give possible reasons for Speaker B's conclusions.
	Exam	ple: A: Someone is knocking at the door. It might be Mary.  B: It couldn't be Mary.  (Reason? Mary is in Moscow. / Mary went to a movie tonight. / Etc.)
		A: Someone left this wool hat here. I think it belongs to Alex.  B: It couldn't belong to him. ( <i>Reason?</i> )
		A: Someone told me that Karen is in Norway.  B: That can't be right. She couldn't be in Norway. ( <i>Reason?</i> )
		A: Look at that big animal. Is it a wolf? B: It couldn't be a wolf. (Reason?)
		A: Someone told me that Marie quit her job.  B: You're kidding! That can't be true. (Reason?)
n		cise 9. Listening. (Charts 10-1 and 10-2)  n to the conversation and write the verbs you hear.
1 49	SITU	ATION: Tom and his young son Billy hear a noise on the roof.
	Том:	I wonder what that noise is.
	BILLY	: It a bird.
	Том:	It a bird. It's running across the roof. Birds across roofs.
	BILLY	: Well, some birds do. It a big bird that's running fast.
		No, I think it some kind of animal. It a
		mouse.
	BILLY	: It sounds much bigger than a mouse. It a dragon!
		Son, it a dragon. We don't have any dragons around here.
		They exist only in storybooks.

BILL	Y: It a little dragon that you don't know about.
Том	: Well, I suppose it some kind
BILL	of lizard. Y:look.
Том	: That's a good idea.
BILL	Y: Guess what, Dad. It a rat!
Eva	rcise 10. Let's talk: pairwork. (Charts 10-1 and 10-2)
Worl	with a partner. Create a dialogue based on the given situation. Role-play your dialogue ne class or a group of classmates.
may	ATION: You and your friend are at home. You hear a noise. You discuss the noise: What / might / could / must / may not / couldn't / must not be the cause. Then you finally find out is going on.
Deci	rcise 11. Warm-up. (Chart 10-3) de which past modal in the list best completes each sentence. One of the modals is not opriate for any of the sentences.
	must have left couldn't have left should have left might have left
SITU	ATION: Jackie can't find her sunglasses.
1.	Laura thinks it's possible that Jackie left them on the table at the restaurant. She says,  "You them on the table at the restaurant, but I'm just guessing."
2.	Sergio disagrees. He looked at everything on the table before they left and doesn't remember seeing her sunglasses there. He thinks it is impossible that Jackie left them there, so he says, "You them there. I'm sure they are
	somewhere else. Did you check your purse?"
3.	Maya disagrees with Sergio. She remembers seeing the sunglasses on the table, so she says, "You them there. That's the only logical explanation
	I can think of."

#### 10-3 Degrees of Certainty: Past Time Past Time: Affirmative - Why wasn't Mary in class? In (a): The speaker is sure. 100%: She was sick. (a) In (b): The speaker is making a logical conclusion, e.g., "I saw Mary yesterday and 95%: She must have been sick. (b) found out that she was sick. I assume that is the ( She may have been sick. reason why she was absent. I can't think of any 50% sure or less: She might have been sick. (c) other good reason." She could have been sick. In (c): The speaker is mentioning one possibility. Past Time: Negative - Why didn't Sam eat? Sam wasn't hungry. In (d): The speaker is sure. 100%: (d) In (e): The speaker believes that it is impossible Sam couldn't have been hungry. 99%: (e) for Sam to have been hungry. Sam can't have been hungry. In (f): The speaker is making a logical Sam must not have been hungry. (f) 95%:

# **Exercise 12. Looking at grammar.** (Chart 10-3)

50% sure or less:

(g)

Sam may not have been hungry.

Sam might not have been hungry.

Use past modals to restate each sentence in parentheses. In some cases, more than one modal may be possible.

conclusion.

In (g): The speaker is mentioning one possibility.

SITUATION 1: The doorbell rang, but I was in bed trying to take a nap. So I didn't get up. I wonder who it was.

1.	(Maybe it was a friend.) It
2.	(It's not possible that it was my next-door neighbor. He was at work.)
	It my next-door neighbor.
3.	(I'm 95% sure it was a delivery person. There was a package outside my door when I got up.)
	It a delivery person.

SITUATION 2: I sent my best friend a birthday present, but she never responded or thanked me. That's not like her. I wonder why I never heard from her.

4. (She probably never got it. That's the only reason I can think of for her not responding to me.)

	I believe she	it.				
5.	(My mother thinks it's possible that it got lost in the mail, but she's just guessing.)					
	My mother thinks it	lost in the mail. I guess that's				
	possible.					

### Exercise 13. Let's talk. (Chart 10-3)

Make guesses using past modals.

SITUATION: Dan, David, Dylan, Dick, and Doug are all friends. One of them got engaged last night. Who do you think it is?

- Dan had a huge argument with his girlfriend last night.
   → It couldn't/must not have been Dan because he fought with his girlfriend last night.
- 2. David met with his girlfriend's parents two nights ago.
- 3. Dylan invited his girlfriend to dinner and took a diamond ring with him.
- 4. Dick is going to wait to get married until he has a better job.
- 5. Doug isn't sure if he's ready for marriage. He thinks he's a little young to be a husband.

### Exercise 14. Let's talk or write. (Chart 10-3)

Give several answers for each question, orally or in writing.

- 1. In 1957 the first animal (Laika, a Russian dog) went into space. How do you think she felt? In 1961 the Russian cosmonaut Yuri Gagarin went into space. How do you think he felt?
- 2. A fire started in the city park around midnight. A large crowd of people had been there earlier watching a fireworks display. What do you think caused the fire?
- 3. While the Browns were away on vacation, the security alarm went off at their home. The police arrived and checked the house. No doors had been opened. No windows were broken. Everything looked normal. What do you think set it off? What don't you think set it off?

### ☐ Exercise 15. Let's talk. (Chart 10-3)

Speaker A asks a question, and Speaker B responds with *may have/might have/could have*. Speaker A provides more information. This time, Speaker B responds with *must have*. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

#### Example:

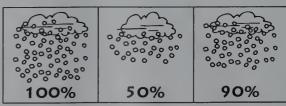
- SPEAKER A: Larry was absent yesterday afternoon. Where was he?
- SPEAKER B: I don't know. He *may have* been at home. He *might have* gone to a movie. He *could have* decided to go to the zoo because the weather was so nice.
- SPEAKER A: Then you overhear him say, "My sister's plane was late yesterday afternoon. I had to wait almost three hours." Now what do you think?
- SPEAKER B: He *must have* gone to the airport to meet his sister's plane.
- 1. A TO B: Beth didn't stay home last night. Where did she go?
  - A TO B: Now, what if you overhear her say . . . ?
- 2. A TO B: How did Claudio get to school today?
  - A TO B: Now, what if you hear him say . . . ?
- 3. A TO B: Sami walked into class yesterday . . . .
  - A TO B: Then you overhear him say . . . . Now what do you think?
- 4. A TO B: (name of a classmate) took a vacation in a warm . . . .
  - A TO B: Now, what if you overhear him/her say . . . . Now what do you think?

		ete the dialogues with $must$ and the verbs in parentheses. Use $not$ if necessary.
1.	A:	Paula fell asleep in class this morning.
	B:	She (stay up) too late last night.
2.	A:	Jim is eating everything in the salad but the onions. He's pushed all of the onions to the side of his plate.
	B:	He (like) onions.
3.	A:	Marco had to give a speech in front of 500 people.
	B:	Whew! That's a big audience. He (be) nervous.
	A:	He was, but no one could tell.
4.	A:	What time is it?
	B:	Well, we came at seven, and I'm sure we've been here for at least an hour. So it (be)  around eight o'clock.
5.	A:	I met Ayako's husband at the reception. We said hello to each other, but when I asked him a question in English, he just smiled and nodded.
	B:	He (speak) much English.
6.		Listen. Do you hear a buzzing sound in the kitchen?  No, I don't hear a thing.
	A:	You don't? Then something (be) wrong with your hearing.
7.	A:	You have a black eye! What happened?
	B:	I walked into a door.
	A:	Ouch! That (hurt)
8.	A:	Who is your teacher?
		I think his name is Mr. Rock, or something like that.
	A:	Mr. Rock? Oh, you (mean) Mr. Stone.
9.		I grew up in a small town.
		That (be) dull.
	A:	It wasn't at all. You can't imagine the fun we had.

# Exercise 17. Warm-up. (Chart 10-4)

Match each sentence to the percentage it best describes.

- 1. We might get some snow tomorrow.
- 2. We will get some snow tomorrow.
- 3. We may get some snow tomorrow.
- 4. We should get some snow tomorrow.
- 5. We could get some snow tomorrow.



# **0-4** Degrees of Certainty: Future Time 100% sure: Kay will do well on the test. The speaker feels sure. Kay should do well on the test. 90% sure: { Kay ought to do well on the test. } → The speaker is almost sure. She *may do* well on the test. She *might do* well on the test. 50% sure or less: { The speaker is guessing. She could do well on the test. (a) Kay has been studying hard. She should do/ought Should/ought to can be used to express expectations to do well on the test tomorrow. about future events. In (a): The speaker is saying, "Kay will probably do well on the test. I expect her to do well. That is what I think will happen." (b) I wonder why Sue hasn't written us. We should have The past form of *should/ought to* is used to mean that the speaker expected something that did not occur. heard / ought to have heard from her last week. Exercise 18. Looking at grammar. (Chart 10-4) Complete the sentences with the speakers' names based on how certain they are. SITUATION: Jan asked her roommates, "What time are you going to be home tonight?" CERTAINTY: Marco feels 100% sure. **Linda** is almost sure. Ned doesn't know. He's guessing. 1. \_\_\_\_\_ said, "I might be back by ten." 2. \_\_\_\_\_ said, "I'll be home by eight." 3. \_\_\_\_\_ said, "I should be here around nine." **Exercise 19. Looking at grammar.** (Charts 4-2, 10-1, and 10-4) Complete the sentences with will, should/ought to, or must. In some cases, more than one modal is possible. Discuss the meanings that the modals convey.\* 1. Lots of people are standing in line to get into that movie. It \_\_\_\_\_ be good. 2. Let's go to the lecture tonight. It \_\_\_\_\_should / ought to OR will \_\_\_\_ be interesting. 3. Look. Jack's car is in front of his house. He \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ be at home. Let's stop and visit him. 4. A: Hello. May I speak to Elena? B: She isn't here right now, but she \_\_\_\_\_\_ be home around nine or so.

<sup>\*</sup>COMPARE: *Must* expresses a strong degree of certainty about a present situation. (See Chart 10-1.) *Should* and *ought to* express a fairly strong degree of certainty about a future situation. (See Chart 10-4.) *Will* indicates that there is no doubt in the speaker's mind about a future event. (See Chart 4-2, p. 63.)

5.	A: Who do you think is going to win the game tomorrow?	
	B: Well, our team has better players, so we	_ win, but you never know.
	Anything can happen in sports.	
6.	A: It's very important for you to be there on time.	
	B: I be there at seven o'clock. I promise	!
7.	A: Susie is yawning and rubbing her eyes.	
	B: She be sleepy. Let's put her to b	ed early tonight.
8.	A: Martha has been working all day. She left for work early thi	is morning.
	B: She be really tired tonight.	
9.	A: When's dinner?	
	B: We're almost ready to eat. The rice be	e done in five minutes.
10.	Ed has been acting strangely lately. He b	e in love.
11.	Hmmm. I wonder what's causing the delay. Ellen's plane	been
	here an hour ago.	
12.	I thought I had some money in my wallet, but I don't. I	spent it.
	ercise 20. Looking at grammar. (Charts 10-1 -> 10-4) implete the sentences based on the facts of each situation.	
SIT	FACTS: Ross is out of town.  Fred called half an hour ago and said he would stop leading to the company of the	
1.	It must be <u>Fred</u> .	
2.	It couldn't be <u>Ross</u> .	
3.	I suppose it might be	

	FACIS:	Stacy has a car, and she was out driving last night.  Beth doesn't have a car and doesn't know how to drive.  Ron has a car, but I'm pretty sure he was at home last night.  Barb was out driving last night, and today her car has a big dent in the front.
4.	It couldn	't have been
5.	It must r	not have been
6.	It could	nave been
7.	It must h	ave been
Situ		There is a hole in the bread. It looks like something ate some of the bread. The bread was in a closed drawer until I opened it.  A mouse likes to eat bread and often gets into drawers. In fact, we found one last week.  A cat can't open a drawer. And most cats don't like bread.  A rat can sometimes get into a drawer, but I've never seen one in our house.
8.	It could	nave been
9.	It couldn	't have been
10.	It must h	ave been
Situ		My friends Mark and Carol were in the next room with my neighbor. I heard someone playing a very difficult piece on the piano.
		Mark has no musical ability at all and doesn't play any instrument.  Carol is an excellent piano player.  I don't think my neighbor plays the piano, but I'm not sure.
11.	It couldn	Carol is an excellent piano player.
		Carol is an excellent piano player.  I don't think my neighbor plays the piano, but I'm not sure.
12.	I suppose	Carol is an excellent piano player.  I don't think my neighbor plays the piano, but I'm not sure.  I't have been
12. 13.	I suppose It must h	Carol is an excellent piano player.  I don't think my neighbor plays the piano, but I'm not sure.  I't have been  e it could have been
12. 13.	I suppose It must h  UATION 5: FACTS:	Carol is an excellent piano player.  I don't think my neighbor plays the piano, but I'm not sure.  I't have been  The it could have been  The meeting starts in fifteen minutes. I wonder who is coming.  I just talked to Bob on the phone. He's on his way.  Stephanie rarely misses a meeting.  Andre comes to the meetings sometimes, and sometimes he doesn't.
12. 13. Situ	I suppose It must he  UATION 5: FACTS:	Carol is an excellent piano player.  I don't think my neighbor plays the piano, but I'm not sure.  I't have been  The meeting starts in fifteen minutes. I wonder who is coming.  I just talked to Bob on the phone. He's on his way.  Stephanie rarely misses a meeting.  Andre comes to the meetings sometimes, and sometimes he doesn't.  Janet is out of town.
12. 13. Sitt	I suppose It must he UATION 5: FACTS:	Carol is an excellent piano player.  I don't think my neighbor plays the piano, but I'm not sure.  I't have been  The meeting starts in fifteen minutes. I wonder who is coming.  I just talked to Bob on the phone. He's on his way.  Stephanie rarely misses a meeting.  Andre comes to the meetings sometimes, and sometimes he doesn't.  Janet is out of town.  won't be at the meeting.

**SITUATION 2:** Someone ran into the tree in front of our house. I wonder who did it.

ack 50	the non-reduced forms of the words you hear.							
	Example: You will hear: You			You shou	ldn't have done that.			
			You will write:	You	shouldn't have done that.			
	Who	What's wrong? Your parents look upset.						
	1.	We			them.			
	2.	We			them.			
	3.	You			them.			
	4.	You			to find out.			
	5.	May	be you		out so late.			
	6.	You			a good excuse for being late.			
	7.	You			them what you planned to do.			
	8.	You			your behavior would cause problems.			
	Exercise 22. Let's talk: pairwork. (Charts 10-1 → 10-4) Work with a partner. Choose one of the given situations and complete the dialogue. Then present your dialogue to the rest of the class. Try to include modals in your conversation. SITUATION 1: Your teacher is always on time, but today it is fifteen minutes past the time clabegins, and he/she still isn't here. You try to figure out why he/she isn't here yet and what you should do.				the class. Try to include modals in your conversation.  s on time, but today it is fifteen minutes past the time class			
A: Mr./Mrs./Ms.*/Miss/Dr./Professor () should have been here fifteen minutes as I wonder where he/she is. Why do you suppose he/she hasn't arrived yet?  B: I don't know  Etc.								
					apposed to meet Anita and Pablo at the park for a picnic. the sky gets dark and the wind starts blowing very hard.			
	A: Is the picnic basket all packed? B: Yes. Everything's ready. A: Wow! Do you feel that wind? B: Yeah, and look at the sky! Etc.							

**Exercise 21. Listening.** (Chapter 9 and Charts 10-1→ 10-4)

The spoken forms of some modals are often reduced. For example, *may have gone* may sound like "may-uv gone" or "may-uh gone." Listen for the spoken forms of modals and write

American: Mr. Black/Mrs. Green/Ms. Brown British: Mr Black/Mrs Green/Ms Brown

<sup>\*</sup>In American English, a period is used with the abbreviations Mr./Mrs./Ms.; British English does not use a period with these abbreviations.

SITUATION 3: It is late at night. The roads are icy. Your eighteen-year-old son, who had gone to
a party with some friends, was supposed to be home an hour ago. (The two of you are either a
married couple or a parent and his/her friend.) You are getting worried. You are trying to figure
out where he might be, what might or must have happened, and what you should do, if
anything.

A: It's already \_\_\_\_\_ o'clock and \_\_\_\_\_ isn't home yet. I'm getting worried.

B: So am I. Where do you suppose he is?

Etc.

## Exercise 23. Warm-up. (Chart 10-5)

Do the verbs in blue express the idea that something is (or may be) in progress right now, at the time of speaking? Circle yes or no.

		IN PROG	RESS?
1.	Grandpa takes a nap every afternoon.	yes	no
2.	Grandpa may take a nap this afternoon.	yes	no
3.	Shhh. Grandpa is taking a nap.	yes	no
4.	Shhh. Grandpa may be taking a nap.	yes	no

10-5 Progressive Forms of Modals						
(a)	Let's just knock on the door lightly. Tom <i>may be sleeping</i> . ( <i>right now</i> )	Progressive form, present time:  modal + be + -ing				
(b)	All of the lights in Ann's room are turned off. She <i>must be sleeping</i> . ( <i>right now</i> )	Meaning: in progress right now				
(c)	Sue wasn't at home last night when we went to visit her. She might have been studying at the library.	Progressive form, past time:  modal + have been + -ing				
(d)	Joe wasn't at home last night. He has a lot of exams coming up soon, and he is also working on a term paper. He <i>must have been studying</i> at the library.	Meaning: in progress at a time in the past				

# ☐ Exercise 24. Looking at grammar. (Chart 10-5)

Complete the sentences. Use the appropriate progressive forms of *must*, *should*, or *may/might/could* and the verbs in parentheses.

1	Α.	T1	Th 1.	1		.1 . 1 .			11
I.	A:	LOOK.	Those people	wno are	coming in	the door	are carrying	g wet	umbrellas.

B: It (rain) \_\_\_\_ must be raining \_\_\_\_.

2. A: Why is Margaret in her room?

B: I don't know. She (do) \_\_\_\_\_may / might / could be doing \_\_\_\_ her homework.

3. A: Do you smell smoke?

B: I sure do. Something (burn) \_\_\_\_\_\_ in the kitchen.

4.	A:	The line's been busy for over an hour. Who do you so	uppose Julio is talking to?
	B:	I don't know. He (talk)	to his parents. Or he
		(talk) to his sist	er in Chicago.
5.	A:	What's all that noise upstairs? It sounds like a herd of	f elephants.
	B:	The children (play)	some kind of game.
	A:	That's what it sounds like to me too. I'll go see.	
6.	A:	I need to call Howard. Do you know which hotel he'	s staying at in Boston?
	B:	Well, he (stay)	at the Hilton, but I'm not sur
		He (stay)	at the Holiday Inn.
7.	A:	What are you doing?	
	B:	I'm writing a letter to a friend, but I (study)	I have a
		test tomorrow.	
8.	A:	Did you know that Majid just quit school and is hitch	nhiking to Alaska?
	B:	What? You ( joke)	?
9.	A:	Did Joe mean what he said about Majid yesterday?	
	B:	I don't know. He ( joke)	when he said that, but
		who knows?	
10.	A:	Did Joe really mean what he said yesterday?	
		No, I don't think so. I think he (joke)	

# Exercise 25. Let's talk. (Chart 10-5)

Discuss what the students on the bus should and should not be doing.

Example: The student in the middle of the bus **shouldn't be climbing** out of the window to the top of the bus.



	nplete each sentence with the appropriate form of the words in parentheses. Add <i>not</i> ecessary.
1.	Alex has a test tomorrow that he needs to study for. He (should + watch)
	shouldn't be watching TV right now.
2.	There's Mr. Chang. He's standing at the bus stop. He (must + wait)
	for the two o'clock bus.
3.	Kathy lost her way while driving to River City. She (should + leave)
	her road map at home.
4.	My leather jacket isn't in my closet. I think my roommate (might + borrow)
	it. He often borrows my clothes without asking me.
5.	When I walked into the room, the TV was on, but the room was empty. Dad
	(must + watch)TV a short while before I came
	into the room. He (must + forget) to turn it off
	before he left the room.
6.	A: Why wasn't Mai at the meeting last night?
	B: She (may + attend) the lecture at Shaw Hall. I know she
	really wanted to hear the speaker.
7.	A: Where's that cold air coming from?
	B: Someone (must + leave) the door open.
8.	A: Where's Jessica? I haven't seen her for weeks.
	B: I'm not sure. She (might + travel) in Europe.
	I think I heard her mention something about spending a few weeks in Europe this
	spring.
9.	A: When I arrived, Tarek looked surprised.
	B: He (must + expect) you.
10.	A: Why didn't Roberto answer the teacher when she asked him a question?
	B: He was too busy staring out the window. He (must + daydream)
	He (should + pay)
	attention. He (should + stare) out the window during class.
	window during class.

**Exercise 26. Looking at grammar.** (Charts 9-8 and  $10-1 \rightarrow 10-5$ )

### Exercise 27. Let's talk or write. (Charts $10-1 \rightarrow 10-5$ )

Discuss and/or write about the people and activities in the picture. Include any factual information you can get from the picture and make guesses about the people: their ages, occupations, activities, etc.



### **Exercise 28. Let's talk.** (Charts $10-1 \rightarrow 10-5$ )

A man and woman are sitting at a table having a conversation. In pairs or small groups, make guesses about the two people and what's happening. What possibilities can you think of? Answer the questions and add your own to the discussion.

MAN: I don't think you should do this alone. WOMAN: But you don't understand. I have to.

MAN: Let me go with you. (taking out his wallet) Just give me a minute to pay the bill.

WOMAN: No, I'll be fine.

Man: You must let me help.

WOMAN: There's nothing you can do. (standing) This is something I need to do for myself.

MAN: Okay. If that's the way you want it.

WOMAN: (leaving) I'll call you.

- 1. Where are the man and woman?
- 2. Who are they? What is their relationship?
- 3. Where's the woman going?
- 4. Why does she want to go alone?
- 5. Why does the man want to go with her?

Exercise 29. Looking at grammar. (Charts 10-1 → 10-5) Choose the best completion for each sentence.
<ul> <li>1. — Is Jeff a good student?</li> <li>— He I don't know him well, but I heard he got a scholarship for next year.</li> <li>a. must be</li> <li>b. could be</li> <li>c. is</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>2. — Do you know where Eva is?</li> <li>— She at Barbara's house. She said something about wanting to visit after work today, but I'm really not sure.</li> <li>a. must be</li> <li>b. could be</li> <li>c. is</li> </ul>
3. — I stayed up all night finishing this report for the boss.  — You really tired.  — I do.
a. must feel b. might feel c. feel
4. —Where's the leftover chicken from dinner last night?
— I just saw it when I got some ice cubes. It in the freezer.
a. must be b. might be c. is
<ul> <li>5. — It's supposed to rain tomorrow.</li> <li>— I know, but the forecast wrong. Weather forecasts are far from 100 percent accurate.</li> </ul>
a. must be b. could be c. is
6. — I heard that Junko has received a scholarship and will be able to attend the university i the fall.
—Wonderful! That's good news. She very happy to have the matter finally settled
a. must be b. may be c. is
7. — Excuse me. Could you tell me which bus I should take to get to City Hall?  — Hmmm. Bus number 63 there. But you'd better ask the driver.
a. must go b. might go c. goes
8. — Which bus should I take to get to the main post office?  — Bus number 39. It right to the post office.
a. must go b. could go c. goes
<ul> <li>9. — Do you suppose Mrs. Chu is sick?</li> <li>— She I can't think of anything else that would have kept her from coming to this meeting.</li> </ul>
a. must be b. may be c. is
<ul> <li>10. — Is that Adam's brother standing with him in the cafeteria line?</li> <li>— It, I suppose. He does look a little like Adam.</li> </ul>
a. must be b. could be c. is

11. — Let's be really quiet when we go into the baby's room. The baby \_\_\_\_\_\_, and we don't want to wake her up.

— Okay.

a. might sleep b. might be sleeping c. might have been sleeping
12. — I wonder why the radio is on in the den. No one's in there.

— Grandma \_\_\_\_\_ to turn it off. She was in the den earlier and was probably listening to it.

a. must forget b. must have forgotten c. must be forgetting

### ☐ Exercise 30. Warm-up. (Chart 10-6)

Which sentence expresses

- a. a physical ability?
- b. an acquired skill?
- c. possibility?
- d. permission?
- 1. \_\_\_\_ Isabel can play chess very well.
- 2. Yes, Ben, you can go outside to play, but be back before dinner.
- 3. \_\_\_\_ Dogs can hear higher-pitched sounds than humans can.
- 4. \_\_\_\_ I'm free for lunch tomorrow. I can meet you at the café around noon if you'd like.



10-6 Ability: Can and Could				
<ul><li>(a) Tom is strong. He <i>can lift</i> that heavy box.</li><li>(b) I <i>can see</i> Central Park from my apartment.</li></ul>	Can is used to express physical ability, as in (a).  Can is frequently used with verbs of the five senses: see, hear, feel, smell, taste, as in (b).			
(c) Maria <i>can play</i> the piano. She's been taking lessons for many years.	Can is used to express an acquired skill.  In (c): can play = knows how to play.			
(d) You <i>can buy</i> a hammer at the hardware store.	Can is used to express possibility.  In (d): you can buy = it is possible for one to buy.			
COMPARE:  (e) I'm not quite ready to go, but you <i>can leave</i> if you're in a hurry. I'll meet you later.  (f) When you finish the test, you <i>may leave</i> .	Can is used to give permission in informal situations, as in (e). In formal situations, may rather than can is usually used to give permission, as in (f).			
(g) Dogs can bark, but they cannot/can't talk.	Negative form: cannot or can't			
(h) Tom could lift the box, but I couldn't.	The past form of <i>can</i> meaning "ability" is <i>could</i> , as in (h).  Negative form: <i>could not</i> or <i>couldn't</i>			

# Exercise 31. Listening. (Chart 10-6)

In spoken English, can is typically unstressed and pronounced /kən/. Can't is unstressed and is usually pronounced /kænt/ although the "t" is often not heard. Listen to the sentences and Track 51 write the words you hear.\*

1	The secretary	haln way
Ι.	The secretary _	help you.

- 2. My mother \_\_\_\_\_ speak English.
- 3. My friend \_\_\_\_\_ meet you at the airport.
- 4. Mr. Smith \_\_\_\_\_ answer your question.
- 5. We \_\_\_\_\_ come to the meeting.
- 6. \_\_\_\_\_ you come?\*\*
- 7. You \_\_\_\_\_ take that course.
- 8. I \_\_\_\_\_ cook.
- 9. I \_\_\_\_\_ drive a stick-shift car.
- 10. Our son \_\_\_\_\_ count to ten.

#### Exercise 32. Let's talk. (Charts 10-4 and 10-6)

Make sentences, answer questions, and/or discuss meanings as suggested in each item. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

- 1. Name a physical ability that you have and a physical ability you don't have. Name an acquired skill that you have and an acquired skill you don't have.
- 2. There's no class tomorrow. What can you do tomorrow? What may/might you do tomorrow? What are you going to do tomorrow?
- 3. What are the possible ways you can get to school? What are the possible ways you may get to school tomorrow?
- 4. What is the difference in the use of *can* and *may* in the following?
  - a. Sure! You can borrow five dollars from me. You can pay me back later.
  - b. You may pay the bill either in person or by mail.
- 5. Compare the following using can and can't: people and animals; adults and children; women and men.
- 6. Plan your next vacation and describe what you may do on your vacation; what you can do on your vacation; and what you will do on your vacation.
- 7. What is something you could do as a child that you can't do now?

<sup>\*</sup>Sometimes even native speakers have difficulty in distinguishing between can and can't. Also, British and American pronunciations of can't are different. British: can't = /kant/ (cawhnt). American: can't = /kant/ (rhymes with rant). \*\*Note: "t" + "you" = "chu" (can't you = /kanču/).

# Exercise 33. Let's listen and talk. (Charts 10-1 -> 10-6)



Listen to the short talk on human behavior with your book closed. Then open your book and answer the questions.

- 1. Who did the researcher talk to first?
- 2. Who did the researcher talk to later?
- 3. What three questions did the researcher ask each group?
- 4. How many people in the first group answered "yes" to the questions about their ability to dance, sing, and draw?
- 5. What differences were there in the answers of the first group and the second group?
- 6. What do you think explains these differences?

### **Exercise 34. Warm-up.** (Chart 10-7)

Are the meanings of the two sentences the same or different?

- 1. When I was a child, I used to play in the street with the other children.
- 2. When I was a child, I would play in the street with the other children.

10-7 Using Would to Express a Repeated Action in the Past				
<ul> <li>(a) When I was a child, my father would read me a story at night before bedtime.</li> <li>(b) When I was a child, my father used to read me a story at night before bedtime.</li> </ul>	Would can be used to express an action that was repeated regularly in the past. When would is used to express this idea, it has the same meaning as used to (habitual past). Sentences (a) and (b) have the same meaning.			
(c) I used to live in California. He used to be a Boy Scout. They used to have a Ford.	Used to expresses a situation that existed in the past, as in (c). In this case, would may not be used as an alternative. Would is used only for regularly repeated actions in the past.			

# 

5.	When I was a child, I (take) a flashlight to bed with me so that I could read comic
	books without my parents knowing about it.
6.	My sister (live) in Montana,
	and when I visited her, we (go)
	on weeklong backpacking trips in the mountains. Every morning, we (wake)
	up to the sound of singing birds. During the day, we (hike)
	through woods and along mountain streams. Often we (see)
	deer. Once we saw a bear, but it went off in the opposite
	direction.
7.	I (be) an anthropology major. Once, I was a member of an
	archeological expedition. Every morning, we (get) up before
	dawn. After breakfast, we (spend) our entire day in the field.
	Sometimes one of us (find) a particularly interesting item,
	perhaps an arrowhead or a piece of pottery. When that happened, other members of the
	group (gather) around to see what had been unearthed.

# Exercise 36. Warm-up. (Chart 10-8)

Answer the questions. Use would rather and complete sentences.

- 1. You are at school right now. Where would you rather be?
- 2. What would you rather do than go to class?
- 3. What did you do last night? What would you rather have done?
- 4. What are you doing right now? What would you rather be doing?

10-8 Expressing Preference: Would Rather				
<ul> <li>(a) I would rather go to a movie tonight than study grammar.</li> <li>(b) I'd rather study history than (study) biology.</li> </ul>	Would rather expresses preference.  In (a): Notice that the simple form of a verb follows both would rather and than.  In (b): If the verb is the same, it usually is not repeated after than.			
— How much do you weigh?  (c) I'd rather not tell you.	Contraction: I would = I'd Negative form: would rather + not			
(d) The movie was okay, but I would rather have gone to the concert last night.	The past form: would rather have + past participle. Usual pronunciation: "I'd rather-əv"			
(e) 1'd rather be lying on a beach in India than (be) sitting in class right now.	Progressive form: would rather + be + -ing			

	Exercise 37. Looking at grammar.  Complete the sentences with would rather	
	A: Do you want to go to the concert to     B: Not really. I	
	A: Did you go to the concert last night     B: Yes, but I	
	3. A: What are you doing right now?  B: I'm studying grammar, but I	
		than than
٦	Exercise 38. Let's talk: interview. (Continued on the continued on the con	·
	<ol> <li>Would you rather</li> <li>go to Paris, Cairo, or Bogota? Why?</li> <li>see a movie, a play, or an opera? Why?</li> <li>use a bike, a motorcycle, or a car for trade.</li> <li>prepare your own meals, have someone</li> <li>be playing soccer, shopping for clothes,</li> <li>have been born in an earlier century? We</li> <li>be swimming at a beach or pool right in</li> </ol>	at home prepare them, or eat out? Why? or feeding birds in the park today? Why? Why?
0	Exercise 39. Warm-up. (Chart 10-9) Check (✓) each correct sentence.	
	<ol> <li>I will can stay late at the office tode</li> <li>I will be able stay late today.</li> <li>I may have to stay late today.</li> </ol>	<ul> <li>4 I may be able to stay late today.</li> <li>5 I will have to stay late today.</li> <li>6 I'm going to have to stay late today.</li> </ul>
10	<b>)-9</b> Combining Modals with F	Phrasal Modals
(a)	INCORRECT: Janet will -can-help you tomorrow.	A modal cannot be immediately followed by another modal.  In (a): The modal <i>will</i> cannot be followed by <i>can</i> , which is another modal.
(b)	Janet will be able to help you tomorrow. You will have to pick her up at her home.	A modal can, however, be followed by the phrasal modals be able to and have to.  In (b): The modal will is correctly followed by the phrasal

(a) INCORRECT: Janet will -can- help you tomorrow.	A modal cannot be immediately followed by another modal. In (a): The modal <i>will</i> cannot be followed by <i>can</i> , which is another modal.		
<ul><li>(b) Janet will be able to help you tomorrow.</li><li>(c) You will have to pick her up at her home.</li></ul>	A modal can, however, be followed by the phrasal modals be able to and have to.		
	In (b): The modal <i>will</i> is correctly followed by the phrasal modal <i>be able to</i> .		
(d) Tom isn't going to be able to help you tomorrow.	It is also sometimes possible for one phrasal modal to follow another phrasal modal.		
	In (d): <b>be going to</b> is followed by <b>be able to</b> . This form is more common in negatives and questions.		

Jom	plete the sentences with the words in <i>nancs</i> .
1.	be able to \ you \ get \ will
	What time here?
2.	have to \ take \ be going to
	You algebra again next year if yo
	don't pass the course this year.
2	to able to be saint to be sain
	be able to \ attend \ be going to \ not  I my friend
	I my frience  Jess's wedding next month due to a previously scheduled business trip.
om	rcise 41. Looking at grammar. (Chart 10-9) uplete the sentences with the verb phrases in the list. In some cases, more than one
omp	pletion may be possible. Discuss the differences in meaning.
	have to be able to must not have been able to should not have to would rather not have to not be going to be able to
1.	My schedule is completely full for the next few weeks. I 'm not going to be able to
	meet with you until the end of the month.
2.	You need to see a doctor you feel comfortable talking to. It's important that she know
	how you feel. Youtell her exact
	how you're feeling.
3.	Jill just called from work. She sounded upset, but she won't tell me what's wrong. She
	was planning to ask her supervisor for a raise today. I bet that's the problem. She
	get the raise.
4	
4.	Let's get to the movie a little late. I don't mind if we miss the previews. It's freezing
4.	Let's get to the movie a little late. I don't mind if we miss the previews. It's freezing
	Let's get to the movie a little late. I don't mind if we miss the previews. It's freezing outside, and I stand in a long lin outdoors until the movie begins.

Exercise 40. Looking at grammar. (Chart 10-9)

Auxiliary	Uses	Present/Future	Past
may	(1) polite request (only with "I" or "we")	May I borrow your pen?	
	(2) formal permission	You may leave the room.	
	(3) 50% or less certainty	— Where's John? He may be at the library.	He <i>may have been</i> at the library.
might	(1) 50% or less certainty	— Where's John? He might be at the library.	He <i>might have been</i> at the library.
	(2) polite request (rare)	Might I borrow your pen?	
should	(1) advisability	I should study tonight.	I <i>should have studied</i> last night, but I didn't.
	(2) 90% certainty (expectation)	She <i>should do</i> well on the test tomorrow.	She <i>should have done</i> well on the test.
ought to	(1) advisability	I ought to study tonight.	I ought to have studied last night, but I didn't.
	(2) 90% certainty (expectation)	She <i>ought to do</i> well on the test tomorrow.	She <i>ought to have done</i> well on the test.
had better	(1) advisability with threat of bad result	You had better be on time, or we will leave without you.	(past form uncommon)
be supposed to	(1) expectation	Class is supposed to begin at 10:00.	
	(2) unfulfilled expectation		Class was supposed to begin at 10:00, but it began at 10:15.
must	(1) strong necessity	I must go to class today.	(I had to go to class yesterday.)
	(2) prohibition (negative)	You must not open that door.	
	(3) 95% certainty	Mary isn't in class. She must be sick.	Mary <i>must have been</i> sick yesterday.
have to	(1) necessity	I have to go to class today.	I had to go to class yesterday.
	(2) lack of necessity (negative)	I don't have to go to class today.	I didn't have to go to class yesterday.
have got to	(1) necessity	I have got to go to class today.	(I had to go to class yesterday.
will	(1) 100% certainty	He will be here at 6:00.	
	(2) willingness	— The phone's ringing. I'll get it.	
	(3) polite request	Will you please help me?	
be going to	(1) 100% certainty (prediction)	He is going to be here at 6:00.	
	(2) definite plan (intention)	I'm going to paint my bedroom.	
	(3) unfulfilled intention		I was going to paint my room, but I didn't have time.

Auxiliary	Uses	Present/Future	Past
can	(1) ability/possibility	I can run fast.	I could run fast when I was a child, but now I can't.
	(2) informal permission	You <i>can use</i> my car tomorrow.	
	(3) informal polite request	Can I borrow your pen?	
	(4) impossibility (negative only)	That can't be true!	That can't have been true!
could	(1) past ability		I could run fast when I was a child.
	(2) polite request	Could I borrow your pen? Could you help me?	
	(3) suggestion (affirmative only)	— I need help in math. You could talk to your teacher.	You <i>could have talked</i> to your teacher.
	(4) 50% or less certainty	— Where's John? He could be at home.	He could have been at home.
	(5) impossibility (negative only)	That <i>couldn't be</i> true!	That couldn't have been true!
b <b>e</b> able to	(1) ability	I am able to help you. I will be able to help you.	I was able to help him.
would	(1) polite request	Would you please help me? Would you mind if I left early?	
	(2) preference	I would rather go to the park than stay home.	I would rather have gone to the park.
	(3) repeated action in the past		When I was a child, I would visit my grandparents every weekend.
	(4) polite for "want" (with "like")	I would like an apple, please.	
	(5) unfulfilled wish		I would have liked a cookie, but there were none in the house.
used to	(1) repeated action in the past.		I <i>used to visit</i> my grandparents every weekend.
	(2) past situation that no longer exists		I <i>used to live</i> in Spain. Now I live in Korea.
shall	(1) polite question to make a suggestion	Shall I open the window?	
	(2) future with / or we as subject	I shall arrive at nine. ("will" = more common)	

Note: The use of modals in reported speech is discussed in Chart 12-7, p. 261. The use of modals in conditional sentences is discussed in Chapter 20.

### Exercise 42. Let's talk. (Chapters 9 and 10)

Discuss the differences in meaning, if any, in each group of sentences. Describe situations in which these sentences might be used. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

- 1. a. May I use your phone?
  - b. Could I use your phone?
  - c. Can I use your phone?
- 2. a. You should take an English course.
  - b. You ought to take an English course.
  - c. You're supposed to take an English course.
  - d. You must take an English course.
- 3. a. You should see a doctor about that cut on your arm.
  - b. You had better see a doctor about that cut on your arm.
  - c. You have to see a doctor about that cut on your arm.
- 4. a. You must not use that door.
  - b. You don't have to use that door.
- 5. a. I will be at your house by six o'clock.
  - b. I should be at your house by six o'clock.
- 6. There is a knock at the door. Who do you suppose it is?
  - a. It might be Wendy.
  - b. It may be Wendy.
  - c. It could be Wendy.
  - d. It must be Wendy.
- 7. There's a knock at the door. I think it's Ibrahim.
  - a. It may not be Ibrahim.
  - b. It couldn't be Ibrahim.
  - c. It can't be Ibrahim.
- 8. a. The family in the picture must be at a restaurant.
  - b. The family in the picture are at a restaurant.
- 9. Where's Jeff?
  - a. He might have gone home.
  - b. He must have gone home.
  - c. He had to go home.
- 10. a. Each student should have health insurance.
  - b. Each student must have health insurance.
- 11. a. If you're having a problem, you could talk to Mrs. Ang.
  - b. If you're having a problem, you should talk to Mrs. Ang.
  - c. If you're having a problem, you should have told Mrs. Ang.
  - d. If you're having a problem, you could have told Mrs. Ang.



	e a modal or phrasal modal with each verb in parentheses. More than one auxiliary may be sible. Use the one that seems most appropriate to you and explain why.
1.	It looks like rain. We (shut)should / had better / ought to shut
	the windows.
2.	Anya, (you, hand) me that dish? Thanks.
3.	Spring break starts on the thirteenth. We (go, not) to classes again until the twenty-second.
4.	The baby is only a year old, but she (say, already) a few words.
5.	In the United States, elementary education is compulsory. All children (attend)
	six years of elementary school.
6.	There was a long line in front of the theater. We (wait) almost an hour to buy our tickets.
7.	A: I'd like to go to a warm, sunny place next winter. Any suggestions?  B: You (go) to Hawaii or Mexico. Or how about Indonesia?
8.	A: Mrs. Wilson got a traffic ticket. She didn't stop at a stop sign.
	B: That's surprising. Usually she's a very cautious driver and obeys all the traffic laws.
	She (see, not) the sign.
9.	A: This is Steve's laptop, isn't it?
	B: It (be, not) his. He doesn't have a laptop computer, at least
	not that I know of. It (belong) to Jana or to Mindy. They
	sometimes bring their laptops to class.
10.	In my country, a girl and boy (go, not) out on a date unless they are accompanied by a chaperone.
11.	Jimmy was serious when he said he wanted to be a cowboy when he grew up. We
	(laugh, not) at him. We hurt his feelings.
12.	A: This is a great open-air market. Look at all this wonderful fresh fish! What kind of fish is this?
	B: I'm not sure. It (be) salmon. Let's ask.

☐ Exercise 43. Looking at grammar. (Chapters 9 and 10)

### **Exercise 44. Listening.** (Chapters 9 and 10)



Listen to each situation and choose the statement (a. or b.) you would most likely say. In some cases, both answers may be possible.

Example: You will hear: It's almost 5:00. Peter's mom will be home soon. She told him to

clean his room today, but it's still a mess. She's going to be really

mad.

You will choose: a. He might clean it up right away.

- (b.) He'd better clean it up right away.
- 1. a. He should have come.
  - b. He must have come.
- 2. a. I am supposed to go to the mall and shop.
  - b. I would rather lie in the sun and read a novel.
- 3. a. He may have gotten caught in traffic.
  - b. He ought to have called by now.
- 4. a. He's not going to be able to go to work for a few days.
  - b. He might not have to go to work today.
- 5. a. She could have been daydreaming.
  - b. She must have been daydreaming.

### ☐ Exercise 45. Check your knowledge. (Chapters 9 and 10)

Correct the errors.

- 1. If you have a car, you can traveled around the United States.
- 2. During class the students must to sit quietly.
- 3. When you send for the brochure, you should included a self-addressed, stamped envelope.
- 4. A film director must has control over every aspect of a movie.
- 5. When I was a child, I can climb to the roof of my house and saw all the other houses and streets.
- 6. We need to reschedule. I won't can see you at the time we scheduled for tomorrow.
- 7. I used to break my leg in a soccer game three months ago.
- 8. May you please help me with this?
- 9. Many students would rather to study on their own than going to classes.
- 10. We supposed to bring our books to class every day.
- 11. You can having a very good time as a tourist in my country. My country has many different climates, so you have better plan ahead before you came.

- 12. When you visit a big city in my country, you must to be paying attention to your wallet when you are in a crowded place because a thief maybe try to steal it.
- Exercise 46. Let's talk: pairwork. (Chapters 9 and 10)

Work with a partner. Complete the dialogues with your own words.

### Example:

- SPEAKER A: Why don't we . . . go to Luigi's Restaurant for lunch?
- SPEAKER B: Thanks, but I can't. I have to . . . stay and finish this report during lunchtime.
- SPEAKER A: That's too bad.
- SPEAKER B: I should have . . . come early this morning to finish it, but I couldn't. I had to . . . drop my daughter off at school and meet with her teacher.
  - 1. A: I . . . .
    - B: You shouldn't have done that!
    - A: I know, but . . . .
    - B: Well, why don't . . . ?
- 2. A: Did you hear the news? We don't have to . . . .
  - B: Why not?
  - A: . . . .
- 3. A: Whose . . . ?
  - B: I don't know. It . . . , or it . . . .
  - A: Can . . . ?
  - B: I'll try.
- 4. A: Did . . . ?
  - B: I would have liked to, but I . . . .

- 5. A: I heard that . . . .
  - B: That can't be true! She couldn't . . . .
  - A: Oh? Why not? Why do you say that?
  - B: Because . . . .
- 6. A: Did you have to . . . ?
  - B: Yes.
  - A: Are you going to have to do the same
  - B: I think so. So I'm probably not going to be able to . . . . But I might be able to . . . .
- 7. A: I don't want . . . .
  - B: Well, you'd better ..., or ....
  - A: I know, but . . . .

### Exercise 47. Let's talk. (Chapters 9 and 10)

In small groups, debate one, some, or all of the given statements. At the end of the discussion time, choose one member of your group to summarize for the rest of the class the main ideas expressed during your discussion.

Do you agree with these statements? Why or why not?

- 1. Violence on television influences people to act violently.
- 2. Cigarette smoking should be banned from all public places.
- 3. Books, films, and news should be censored by government agencies.
- 4. People of different religions should not marry.
- 5. People shouldn't marry until they are at least 25 years old.
- 6. All nuclear weapons in the possession of any nation should be destroyed.
- 7. All people of the world should speak the same language.

### Exercise 48. Let's write or talk. (Chapters 9 and 10)

Write a short paragraph on one or more of the given topics or discuss some of them in small groups or as a class.

### Topics:

- 1. Write about when, where, and why you should (or should not) have done something in your life.
- 2. Write about a time in your life when you did something you did not want to do. Why did you do it? What could you have done differently? What should you have done? What would you rather have done?
- 3. Look at your future. What will, might, or should it be like? Write about what you should, must, or can do now in order to make your life what you want it to be.
- 4. Write about one embarrassing incident in your life. What could, should, or might you have done to avoid it?
- 5. Look at the world situation and the relationships between nations. What could, should (or should not), must (or must not) be done to promote peace?
- 6. Choose one of the environmental problems we are facing today. What could, should, may, must, or might be done to solve this problem?

# Chapter 11 The Passive

### Exercise 1. Warm-up. (Chart 11-1)

Match the sentences to the pictures. Which sentence is grammatically incorrect?

- 1. The girl hit the ball.
- 2. The ball was hit by the girl.
- 3. The girl was hit by the ball.
- 4. The ball hit the girl.
- 5. The girl was hitting the ball.
- 6. The girl was hit the ball.



Picture A

Picture B

11-1	Active vs. Passive	
Active:	subject verb object (a) Mary helped the boy.	In the passive, the object of an active verb becomes the subject of the passive verb: the boy in (a) becomes the subject of the passive verb in (b).
Passive:	(b) The boy was helped by Mary.	Notice that the subject of an active verb follows <b>by</b> in a passive sentence. The noun that follows <b>by</b> is called the "agent." In (b): <b>Mary</b> is the agent.
		Sentences (a) and (b) have the same meaning.
Passive:	be + past participle (c) He is helped by her. He was helped by her. He will be helped by her.	Form of the passive: <b>be</b> + past participle
Active: Passive:	(d) An accident <i>happened</i> .  (e) (none)	Only transitive verbs (verbs that can be followed by an object) are used in the passive. It is not possible to use intransitive verbs (such as happen, sleep, come, seem, die) in the passive. (See Appendix Chart A-1.)

1.	_A_ Kate prepared the salad.			
2.	P The rice was prepared by J	Jamal.		
3.	Shirley was preparing the o	dessert.		
4.	Andy has prepared the tea	•		
5.	New species of insects are	discovered 1	by scientists every year.	
6.	Our papers will be collected	d by the tea	cher next week.	
7.	Dinosaurs existed millions	of years ago	).	
8.	Anna's car was stopped by	the police.		
9.	Mr. Brown painted our ho	use.		
10.	Hiroki came to our apartm	nent for dinr	ner last night.	
			ics from active to passive.	
1.	Tom <i>opens</i> the door.	The door	is opened	by Tom
2.	Tom is opening the door.	The door		by Tom
3.	Tom has opened the door.	The door		by Tom
4.	Tom opened the door.	The door		by Tom
5.	Tom was opening the door.	The door		by Tom
6.	Tom had opened the door.	The door		by Tom
7.	Tom will open the door.	The door		by Tom
8.	Tom is going to open the door.	The door		by Tom
9.	Tom will have opened the door.	The door		by Tom
10.	Did Tom open the door?		the door	by Tom
11.	Will Tom open the door?			
12				
	2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 10.  Exe Con 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8. 9. 11.	3 Shirley was preparing the off. 4 Andy has prepared the tea 5 New species of insects are 6 Our papers will be collected 7 Dinosaurs existed millions 8 Anna's car was stopped by 9 Mr. Brown painted our ho 10 Hiroki came to our apartm  Exercise 3. Warm-up. (Chart 11) Complete the sentences. Change the 1. Tom opens the door. 2. Tom is opening the door. 3. Tom has opened the door. 4. Tom opened the door. 5. Tom was opening the door. 6. Tom had opened the door. 7. Tom will open the door. 8. Tom is going to open the door. 9. Tom will have opened the door. 10. Did Tom open the door? 11. Will Tom open the door?	2. P The rice was prepared by Jamal.  3. Shirley was preparing the dessert.  4. Andy has prepared the tea.  5. New species of insects are discovered by the species of insects are discovered by the tea.  6. Our papers will be collected by the tea.  7. Dinosaurs existed millions of years agong and a second by the police.  9. Mr. Brown painted our house.  10. Hiroki came to our apartment for dinary.  Exercise 3. Warm-up. (Chart 11-2)  Complete the sentences. Change the verbs in italiant.  1. Tom opens the door. → The door.  2. Tom is opening the door. The door.  4. Tom opened the door. The door.  5. Tom was opening the door. The door.  6. Tom had opened the door. The door.  7. Tom will open the door. The door.  8. Tom is going to open the door. The door.  9. Tom will have opened the door. The door.  10. Did Tom open the door? The door.  11. Will Tom open the door?	2. P The rice was prepared by Jamal. 3. Shirley was preparing the dessert. 4. Andy has prepared the tea. 5. New species of insects are discovered by scientists every year. 6. Our papers will be collected by the teacher next week. 7. Dinosaurs existed millions of years ago. 8. Anna's car was stopped by the police. 9. Mr. Brown painted our house. 10. Hiroki came to our apartment for dinner last night.  Exercise 3. Warm-up. (Chort 11-2)  Complete the sentences. Change the verbs in italics from active to passive. 1. Tom opens the door. → The door is opened 2. Tom is opening the door. The door 3. Tom has opened the door. The door 4. Tom opened the door. The door 5. Tom was opening the door. The door 6. Tom had opened the door. The door 7. Tom will open the door. The door 9. Tom will open the door. The door 9. Tom will have opened the door. The door 10. Did Tom open the door? the door 11. Will Tom open the door? the door

**Exercise 2. Looking at grammar.** (Chart 11-1) Decide if the sentences are active (A) or passive (P).

# 1-2 Tense Forms of the Passive

	Active		Passive			
(a) simple present (b) present progressive (c) present perfect* (d) simple past (e) past progressive (f) past perfect* (g) simple future (h) be going to (i) future perfect*	Mary helps Mary is helping Mary has helped Mary helped Mary was helping Mary had helped Mary will help Mary is going to help Mary will have helped	the boy.	The boy	is being has been was was being had been will be is going to be will have been	helped helped helped helped helped helped helped helped	by Mary. by Mary. by Mary. by Mary. by Mary. by Mary. by Mary. by Mary.

<sup>(</sup>j) Was the boy helped by Mary?

In the question form of passive verbs, an auxiliary verb precedes the subject.

# **Exercise 4. Looking at grammar.** (Charts 11-1 and 11-2)

Part I. Change the active to passive.

- 1. Shakespeare wrote that play.  $\rightarrow$  That play was written by Shakespeare.
- 2. Waitresses and waiters serve customers.
- 3. The teacher is going to explain the lesson.
- 4. Two horses were pulling the farmer's wagon.
- 5. Toshi will invite Yoko to the party.
- 6. Alex is preparing that report.
- 7. Kathy *had returned* the book to the library.
- 8. Miriam has designed several public buildings.
- 9. His tricks won't fool me.
- 10. I didn't write that note. Did Jim write it?
- 11. Does Prof. Shapiro teach that course? No, he doesn't teach it.
- 12. Mrs. Andrews hasn't signed those papers yet. Has Mr. Andrews signed them yet?

### Part II. Change the passive to active.

- 13. The speech was given by Anwar.  $\rightarrow$  Anwar gave the speech.
- 14. Our assignments are going to be corrected by the teaching assistant.
- 15. Was the electric light bulb invented by Thomas Edison?
- 16. The speed limit on Highway 5 isn't obeyed by most drivers.
- 17. Have you been informed of the rent increase by the building manager?

## **Exercise 5. Looking at grammar.** (Charts 11-1 and 11-2)

Change the active verbs to passive if possible. Some verbs are intransitive and cannot be changed.

- 1. A strange thing happened yesterday. (no change)
- 2. Jackie scored the winning goal. → The winning goal was scored by Jackie.
- 3. I agree with Dr. Ikeda's theory.
- 4. Dr. Ikeda developed that theory.
- 5. A hurricane destroyed the small fishing village.



<sup>(</sup>k) Has the boy been helped by Mary?

<sup>\*</sup>The progressive forms of the present perfect, past perfect, and future perfect are rarely used in the passive.

- 6. A large vase stands in the corner of our front hallway.
- 7. The children seemed happy when they went to the zoo.
- 8. After class, one of the students always erases the board.
- 9. The solution to my problem appeared to me in a dream.
- 10. Our plan succeeded at last.
- 11. Barbara traveled to Uganda last year.
- 12. A special committee is going to settle the dispute.
- 13. Did the police catch the thief?
- 14. This room is a mess. What happened?

### Exercise 6. Warm-up. (Chart 11-3)

Tell the class where something that you're wearing or own was made (e.g., your shoes, shirt, cell phone, etc.). Do you know who made these items? Is it important to know?

11-3 Using the Passive			
(a) Rice is grown in India. (b) Our house was built in 1980.	Usually the passive is used without a <i>by</i> -phrase. The passive is most frequently used when it is not known or not important to know exactly who performs an action.		
(c) This olive oil was imported from Crete.	In (a): Rice is grown in India by people, by farmers, by someone. It is not known or important to know exactly who grows rice in India.		
	Examples (a), (b), and (c) illustrate the most common use of the passive, i.e., without the <i>by</i> -phrase.		
(d) My aunt <i>made</i> this rug. (active)	If the speaker knows who performs an action, usually the active is used, as in (d).		
<ul> <li>(e) This rug was made by my aunt. That rug was made by my mother.</li> <li>(f) Life on the Mississippi was written by Mark Twain.</li> </ul>	Sometimes, even when the speaker knows who performs an action, he/she chooses to use the passive with the by-phrase in order to focus attention on the subject of a sentence.  In (e): The focus of attention is on two rugs.  In (f): The focus is on the book, but the by-phrase is included because it contains important information.		

# **Exercise 7. Looking at grammar.** (Charts 11-1 $\rightarrow$ 11-3)

Discuss why passive was chosen for these sentences instead of active.

- 1. My sweater was made in England.
  - The speaker or writer probably uses the passive here because he or she doesn't know who made the sweater. Using an active sentence (Someone made my sweater in England) wouldn't add any important information.
- 2. The new highway will be completed sometime next month.
- 3. The World Cup soccer games are being televised all over the world this year.
- 4. This composition was written by Ali. That one was written by Mariko.
- 5. The Washington Monument is visited by hundreds of people every day.
- 6. Bananas originated in Asia but now are grown in the tropics of both hemispheres of the world. They were introduced to the Americas in 1516.

### Exercise 8. Reading and grammar. (Charts 11-1 → 11-3)

Read the paragraph. <u>Underline</u> the passive verbs. Discuss why the writer chose to use passive rather than active. Answer the questions in complete sentences.

### Early Writing Materials

The chief writing material of ancient times was papyrus. It <u>was used</u> in Egypt, Greece, and other Mediterranean lands. Parchment, another writing material that was widely used in ancient times, was made from the skins of animals, such as sheep and goats. After the hair had been removed, the skins were stretched and rubbed smooth to make a writing surface. Paper, the main writing material today, was invented by the Chinese.

Ink has been used for writing and drawing throughout history. No one knows when the first ink was developed. The ancient Egyptians and Chinese made ink from various natural substances such as berries, soot, and tree bark. Through the centuries, thousands of different formulas have been developed for ink. Most ink today is made from synthetic chemicals.

- 1. Before paper was invented, what materials were used for writing?
- 2. What was parchment made from?
- 3. What three things were done to animal skins to make writing material?
- 4. Who first used paper?
- 5. When was ink first used?
- 6. In ancient times, what ingredients did the Egyptians and Chinese use for ink?
- 7. What substances are in ink today?

## $\Box$ Exercise 9. Looking at grammar. (Charts 11-1 $\rightarrow$ 11-3)

Make complete sentences with the given words. Use the simple past. Some are active, and some are passive.

- 1. We \allow, not \ to go to the park alone when we were young
  - → We weren't allowed to go to the park alone when we were young.
- 2. A package \ deliver \ to our apartment yesterday
- 3. Maria \ teach \ her son to read when he was three
- 4. When I was in elementary school, we \ require \ to wear uniforms
- 5. As we watched, the airplane \ disappear \ into the clouds
- 6. I \ agree \ with your decision yesterday
- 7. Timmy \ drop \ a plate after dinner last night
- 8. The plate \ fall \ to the floor with a crash
- 9. What \ happen \ vesterday
- 10. Something very sad \ happen \ yesterday
- 11. My cat \ hit \ by a speeding truck
- 12. She \ kill \ instantly
- 13. She \ die \ instantly

	Exercise 10. Listening. (Charts 11-1 → 11-3)	
	Choose the sentence (a. or b.) that has the same meaning as the one you hear.	
CD 1 Track 5	Example: You will hear: The assistant manager interviewed Mr. Evans for the You will choose: (a.) Mr. Evans was interviewed.  b. The assistant manager was interviewed.	sales job.
	<ol> <li>a. Someone would like the architect to design the new library.</li> <li>b. A famous architect would like to design the new library.</li> </ol>	
	<ul><li>2. a. The kids told others to leave.</li><li>b. Someone told the kids to leave.</li></ul>	
	<ul><li>3. a. I ignored the salesclerk.</li><li>b. The salesclerk ignored me.</li></ul>	
	<ul><li>4. a. The speaker will be asked questions.</li><li>b. The audience will be asked questions.</li></ul>	
	<ul><li>5. a. A party is being planned by Dr. Wilson.</li><li>b. A party is being planned by the staff.</li></ul>	
	<ul><li>6. a. Natural habitats have altered human development.</li><li>b. Natural habitats have been altered by human development.</li></ul>	
	Exercise 11. Looking at grammar. (Charts 11-1 → 11-3) Change each news headline into a complete sentence. Work in pairs, in small grace a class.	oups, or as
	1. 5 PEOPLE KILLED BY TORNADOES	
	1. 5 PEOPLE KILLED BY TORNADOES  Five people	yesterday.
	Five people	yesterday.
		yesterday.
	Five people	
	Five people	
	Five people	soon.
	Five people	soon. dwide each day.
	Five people	soon. dwide each day.
	Five people	dwide each day.
	Five people	soon.  dwide each day.  since last year.  until next year.

3. Someone is televising the tennis match.

- 4. Someone told you to be here at ten.
- 5. Someone is going to serve dinner at six.
- 6. Someone has made a mistake.
- 7. An accident happened at the corner of Fifth and Main.
- 8. Ivan's daughter drew that picture. My son drew this picture.
- 9. The judges will judge the applicants on their creativity.
- 10. My sister's plane will arrive at 10:35.
- 11. Is Professor Rivers teaching that course this semester?
- 12. The mail carrier had already delivered the mail by the time I left for school this morning.
- 13. When is someone going to announce the results of the contest?
- 14. After the concert was over, hundreds of fans surrounded the rock star outside the theater.

Exercis	e 13.	Let's talk.	(Charts 11-1	$\rightarrow 11-3$
---------	-------	-------------	--------------	--------------------

Your teacher will read each sentence and the question that follows. Student A will change the sentence to the passive. Student B will answer the question with the information provided by Student A. Close your book for this activity.

Example: To A: People speak Arabic in many countries. To B: Is Arabic a common language
Teacher (book open): People speak Arabic in many countries.  Student A (book closed): Arabic is spoken in many countries.  Teacher (book open): Is Arabic a common language?  Student B (book closed): Yes. It is spoken in many countries.
1. To A: Someone stole your pen. To B: What happened to ()'s pen?
2. To A: People play soccer in many countries. To B: Is soccer a popular sport?
3. To A: Someone returned your letter. To B: () sent a letter last week, but he/she p the wrong address on it. What happened to the letter?

- 4. To A: Someone robbed the bank. To B: What happened to the bank?
- 5. To A: The police caught the bank robber. To B: Did the bank robber get away?
- 6. To A: A judge sent the thief to jail. To B: What happened to the thief?
- 7. To A: The government requires international students to have visas. To B: Is it necessary for international students to have visas?
- 8. To A: Someone had already made the coffee by the time you got up this morning. To B: Did (\_\_\_\_\_) have to make the coffee when he/she got up?
- 9. *To* A: Someone discovered gold in California in 1848. *To* B: What happened in California in 1848?
- 10. To A: People used candles for light in the 17th century. To B: Was electricity used for light in the 17th century?
- 11. To A: There is a party tomorrow night. Someone invited you to go. To B: Is (\_\_\_\_\_) invited to the party?
- 12. To A: You wanted to buy a chair, but you needed time to make up your mind. Finally you decided to buy it, but someone had already sold it by the time you returned to the store.

  To B: Did (\_\_\_\_\_) buy the chair?

	aplete the sente		rammar. (Char e passive form of t		list. Use any appropriate
	build cause confuse	divide expect frighten	√invent kill offer	order report spell	•
1.	The electric lig	ght bulb	was invented	by Th	omas Edison in 1879.
2.	An island		by	water.	
3.	The -ing form	of sit		_ with a double	"t."
4.	Even though c	onstruction o	costs are high, a ne	ew dormitory _	
	next year.				
5.	The class was	too large last	semester, so it		into two sections.
6.	A bracelet		around	the wrist.	
7.				ng to the inspect	or, the fire
			by lightning.		
8.	_		driving. When he to pay a large fine		ourt, he
9.	I read about a hunter.	hunter who	a	ccidentally	by another
10.	The hunter's fa	atal accident		in the	newspaper yesterday.
11.	I didn't expect	Lisa to com	e to the meeting la	ast night, but she	e was there. I
			to see her.		
12.	Last week I		a job	at a local bank, l	out I didn't accept it.
13.				in the middle o	of the night when they heard
	strange noises				
14.				Yesterday in cla	ss I
1.5	by the teacher				
15.	A: Is the plane	e going to be	rate:		
	B: No. It		to be o	n time.	

# **Exercise 15. Listening.** (Charts $11-1 \rightarrow 11-3$ )



Listen to the report about chocolate with your book closed. Then open your book and listen again. Complete the sentences with the verbs you hear.

### How Chocolate Is Made

C	Chocolate from the seeds of roasted cocoa beans. After the seeds
	the inside of the seed into a liquid. This
liqu	id chocolate liquor. The liquor fat,
whi	ch, a solid
	This solid, which as cocoa cake,
	up and becomes unsweetened cocoa. This is a very bitter
cho	colate. To make it taste better, other substances such as cocoa butter and sugar
	later.
Con	ercise 16. Looking at grammar. (Charts 11-1 and 11-3) inplete the sentences with the active or passive form of the verbs in parentheses. Use any ropriate tense.
1.	Gold (discover) <u>was discovered</u> in California in 1848.
2.	The Amazon valley is extremely important to the ecology of the earth. Forty percent of
	the world's oxygen (produce) there.
3.	Right now Roberto is in the hospital.* He (treat) for a bad burn on his arm.
4.	In my country, certain prices, such as the price of medical supplies, (control)
	by the government. Other prices (determine)
	by how much consumers are willing to pay for a product.
5.	Richard Anderson is a former astronaut. Several years ago, when he was 52, Anderson
	(inform) by his superior at an aircraft corporation that he could no
	longer be a test pilot. He (tell) that he was being relieved of his duties because of his age. Anderson took the corporation to court for age discrimination.
6.	Frostbite may occur when a person's skin (expose) to extreme
	cold. It most frequently (affect)** the skin of the cheeks, chin,
	ears, fingers, nose, and toes.

<sup>\*</sup>in the hospital = American English; in hospital = British English.

<sup>\*\*</sup>Note: affect = a verb (e.g., The weather affects my moods.).

effect = a noun (e.g., The weather has an effect on my moods.).

- 7. Since the beginning of the modern industrial age, many of the natural habitats of plants and animals (destroy) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ by industrial development and pollution.
- 8. Carl Gauss (recognize) \_\_\_\_\_\_ as a mathematical genius when he was ten. One day a professor gave him an arithmetic problem. Carl (ask) \_\_\_\_\_\_ to add up all the numbers from 1 to 100 (1 + 2 + 3 + 4 + 5, etc.). It (take) \_\_\_\_\_ him only eight seconds to solve the problem. How could he do it so quickly? Can you do it quickly?
- 9. Carl could do it quickly because he (*know*) \_\_\_\_\_\_ that each pair of numbers (1 + 100, 2 + 99, 3 + 98, and so on to 50 + 51) equaled 101. So he (*multiply*) \_\_\_\_\_ 50 times 101 and (*come*) \_\_\_\_\_ up with the answer: 5,050.
- Exercise 17. Warm-up. (Chart 11-4)

Complete the sentences with your own words. Are the verbs active or passive?

- 1. <u>Children</u> should be taught to be kind to animals.
- 2. \_\_\_\_\_ should be expected to be in class on time.
- 3. \_\_\_\_\_ can't be grown in a desert.
- 4. \_\_\_\_\_ must be treated with kindness.

# 11-4 The Passive Form of Modals and Phrasal Modals

Pa	ssive form:	modal*	+	be	+	past par	ticiple
(a)	Tom	will		be		invited	to the picnic.
(b)	The window	can't		be		opened.	
(c)	Children	should		be		taught	to respect their elders.
(d)		May I		be		excused	from class?
(e)	This book	had better		be		returned	to the library before Friday.
(f)	This letter	ought to		be		sent	before June 1st.
(g)	Mary	has to		be		told	about our change in plans.
(h)	Fred	is supposed to		be		told	about the meeting.

Pa	st-passive form:	modal -	+ have been	+ past par	ticiple	
(i) (j) (k) (l)	The letter This house Eric Jill	should must couldn t ought to	have been have been have been have been	sent built offered invited	last week. over 200 years ago. the job. to the party.	

<sup>&</sup>gt; e Chapters 9 and 10 for a discussion of the form and use of modals and phrasal modals.

	assive.
1.	James (should + tell)should be told the news as soon as possible.
2.	Someone (should + tell) should tell James the news immediately.
3.	James (should + tell)should have been told the news a long time ago.
4.	Meat (must + keep) in a refrigerator or it will spoil.
5.	You (must + keep) meat in a refrigerator or it will spoil.
6.	We tried, but the window (couldn't + open)  It was painted shut.
7.	I tried, but I (couldn't + open) the window.
8.	Good news! I (may + offer) a job soon. I had an interview at an engineering firm yesterday.
9.	Chris has good news. The engineering firm where she had an interview yesterday  (may + offer) her a job soon.
10.	I hope Chris accepts our job offer, but I know she's been interviewing with several companies. She (may + already + offer)*
	a job by a competing firm before we made our offer.
11.	A competing firm (may + already + offer)
	Chris a job before we made our offer.
12.	The class for next semester is too large. It (ought to + divide)
	in half, but there's not enough money in the budget to hire another
	teacher.
13.	Last semester's class was too large. It (ought to + divide)
	in half.
14.	These books (have to + return) to the library by
	tomorrow.
15.	Polly (have to + return) these books by next Friday. If she
	doesn't return them, she (will + have to + pay)
	a fine to the library.

Exercise 18. Looking at grammar. (Chart 11-4)

<sup>\*</sup>A midsentence adverb such as *already* may be placed after the first auxiliary (e.g., *might already have come*) or after the second auxiliary (e.g., *might have already come*).

10.	A: Anay, your	chores (naa better + jinish)					
	by the time	e I get home, including taking out the garbage.					
	B: Don't worr	ry, Mom. I'll do everything you told me to do.					
17.	Mom gets	(had better + finish) your chores before home.  I do them in a minute. I'm busy right now.					
18.		on (be supposed to + send)					
201		nel department soon.					
19.	Ann's birthday	y was on the 5th, and today is the 8th. Her birthday card (should + send)  a week ago. Maybe we'd better give her a call to					
	wish her a bela	ated happy birthday.					
20.	A: Yoko didn't expect to see her boss at the labor union meeting.						
	B: She (must + surprise) when she saw him.						
	A: She was.						
Mak		oking at grammar. (Chart 11-4)  attences with the given words.  a. Seat belts \ wear \ during takeoff and landing  → Seat belts must be worn during takeoff and landing.					
		b. All passengers \ wear \ their seat belts during takeoff and landing \( \rightarrow All \) passengers must wear their seat belts during takeoff and landing.					
1.	will	<ul><li>a. Many lives \ save \ with the new medical procedure</li><li>b. The procedure \ save \ many lives</li></ul>					
2.	can	<ul><li>a. Shoppers \ look for \ product information on the internet every day</li><li>b. Product information \ find \ on the internet</li></ul>					
3.	should	<ul><li>a. People \ check \ smoke alarm batteries once a month</li><li>b. Smoke alarm batteries \ test \ once a month</li></ul>					
4.	may	<ul><li>a. The typhoon \ kill \ hundreds of villagers yesterday</li><li>b. Hundreds of villagers \ kill \ in the typhoon yesterday</li><li>c. Hundreds of villagers \ die \ in the typhoon yesterday</li></ul>					
_	had better	a. Medical supplies \ deliver \ soon					

Exercise 20. Let's talk. (Chart	11-4
---------------------------------	------

Use passive modals to restate the computer lab rules. Make at least two sentences for each rule. Work in pairs or small groups.

Example: Do not bring food into the lab.

- → Food must not be brought into the lab.
- → Food cannot be brought into the lab.
- → Food must be left outside.

### Computer lab rules:

- 1. Turn off cell phones.
- 2. Computers are for school use only.
- 3. Do not play computer games.
- 4. Do not download music from the internet.
- 5. Use the printer for schoolwork only.

Exercise	21	Looking at	grammar.	(Chart	11-4
EXCICISE	41.	LOCKIIIG GI	giaiiiiiai.	CHUIL	11"4)

Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses. Use the modal or phrasal modal that sounds best to you. All of the sentences are passive.

- 1. The entire valley (see) <u>can be seen</u> from the mountain top.
- 2. He is wearing a gold band on his fourth finger. He (marry)
- 3. According to our teacher, all of our compositions (write) \_\_\_\_\_\_ in ink. He won't accept papers written in pencil.
- 4. I found this book on my desk when I came to class. It (*leave*) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_by one of the students in the earlier class.
- 5. Your daughter has a good voice. Her interest in singing (encourage)
- 6. Some UFO sightings (*explain*, *not*) \_\_\_\_\_\_ easily. They are inexplicable.



7. Try to speak slowly when you give your speech. If you don't, some of your words (misunderstand) \_\_\_\_\_\_.

8.	What? You tripped over a chair at the party and dropped your plate of food in	to a woman's
	lap? You (embarrass)	
9.	The hospital in that small town is very old and can no longer serve the needs	of the
	community. A new hospital (build)	years ago.
10.	Blue whales and other endangered species (save)	from
	extinction. Do you agree?	

### Exercise 22. Listening and grammar. (Charts 11-1 $\rightarrow$ 11-4)



**Part I.** Listen to the lecture on the 2004 Indian Ocean tsunami with your book closed. Then open your book and choose all the grammatically correct sentences in each group.

- 1. (a.) An earthquake hit the Indian Ocean.
  - (b.) The Indian Ocean was hit by an earthquake.
  - c. An earthquake was hit the Indian Ocean.
- 2. a. Millions of lives were changed forever by the earthquake.
  - b. Millions of lives changed forever by the earthquake.
- 3. a. The quake followed by giant tsunami waves.
  - b. The quake was followed by giant tsunami waves.
  - c. Giant tsunami waves were followed the earthquake.
  - d. Giant tsunami waves followed the earthquake.
- 4. a. Thousands of people swept out to sea.
  - b. Thousands of people were swept out to sea.
  - c. The tsunami wave swept thousands of people out to sea.
- 5. a. Nearly 300,000 people died.
  - b. Nearly 300,000 people were died.
  - c. Nearly 300,000 people were killed.
  - d. Nearly 300,000 people killed.
- 6. a. The damage could have been lessened by a tsunami early-warning system.
  - b. A tsunami early-warning system could have lessened the damage.
  - c. A tsunami early-warning system could have been lessened the damage.
- 7. a. An early-warning system already exists for the Pacific Ocean.
  - b. An early-warning system already is existed for the Pacific Ocean.

### Part II. Listen again. Complete the sentences with the verbs you hear.

### The 2004 Indian Ocean Tsunami

In 2004, several countries that border	the Indian Ocean, including Ir	ndonesia, Thailand, India,
Malaysia, and Somalia,	by an earthquake a	and subsequent tsunami.
(As you may already know, a tsunami is	s a giant ocean wave.) In just a	few short hours, millions
of lives	forever. The earthquake	3
at 9.3 on the Richter scale. It was the f	ourth largest earthquake since	1900 and the second
largest that4	on the Richter	scale.
The quake5	by four giant waves as h	nigh as 100 feet
(or 30 meters). Whole villages	6	Thousands of people
out to sea, a	and many others8	due to lack of
medical care. In total, almost 300,000	people	, and 1.3 million
people hom	eless. Aftershocks from the ear	rthquake
for several d	lays.	
Tragically, the damage	12	if there had been a
tsunami early-warning system. Such a	system already	for the Pacific
Ocean, but it14	_ to the Indian Ocean. Since t	he tsunami disaster,
governments15	together to develop	o an early-warning system
so that Southeast Asia	such destruct	ion again from a tsunami.

# Exercise 23. Looking at grammar. (Charts 11-1 $\rightarrow$ 11-4)

Change the verbs to the passive as appropriate. Discuss why you decided that certain verbs should be in the passive but that others should remain active.

It is used

(1) Paper is a common material. People use it- everywhere in the world. Throughout history, people have made it from various plants such as rice and papyrus, but today wood is the chief source of paper. In the past, people made paper by hand, but now machines do most of the work.\* Today people make paper from wood pulp by using either a mechanical or a chemical process.

<sup>\*</sup>Whether or not to use the passive in the second half of this sentence is a stylistic choice. Either the active or the passive can appropriately be used. Some writers might prefer the passive so that both halves of the sentence are parallel in structure.

- (2) In the mechanical process, someone grinds the wood into small chips. During the grinding, someone sprays it with water to keep it from burning from the friction of the grinder. Then someone soaks the chips in water.
- (3) In the chemical process, first someone washes the wood, and then someone cuts it into small pieces in a chipping machine. Then someone cooks the chips in certain chemicals. After someone cooks the wood, someone washes it to get rid of the chemicals.
- (4) The next steps in making paper are the same for both the mechanical and the chemical processes. Someone drains the pulp to form a thick mass, bleaches it with chlorine, and then thoroughly washes it again. Next someone puts the pulp through a large machine that squeezes the water out and forms the pulp into long sheets. After the pulp sheets go through a drier and a press, someone winds them onto rolls. These rolls of paper are then ready for use.
- (5) The next time you use paper, you should think about its origin and how people make it. And you should ask yourself this question: What would the world be like without paper? If you can imagine how different today's world would be without paper, you will immediately understand how essential paper has been in the development of civilization.

### Exercise 24. Let's write. (Charts 11-1 $\rightarrow$ 11-4)

Write about how something is made. Choose one of these topics.

Topics:

- 1. Write about something you know how to make. *Possible subjects:* a kite, a ceramic pot, a bookcase, a sweater, a bead necklace, a special kind of food, etc.
- 2. Use a reference tool such as the internet to find out how something is made, and then summarize this information. It's not necessary to go into technical detail. Read about the process and then describe it in your own words. *Possible subjects:* a candle, a pencil, glass, steel, silk thread, bronze, leather, etc.

# **Exercise 25. Warm-up.** (Chart 11-5)

Look around the room and answer these questions.

- 1. Are the windows closed?
- 2. Is the door shut?
- 3. Are the lights turned on?
- 4. Is anything broken? If so, what?

11-5 Non-Progressive Passive				
<ul> <li>(a) The door is old.</li> <li>(b) The door is green.</li> <li>(c) The door is locked.</li> </ul>	In (a) and (b): old and green are adjectives. They describe the door.  In (c): locked is a past participle. It is used as an adjective. It describes the door.			
<ul><li>(d) I locked the door five minutes ago.</li><li>(e) The door was locked by me five minutes ago.</li><li>(f) Now the door <i>is locked</i>.</li></ul>	When the passive form is used to describe an existing situation or state, as in (c), (f), and (i), it is called the "non-progressive passive." In the non-progressive:  • no action is taking place; the action happened			
<ul><li>(g) Ann broke the window yesterday.</li><li>(h) The window was broken by Ann.</li><li>(i) Now the window <i>is broken</i>.</li></ul>	earlier.  • there is no <i>by</i> -phrase.  • the past participle functions as an adjective.			
<ul> <li>(j) I am interested in Chinese art.</li> <li>(k) He is satisfied with his job.</li> <li>(l) Ann is married to Alex.</li> </ul>	Prepositions other than <b>by</b> can follow non-progressive passive verbs. (See Chart 11-6.)			
(m) I don't know where I am. I am lost. (n) I can't find my purse. It is gone. (o) I am finished with my work. (p) I am done with my work.	Sentences (m) through (p) are examples of idiomatic usage of the passive form in common, everyday English. These sentences have no equivalent active sentences.			

Exercise 26. Looking at grammar. (Chart 1		Exercise 26.	Looking o	it arammar.	(Chart 11	-5
---	--	--------------	-----------	-------------	-----------	----

Complete the sentences with the non-progressive passive of the verbs in parentheses. Use the simple present or the simple past.

1.	Olga is wearing a blouse. It (make) is made of cotton.
2.	The door to this room (shut)
3.	The lights in this room (turn) on.
4.	This room (crowd, not)
5.	We can leave now because class (finish)
6.	It is hot in this room because the window (close)
7.	Yesterday it was hot in this room because the window (close)
	•
8.	We are ready to sit down and eat dinner. The table (set),
	the meat and rice (do), and the candles (light)
	·
9.	Where's my wallet? It (go)! Did you take it?
0.	Hmmm. My dress (tear) . I wonder how that happened.

Exercise 27. Looking at grammar. (Chart
---

Complete each sentence with an appropriate form of the words in the list.

	bear (born)* block confuse	crowd divorce exhaust	√lose	plug in qualify schedule	stick	
1.	Excuse me, sir. Co	uld you give n	ne some direct	ions? I <u>am</u>	lost	
2.	Let's find another re	estaurant. Th	is one	too	We wo	ald
	have to wait at least	an hour for a	table.			
3.	The meeting		fo	or tomorrow at n	ine.	
4.	That's hard work!		_	I need to	rest for a while.	
5.	You told me one thi	ing, and John	told me anothe	er. I don't know	what to think. I	
		•			-	
6.	Annie can't close th	e window. It		· \		ı
7.	Louise is probably s	sleeping. The	lights in her ro	oom		
8.	Carolyn and Joe we	re married to	each other for	five years,		
	but now they					KD.
9.	I'm sorry. You	n	ot	2		=
		for the	e job. We need	someone		
	with a degree in ele					
0.	I love my wife. I _		to a	a wonderful wom	ian.	
1.	We can't eat this fru	it. It		We'll have	to throw it out.	
12.	We'd better call a pl	lumber. The with f		down the drain.	The drain	
13.	Vietnam		in Southeas	st Asia.		
4.	A: How old is Juan	;				
	B: He		in 1980.			
15.	A: The TV set isn't	working.				
	B: Are you sure?		_ it			

<sup>\*</sup>In the passive, born is used as the past participle of bear to mean "given birth to."

### Exercise 28. Warm-up. (Chart 11-6)

Answer the questions.

What is something that you are . . .

- 1. interested in? 3. concerned about? 5. excited about?
- 2. annoyed by? 4. scared of?

6. accustomed to?

<ul><li>(a) I'm interested in Greek culture.</li><li>(b) He's worried about losing his job.</li></ul>		Many non-progressi other than <b>by</b> .	ve verbs are followed by p	preposition
be concerned be excited be worried  be discriminated be known be prepared be qualified be remembered be well known  be divorced	be composed be made be tired  be frightened be scared be terrified  be accustomed be addicted be committed be connected	} of	be acquainted be associated be cluttered be crowded be done be equipped be filled be finished be pleased be provided be satisfied	with
be exhausted be gone be protected from	be dedicated be devoted be engaged be exposed be limited	to	be annoyed be bored be covered	with/by
be interested be located be disappointed } in	be married be opposed be related	-		

### Exercise 29. Looking at grammar. (Chart 11-6)

Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

SITUATION: Maya is a toymaker. She makes simple toys from wood.

- 1. She is excited <u>about</u> creating toys children enjoy.
- 2. She is known \_\_\_\_\_ creating high-quality toys.
- 3. She is interested \_\_\_\_\_ how children play with one another.
- 4. She is pleased \_\_\_\_\_ the response to her toys.
- 5. Her toys are made \_\_\_\_\_\_ wood.
- 6. The materials in her toys are limited \_\_\_\_\_ wood.
- 7. She is disappointed \_\_\_\_\_ many of the popular toys in stores today.
- 8. She worries \_\_\_\_\_ toys that don't encourage children to use their imagination.

CD 1	List	en to the sentences. They contain non-progressive passive verbs plus prepositions. Write prepositions you hear.
Track 57	Exa	<i>mple:</i> You will hear: Carol is interested in ancient history.  You will write:in
	1.	5
	2.	6
	3.	7
	4.	8
		ercise 31. Looking at grammar. (Chart 11-6) explored the sentences with the correct prepositions.
	1.	Jack is married Joan.
	2.	Could I please have the dictionary when you are finished it?
	3.	My car is equipped air-conditioning and a sun roof.
	4.	Gandhi was committed nonviolence. He believed in it all of his life.
	5.	Barbara turned off the TV because she was tired listening to the news.
	6.	The choices in that restaurant are limited pizza and sandwiches.
	7.	Their apartment is always messy. It's cluttered newspapers, books, clothes,
	8.	A: Are you in favor of a worldwide ban on nuclear weapons, or are you opposed it?
		B: I'm in favor of it. I'm terrified the possibility of a nuclear war starting by accident. But my wife is against disarmament.
	9.	A: Are you still associated the International Red Cross and Red Crescent?
		B: I was, until this year. Are you interested working with them?
		A: I think I'd like to. They are dedicated helping people in times of crisis,
		and I admire the work they've done. Can you get me some information?

	•	position. Use the simple present.	passive form of the given	ven vero and an
1.	cover	It's winter, and the ground	is covered with	snow.
2.	finish	Pat	her composition.	
3.	addict	Ann laughingly calls herself a "ch		ne
4.	satisfy	I	the progress I ha	ave made.
5.	engage	Hashim	Fatima.	
6.	divorce	Elaine	Pierre.	
7.	relate	Your name is Mary Smith.	you	
			John Smith?	
8.	dedicate	Mrs. Robinson works in an orph	anage. She	
		her work.		
9.	dress	Miguel	a tuxedo for his	s wedding today.
10.	commit	The administration	im	proving the quality of
		education at our school.		
11.	prepare	We finished packing our sleeping		
		clothes. We are finally		our camping trip.
12.	do	We are	_ this exercise.	
Thi	nk about cha y life, etc.   C	Let's talk. (Chart 11-6) anges that modern life has brough complete the phrases with the corresponding groups.		
Who	at changes or	innovations are you (or people you k	now)	
1.	excited	?		
2.	concerned	?		
3.	opposed _	?		
4.	annoyed _			
5.	addicted _	?		
6.	not accusto	omed?		

Exercise 32. Looking at grammar. (Chart 11-6)

# ☐ Exercise 34. Looking at grammar. (Chart 11-6)

Add the missing preposition to each sentence.

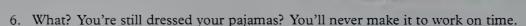
with

1. I'm not acquainted \( \text{ that man. Do you know him?} \)

2. The department store was filled toys for the holiday sale.

3. Bert's bald head is protected the hot sun when he's wearing his hat.

- 4. Your leg bone is connected your hip bone.
- A person who is addicted drugs needs professional medical help.



- 7. The school children were exposed the flu by a student who had it.
- 8. The electronic items were priced so low for the sale that they were gone the store shelves in minutes.
- 9. Roberta didn't get the job even though she was qualified it.
- 10. My office is located a building next to the park on Fifth Avenue.

# Exercise 35. Warm-up. (Chart 11-7)

Complete the sentences with the words in the list. Notice the word forms that follow the verb *get*.

	dirty	dressed	hungry	hurt	lost	wet
1.	When the c	hildren played	in the mud, the	eir clothes go	pt	·
2.	We didn't h	ave a map, so v	ve got		.•	
3.	Don't go ou	it in the rain w	ithout a coat. Y	ou'll get		·
4.	I'll be ready	to leave as soc	on as I get		It'll ji	ust take a few minutes.
5.	If I skip bre	akfast, I always	get	d	luring my la	ate morning class.
6.	It was a bac	l accident, but	luckily no one ¿	got		

# 11-7 The Passive with Get

### Get + Adjective

- (a) I'm getting hungry. Let's eat soon.
- (b) I stopped working because I got sleepy.

**Get** may be followed by certain adjectives. **Get** gives the idea of change — the idea of becoming, beginning to be, growing to be.

In (a): *I'm getting hungry* = I wasn't hungry before, but now I'm beginning to be hungry.

### Common adjectives that follow get

angry	cold	fat	hungry	quiet	tall
anxious	comfortable	full	late	ready	thirsty
bald	dark	good	light	rich	warm
better	dizzy	hard	mad	ripe	well
big	easy	healthy	nervous	serious	wet
big	easy	healthy	nervous	serious	wet
busy	empty	heavy	noisy	sick	worse
chilly	famous	hot	old	sleepy	

### Get + Past Participle

- (c) I stopped working because I got tired.
- (d) They are getting married next month.

*Get* may also be followed by a past participle. The past participle functions as an adjective; it describes the subject.

The passive with *get* is common in spoken English, but not in formal writing.

### Common past participles with get

past partie processing		
get accepted (for, into)	get dressed (in)	get invited (to)
get accustomed to	get drunk (on)	get involved (in, with)
get acquainted (with)	get elected (to)	get killed (by, with)
get arrested (for)	get engaged (to)	get lost (in)
get bored (with)	get excited (about)	get married (to)
get confused (about)	get finished (with)	get prepared (for)
get crowded (with)	get fixed (by)	get scared (of)
get divorced (from)	get hurt (by)	get sunburned
get done (with)	get interested (in)	get worried (about)

# ☐ Exercise 36. Looking at grammar. (Chart 11-7)

Complete the sentences with words that make sense. More than one answer may be correct for each sentence.

- 1. The meeting starts in an hour. I need to get \_\_\_\_\_ for it.
  - a. prepare
- (b.) prepared
- (c.) ready
- d. readying
- 2. I think I'll stop working for the day. I'm getting \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. tire
- b. tired
- c. dark
- d. late
- 3. Sonia stopped working because it was getting \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. late
- b. dark
- c. tired
- d. sleepy

- 4. We can leave as soon as you get \_\_\_\_\_
  - a. pack
- b. finish
- c. packed
- d. finished

5.	Sam was supposed to be home a. nervous b. anxio		
6.	I didn't stay for the end of the a. bore b. bored		d. am bored
7.	When are you going to geta. marriage b. marr		d. engage
	ercise 37. Looking at gran		the given adjectives.
	accustom do better engage dark fire depress hire divorce	invite r marry w	oay emarry vell vet
1.	What time are we going to eat? I am getting hungry		
2.	I didn't have an umbrella, so I while I was waiting for the bus yesterday.		
3.	Every time I have to give a speech, I		
4.	. Would you mind turning on the light? It in here.		in here.
5.	Maria's English is improving. It		
6.	My friend was sick, so I sent him a card. It said, " soon."		
7.	How long did it take you to to living here?		
8.	We can leave as soon as I with this work.		his work.
9.	Chris when she lost her job, so I tried to cheer her up.		
10.	I got an invitation you to the party to		to the party too?
11.	I on Fridays. I'll give you the money I owe you next Fridays.		noney I owe you next Friday.
	Okay?		
12.	After Ed graduated, he by an engineering firm.		
13.	But later he because he didn't do his work.		
14.	Ben and Sara have had an interesting relationship. First, they		
	Then, they		
	Finally, they	Today they a	are a happily married couple.

### Exercise 38. Let's talk: interview. (Chart 11-7)

Interview your classmates. Share some of their answers with the class.

Example: Have you ever gotten dizzy? Tell me about it.

- → Yes. I got dizzy when I went on a ride at the carnival last summer. But it was a lot of fun!
- 1. Tell me about a time you got lost. Where were you and what happened?
- 2. Do you ever get sleepy during the day? If so, tell me about it. If not, when do you get sleepy?
- 3. Have you ever gotten really scared? What scared you?
- 4. Think of the world situation today. What things are getting better, and what things are getting worse?
- 5. Have you ever gotten hurt in a traffic accident or any kind of accident? What happened?
- 6. Tell me about a time you got confused about something.
- 7. Have you or has someone you know ever gotten cheated when you bought something? Tell me about it.
- 8. Is there an election coming up in this country or another country that interests you? If so, who do you think is going to get elected? Who got elected in the last election in this country?

### Exercise 39. Warm-up. (Chart 11-8)

The teacher in the picture is lecturing her class about healthy food.

- 1. How would you describe the teacher: boring or bored?
- 2. How would you describe the students: boring or bored?



11-8 Participial Adjectives		
— The problem confuses the students.  (a) It is a confusing problem.	The present participle serves as an adjective with an active meaning. The noun it modifies performs an action.	
	In (a): The noun <i>problem</i> does something; it <i>confuses</i> . Thus, it is described as a "confusing problem."	
<ul><li>The students are confused by the problem.</li><li>(b) They are <i>confused students</i>.</li></ul>	The past participle serves as an adjective with a passive meaning.	
	In (b): The students are confused by something. Thus, they are described as "confused students."	
— The story amuses the children.  (c) It is an amusing story.	In (c): The noun <i>story</i> performs the action.	
The children are amused by the story.  (d) They are amused children.	In (d): The noun <i>children</i> receives the action.	

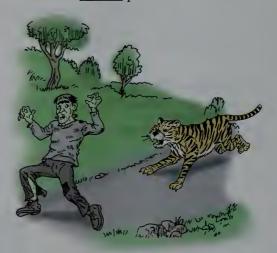
### **Exercise 40. Looking at grammar.** (Chart 11-8)

Match the sentences to the pictures. Some sentences describe <u>neither</u> picture.



Picture A

- 3. The child is frightened.



Picture B

- 1. The monster is frightened. 4. The child is frightening.
- 2. The monster is frightening. 5. The tiger is frightened.
  - 6. The tiger is frightening.

# Exercise 41. Looking at grammar. (Chart 11-8)

Complete each sentence with the present or past participle of the verb in italics.

- 1. The class bores the students. It is a <u>boring</u> class.
- 2. The students *are bored* by the class. They are <u>bored</u> students.
- 3. The game excites the people. It is an \_\_\_\_\_ game.
- 4. The people are excited by the game. They are

5. The news *surprised* the man. It was \_\_\_\_\_\_ news. 6. The man was surprised by the news. He was a \_\_\_\_\_ man. 7. The child was frightened by the strange noise. The \_\_\_\_\_ child sought comfort from her father. 8. The strange noise *frightened* the child. It was a \_\_\_\_\_\_ sound. 9. The work *exhausted* the men. It was \_\_\_\_\_ work. 10. The men were exhausted. The \_\_\_\_\_\_ men sat down to rest under the shade of a tree. Exercise 42. Let's talk. (Chart 11-8) Your teacher will read the questions. Answer them as a class (or individually) with a present or past participle. Close your book for this activity. Example: If a book confuses you, how would you describe the book? How would you describe vourself? TEACHER (book open): If a book confuses you, how would you describe the book? SPEAKER A (book closed): confusing How would you describe yourself? TEACHER (book open): SPEAKER B (book closed): confused 1. If a story amazes you, how would you 5. If a painting interests you, ...? describe the story? How would you 6. If a situation embarrasses you, . . . ? 7. If a book disappoints you, ...? describe yourself? 2. If a story depresses you, how would 8. If a person fascinates you, ...? you describe the story? How would 9. If an assignment frustrates you, ...? you describe yourself? 10. If a noise annoys you, ...? 3. If some work tires you, ...? 11. If an event shocks you, ...? 4. If a movie bores you, ...? 12. If an experience thrills you, ...? Exercise 43. Listening. (Chart 11-8) Listen to the sentences. Choose the words you hear. CD 1 Example: You will hear: Something's wrong with the refrigerator. It's been making an annoying buzz all day. You will choose: annoy (annoving) annoved

1.	miss	missing	missed
2.	satisfy	satisfying	satisfied
3.	frighten	frightening	frightened
4.	marry	marrying	married
5.	scare	scary	scared
6.	finish	finishing	finished

	List	en to			oose the c		ect completions	•		
CD 1 Frack 59	Exa	mple:					reat lecture last	t night. I	t was	
							fascinated			
							listened carefu	lly to the	lecture. They	were
			You will	choose:	fascinating	3	fascinated			
	1.	thril	ling	thrilled		5.	delightful	delighte	d	
	2.	thril	ling	thrilled		6.	delightful	delighte	d	
	3.	shoc	king	shocked		7.	confusing	confuse	d	
	4.	shoc	king	shocked		8.	confusing	confuse	d	
							r. (Chart 11-8) or past particip		verbs in parent	heses.
	1.	The	thief tried	d to pry c	pen the (lo	ck)	locked		cabinet.	
	2.	I fou	ınd mysel	f in an (e	mbarrass) <sub>-</sub>			si	tuation last nig	tht.
	3.	The	(injure) _			. wc	oman was put in	nto an am	ibulance.	
	4.	The	teacher g	ave us a (	(challenge)		- · -··		ıssignment, but	we all enjoyed
		doin	g it.							
	5.	The	(expect) _				event did no	ot occur.		
	6.	The	invention	of the (1	orint)			press	was one of the	most
		impo	ortant eve	nts in the	history of	the	world.			
	7.	(Exp	perience) _				travelers pac	k lightly.	They carry litt	le more than
		nece	essities.							
	8.	A ( g	grow)			chi	ild needs a (bald	ance)		diet.
	9.	No o	one appre	ciates a (	spoil)		cł	hild.		
	10.	The	re is an ol	d saying:	"Let (sleep	>) _			_ dogs lie." It:	means "Don't
		bring	g up past	problems	s."					
						1	<b>ZZ</b>			
					1.1	V				
					7		6/1			
					Car Car	3	The same of the sa	Z.		

Exercise 44. Listening. (Chart 11-8)

	11.	` '	but hair-raising experience on our
		backpacking trip into the wil	derness.
	12.	The (abandon)	car was towed away by a tow truck.
	13.	(Pollute)	water is not safe for drinking.
	14.	I don't have any furniture of	my own. Do you know where I can rent a (furnish) apartment?
	15.	The equator is the (divide) _	line between the Northern an
		Southern hemispheres.	
	16.	We all expect our (elect)	officials to be honest.
	17.	The psychologist spoke to us	s about some of the (amaze)
		coincidences in the lives of tr	wins living apart from each other from birth.
	of the	what \ be \ you \ worried about What \ be \ you \ worried about What \ be \ you \ tired of?	•
		What (or who) \ be \ you \ pl	eased with?
		What \ you \ get \ really nerv	
	5.	What \ you \ want \ to be \ re	membered for?
		What \ be \ excite \ to you?	
		What \ you \ get excited about	
		What \ be \ confuse \ to stud What \ be \ you \ confused by	
		What \ confuse \ to children?	
CD 1 rack 60	Par oper		opter 11) It the early Olympic Games with your book closed. Then ements. Circle "T" for true and "F" for false.
IACK OO		The Olympic Games were es	stablished so that men T F
		and women could compete a	gainst one another.
	2.	Greece invited other nations	to the games T F
		to encourage good relationsh	ips among countries.

3. The winning athletes were considered heroes.

F

Т

Part II. Listen again. Complete the sentences with the verbs you hear.

### The Olympic Games

The Olympic Games	more than 2,000 years ago in Olympia, a	
small town in Greece. The games	for two purposes. One was	6
to showcase the physical qualities and at	thletic performances of its young men. At that time,	
only Greek males	to compete. In fact, women	
4	to watch the games, and the only spectators were	
men. The other goal	to encourage good relationships among Greek citie	es.
People of other nationalities	to participate.	
The winner of each event	with a wreath made of olive leave	es.
Additionally, his statue	in Olympia for all to see.	
athletes	as heroes when they	
returned to their cities because with the	ir victory, they fame and	
honor to their hometowns.		

### Exercise 48. Let's talk. (Chapter 11)

Discuss these questions. Work in small groups or as a class.

- 1. What is one of the most satisfying experiences in your life?
- 2. Do you ever get stressed? What stresses you?
- 3. Are you concerned about global warming? Why or why not?
- 4. What things in your daily life do you sometimes get tired of doing?
- 5. We all want to accomplish good things in our life and be good people. After you're gone, how do you want to be remembered?

# ☐ Exercise 49. Let's talk or write. (Chapter 11)

Discuss and or write about one or more of the topics.

### Topics:

1. Athletes as Heroes

What are the most popular sports in your country and who are today's sports heroes? Who were your sports heroes (if any) when you were a child? How are athletes viewed by the general public in your country? Do you feel athletes are important role models for children?

2. Men's vs. Women's Sports

When you were growing up, were girls' sports and boys' sports considered to be of equal importance in your school? Traditionally, women's sports have been viewed as less significant than men's sports, but today men's and women's sports are treated equally in the Olympics. Do you feel that women's sports are as valuable and entertaining as men's sports? If you are a fan of one but not the other, why?

3. International Competition

Sports are competitive activities with winners and losers, yet the modern Olympics can be seen as valuable in creating international understanding and cooperation. What do you feel is the value (if any) of international sports competitions such as the Olympics?

### Exercise 50. Check your knowledge. (Chapter 11)

Correct the errors.

### interested

- 1. I am interesting in his ideas.
- 2. Two people got hurted in the accident and were took to the hospital by an ambulance.
- 3. The movie was so bored that we fell asleep after an hour.
- 4. The students helped by the clear explanation that the teacher gave.
- 5. The winner of the race hasn't been announcing yet.
- 6. When and where has the automobile invented?
- 7. My brother and I have always been interesting in learning more about our family tree.\*
- 8. I am not agree with you, and I don't think you'll ever convince me.
- 9. It was late, and I was getting very worry about my mother.
- 10. Many strange things were happened last night.
- 11. I didn't go to dinner with them because I had already been eaten.
- 12. In class yesterday, I was confusing. I didn't understand the lesson.
- 13. When we were children, we are very afraid of caterpillars. Whenever we saw one of these monsters, we were run to our house before the caterpillars could attack us. I still get scare when I saw a caterpillar close to me.
- 14. One day, while the old man was cutting down a big tree near the stream, his axe was fallen into the river. He sat down and begin to cry because he does not have enough money to buy another axe.

<sup>\*</sup>family tree = a genealogical diagram that shows how family members are related; each generation is represented by a new "branch" of the tree.

# Chapter 12 Noun Clauses

### Exercise 1. Warm-up. (Chart 12-1)

Check (✓) the complete sentences.

- 1. <u>In studies business.</u>
- 2. \_\_\_ What does Jin study?
- 3. \_\_\_ What Jin studies?
- 4. \_\_\_ What Jin studies is business.
- 5. \_\_\_ His books.
- 6. \_\_\_ I don't know how much his books cost.
- 7. \_\_\_ How much his books cost?
- 8. \_\_\_ How much do his books cost?

independent clause	
	A clause is a group of words containing a subject and a verb.*
) <sup>I</sup> Sue lives in Tokyo. <sup>I</sup>	An INDEPENDENT CLAUSE (or <i>main clause</i> ) is a complete sentence. It contains the main subject and verb of a sentence.
independent clause	Examples (a) and (b) are complete sentences.
) <sup>I</sup> Where does Sue live? <sup>I</sup>	Example (a) is a statement; (b) is a question.
dependent clause	A DEPENDENT CLAUSE (or subordinate clause) is not a complete sentence
(c) where Sue lives	Example (c) is a dependent clause.
noun clause	Example (d) is a complete sentence, with a main subject (I) and verb
) I know where Sue lives.	(know) followed by a dependent clause.
	Where Sue lives is called a noun clause.
S V O	A NOUN CLAUSE has the same uses in a sentence as a noun: it is used a an object or a subject.
) I KIIOW What he salu.	
s v	In (e): The noun clause is the object of the verb <i>know</i> .  In (f): The noun clause is the subject of the verb <i>is</i> .

<sup>\*</sup>A phrase is a group of words that does NOT contain a subject and a verb.

Exercise 2. Looking at grammar. (Chart 12-1) <u>Underline</u> the noun clause in each sentence. Some sentences do not have one.
1. I couldn't hear what the teacher said.
2. What did the teacher say? (no noun clause)
3. No one knows where Tom went.
4. Where Tom went is a secret.
5. What does Nancy want?
6. We need to know what Nancy wants.
Exercise 3. Looking at grammar. (Chart 12-1) Add punctuation and capitalization. <u>Underline</u> the noun clauses.
1. Where did Sara go did she go home - Where did Sara go? Did she go home?
2. I don't know where Sara went → I don't know where Sara went.
3. What does Alex need do you know
4. Do you know what Alex needs
5. What Alex needs is a new job
6. We talked about what Alex needs
7. What do you need did you talk to your parents about what you need
8. My parents know what I need
Evereise 4 Looking at grammar (Chart 12 1)

**Exercise 4. Looking at grammar.** (Chart 12-1) Are these sentences true for you? Circle *yes* or *no.* Discuss your answers.

1.	What my family thinks of me is very important to me.	yes	no
2.	I always pay attention to what other people think of me.	yes	no
3.	Where we live is exciting.	yes	no
4.	Where we live is expensive.	yes	no
5.	I think how most celebrities behave is admirable.	yes	no
6.	Lusually don't believe what I read in advertisements	ves	no

### Exercise 5. Warm-up. (Chart 12-2)

Choose the correct sentences.

- 1. Where does Brad live?
  - a. I'm not sure where he lives.
  - b. I'm not sure where does he live.
- 2. I'm looking for Brad.
  - a. Could you tell me where is Brad?
  - b. Could you tell me where Brad is?

12-2 Noun C	clauses Beginning with a (	Question Word
Question	Noun Clause	
Where does she live? What did he say? When do they arrive?	<ul><li>(a) I don't know where she lives.</li><li>(b) I couldn't hear what he said.</li><li>(c) Do you know when they arrive?</li></ul>	In (a): where she lives is the object of the verb know. In a noun clause, the subject precedes the verb. Do not use question word order in a noun clause.
		Notice: <i>does, did,</i> and <i>do</i> are used in questions but not in noun clauses.
		See Appendix Chart B-2 for more information about question words and question forms.
S V Who lives there? Who is at the door?	S V (d) I don't know who lives there. (e) I wonder who is at the door.	In (d) and (e): The word order is the same in both the question and the noun clause because <i>who</i> is the subject in both.
v s Who are those men? Whose house is that?	S V (f) I don't know who those men are. (g) I wonder whose house that is.	In (f): <i>those men</i> is the subject of the question, so it is placed in front of the verb <i>be</i> in the noun clause.*
What did she say? What should they do?	(h) What she said surprised me.  S V (i) What they should do is obvious.	In (h): What she said is the subject of the sentence.  Notice in (i): A noun clause subject takes a singular verb (e.g., is).

\*COMPARE: Who is at the door? = who is the subject of the question.

Who are those men? = those men is the subject of the question, so be is plural.

	Exercise	6.	Looking	at	grammar.	(Chart	12-2)
--	----------	----	---------	----	----------	--------	-------

5. (When are they coming?) Do you know \_

Change each question in parentheses to a noun clause.

(How old is he?) I don't know \_\_\_\_\_how old he is \_\_\_\_\_.
 (What was he talking about?) \_\_\_\_\_\_ was interesting.
 (Where do you live?) Please tell me \_\_\_\_\_.
 (Where did she go?) \_\_\_\_\_\_ is none of your business.

6.	(Which one does he want?) Let's ask him _		
7.	(What happened?) I don't know		·
8.	(Who opened the door?) I don't know		
9.	(Why did they leave the country?)		is a secret.
10.	(What are we doing in class?)		is easy.
11.	(Who are those people?) I don't know		
12.	(Whose pen is this?) Do you know		
	ercise 7. Looking at grammar. (Change the questions to noun clauses. Begin		
Exa	mple: What time does the computer lab clo $\rightarrow$ Can you tell me what time the compu		b closes?
1.	How is this word pronounced?		
2.	What does this mean?		
3.	What was my grade?		
4.	Who am I supposed to talk to?		
5.	When is our next assignment due?		
6.	How much time do we have for the test?		
7.	When do classes end for the year?		
8.	Where is our class going to meet?		
Spe	ercise 8. Let's talk. (Chart 12-2) aker A asks a question. Speaker B responde the names of your classmates. Work in pair		
SPE	mple: Where is ()?  AKER A (book open): Where is Marco?  AKER B (book closed): I don't know where M	<b>1arc</b> o	is. OR I wonder where Marco is.
1	When does ( ) !:?	•	ange roles if working in pairs.)
1.	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		How long has () been married?
	What country is () from? How long has () been living here?		Why are we doing this exercise?
3.			Where are you going to est lunch/dinner?
4. 5.	What is () telephone number? Where is the post office?		Where are you going to eat lunch/dinner? Where did () go after class yesterday?
6.	How far is it to the South Pole?		Why is () smiling?
7.			How often does () go to the library?
8.			Whose book is that?
9.			How much did that book cost?
		10.	22011 1114011 4114 1141 1141 1141

Ma the	ke questions from the given sentences. The words in parentheses should be the answer to question you make. Begin with a question word (who, what, how, when, where, why). En change the question to a noun clause.					
1.	Tom will be here (next week).					
	QUESTION: When will Tom be here?					
	NOUN CLAUSE: Please tell me when Tom will be here.					
2.	He is coming (because he wants to visit his friends).					
	QUESTION:					
	NOUN CLAUSE: Please tell me					
3.	He'll be on flight (645, not flight 742).					
	QUESTION:					
	NOUN CLAUSE: Please tell me					
4.	(Jim Hunter) is going to meet him at the airport.					
	QUESTION:					
	Noun Clause: Please tell me					
5.	Jim Hunter is (his roommate).					
	QUESTION:					
	Noun Clause: Please tell me					
6.	He lives (on Riverside Road in Columbus, Ohio, USA).  QUESTION:					
	NOUN CLAUSE: Please tell me					
7.	He was (in Chicago) last week.  QUESTION:					
	NOUN CLAUSE: Please tell me					
8.	He has been working for Sony Corporation (since 2000).					
	QUESTION:					
	NOUN CLAUSE: Do you know					
9.	He has (a Sony) computer at home.					
	QUESTION:					
	Noun Clause: Do you know					

# Exercise 10. Looking at grammar. (Chart 12-2)

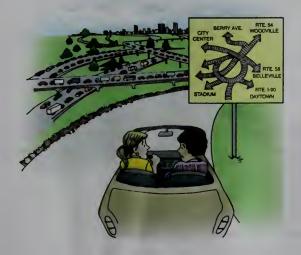
Complete each sentence with the words in parentheses. Use any appropriate verb tense. Some of the completions contain noun clauses, and some contain questions.

- 1. A: Where (Ruth, go) \_\_\_\_\_ did Ruth go \_\_\_\_? She's not in her room.
  - B: I don't know. Ask her friend Tina. She might know where (Ruth, go)

Ruth went .......

- 2. A: Oops! I made a mistake. Where (my eraser, be) \_\_\_\_\_?

  Didn't I lend it to you?
  - B: I don't have it. Ask Sally where (it, be) \_\_\_\_\_\_. I think I saw her using it.
- 3. A: The door isn't locked! Why (Franco, lock, not) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ it before he left?\*
  - B: Why ask me? How am I supposed to know why (he, lock, not) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ it? Maybe he just forgot.
- 4. A: Mr. Lee is a recent immigrant, isn't he? How long (he, be) \_\_\_\_\_\_ in this country?
  - B: I have no idea, but I'll be seeing Mr. Lee this afternoon. Would you like me to ask him how long (he, be) \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ here?
- 5. A: Help! Quick! Look at that road sign! Which road (we, be supposed) \_\_\_\_\_\_ to take?



<sup>\*</sup>Word order in negative questions:

Usual: Why didn't you call me? (with did + not contracted)

Very formal: Why did you not call me?

### ☐ Exercise 11. Listening. (Chart 12-2)



Listen to the dialogues. Choose the completions you hear.

- 1. a. how far it is.
  - b. How far is it?
- 2. a. how far it is.
  - b. How far is it?
- 3. a. why we watched the whole thing.
  - b. Why did we watch the whole thing?
- 4. a. why you watched it.
  - b. why did you watch it?
- 5. a. how old she is.
  - b. How old is she?
- 6. a. how this word is pronounced.
  - b. How is this word pronounced?
- 7. a. what the problem is.
  - b. what is the problem?

### Exercise 12. Let's talk: interview. (Chart 12-2)

Ask your classmates if they can answer questions based on the given information. Begin with **Do you know** followed by a question word (**who**, **what**, **when**, **where**, **how many**, **how long**, **how far**). If no one in the class knows the answer to a question, research the answer. Share any information you get with the rest of the class.

Example: the shortest month of the year

SPEAKER A: Do you know what the shortest month of the year is?

SPEAKER B: Yes. It's February. OR No, I don't know what the shortest month is.

- 1. the number of minutes in 24 hours
- 2. the year the first man walked on the moon
- 3. the winner of the Nobel Peace Prize last year
- 4. the place Buddha was born
- 5. the distance from the earth to the sun
- 6. the time it takes for the moon to rotate around the earth

# **Exercise 13. Warm-up.** (Chart 12-3)

<u>Underline</u> the noun clauses. What words are added when a yes/no question is changed to a noun clause?

QUESTION: Has the mail arrived?

NOUN CLAUSE: I wonder if the mail has arrived.

I wonder whether the mail has arrived.

I wonder whether or not the mail has arrived.

I wonder whether the mail has arrived or not.

I wonder if the mail has arrived or not.

12-3 Noun Clauses Beginning with Whether or If						
Yes/No Question	Noun Clause					
Will she come?  Does he need help?	(a) I don't know whether she will come. I don't know if she will come.  (b) I wonder whether he needs help. I wonder if he needs help.	When a yes/no question is changed to a noun clause, <i>whether</i> or <i>if</i> is used to introduce the clause.  NOTE: <i>Whether</i> is more common than <i>if</i> in formal English. Both <i>whether</i> and <i>if</i> are commonly used in speaking.				
	(c) I wonder whether or not she will come. (d) I wonder whether she will come or not. (e) I wonder if she will come or not.	In (c), (d), and (e): Notice the patterns when <i>or not</i> is used.				
	(f) Whether she comes or not is unimportant to me.	In (f): Notice that the noun clause is in the subject position.				

### ☐ Exercise 14. Looking at grammar. (Chart 12-3)

Complete the sentences by changing the questions to noun clauses.

SITUATION: You're at the office.

Example: Let me know if . . .

Did you finish the sales report?  $\rightarrow$  Let me know if you finished the sales report.

Let me know if . . .

- 1. Is the financial report ready?
- 2. Will it be ready tomorrow?
- 3. Does the copy machine need paper?
- 4. Is someone waiting for me?
- 5. Do we need anything for the meeting?
- 6. Are you going to be there?

Please check whether . . .

- 7. Did they get my message?
- 8. Is the copy machine working?
- 9. Is there any paper left?
- 10. Is this information correct?
- 11. Did the fax come in?
- 12. Are we going to have Monday off?

# ☐ Exercise 15. Let's talk. (Chart 12-3)

Speaker A asks a question. Speaker B responds beginning with *I wonder*. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

Example:

Speaker A (book open): Does Anna need any help?

SPEAKER B (book closed): I wonder whether/if Anna needs any help.

- 1. Where is Tom?
- 2. Should we wait for him?
- 3. Is he having trouble?
- 4. When was the first book written?
- 5. What causes earthquakes?
- 6. How long does a butterfly live?

(Change roles if working in pairs.)

- 7. Whose dictionary is this?
- 8. Does it belong to William?
- 9. Why did dinosaurs become extinct?
- 10. Is there life on other planets?
- 11. How did life begin?
- 12. Will people live on the moon someday?

### **Exercise 16. Let's talk: interview.** (Chart 12-3)

Interview students in your class. Ask each one a different question. Begin with Can/Could you tell me. Share a few of your answers with the class.

- 1. Have you ever won a prize? What?
- 2. Have you ever played a joke on someone? Describe it.
- 3. Have you ever stayed up all night? Why?
- 4. Have you ever felt embarrassed? Why?
- 5. Have you ever been in an earthquake? Where? When?
- 6. Do you have a talent like singing or dancing (or something else)? What?
- 7. Are you enjoying this interview? Why or why not?

### **Exercise 17. Let's talk: pairwork.** (Charts $12-1 \rightarrow 12-3$ )

Work with a partner to create short dialogues. Partner A asks a question. Partner B answers the question beginning with the words in italics.

SITUATION: You're late for school. You need help finding your things.

Example: I don't know . . . .

Where are my glasses?

PARTNER A (book open): Where are my glasses?

PARTNER B (book closed): I don't know where your glasses are.

SITUATION 1: You're late for work.

I don't know . . . .

- 1. Where did I leave my keys?
- 2. Where did I put my shoes?
- 3. Where's my other sock?
- 4. What did I do with my briefcase?

SITUATION 2: You have a new neighbor.

I'll find out . . . .

- 5. Where's he from?
- 6. What does he do?
- 7. Where does he work?
- 8. Would he like to come to dinner?

Change roles.

SITUATION 3: You're at a tourist center.

Let's ask . . . .

- 9. Where is the bus station?
- 10. How much does the city bus cost?
- 11. Do the city buses carry bikes?
- 12. Is this bus schedule correct?

We need to figure out . . . .

- 13. How far is it from here to town?
- 14. How much does it cost to take a taxi from here to downtown?
- 15. How can we get our money changed here?

### ■ Exercise 18. Looking at grammar. (Charts 12-1 → 12-3)

Correct the errors.

your name is

- 1. Please tell me what is your name.
- 2. No one seems to know when will Maria arrive.
- 3. I don't know what does that word mean.
- 4. I wonder does the teacher know the answer?
- 5. I'll ask her would she like some coffee or not.

- 6. Be sure to tell the doctor where does it hurt.
- 7. Why am I unhappy is something I can't explain.
- 8. Nobody cares do we stay or leave.
- 9. I need to know who is your teacher.
- 10. I don't understand why is the car not running properly.
- 11. My young son wants to know where do the stars go in the daytime?

### Exercise 19. Let's talk. (Charts $12-1 \rightarrow 12-3$ )

Work in small groups. What would you say in each situation? Use noun clauses.

Example: Someone asks you about the time the mail comes. You're not sure.

Possible answers: I'm not sure what time the mail comes.

I don't know when the mail is supposed to be here.

- 1. You see a restaurant. You can't tell if it's open yet. You ask a man standing outside.
- 2. You were absent yesterday. You want to know the homework. You ask another student.
- 3. Someone asks you the date. You don't know, but you tell them you'll find out.
- 4. Someone asks you about the weather tomorrow. Is it supposed to be sunny? You haven't heard.
- 5. You're at a clothing store. You're buying a coat and want to know about the return policy. How many days do you have to return it? You ask a salesperson.
- 6. Your friend asks you if you want to go to a movie or get a DVD to watch at home. Both sound good to you. You tell your friend you don't care which you do.
- 7. You have a late fee on your bill. You want to know why. You call the company and ask.
- 8. You are planning a hiking trip with a friend. This friend wants to bring his dog and asks you if it is okay. It doesn't matter to you.

# Exercise 20. Warm-up. (Chart 12-4)

Complete the second sentence of each pair with an infinitive. Use to get or to do. Is the meaning in each pair the same or different?

1.	a.	Susan	doesn'	ť	know	what	she	should	do

b. Susan doesn't know what .

2. a. She needs to figure out how she will get home.

b. She needs to figure out how \_ home.



# **12-4** Question Words Followed by Infinitives

- (a) I don't know what I should do.
- (b) I don't know what to do.
- (c) Pam can't decide whether she should go or stay home.
- (d) Pam can't decide whether to go or (to) stay home.
- (e) Please tell me how I can get to the bus station.
- (f) Please tell me how to get to the bus station.
- (g) Jim told us where we could find it.
- (h) Jim told us where to find it.

Question words (*when, where, how, who, whom, whose, what, which,* and *whether*) may be followed by an infinitive.

Each pair of sentences in the examples has the same meaning.

Notice that the meaning expressed by the infinitive is either **should** or **can/could**.

### ☐ Exercise 21. Looking at grammar. (Chart 12-4)

Make sentences with the same meaning by using infinitives.

- 1. Sally told me when I should come.  $\rightarrow$  Sally told me when to come.
- 2. The plumber told me how I could fix the leak in the sink.
- 3. Please tell me where I should meet you.
- 4. Robert had a long excuse for being late for their date, but Sandy didn't know whether she should believe him or not.
- 5. Jim found two shirts he liked, but he had trouble deciding which one he should buy.
- 6. I've done everything I can think of to help Andy get his life straightened out. I don't know what else I can do.

Exercise 22. In your own words. (Chart 12-		<b>Exercise 2</b> 2	2. In	your	own	words.	(Chart 12	2-4	I)
--	--	---------------------	-------	------	-----	--------	-----------	-----	----

Complete the sentences with your own words.	Use infinitives in your	completions.
---	-------------------------	--------------

and how \_

### Exercise 23. Warm-up. (Chart 12-5)

Check  $(\checkmark)$  the grammatically correct sentences.

- 1. \_\_\_\_ We know that the planets revolve around the sun.
- 2. \_\_\_\_ Centuries ago, people weren't aware that the planets revolved around the sun.
- 3. \_\_\_\_ That the planets revolve around the sun is now a well-known fact.
- 4. \_\_\_\_ Is clear that the planets revolve around the sun.

Verb + That-Cla	use			
(a) I think that Bob will come. (b) I think Bob will come.		In (a): <i>that Bob will come</i> is a noun clause. It is used a the object of the verb <i>think</i> . The word <i>that</i> is usually omitted in speaking, as in (b). It is usually included in formal writing.  See the list below for verbs commonly followed by a <i>that</i> -clause.		
agree that believe that decide that discover that explain that	feel that find out that forget that hear that hope that  djective + That-Clause	know that learn that notice that promise that read that	remember that say that tell someone that think that understand that	
(c) Jan is happy (tha			y follow certain adjectives, such as subject refers to a person (or below.	
I'm afraid that* I'm amazed that I'm angry that I'm aware that	Al is certain that Al is confident that Al is disappointed that Al is glad that	We're happy that We're pleased that We're proud that We're relieved that	Jan is sorry that Jan is sure that Jan is surprised that Jan is worried that	
It + Be + Adjecti	ive + That-Clause			
(d) It is clear (that) A	nn likes her new job.		y follow adjectives in sentences , as in (d). See the list below.	
It's amazing that It's clear that It's good that It's important that	It's interesting that It's likely that It's lucky that It's nice that	It's obvious that It's possible that It's strange that It's surprising that	It's true that It's undeniable that It's well/known that It's wonderful that	
That-Clause Use	d as a Subject			
(e) That Ann likes he	er new job is clear.	the subject of a senten	nmon for that-clauses to be used as ce, as in (e). The word that is not clause is used as a subject.	
	nn likes her new job is clear. Ann likes her new job.	More often, a that-claus	se in the subject position begins in (f), or is introduced by <i>it is a fact</i> ,	

<sup>\*</sup>To be afraid has two possible meanings:

- (1) It can express fear: I'm afraid of dogs. I'm afraid that his dog will bite me.
- (2) It often expresses a meaning similar to "to be sorry": I'm afraid that I can't accept your invitation. I'm afraid you have the wrong number.

### Exercise 24. In your own words. (Chart 12-5)

Complete the sentences with your own words.

- 1. I recently heard on the news that . . . .
- 2. When I was young, I found out that . . .
- 3. I sometimes forget that . . . .
- 4. All parents hope that . . . .
- 5. Most people in my country believe that . . . .
- 6. Do you feel that . . . ?
- 7. I recently read that . . . .
- 8. Scientists have discovered that . . . .
- 9. Students understand that . . . .
- 10. Have you noticed that . . . ?

### **Exercise 25. Let's talk: interview.** (Chart 12-5)

Interview your classmates. Ask each one a different question. Their answers should follow this pattern: I'm + adjective + that-clause.

Example: What is something in your life that you're glad about?

- $\rightarrow$  I'm glad that my family is supportive of me.
- 1. What is something that disappointed you in the past?
- 2. What is something that annoys you?
- 3. What is something about your friends that pleases you?
- 4. What is something about nature that amazes you?
- 5. What is something about another culture's traditions that surprises you?
- 6. What is something that you are afraid will happen in the future?
- 7. What is something about your future that you are sure of?

### Exercise 26. Looking at grammar. (Chart 12-5)

Make noun clauses using *it* and any appropriate word(s) from the list. Make an equivalent sentence by using a *that*-clause as the subject.

apparent clear	a pity a shame	surprising too bad	unfair unfortunate
a fact	strange	true	a well-known fact
obvious			

- 1. The world is round.
  - → It is a fact that the world is round.
  - → That the world is round is a fact.
- 2. Tim hasn't been able to make any friends.
- 3. The earth revolves around the sun.
- 4. Exercise can reduce heart disease.
- 5. Drug abuse can ruin one's health.
- 6. Some women do not earn equal pay for equal work.
- 7. Irene, who is an excellent student, failed her entrance examination.
- 8. English is the principal language of business throughout much of the world.

### Exercise 27. Game. (Chart 12-5)

Work in teams. Agree or disagree with the given statements. If you think the statement is true, begin with *It's a fact that*. If you think the statement is false, begin with *It isn't true that*. If you're not sure, guess. Choose one person to write your team's statements. The team with the most correct statements wins.\*

1.	It's a fact that	_ most spiders have eight eyes.
2.	It isn't true that	_ some spiders have twelve legs.
3.		more males than females are colorblind.
4.		people's main source of vitamin D is fruit.
5.		the Great Wall of China took more than 1,000 years to build
6.		twenty-five percent of the human body is water.
7.		a substance called chlorophyll makes plant leaves green.
8.		the World Wide Web went online in 2000.
9.		elephants have the longest pregnancy of any land animal.
10.		the first wheels were made out of stone.

### ☐ Exercise 28. Looking at grammar. (Chart 12-5)

A that-clause is frequently used with the fact. Combine the sentences. Introduce each noun clause with The fact that.

a diamond is the hardest substance found in nature.

- 1. Ann was late. That didn't surprise me.
  - → The fact that Ann was late didn't surprise me.
- 2. Rosa didn't come. That made me angry.
- 3. Many people in the world live in intolerable poverty. That must concern all of us.
- 4. I was supposed to bring my passport to the exam for identification. I was not aware of that.
- 5. The people of the town were given no warning of the approaching tornado. Due to *that*, there were many casualties.

# ☐ Exercise 29. Looking at grammar. (Chart 12-5)

Restate the sentences. Begin with *The fact that*.

- 1. It's understandable that you feel frustrated.
  - → The fact that you feel frustrated is understandable.
- 2. It's undeniable that traffic is getting worse every year.
- 3. It's unfortunate that the city has no funds for the project.
- 4. It's obvious that the two leaders don't respect each other.
- 5. It's a miracle that there were no injuries from the car accident.

<sup>\*</sup>Only the teacher should look at the answers, which can be found in the Answer Key for Chapter 12.

### Exercise 30. Let's talk. (Chart 12-5)

Work in small groups. Do you agree or disagree with the statements? Circle yes or no.

1	. It's undeniable that smoking causes cancer.	yes	no
2	. It's a well-known fact that young boys are more aggressive than young girls.	yes	no
3	. It's unfortunate that people eat meat.	yes	no
4	. It's true that women are more nurturing than men.	yes	no
5	. That someday all countries in the world will live in peace is unlikely.	yes	no
6	. That governments need to pay more attention to global warming is a fact.	yes	no
7	. It's clear that life is easier now than it was 100 years ago.	yes	no
8	. That technology has given us more free time is clearly true.	ves	no

# Exercise 31. Reading comprehension. (Chart 12-5)

Part I. Read the article.





### Canned vs. Fresh: Which Is Better?

Do you avoid eating canned fruits and vegetables because you think they may be less nutritious than fresh fruits and vegetables? Do you think they might be less healthy? For many people, the idea of eating canned fruits or vegetables is really not very appealing, and they would rather buy fresh produce. But what are the differences between canned and fresh produce? Let's take a look at the two.

Many people are surprised to hear that canned food can have as many nutrients as fresh. This is true because the fruits and vegetables are put into the cans shortly after being picked. Because the food is canned so quickly, the nutritional content is locked in. Food in a can will stay stable for two years.

Fresh produce, on the other hand, may need to be transported. This can take up to two weeks. Fresh produce will continue to lose important nutrients until it is eaten. The sooner you can eat fresh produce, the more nutritious it will be.

There are also advantages to some fruits when they are first cooked and then canned. Tomatoes, for instance, have a substance called lycopene. This is a cancer-fighting ingredient that is found in cooked tomatoes. Fresh tomatoes do not have a significant amount of lycopene. It is better to eat tomato sauce from a can rather than fresh tomato sauce if you want to have lycopene in your diet.

Of course, there are disadvantages to canned foods. They tend to have a higher salt and sugar content. People who need to watch their salt or sugar intake should try to find cans low in salt or sugar. Also, because the canning process requires heat, some loss of vitamin C may occur, but most essential nutrients remain stable.

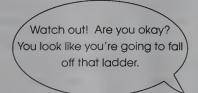
Finally, there is the issue of taste. For many, there is no comparison between the taste of fresh fruits and vegetables versus canned. No matter what the benefits of canning, some people refuse to eat anything that isn't fresh. How about you? Which do you prefer?

### Part II. Read the statements. Circle "T" for true and "F" for false.

1.	According to the article, it's surprising to many people that canned produce		
(	can be as nutritious as fresh produce.	T	F
2.	It's a fact that food in a can will last for two years.	T	F
3.	It's a well-known fact that canned tomatoes contain a cancer-fighting ingredient.	T	F
4.	That fresh produce and canned produce taste the same is undeniable.	T	F
5.	It's obvious that the writer believes canned food is better than fresh.	T	F

# Exercise 32. Warm-up. (Chart 12-6)

Read the words in the picture. Then look at the quoted speech below it. Circle the quotation marks. Is the punctuation inside or outside the quotation marks? In item 3, what do you notice about the punctuation?





- 1. "Watch out!" Mrs. Brooks said.
- 2. "Are you okay?" she asked.
- 3. "You look like you're going to fall off that ladder," she said.

# 12-6 Quoted Speech

Quoted speech refers to reproducing words exactly as they were originally spoken.\* Quotation marks ("...") are used.\*\*

Quoting One Sentence	
<ul> <li>(a) She said, "My brother is a student."</li> <li>(b) "My brother is a student," she said.</li> <li>(c) "My brother," she said, "is a student."</li> </ul>	In (a): Use a comma after <i>she said</i> . Capitalize the first word of the quoted sentence. Put the final quotation marks outside the period at the end of the sentence.  In (b): Use a comma, not a period, at the end of the quoted sentence when it precedes <i>she said</i> .  In (c): If the quoted sentence is divided by <i>she said</i> , use a comma after the first part of the quote. Do not capitalize the first word after <i>she said</i> .
Quoting More Than One Sentence	
(d) 66My brother is a student. He is attending a university, 29 she said.	In (d): Quotation marks are placed at the beginning and end of the complete quote. Notice: There are no quotation marks after <b>student</b> .
(e) "My brother is a student," she said. "He is attending a university."	In (e): Since <b>she said</b> comes between two quoted sentences, the second sentence begins with quotation marks and a capital letter.
Quoting a Question or an Exclamation	
(f) She asked, "When will you be here?"	In (f): The question mark is inside the closing quotation marks.
(g) "When will you be here?" she asked.	In (g): Since a question mark is used, no comma is used before <i>she asked</i> .
(h) She said, "Watch out!"	In (h): The exclamation point is inside the closing quotation marks.
(i) "My brother is a student," said Anna. "My brother," said Anna, "is a student."	In (i): The noun subject ( <i>Anna</i> ) follows <i>said</i> . A noun subject often follows the verb when the subject and verb come in the middle or at the end of a quoted sentence.
	NOTE: A pronoun subject almost always precedes the verb. "My brother is a student," she said.
	VERY RARE: "My brother is a student," said she.
(j) "Let's leave," whispered Dave.	Say and ask are the most commonly used quote verbs.
<ul><li>(k) "Please help me," begged the unfortunate man.</li><li>(I) "Well," Jack began, "it's a long story."</li></ul>	Some others: add, agree, announce, answer, beg, begin, comment, complain, confess, continue, explain, inquire, promise, remark, reply, respond, shout, suggest, whisper.

<sup>\*</sup> Quoted speech is also called "direct speech." Reported speech (discussed in Chart 12-7) is also called "indirect speech."

<sup>\*\*</sup>In British English, quotation marks are called "inverted commas" and can consist of either double marks (") or a single mark ('):

She said, 'My brother is a student'.

# Exercise 33. Looking at grammar. (Chart 12-6)

Add punctuation and capitalization.

- 1. Henry said there is a phone call for you
- 2. There is a phone call for you he said
- 3. There is said Henry a phone call for you
- 4. There is a phone call for you it's your sister said Henry
- 5. There is a phone call for you he said it's your sister
- 6. I asked him where is the phone
- 7. Where is the phone she asked

- 8. Stop the clock shouted the referee we have an injured player
- 9. Who won the game asked the spectator
- 10. I'm going to rest for the next three hours she said I don't want to be disturbed
  That's fine I replied you get some rest I'll make sure no one disturbs you

### Exercise 34. Looking at grammar. (Chart 12-6)

Add punctuation and capitalization. Notice that a new paragraph begins each time the speaker changes.

When the police officer came over to my car, he said let me see your driver's license, please

What's wrong, Officer I asked was
I speeding

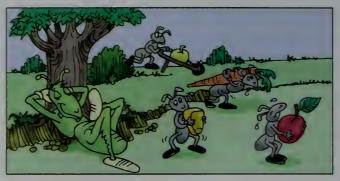
No, you weren't speeding he replied
you went through a red light at the corner
of Fifth Avenue and Main Street you almost
caused an accident

Did I really do that I said I didn't see a red light



### Exercise 35. Let's write. (Chart 12-6)

Write fables using quoted speech.



Summer



Winter

- 1. In fables, animals have the power of speech. Discuss what is happening in the illustrations of the grasshopper and the ants. Then write a fable based on the illustrations. Use quoted speech in your fable. Read your fable to a partner or small group.
- 2. Write a fable that is well known in your country. Use quoted speech.

### Exercise 36. Warm-up. (Chart 12-7)

Read the conversation between Mr. and Mrs. Cook. Then read the description. What do you notice about the verbs in blue?



### DESCRIPTION:

Mr. Cook *said* he knew why Mrs. Cook couldn't find her glasses. He *told* her that they were on her head.

# 12-7 Reported Speech: Verb Forms in Noun Clauses

Quoted Speech	Reported Speech	
(a) "I watch TV every day." (b) "I am watching TV." (c) "I have watched TV." (d) "I watched TV."	<ul> <li>→ She said she watched TV every day.</li> <li>→ She said she was watching TV.</li> <li>→ She said she had watched TV.</li> <li>→ She said she had watched TV.</li> </ul>	Reported speech refers to using a noun clause to report what someone has said. No quotation marks are used.
(e) "I had watched TV." (f) "I will watch TV." (g) "I am going to watch TV." (h) "I can watch TV." (i) "I may watch TV." (j) "I must watch TV." (k) "I have to watch TV."	<ul> <li>→ She said she had watched TV.</li> <li>→ She said she would watch TV.</li> <li>→ She said she was going to watch TV.</li> <li>→ She said she could watch TV.</li> <li>→ She said she might watch TV.</li> <li>→ She said she had to watch TV.</li> <li>→ She said she had to watch TV.</li> </ul>	If the reporting verb (the main verb of the sentence, e.g., said) is simple past, the verb in the noun clause will usually also be in a past form, as in these examples.
( I ) "I should watch TV." "I ought to watch TV." "I might watch TV."	<ul> <li>→ She said she should watch TV.</li> <li>→ She said she ought to watch TV.</li> <li>→ She said she might watch TV.</li> </ul>	In (I): should, ought to, and might do not change.
<ul> <li>(m) Immediate reporting:</li> <li>— What did the teacher just</li> <li>— He said he wants us to remain the control of the control of</li></ul>	The state of the s	Changing verbs to past forms in reported speech is common in both speaking and writing.
<ul> <li>(n) Later reporting:</li> <li>— I didn't go to class yester</li> <li>— Yes. He said he wanted</li> </ul>	day. Did Mr. Jones give any assignments? us to read Chapter 6.	However, sometimes in spoken English, no change is made in the noun clause verb, especially if the speaker is reporting something immediately or soon after it was said.
(o) "The world is round."	→ She said the world <i>is</i> round.	Also, sometimes the present tense is retained even in formal English when the reported sentence deals with a general truth, as in (o).
(p) "I watch TV every day." (q) "I watch TV every day."	<ul> <li>→ She says she watches TV every day.</li> <li>→ She has said that she watches</li> <li>TV every day.</li> </ul>	When the reporting verb is simple present, present perfect or future, the noun clause verb is
(r) "I watch TV every day."	→ She will say that she watches TV every day.	not changed.
(s) "WatchTV."	→ She <i>told</i> me <i>to watch</i> TV.*	In reported speech, an imperative sentence is changed to an infinitive. <i>Tell</i> is used instead of <i>say</i> as the reporting verb.
		See Chart 14-6, p. 313, for other verbs followed by an infinitive that are used to report speech.

<sup>\*</sup>NOTE: Tell is immediately followed by a (pro)noun object, but say is not: He told me he would be late. He said he would be late. Also possible: He said to me he would be late.

### Exercise 37. Looking at grammar. (Chart 12-7)

Complete the sentences by reporting the speaker's words. Use noun clauses. Use past verb forms in noun clauses if appropriate.

- 1. Pedro said, "I will help you." Pedro said . . . .
  - → Pedro said (that) he would help me.
- 2. "Do you need a pen?" Elena asked. Elena asked me . . . .
- 3. Jennifer asked, "What do you want?" Jennifer asked me . . .
- 4. Talal asked, "Are you hungry?" Talal wanted to know . . . .
- 5. "I want a sandwich," Elena said. Elena said....
- 6. "I'm going to move to Ohio," said Bruce. Bruce informed me . . . .
- 7. "Did you enjoy your trip?" asked Kim. Kim asked me . . . .
- 8. Oscar asked, "What are you talking about?" Oscar asked me . . . .
- 9. Maria asked, "Have you seen my grammar book?" Maria wanted to know . . . .
- 10. Amy said, "I don't want to go." Amy said . . . .
- 11. "Can you help me with my report?" asked David. David asked me . . . .
- 12. "I may be late," said Mitch. Mitch told me . . . .
- 13. Felix said, "You should work harder." Felix told me . . . .
- 14. Nadia said, "I have to go downtown." Nadia said . . . .
- 15. "Why is the sky blue?" my young daughter often asks. My young daughter often asks me . . . .
- 16. My mother asked, "Where is everyone?" My mother wondered . . . .
- 17. "I will come to the meeting," said Pavel. Pavel told me . . . .
- 18. Ms. Adams just asked Ms. Chang, "Will you be in class tomorrow?" Ms. Adams wanted to know . . . .
- 19. "I think I'll go to the library to study." Joe said . . . .
- 20. "Does Omar know what he's doing?" I wondered . . . .
- 21. "Is what I've heard true?" I wondered . . . .
- 22. "The sun rises in the east," said Mr. Clark. Mr. Clark, an elementary school teacher, explained to his students that . . . .
- 23. "Someday we'll be in contact with beings from outer space." The scientist predicted that . . . .

### **Exercise 38. Let's talk.** (Chart 12-7)

Students A and B have their books open. They read the dialogue aloud. Student C's book is closed. Your teacher asks Student C about the dialogue.

### Example:

STUDENT A (book open): What time is it? STUDENT B (book open): Two-thirty.

TEACHER: What did Manuel (*Student A*) want to know? STUDENT C (*book closed*): He wanted to know what time it was (OR is).

TEACHER: What did Helen (Student B) say?

STUDENT C (book closed): She told him that it was (OR is) two-thirty.

1. STUDENT A: Can you speak Arabic?

STUDENT B: A little.

TEACHER: What did (Student A) ask? What did (Student B) say?

2. STUDENT A: Where is your grammar book?

STUDENT B: In my backpack.

TEACHER: What did (Student A) want to know?

What did (*Student B*) tell (*Student A*)?

3. STUDENT A: What courses are you taking?

STUDENT B: I'm taking three science courses this term.

TEACHER: What did (Student A) want to know?

What did (Student B) say?

4. STUDENT A: Did you finish your assignment?

STUDENT B: Oh, no, my assignment! I totally forgot about it.

TEACHER: What did (Student A) ask?

What did (Student B) tell (Student A)?

5. STUDENT A: Have you had lunch already?

STUDENT B: Yes, I just finished.

TEACHER: What did ...?

6. STUDENT A: Where will you be tomorrow around three o'clock?

STUDENT B: I have a doctor's appointment at 2:45.

7. STUDENT A: How do you like living here?

STUDENT B: It's okay.

8. STUDENT A: Is what you said really true?

STUDENT B: Yes, it's the truth. I'm not making it up.

9. STUDENT A: How many people have you met since you came here?

STUDENT B: Lots. People here have been very friendly.

10. STUDENT A: Is what you want to talk to me about really important?

STUDENT B: Yes, it's very important. We need to sit down and have a serious conversation.

# $\Box$ **Exercise 39. Let's talk.** (Charts 12-1 $\rightarrow$ 12-7)

Speaker A asks a question — whatever comes to mind — using each item and a question word (when, how, where, what, why, etc.). Speaker B answers the question in a complete sentence. Speaker C reports what Speaker A and Speaker B said. Work in small groups or as a class.

Example: tonight

SPEAKER A (Rosa): What are you going to do tonight?

SPEAKER B (Ali): I'm going to study.

SPEAKER C (Yung): Rosa asked Ali what he was going to do tonight. Ali replied that he was

going to study.

1. this evening5. book9. television2. music6. this city10. dinner3. courses7. population11. next year4. tomorrow8. last year12. vacation

	Exercise 40. Looking at gram Complete the sentences with a past f		entheses.
	1. A: The test is scheduled for Mo	nday.	
	B: Really? I heard it (schedule)		for Tuesday.
	2. A: It's raining outside.		
	B: Really? I thought it (snow) _		
	3. A: Tony needs to borrow your b	nike for Saturday.	
	B: Are you sure? I heard he (ne		to borrow it for Sunday.
	4. A: Marita hasn't applied for a jo		·
			for work
	at her uncle's company.	eard sife (apply)	TOT WOLK
	5. A: Mikhail can't come tonight.		
	B: Are you sure? I heard he (co	mo)	tonight
			tonight.
	6. A: Ms. Alvarez is going to retire		
	B: Really? I thought she (contin	nue)	in her sales
	position for another year.		
	Exercise 41. Listening. (Chart		ns to report speech
CD 2	Listen to the sentences. Complete the		
Track 2	1. The speaker said that she		to the personnel meeting
	because she <u>had to</u>	•	
	2. The speaker said that he		
	wallet in h	is coat pocket back at h	ome.
	3. The speaker said that someone	in the room	very strong
	perfume and it	her a he	adache.
	4. The speaker said that he		_ Emma at the coffee shop at 9:00
	He said he	not to be late.	
	5. The speaker said she		looking for a new job and asked
	her friend what he	she	·
	6. The speaker said that they		late for the concert
	because his wife		

	ern: said that and that.
1.	"My father is a businessman. My mother is an engineer."  He said that his father was a businessman and that his mother was an engineer.
0	
۷.	"I'm excited about my new job. I've found a nice apartment."  I got an email from my sister yesterday. She said
3.	"I expect you to be in class every day. Unexcused absences may affect your grades."  Our sociology professor said
4.	"Highway 66 will be closed for two months. Commuters should seek alternate routes."  The newspaper said
5.	"Every obstacle is a steppingstone to success. You should view problems in your life as opportunities to prove yourself."  My father often told me
Read	rcise 43. Let's write. (Charts 12-1 → 12-7) I each dialogue and write a report about it. Your report should include an accurate idea of speaker's words, but it doesn't have to use the exact words.
Exai	nple: Jack said, "I can't go to the game."  Tom said, "Oh? Why not?"  "I don't have enough money for a ticket," replied Jack.
	7 7 7

- a ticket.
- → When Tom asked Jack why he couldn't go to the game, Jack said he didn't have enough money for a ticket.
- → Jack said he couldn't go to the game. When Tom asked him why not, Jack replied that he didn't have enough money for a ticket.

Write reports for these dialogues.

- "What are you doing?" Alex asked. 1. "I'm drawing a picture," I said.
- Asako said, "Do you want to go to a movie 2. Sunday night?"



Cho said, "I'd like to, but I have to study."

- 3. "How old are you, Mrs. Robinson?" the little boy asked.
  Mrs. Robinson said, "It's not polite to ask people their age."
  "How much money do you make?" the little boy asked.
  "That's impolite too," Mrs. Robinson said.
- 4. "Is there anything you especially want to watch on TV tonight?" my sister asked.
  - "Yes," I replied. "There's a show at eight that I've been waiting to see for a long time."

"What is it?" she asked.

"It's a documentary on green sea turtles," I said.

"Why do you want to see that?"

"I'm doing a research paper on sea turtles. I think I might be able to get some good information from the documentary. Why don't you watch it with me?"

"No, thanks," she said. "I'm not especially interested in green sea turtles."

# Exercise 44. Check your knowledge. (Charts 12-1 → 12-7)

Correct the errors.

- 1. Tell the taxi driver where do you want to go.
- 2. My roommate came into the room and asked me why aren't you in class? I said I am waiting for a telephone call from my family.
- 3. It was my first day at the university, and I am on my way to my first class. I wondered who else will be in the class. What the teacher would be like?
- 4. He asked me that what did I intend to do after I graduate?
- 5. What does a patient tell a doctor it is confidential.
- 6. What my friend and I did it was our secret. We didn't even tell our parents what did we do.
- 7. The doctor asked that I felt okay. I told him that I don't feel well.
- 8. I asked him what kind of movies does he like, he said me, I like romantic movies.
- 9. Is true you almost drowned? my friend asked me. Yes, I said. I'm really glad to be alive. It was really frightening.
- 10. It is a fact that I almost drowned makes me very careful about water safety whenever I go swimming.
- 11. I didn't know where am I supposed to get off the bus, so I asked the driver where is the science museum. She tell me the name of the street. She said she will tell me when should I get off the bus.

- 12. My mother did not live with us. When other children asked me where was my mother,I told them she is going to come to visit me very soon.
- 13. When I asked the taxi driver to drive faster, he said I will drive faster if you pay me more.

  At that time I didn't care how much would it cost, so I told him to go as fast as he can.
- 14. My parents told me is essential to know English if I want to study at an American university.

### $\Box$ **Exercise 45. Let's talk.** (Charts 12-1 $\rightarrow$ 12-7)

Give a one-minute impromptu speech on any topic that interests you (insects, soccer, dogs, etc.). Your classmates will take notes as you speak. Later, in a short paragraph or orally, they will report what you said.

### $\Box$ Exercise 46. Let's talk and write. (Charts 12-1 $\rightarrow$ 12-7)

You and your classmates are newspaper reporters at a press conference. You will all interview your teacher or a person whom your teacher invites to class. Your assignment is to write a newspaper article about the person whom you interviewed.

Take notes during the interview. Write down some of the important sentences so that you can use them for quotations in your article. Ask for clarification if you do not understand something the interviewee has said. It is important to report information accurately.

In your article, try to organize your information into related topics. For example, if you interview your teacher, you might use this outline:

- I. General introductory information
- II. Professional life
  - A. Present teaching duties
  - B. Academic duties and activities outside of teaching
  - C. Past teaching experience
  - D. Educational background
- III. Personal life
  - A. Basic biographical information (e.g., place of birth, family background, places of residence)
  - B. Free-time activities and interests
  - C. Travel experiences

This outline only suggests a possible method of organization. You must organize your own article, depending upon the information you have gained from your interview.

When you write your report, most of your information will be presented in reported speech; use quoted speech only for the most important or memorable sentences.

NOTE: When you use quoted speech, be sure you are presenting the interviewee's exact words. If you are simply paraphrasing what the interviewee said, do not use quotation marks.

### Exercise 47. Let's talk and write. (Charts $12-1 \rightarrow 12-7$ )

Work in small groups. Discuss one (or more) of the given statements. Write a report of the main points made by each speaker in your group. (Do not attempt to report every word that was spoken.)

In your report, use words such as *think*, *believe*, *say*, *remark*, and *state* to introduce noun clauses. When you use *think* or *believe*, you will probably use present tenses (e.g., *Omar thinks that money is the most important thing in life.*). When you use *say*, *remark*, or *state*, you will probably use past tenses (e.g., *Olga said that many other things were more important than money.*).

Do you agree with these statements? Why or why not?

- 1. Money is the most important thing in life.
- 2. A woman can do any job a man can do.
- 3. When a person decides to get married, his or her love for the other person is the only important consideration.
- 4. A world government is both desirable and necessary. Countries should simply become the states of one nation, the Earth. In this way, wars could be eliminated and wealth could be equally distributed.

### Exercise 48. Warm-up. (Chart 12-8)

Read the sentences. Then substitute the phrases in the list for the words in blue.

SITUATION: Mr. and Mrs. Smith plan to retire soon and travel around the world.

in any way that anything that any place that at any time that

- 1. They'll go wherever they want.
- 2. They'll leave whenever they want.
- 3. They'll do whatever they want.
- 4. They'll help people however they can.

# 12-8 Using -ever Words

The following *-ever* words give the idea of "any." Each pair of sentences in the examples has the same meaning.

whoever	(a) Whoever wants to come is welcome.  Anyone who wants to come is welcome.
	(b) He makes friends easily with whoever he meets.*  He makes friends easily with anyone who he meets.
whatever	(c) He always says <i>whatever</i> comes into his mind.  He always says <i>anything that</i> comes into his mind.
whenever	(d) You may leave whenever you wish. You may leave at any time that you wish.
wherever	(e) She can go wherever she wants to go. She can go anyplace that she wants to go.
however	(f) The students may dress <i>however</i> they please.  The students may dress <i>in any way that</i> they please.

<sup>\*</sup>In (b): whomever is also possible; it is the object of the verb meets. In American English, whomever is rare and very formal. In British English, whoever (not whomever) is used as the object form: He makes friends easily with whoever he meets.

C011	ipiete the sentences with -ever wo	orus.							
1.	Mustafa is free to go anyplace he	wishes. He can go wherev	ver he wants.						
2.	Mustafa is free to go anytime he	wishes. He can go	he wants.						
3.	I don't know what you should do best to you.	about that problem. Do	seems						
4.	. I want you to be honest. I hope you feel free to say is on y								
5.	leads a life full of love and happiness is rich.								
6.	If you want to rearrange the furniture, go ahead. You can rearrange it								
	you want. I don't care one way or the other.								
7.	Those children are wild! I feel sorry for has to be their babysitter.								
8.	I have a car. I can take you	you want to go							
9.	Irene doess	she wants to do, goes	she wants to						
	go, gets up	she wants to get up, makes frier	nds with						
	she meets	and dresses	che pleacec						

Exercise 49. Looking at grammar. (Chart 12-8)

### Exercise 1. Warm-up. (Chart 13-1)

The sentences are all correct. The words in blue are all pronouns. What nouns do they refer to? How does the noun affect the choice of the pronoun?

- 1. a. We helped the man. He was lost in the woods.
  - b. We helped the man who was lost in the woods.
  - c. We helped the man that was lost in the woods.
- 2. a. The new computer is fast. It is in my office.
  - b. The new computer which is in my office is fast.
  - c. The new computer that is in my office is fast.

13-1 Adjective Clause Pronouns U	sed as the Subject	
I thanked the woman.  She helped me.  (a) I thanked the woman  (b) I thanked the woman  that helped me.	In (a): I thanked the woman = a main clause; who helped me = an adjective clause.*  An adjective clause modifies a noun.  In (a): the adjective clause modifies woman.	
The book is mine.  It is on the table.  (c) The book which is on the table is mine. (d) The book that is on the table is mine.	In (a): who is the subject of the adjective clause.  In (b): that is the subject of the adjective clause.  NOTE: (a) and (b) have the same meaning; (c) and (d) have the same meaning.	
	<pre>who = used for people which = used for things that = used for both people and things</pre>	
(e) CORRECT: The book <i>that is on the table</i> is mine. (f) <i>INCORRECT</i> : The book is mine that is on the table.	An adjective clause closely follows the noun it modifies.	

<sup>\*</sup>A clause is a structure that has a subject and a verb. There are two kinds of clauses: independent and dependent.

In example (a):

- The main clause (I thanked the woman) is also called an independent clause. An independent clause is a complete sentence and can stand alone.
- The adjective clause (who helped me) is a dependent clause. A dependent clause is NOT a complete sentence and cannot stand alone. A dependent clause must be connected to an independent clause.

	Exercise :	2.	Looking	at	grammar.	(Chart 13-	1)
_	EXCIDISC		EGOKII 19	641	gramman	(Charles	٠,

Choose all the possible completions for each sentence. Do not add any commas or capital letters.

- 1. I met the doctor \_\_\_ \_\_ helped my father after the accident.
  - (a.) who
- (b.) that
- c. which
- d. she
- 2. Where is the magazine \_\_\_\_ has the story about online theft?
  - a. who
- b. that
- c. which
- d. it
- 3. Did I tell you about the car salesman \_\_\_\_\_ tried to sell me a defective truck?
- b. that
- c. which
- d. he
- 4. The house is across the street from us is going to be rented soon.
  - a. who
- b. that
- c. which

# Exercise 3. Looking at grammar. (Chart 13-1)

Combine the two sentences. Use the second sentence as an adjective clause.

- 1. I saw the man. He closed the door.  $\rightarrow$  I saw the man  $\begin{Bmatrix} who \\ that \end{Bmatrix}$  closed the door.
- 2. The girl is happy. She won the race.
- 3. The student is from China. He sits next to me.
- 4. The students are from China. They sit in the front row.
- 5. We are studying sentences. They contain adjective clauses.
- 6. I am using a sentence. It contains an adjective clause.

# Exercise 4. Let's talk. (Chart 13-1)

Make true statements. Use who as the subject of an adjective clause. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

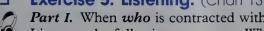
Example: I like teachers who . . . .

I like teachers who have a good sense of humor.

I like teachers who don't give tests. Etc.

- 1. People who . . . amaze me.
- 2. I don't like people who . . . .
- 3. Friends who . . . frustrate me.
- 4. Famous athletes who ... are not good role models for children.

# Exercise 5. Listening. (Chart 13-1)



Part I. When who is contracted with an auxiliary verb, the contraction is often hard to hear. Listen to the following sentences. What is the full, uncontracted form of the *italicized* verb?

- 1. He has a friend who'll help him. (full form = who will)
- 2. He has a friend who's helping him.
- 3. He has a friend who's helped him.
- 4. He has friends who're helping him.
- 5. He has friends who've helped him.
- 6. He has a friend who'd helped him.
- 7. He has a friend who'd like to help him.

Part II. Complete the sentences with the verbs you hear, but write the full, uncontracted form of each verb.

Example: You will hear: I know a man who's lived in 20 different countries.

You will write: I know a man who \_\_\_\_\_\_ has lived\_\_\_\_\_ in 20 different countries.

- 8. We know a person who \_\_\_\_\_ great for the job.
- 9. We know a person who \_\_\_\_\_\_ to apply for the job.
- 10. That's the man who \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_ the speech at our graduation.
- 11. I know a nurse who \_\_\_\_\_\_ around the world helping people.
- 12. Let's talk to the people who \_\_\_\_\_\_ the protest march.
- 13. There are people at the factory who \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ there all their adult lives.
- 14. The doctor who \_\_\_\_\_ care of my mother retired.

### Exercise 6. Warm-up. (Chart 13-2)

Read the passage and complete the sentences.



When William and Eva started their family, they decided that Eva would continue to work and William would guit his job to stay home with the children.

William has been a stay-at-home dad for the last seven years, but now both children are in school, and he's going back to work. He's looking for a job that will still allow him to spend time with his children. What kind of job do you think he is looking for?

He is looking for a job that/which . . . OR He is not looking for a job that/which . . .

- 1. leave him free on weekends
- 2. require him to work on weekends
- 3. include a lot of long-distance travel 7. demand sixteen-hour work days
- 4. have minimal travel requirements
- 5. have a long commute
- 6. be close to home
- 8. have flexible hours

#### 13-2 Adjective Clause Pronouns Used as the Object of a Verb The man was Mr. Jones. Notice in the examples: The adjective clause I saw him. pronouns are placed at the beginning of the clause. who(m) I saw was Mr. Jones. (a) The man (b) The man that I saw was Mr. Jones. In (a): who is usually used instead of whom, (c) The man I saw was Mr. Jones. especially in speaking. Whom is generally used only in very formal English. The movie wasn't very good. We saw it last night. In (c) and (f): An object pronoun is often omitted (Ø) from an adjective clause. (A subject which we saw last night (d) The movie wasn't very good. pronoun, however, may not be omitted.) (e) The movie that we saw last night wasn't very good. (f) The movie Ø we saw last night wasn't very good. who(m) = used for people which = used for things that = used for both people and things (g) INCORRECT: The man who(m) I saw him was Mr. Jones. In (g): The pronoun him must be removed. It is The man that I saw him was Mr. Jones. unnecessary because who(m), that, or Ø The man I saw him was Mr. Jones. functions as the object of the verb saw.

Exercis	e 7.	Looking	at g	grammar.	(Chart	13-2)
---------	------	---------	------	----------	--------	-------

Choose all the possible completions for each sentence. Do not add any commas or capital letters.

1.	Tell me about  (a.) who			•	were in Oxfor	_	
2.	Do you want	to see the pic	tures th	e photograp	her took?		
	•	-			e. whom	f. Ø	
3.	The people	I call mo	st often on m	y cell phone	are my mothe	r and my sist	tε
				•	e. whom	_	
4.	The apartmen	it we w	anted to rent	is no longer	available.		
	a. who	b. that	c. which	d. it	e. whom	f. Ø	
5.	The children	the Sm	iths adopted a	re from thre	ee different co	untries.	
	a. who	b. that	c. which	d. they	e. whom	f. Ø	

## Exercise 8. Looking at grammar. (Chart 13-2)

Combine the two sentences. Use the second sentence as an adjective clause. Give all the possible patterns, orally or in writing.

- 1. The book was good. I read it.  $\rightarrow$  The book that/which/ $\varnothing$  I read was good.
- 2. I liked the woman. I met her at the party last night.
- 3. I liked the composition. You wrote it.
- 4. The people were very nice. We visited them yesterday.
- 5. The man is standing over there. Ann brought him to the party.

#### Exercise 9. Warm-up. (Chart 13-3)

Compare the <u>underlined</u> adjective clause in sentence a. with the one in sentence b. What differences do you notice? NOTE: Both sentences are correct.

- 1. a. I think Lee is a person who you can have fun with.
  - b. Do you think Lee is a person with whom you can have fun?
- 2. a. The art school which Lori applied to is very demanding.
  - b. Do you know the name of the art school to which Lori applied?

# 13-3 Adjective Clause Pronouns Used as the Object of a Preposition

She is the woman I told you about her.

about whom (a) She is the woman I told you.

(b) She is the woman who(m)(c) She is the woman that

I told you about.

(d) She is the woman

I told you about. I told you about.

The music was good.

We listened to it last night. (e) The music to which we listened

last night was good. (f) The music which we listened to last night was good.

(g) The music that (h) The music Ø

we listened to last night

was good. we listened to last night was good.

In very formal English, the preposition comes at the beginning of the adjective clause, as in (a) and (e). Usually, however, in everyday usage, the preposition comes after the subject and verb of the adjective clause, as in the other examples.

NOTE: If the preposition comes at the beginning of the adjective clause, only whom or which may be used. A preposition is never immediately followed by that or who.

INCORRECT: She is the woman -about who-

I told you.

*INCORRECT:* The music to that we listened

last night was good.

#### **Exercise 10. Looking at grammar.** (Chart 13-3)

Choose all the possible completions for each sentence. Which one seems the most formal?

- 1. The sunglasses \_\_\_\_\_ were under the sofa.
  - a. which I was looking for
  - b. that I was looking for
  - c. I was looking for
  - d. I was looking
  - e. I was looking for them

- 2. The health-care workers \_\_\_\_\_ were helpful.
  - a. who I spoke to
  - b. that I spoke to
  - c. who I spoke to them
  - d. to whom I spoke
  - e. to who I spoke
  - f. I spoke to

#### **Exercise 11. Looking at grammar.** (Chart 13-3)

Combine the two sentences. Use the second sentence as an adjective clause. Give all the possible patterns, orally or in writing.

- 1. The man is standing over there. I was telling you about him.
- 2. I must thank the people. I got a present from them.
- 3. The meeting was interesting. Omar went to it.

 $\Box$  Exercise 12. Looking at grammar. (Charts 13-1  $\rightarrow$  13-3)

Give all the possible completions for each sentence.

- 1. The dress  $\underline{that / which / \emptyset}$  she is wearing is new.
- 2. Did I tell you about the woman \_\_\_\_\_\_ I met last night?
- 3. The report \_\_\_\_\_\_ Joe is writing must be finished by Friday.
- 4. The doctor \_\_\_\_\_ examined the sick child was gentle.
- 5. Did you hear about the earthquake \_\_\_\_\_\_ occurred in California?
- 6. The woman \_\_\_\_\_ I was dancing with stepped on my toes.

#### $\Box$ Exercise 13. Looking at grammar. (Charts 13-1 $\rightarrow$ 13-3)

<u>Underline</u> the adjective clause in each sentence. Give all other possible patterns.

- 1. The woman that I spoke to gave me good advice.
  - $\rightarrow$  who(m) I spoke to
  - $\rightarrow$  I spoke to
  - → to whom I spoke
- 2. I returned the money which I had borrowed from my roommate.
- 3. Yesterday I ran into an old friend I hadn't seen for years.
- 4. Marie lectured on a topic she knew very little about.
- 5. I read about a man who keeps chickens in his apartment.



☐ Exercise 14. Check your knowledge. (Charts 13-1 → 13-3)

Correct the errors in the adjective clauses.

- 1. In our village, there were many people didn't have much money.
- 2. I enjoyed the book that you told me to read it.

- 3. I still remember the man who he taught me to play the guitar when I was a boy.
- 4. I showed my father a picture of the car I am going to buy it as soon as I save enough money.
- 5. The woman about who I was talking about suddenly walked into the room.

  I hope she didn't hear me.
- 6. The people appear in the play are amateur actors.
- 7. I don't like to spend time with people which loses their temper easily.
- 8. While the boy was at the airport, he took pictures of people which was waiting for their planes.
- 9. People who works in the hunger program they estimate that 45,000 people worldwide die from starvation and malnutrition-related diseases every single day of the year.
- 10. In one corner of the marketplace, an old man who was playing a violin.

#### $\Box$ Exercise 15. Looking at grammar: pairwork. (Charts 13-1 $\rightarrow$ 13-3)

Work with a partner. Speaker A looks at the cue briefly. Then, without looking at the text, Speaker A says the cue to Speaker B. Speaker B begins the answer with *Yes*.

#### Examples:

SPEAKER A (book open): You drank some tea. Did it taste good? SPEAKER B (book closed): Yes, the tea I drank tasted good.

SPEAKER A (book open): A police officer helped you. Did you thank her? SPEAKER B (book closed): Yes, I thanked the police officer who helped me.

- 1. You are sitting in a chair. Is it comfortable?
- 2. You saw a man. Was he wearing a brown suit?
- 3. A woman stepped on your toes. Did she apologize?
- 4. Some students took a test. Did most of them pass?
- 5. You were reading a book. Did you finish it?
- 6. A taxi driver took you to the bus station. Did you have a conversation with her?

#### Change roles.

- 7. You stayed at a hotel. Was it in the center of town?
- 8. A waiter served you at a restaurant. Was he polite?
- 9. A woman came into the room. Did you recognize her?
- 10. Some students are sitting in this room. Can all of them speak English?
- 11. You were looking for a dictionary. Did you find it?
- 12. A clerk cashed your check. Did he ask for identification?

<b>Exercise</b>	16.	Warm-up.	(Chart	13-4)

Check ( / ) the sentences that are grammatically correct.

- 1. \_\_\_ I have a friend. His purpose in life is to help others.
- 2. \_\_\_ I have a friend whose purpose in life is to help others.
- 3. \_\_\_ I have a friend who his purpose in life is to help others.
- 4. \_\_\_ I have a friend that his purpose in life is to help others.

#### 13-4 Using Whose I know the man. Whose is used to show possession. It carries the His bicycle was stolen. same meaning as other possessive pronouns used as adjectives: his, her, its, and their. (a) I know the man whose bicycle was stolen. Like his, her, its, and their, whose is connected to a The student writes well. his bicycle → whose bicycle I read *her composition*. her composition → whose composition (b) The student whose composition I read writes well. Both whose and the noun it is connected to are placed at the beginning of the adjective clause. Whose cannot be omitted.

Whose usually modifies people, but it may also be used to modify things, as in (c).

- (d) That's the boy whose parents you met.
- (e) That's the boy who's in my math class.
- (f) That's the boy who's been living at our house since his mother was arrested.\*

Whose and who's have the same pronunciation.

Who's can mean who is, as in (e), or who has, as in (f).

When has is a main verb, it is NOT contracted with who: I know a man who has a cook.

# ☐ Exercise 17. Looking at grammar. (Chart 13-4)

Complete the sentences with who or whose.

- 1. I know a doctor <u>whose</u> last name is Doctor.
- 2. I know a doctor \_\_\_\_\_ who \_\_\_\_ lives on a sailboat.
- 3. The woman \_\_\_\_\_ wallet was stolen called the police.
- 4. The woman \_\_\_\_\_ found my wallet called me immediately.
- 5. The professor \_\_\_\_\_\_ teaches art history is excellent.
- 6. The professor \_\_\_\_\_ course I am taking is excellent.
- 7. I apologized to the man \_\_\_\_\_ coffee I spilled.
- 8. I made friends with a man \_\_\_\_\_ is in my class.

<sup>(</sup>c) I worked at a company whose employees wanted to form a union.

<sup>\*</sup>When *has* is a helping verb in the present perfect, it is usually contracted with *who* in speaking and sometimes in informal writing, as in (f)

#### ☐ Exercise 18. Looking at grammar. (Chart 13-4)

Combine the two sentences. Use the second sentence as an adjective clause.

- 1. I met the woman. Her husband is the president of the corporation.
  - $\rightarrow$  I met the woman whose husband is the president of the corporation.
- 2. Mrs. North teaches a class for students. Their native language is not English.
- 3. The people were nice. We visited their house.
- 4. I live in a dormitory. Its residents come from many countries.
- 5. I have to call the man. I accidentally picked up his umbrella after the meeting.
- 6. The man poured a glass of water on his face. His beard caught on fire when he lit a cigarette.





#### **Exercise 19. Listening.** (Chart 13-4)

Circle the words you hear: who's or whose.

Example: You will hear: The man who's standing over there is Mr. Smith.

You will choose: who's whose

1.	who's	whose	5.	who's	whose
2.	who's	whose	6.	who's	whose
3.	who's	whose	7.	who's	whose
4.	who's	whose	8.	who's	whose

## Exercise 20. Let's talk: pairwork. (Chart 13-4)

Work with a partner. Pretend you are in a room full of people. You and your partner are speaking. Together, you are identifying various people in the room. Begin each sentence with *There is*. Alternate items, with Partner A doing item 1, Partner B doing item 2, Partner A doing item 3, etc.

- 1. That man's wife is your teacher.
  - $\rightarrow$  Partner A: There is the man whose wife is my teacher.
- 2. That woman's husband is a football player.
  - $\rightarrow$  Partner B: There is the woman whose husband is a football player.
- 3. That girl's mother is a dentist.
- 4. That person's picture was in the newspaper.
- 5. That woman's car was stolen.
- 6. That man's daughter won a gold medal at the Olympic Games.
- 7. You found that woman's keys.
- 8. You are in that teacher's class.
- 9. You read that author's book.
- 10. You borrowed that student's lecture notes.

## Exercise 21. Listening. (Chart 13-4)

CD 2

Listen to the sentences in normal, contracted speech. You will hear: whose, who's (meaning who is), or who's (meaning who has). Circle the correct meaning.

Example: You will hear: I know a woman who's a taxi driver.
You will choose: whose who is who has

1.	whose	who is	who has	5.	whose	who is	who has

2	whose	who is	who has	6 wł	nose who is	who has

#### **Exercise 22. Let's talk: small groups.** (Chart $13-1 \rightarrow 13-4$ )

Complete the sentences orally in small groups. Discuss each other's choices and opinions.

1.	A famous	person	life	· I	admire	is	
		PULUUII		_	u uiiiii u		

- 2. \_\_\_\_\_ is a famous person \_\_\_\_\_ has made the world a better place.
- 3. A person \_\_\_\_\_ is having a good influence on world affairs today is \_\_\_\_\_
- 4. \_\_\_\_\_ is a country \_\_\_\_\_ is having a bad influence on world affairs today.
- 5. \_\_\_\_ is a country \_\_\_\_ leadership on issues of global warming is much admired throughout the world.

## ☐ Exercise 23. Warm-up. (Chart 13-5)

All of these sentences have the same meaning, and all of them are grammatically correct. The adjective clauses are in blue. What differences do you notice?

- 1. The town where I grew up is very small.
- 2. The **town** in which I grew up is very small.
- 3. The **town** which I grew up in is very small.
- 4. The town that I grew up in is very small.
- 5. The town I grew up in is very small.

The building is very old.

# 13-5 Using Where in Adjective Clauses

He lives there (in that building). (a) The building where he lives is very old. (b) The building is very old. in which he lives The building which he lives in is very old. The building that he lives in is very old. The building he lives in Ø is very old.

Where is used in an adjective clause to modify a place (city, country, room, house, etc.).

If where is used, a preposition is NOT included in the adjective clause, as in (a).

If *where* is not used, the preposition must be included, as in (b).

#### Exercise 24. Looking at grammar. (Chart 13-5)

Combine the two sentences. Use the second sentence as an adjective clause.

- 1. The city was beautiful. We spent our vacation there (in that city).
- 2. That is the restaurant. I will meet you there (at that restaurant).
- 3. The office is busy. I work there (in that office).
- 4. That is the drawer. I keep my jewelry there (in that drawer).

#### Exercise 25. Warm-up. (Chart 13-6)

All of these sentences have the same meaning, and all of them are grammatically correct. The adjective clauses are in blue. What differences do you notice?

- 1. I clearly remember the day when I rode a bike for the first time.
- 2. I clearly remember the day on which I rode a bike for the first time.
- 3. I clearly remember the day that I rode a bike for the first time.
- 4. I clearly remember the day I rode a bike for the first time.

# 13-6 Using When in Adjective Clauses

I'll never forget the day. I met you then (on that day).

(a) I'll never forget the day

(b) I'll never forget the day

that

(c) I'll never forget the day (d) I'll never forget the day

I met you. on which I met you.

> I met you. I met you.

When is used in an adjective clause to modify a noun of time (year, day, time, century, etc.).

The use of a preposition in an adjective clause that modifies a noun of time is somewhat different from that in other adjective clauses: a preposition is used preceding which, as in (b); otherwise, the preposition is omitted.

## **Exercise 26. Looking at grammar.** (Chart 13-6)

Combine the two sentences. Use the second sentence as an adjective clause.

- 1. Monday is the day. They will come then (on that day).
- 2. 7:05 is the time. My plane arrives then (at that time).
- 3. 1960 is the year. The revolution took place then (in that year).
- 4. July is the month. The weather is usually the hottest then (in that month).



#### **Exercise 27. Looking at grammar.** (Charts 13-5 and 13-6)

Combine the two sentences. Use where or when to introduce an adjective clause.

- 1. That is the place. The accident occurred there.
  - $\rightarrow$  That is the place **where** the accident occurred.
- 2. There was a time. Movies cost a dime then.
  - $\rightarrow$  There was a time **when** movies cost a dime.
- 3. A café is a small restaurant. People can get a light meal there.
- 4. Every neighborhood in Brussels has small cafés. Customers drink coffee and eat pastries there.
- 5. There was a time. Dinosaurs dominated the earth then.
- 6. The house was destroyed in an earthquake ten years ago. I was born and grew up there.
- 7. The miser hid his money in a place. It was safe from robbers there.
- 8. There came a time. The miser had to spend his money then.

#### **■ Exercise 28. Let's talk: interview.** (Charts 13-1 → 13-6)

Interview two classmates for each item. Encourage them to use adjective clauses that modify the nouns in **bold**. Share a few of their answers with the class.

Example: What kind of food don't you like?

- $\rightarrow$  *I don't like* **food** that is too sugary.
- 1. What kind of **people** do you like to spend time with?
- 2. What kind of **people** do you prefer to avoid?
- 3. What kind of cities do you like to visit?
- 4. What kind of teachers do you learn best from?
- 5. What kind of place would you like to live in?
- 6. What time of day do you feel most energetic?

## **Exercise 29. Listening.** (Charts $13-1 \rightarrow 13-6$ )

Listen to the sentences. Choose the correct meanings for each sentence.

Example: You will hear: The nurse who gave the medicine to the patients seemed confused.

You will choose: a. The patients were confused.

- (b.) The patients received medicine from the nurse.
- c.) The nurse was confused.
- 1. a. A man organized the dinner.
  - b. The man is the speaker's friend.
  - c. The speaker organized the dinner.
- 2. a. Two people were killed in an accident.
  - b. Two people blocked all lanes of the highway for two hours.
  - c. An accident blocked all lanes of the highway for two hours.
- 3. a. The speaker lives in a large city.
  - b. The speaker was born in a small town.
  - c. The speaker was born in a large city.
- 4. a. The music teacher and the students play in a rock band.
  - b. The music teacher directs a rock band.
  - c. The music teacher plays in a rock band.

- 5. a. The speaker gave Jack a camera for his birthday.
  - b. The camera takes excellent pictures.
  - c. Jack takes excellent pictures.
- 6. a. The speaker often invites the neighbor to dinner.
  - b. The neighbor often visits at dinnertime.
  - c. The speaker visits the neighbor at dinnertime.

#### **Exercise 30. Let's talk.** (Charts $13-1 \rightarrow 13-6$ )

Work in small groups or as a class. The leader will ask Speaker A a question. The leader will then ask Speaker B to summarize the information in Speaker A's response in one sentence beginning with *The*. Speaker B will use an adjective clause. Only the leader's book is open.

#### Example:

LEADER: Who got an email yesterday?

SPEAKER A (Ali): I did.

LEADER to A: Who was it from? Speaker A: My brother.

LEADER to B: Summarize this information. Begin with *The*.

SPEAKER B: The email (*Ali*) got yesterday was from his brother.

- 1. Who lives in an apartment? Is it close to school?
- 2. Who is wearing earrings? What are they made of?
- 3. Pick up something that doesn't belong to you. What is it? Whose is it?

#### (Change leaders if working in groups.)

- 4. Who grew up in a small town? In what part of the country is it located?
- 5. Who has bought something recently? Was it expensive?
- 6. Who went to a restaurant yesterday? Was it crowded?

(Change leaders if working in groups.)

- 7. What did you have for dinner last night? Was it good?
- 8. Who watched a TV program last night? What was it about?
- 9. Who has borrowed something recently? What did you borrow? Who does it belong to?

#### (Change leaders if working in groups.)

- 10. Who shops for groceries?
  What is the name of the store?
- 11. Who eats lunch away from home? Where do you usually eat? Does it have good food?
- 12. Who took the bus to class today? Was it late or on time?

#### **Exercise 31. Warm-up.** (Chart 13-7)

Underline each adjective clause. Draw an arrow to the word it modifies.

- 1. A: Is it okay if I come along on the picnic?
  - B: Absolutely! Anyone who wants to come is more than welcome.
- 2. A: Should I apply for the opening in the sales department?
  - B: I don't think so. They're looking for somebody who speaks Spanish.
- 3. A: Everything the Smiths do costs a lot of money.
  - B: It's amazing, isn't it?
- 4. A: You're the only one who really understands me.
  - B: Oh, that can't be true.

13	3-7 Using Adjective Clauses to	Modify Pronouns
(a) (b) (c)	There is someone I want you to meet.  Everything he said was pure nonsense.  Anybody who wants to come is welcome.	Adjective clauses can modify indefinite pronouns (e.g., someone, everybody).  Object pronouns (e.g., who(m), that, which) are usually omitted in the adjective clause, as in (a) and (b).
(d) (e)	Paula was <i>the only one l knew at the party.</i> Scholarships are available for <i>those</i> who need financial assistance.	Adjective clauses can modify <b>the one</b> (s) and <b>those</b> .*
(f)	INCORRECT: 1 who am a student at this school come from a country in Asia.	Adjective clauses are almost never used to modify personal pronouns. Native English speakers would not write the sentence in (f).
(g)	It is I who am responsible.	Example (g) is possible, but very formal and uncommon.
(h)	He who laughs last laughs best.	Example (h) is a well-known saying in which <i>he</i> is used as an indefinite pronoun (meaning "anyone" or "any person").

The bread my mother makes is much better than that which you can buy at a store.

Exer	<b>cise 32</b>	. Looking	at grammar.	(Chart 13-7)
------	----------------	-----------	-------------	--------------

Complete the sentences with adjective clauses.

1.	Ask Jackie. She's the only onewho knows the answer.
2.	I have a question. There is something
3.	He can't trust anyone. There's no one
4.	I'm powerless to help her. There's nothing
5.	I know someone
6.	What was Mr. Wood talking about? I didn't understand anything
7.	I listen to everything
8.	You shouldn't believe everything
9.	All of the students are seated. The teacher is the only one
10.	The test we took yesterday was easier than the one
11.	The courses I'm taking this term are more difficult than the ones
12.	The concert had already begun. Those
	had to wait until intermission to be sented

<sup>\*</sup>An adjective clause with which can also be used to modify the demonstrative pronoun that: We sometimes fear that which we do not understand.

# ☐ Exercise 33. Listening. (Charts 13-1 → 13-7)

CD 2 Track 7

Listen to the entire conversation with your book closed. Then open your book and listen again. Complete the sentences with the words you hear. Write the uncontracted forms.

- A: Do you see that guy \_\_\_\_\_ wearing the baseball cap?
- B: I see two guys \_\_\_\_\_\_ wearing baseball caps. Do you mean the one \_\_\_\_\_ T-shirt says "Be Happy"?
- A: Yeah, him. Do you remember him from high school? He looks a little different now, doesn't he? Isn't he the one \_\_\_\_\_\_ joined the circus?
- B: Nah, I heard that story too. That was just a rumor. When the circus was in town last summer, his wife spent a lot of time there, so people started wondering why. Some people started saying she was working there as a performer. But the truth is that she was only visiting a cousin \_\_\_\_\_\_ a manager for the circus. She just wanted to spend time with him while he was in town.



- A: Well, you know, it was a story \_\_\_\_\_\_\_ pretty fishy\* to me. But people sure enjoyed talking about it. The last thing \_\_\_\_\_\_ was that she'd learned how to eat fire and swallow swords!
- B: Rumors really take on a life of their own, don't they?!

<sup>\*</sup>fishy = suspicious; hard to believe.

#### Exercise 34. Warm-up. (Chart 13-8)

Listen to your teacher read the sentences aloud. Both are correct. Notice the use of pauses. Then answer these questions for both sentences:

- · Which adjective clause can be omitted with no change in the meaning of the noun it modifies?
- What do you notice about the use of commas?
- 1. I just found out that Lara Johnson, who speaks Russian fluently, has applied for the job at the Russian embassy.
- 2. That's not the job for you. Only people who speak Russian fluently will be considered for the job at the Russian embassy.

# 13-8 Punctuating Adjective Clauses

General guidelines for the punctuation of adjective clauses:

- (1) DO NOT USE COMMAS IF the adjective clause is necessary to identify the noun it modifies.\*
- (2) USE COMMAS IF the adjective clause simply gives additional information and is not necessary to identify the noun it modifies.\*\*

	modilies.	
(a)	The professor who teaches Chemistry 101 is an excellent lecturer.	In (a): No commas are used. The adjective clause is necessary to identify which professor is meant.
(b)	Professor Wilson, who teaches Chemistry 101, is an excellent lecturer.	In (b): Commas are used. The adjective clause is not necessary to identify Professor Wilson. We already know who he is: he has a name. The adjective clause simply gives additional information.
(c)	Hawaii, which consists of eight principal islands, is a favorite vacation spot.	GUIDELINE: Use commas, as in (b), (c), and (d), if an adjective clause modifies a proper noun. (A proper noun begins with a capital letter.)
(d)	Mrs. Smith, who is a retired teacher, does volunteer work at the hospital.	NOTE: A comma reflects a pause in speech.
(e)	The man $\begin{cases} who(m) \\ that \\ \emptyset \end{cases}$   met teaches chemistry.	In (e): If no commas are used, any possible pronoun may be used in the adjective clause. Object pronouns may be omitted.
(f)	Mr. Lee, whom I met yesterday, teaches chemistry.	In (f): When commas are necessary, the pronoun that may not be used (only who, whom, which, whose, where, and when may be used), and object pronouns cannot be omitted.
CON	IPARE THE MEANING:	In (g): The use of commas means that all of the
(g)	We took some children on a picnic. <i>The children</i> , who wanted to play soccer, ran to an open field as soon as we arrived at the park.	children wanted to play soccer and <i>all</i> of the children ran to an open field. The adjective clause is used only to give additional information about the children.
(h)	We took some children on a picnic. The children who wanted to play soccer ran to an open field as soon as we arrived at the park. The others played a different game.	In (h): The lack of commas means that <i>only some</i> of the children wanted to play soccer. The adjective clause is used to identify which children ran to the open field.

<sup>\*</sup>Adjective clauses that do not require commas are called essential or restrictive or identifying.

<sup>\*\*</sup>Adjective clauses that require commas are called nonessential or nonrestrictive or nonidentifying. NOTE: Nonessential adjective clauses are more common in writing than in speaking.

#### Exercise 35. Looking at grammar. (Chart 13-8)

Decide if the information in blue is necessary or additional. If it is additional, add commas. Read the sentences aloud, pausing where necessary.

- 1. The man who lives in the apartment next to mine has three cats and a dog. (no commas, no pauses)
- 2. Yes, Sandra Day is in my political science class. And Erica Nelson, [pause] who lives in the dorm room next to mine, [pause] is in my Greek Drama class.
- 3. Rice which is grown in many countries is a staple food throughout much of the world.
- 4. The rice which we had for dinner last night was very good.
- 5. The newspaper article was about a man who died two weeks ago of a rare tropical disease.
- 6. Paul O'Grady who died two weeks ago of a sudden heart attack was a kind and loving man.
- 7. I have fond memories of my hometown which is situated in a valley.
- 8. I live in a town which is situated in a valley.
- 9. People who live in glass houses shouldn't throw stones.
- 10. In a children's story, Little Red Riding Hood who went out one day to visit her grandmother found a wolf in her grandmother's bed when she got there.



## **Exercise 36. Listening and pronunciation.** (Chart 13-8)



Listen for pauses before and after adjective clauses in the given sentences. Add commas where you hear pauses. Practice pronouncing the sentences.

Examples: You will hear: Vegetables which are orange have a lot of vitamin A.

You will add: (no commas)

You will hear: Vegetables [pause] which come in many shapes and colors [pause]

have lots of vitamins.

You will add: Vegetables, which come in many shapes and colors, have lots of vitamins.

- 1. Did you hear about the man who rowed a boat across the Atlantic Ocean?
- 2. My uncle who loves boating rows his boat across the lake near his house nearly every day.
- 3. Tea which is a common drink throughout the world is made by pouring boiling water onto the dried leaves of certain plants.
- 4. Tea which is made from herbs is called herbal tea.
- 5. Toys which contain lead paint are unsafe for children.
- 6. Lead which can be found in paint and plastics is known to cause brain damage in children.

#### Exercise 37. Looking at grammar. (Chart 13-8)

Add commas where necessary. Change the adjective clause pronoun to that if possible. Read the sentences aloud, pausing where necessary.

- 1. Mariko and Jackie, who didn't come to class yesterday, explained their absence to the teacher. (Who cannot be changed to that. Pauses are used in speaking; add commas.)
- 2. The students who did not come to class yesterday explained their absence to the teacher. (Who can be changed to that; no commas.)
- 3. The Mississippi River which flows south from Minnesota to the Gulf of Mexico is the major commercial river in the United States.
- 4. A river which is polluted is not safe for swimming.
- 5. Mr. Trang whose son won the spelling contest is very proud of his son's achievement. The man whose daughter won the science contest is also very pleased and proud.
- 6. Goats which were first tamed more than 9,000 years ago in Asia have provided people with milk, meat, and wool since prehistoric times.
- 7. Mrs. Clark has two goats. She's furious at the goat which got on the wrong side of the fence and is eating her flowers.



#### ☐ Exercise 38. Pronunciation and grammar. (Chart 13-8)

Read the sentences aloud. Choose the correct meaning (a. or b.) for each sentence.

- 1. The teacher thanked the students, who had given her some flowers.
  - a. The flowers were from only some of the students.
  - (b.) The flowers were from all of the students.
- 2. The teacher thanked the students who had given her some flowers.
  - (a.) The flowers were from *only some* of the students.
  - b. The flowers were from all of the students.
- 3. There was a terrible flood. The villagers who had received a warning of the impending flood escaped to safety.
  - a. Only some of the villagers had been warned; only some escaped.
  - b. All of the villagers had been warned; all escaped.
- 4. There was a terrible flood. The villagers, who had received a warning of the impending flood, escaped to safety.
  - a. Only some of the villagers had been warned; only some escaped.
  - b. All of the villagers had been warned; all escaped.
- 5. Natasha reached down and picked up the grammar book, which was lying upside down on the floor.
  - a. There was only one grammar book near Natasha.
  - b. There was more than one grammar book near Natasha.
- 6. Natasha reached down and picked up the grammar book which was lying upside down on the floor.
  - a. There was only one grammar book near Natasha.
  - b. There was more than one grammar book near Natasha.

#### Exercise 39. Listening. (Chart 13-8)



Listen to the sentences. Choose the correct meaning (a. or b.) for each sentence.

- 1. a. She threw away all of the apples.
  - b. She threw away only the rotten apples.
- 2. a. She threw away all of the apples.
  - b. She threw away only the rotten apples.
- 3. a. Some of the students were excused from class early.
  - b. All of the students were excused from class early.
- 4. a. Some of the students were excused from class early.
  - b. All of the students were excused from class early.

## Exercise 40. Looking at grammar. (Chart 13-8)

Add commas where necessary. Read the sentences aloud, paying attention to pauses.

- 1. We enjoyed the city where we spent our vacation.
- 2. We enjoyed Mexico City where we spent our vacation.
- 3. One of the elephants which we saw at the zoo had only one tusk.

- 4. One of the most useful materials in the world is glass which is made chiefly from sand, soda, and lime.
- 5. You don't need to take heavy clothes when you go to Bangkok which has one of the highest average temperatures of any city in the world.
- 6. Child labor was a social problem in late eighteenth-century England where employment in factories became virtual slavery for children.
- 7. We had to use a telephone, so we went to the nearest house. The woman who answered our knock listened cautiously to our request.
- 8. I watched a scientist conduct an experiment on bees. The research scientist who was wearing protective clothing before she stepped into the special chamber holding the bees was not stung. A person who was unprotected by the special clothing could have gotten 300 to 400 bee stings within a minute.
- **Exercise 41. Reading and grammar.** (Charts  $13-1 \rightarrow 13-8$ )

Part I. Answer these questions. Then read the article. Notice the adjective clauses in blue.

- 1. Do you have a computer?
- 2. Do you know the name of its operating system?



#### The History of DOS

As you know, a computer needs to have an operating system in order to run programs. When most people think about the first operating systems that were developed for the personal computer, Microsoft or Bill Gates may come to mind. Actually, the truth is somewhat different.

In the late 1970s, there was a man in Seattle named Tim Paterson who worked for a company that was called Seattle Computer. He was a computer programmer and needed an operating system for his computer. Paterson got tired of waiting for another company to create one and decided to develop his own program. He called it QDOS, which meant "quick and dirty operating system." It took him about four months to develop it.

At the same time, Microsoft was quietly looking for an operating system to run a personal computer that I.B.M. was developing. Microsoft saw the program that Tim had written and in 1980, paid him \$25,000 for a license for DOS. A year later they paid another \$50,000 to acquire the rights. It became known as the Microsoft disk operating system (MS-DOS), and the rest is history. Microsoft and Bill Gates became very successful using Paterson's operating system.

	you:	r completions.
	1.	Tim Paterson was the person who
	2.	Seattle Computer was the company that
	3.	The abbreviation for the program was QDOS, which
	4.	I.B.M. was a company that
	5.	Microsoft, which
	6.	Microsoft acquired rights to a program that
ב		ercise 42. Warm-up. (Chart 13-9) sose the correct meaning (a. or b.) for each sentence.
	1.	The couple has thirteen children, only a few of whom live at home.

Part II. Complete the sentences with information from the article. Use adjective clauses in

- . The couple has thirteen children, only a few of whom live at hon
  - a. Ten children live at home.
  - b. A few of the couple's children live at home.
- 2. Victoria bought a dozen dresses, most of which she later returned to the store.
  - a. Victoria returned a dozen dresses.
  - b. Victoria kept a few of the dresses.

# 13-9 Using Expressions of Quantity in Adjective Clauses

In my class there are 20 students. *Most of them* are from Asia.

- (a) In my class there are 20 students, most of whom are from Asia.
- (b) He gave several reasons, only a few of which were valid.
- (c) The teachers discussed Jim, one of whose problems was poor study habits.

An adjective clause may contain an expression of quantity with of: some of, many of, most of, none of, two of, half of, both of, etc.

The expression of quantity precedes the pronoun. Only *whom, which,* and *whose* are used in this pattern.

This pattern is more common in writing than speaking.

Commas are used.

## ☐ Exercise 43. Looking at grammar. (Chart 13-9)

Combine the two sentences in each item. Use the second sentence as an adjective clause.

- 1. The city has sixteen schools. Two of them are junior colleges.
  - → The city has sixteen schools, two of which are junior colleges.
- 2. Last night the orchestra played three symphonies. One of them was Beethoven's Seventh.
- 3. I tried on six pairs of shoes. I liked none of them.
- 4. The village has around 200 people. The majority of them are farmers.
- 5. That company currently has five employees. All of them are computer experts.
- 6. After the riot, over 100 people were taken to the hospital. Many of them had been innocent bystanders.

Con	nplete the sentences with your own words. Use adjective clauses.
1.	Al introduced me to his roommates, both ofwhom are from California.
2.	The Paulsons own four automobiles, one of
3.	I have three brothers, all of
4.	I am taking four courses, one of
5.	I have two roommates, neither of
6.	This semester I had to buy fifteen books, most of
7.	The company hired ten new employees, some of
8.	In my apartment building, there are twenty apartments, several of

#### Exercise 45. Warm-up. (Chart 13-10)

What does which refer to in each sentence?

Exercise 44. In your own words. (Chart 13-9)

- 1. The soccer team worked very hard to win, which made their coach very proud.
- 2. Some of the athletes in the class cheated on the final exam, which disappointed their coach.
- 3. Sam took the final exam, which he passed without cheating.

# 13-10 Using Which to Modify a Whole Sentence

- (a) Tom was late. That surprised me.
- (b) Tom was late, which surprised me.
- (c) The elevator is out of order. This is too bad.
- (d) The elevator is out of order, which is too bad.

The pronouns that and this can refer to the idea of a whole sentence which comes before.

In (a): The word *that* refers to the whole sentence *Tom* was late.

Similarly, an adjective clause with which may modify the idea of a whole sentence.

In (b): The word which refers to the whole sentence Tom was late.

Using which to modify a whole sentence is informal and occurs most frequently in spoken English. This structure is generally not appropriate in formal writing. Whenever it is written, however, it is preceded by a comma to reflect a pause in speech.

#### Exercise 46. Looking at grammar. (Chart 13-10)

Combine the two sentences. Use the second sentence as an adjective clause.

- 1. Sonya lost her job. That wasn't surprising.

  → Sonya lost her job, which wasn't surprising.
- 2. She usually came to work late. That upset her boss.
- 3. So her boss fired her. That made her angry.
- 4. She hadn't saved any money. That was unfortunate.
- 5. So she had to borrow some money from me. I didn't like that.
- 6. She has found a new job. That is lucky.
- 7. So she has repaid the money she borrowed from me. I appreciate that.
- 8. She has promised herself to be on time to work every day. That is a good idea.

#### $\Box$ Exercise 47. Looking at grammar. (Charts 13-1 $\rightarrow$ 13-10)

Combine sentences a. and b. Use b. as an adjective clause. Use formal written English. Punctuate carefully.

- 1. a. An antecedent is a word.
  - b. A pronoun refers to this word.
    - $\rightarrow$  An antecedent is a word to which a pronoun refers.
- 2. a. The blue whale is considered the largest animal that has ever lived.
  - b. It can grow to 100 feet and 150 tons.
- 3. a. The plane was met by a crowd of 300 people.
  - b. Some of them had been waiting for more than four hours.
- 4. a. In this paper, I will describe the basic process.
  - b. Raw cotton becomes cotton thread by this process.
- 5. a. The researchers are doing case studies of people to determine the importance of heredity in health and longevity.
  - b. These people's families have a history of high blood pressure and heart disease.
- 6. a. At the end of this month, scientists at the institute will conclude their AIDS research.
  - b. The results of this research will be published within six months.
- 7. a. According to many education officials, "math phobia" (that is, a fear of mathematics) is a widespread problem.
  - b. A solution to this problem can and must be found.
- 8. a. The art museum hopes to hire a new administrator.
  - b. Under this person's direction, it will be able to purchase significant pieces of art.
- 9. a. The giant anteater licks up ants for its dinner.
  - b. Its tongue is longer than 30 centimeters (12 inches).
- 10. a. The anteater's tongue is sticky.
  - b. It can go in and out of its mouth 160 times a minute.



#### Exercise 48. Reading and grammar. (Charts 13-1 → 13-10)

Read about Ellen and her commute to work. <u>Underline</u> what the words in blue refer to.



- (1) Ellen lives on an island and <u>commutes to work by passenger ferry</u>, which means she takes a boat with other foot passengers to the city where they work.
- (2) She leaves her house at 6:00, which is earlier than she'd like but necessary because the ferry ride takes 30 minutes. Ellen needs 20 minutes to drive to the parking lot where she leaves her car and boards the ferry. Once she's on the other side, she catches a bus which takes her to her office.
- (3) Traffic is usually heavy at that hour, so she's on the bus for another 30 minutes. On the bus, she usually reads reports that she was too tired to finish the night before.
- (4) The bus drops her off a few blocks from her office. Sometimes she stops at an espresso stand and picks up coffee for her co-workers, for which they reimburse her later.
- (5) By the time she gets to her office, she has been commuting for an hour and a half, which she wishes she didn't have to do but isn't going to change because she enjoys her life on the island so much.

## **Exercise 49. Let's talk or write.** (Charts $13-1 \rightarrow 13-10$ )

Discuss and/or write definitions for one or more of the given topics. Include an adjective clause in each definition. If you are writing, choose only one item and expand your definition to a paragraph.

#### The ideal . . .

1.	friend	5.	school	9.	job
2.	mother	6.	vacation	10.	doctor
3.	father	7.	teacher	11.	lifestyle
4.	spouse	8.	student	12.	(your choice)

#### **Exercise 50. Warm-up.** (Chart 13-11)

Look at the words in blue. What differences do you notice between each pair of sentences? NOTE: Sentences a. and b. have the same meaning.

- 1. a. I talked to the people who were sitting beside me at the ball game.
  - b. I talked to the people sitting beside me at the ball game.
- 2. a. The notebooks that are on my desk are mine.
  - b. The notebooks on my desk are mine.
- 3. a. I read an article about Marie Curie, who was a famous French scientist.
  - b. I read an article about Marie Curie, a famous French scientist.

# 13-11 Reducing Adjective Clauses to Adjective Phrases

CLAUSE: A clause is a group of related words that contains a subject and a verb. PHRASE: A phrase is a group of related words that does not contain a subject and a verb. (a) CLAUSE: The girl who is sitting next to me is Mai. An adjective phrase is a reduction of an adjective clause. It modifies a noun. It (b) PHRASE: The girl sitting next to me is Mai. does not contain a subject and verb. (c) CLAUSE: The girl (whom) I saw was Mai. Examples (a) and (b) have the same (d) PHRASE: (none) meaning. Only adjective clauses that have a subject pronoun - who, which, or that — are reduced to modifying adjective phrases. The adjective clause in (c) cannot be reduced to an adjective phrase. (e) CLAUSE: The man who is talking to John is from Korea. There are two ways in which an PHRASE: The man Ø Ø talking to John is from Korea. adjective clause is changed to an adjective phrase. The ideas which are presented in that book are good. (f) CLAUSE: 1. If the adjective clause contains the Ø presented in that book are good. PHRASE: The ideas be form of a verb, omit the subject (g) CLAUSE: Ann is the woman that is responsible for the error. pronoun and the be form, as in (e), (f), PHRASE: Ann is the woman Ø Ø responsible for the error. and (g).\* (h) CLAUSE: English has an alphabet that consists of 26 letters. 2. If there is no be form of a verb in the PHRASE: English has an alphabet Ø consisting of 26 letters. adjective clause, it is sometimes possible to omit the subject pronoun and Anyone who wants (i) CLAUSE: to come with us is welcome. change the verb to its -ing form, as in PHRASE: Anyone Ø wanting to come with us is welcome. (h) and (i). (j) Paris, which is the capital of France, is an exciting city. If the adjective clause requires commas, as in (i), the adjective phrase (k) Paris, the capital of France, is an exciting city. also requires commas, as in (k). An adjective phrase in which a noun follows another noun, as in (k), is called an appositive.

CLAUSE: Fruit that is fresh tastes better than old, soft, mushy fruit.

CORRECT PHRASE: Fruit tastes better than old, soft, mushy fruit.

INCORRECT PHRASE: Fruit fresh tastes better than old, soft, mushy fruit.

<sup>\*</sup>If an adjective clause that contains be + a single adjective is changed, the adjective is moved to its normal position in front of the noun it modifies.

#### **Exercise 51. Looking at grammar.** (Charts 13-10 and 13-11)

Change the adjective clauses to adjective phrases.

- 1. Do you know the woman who is coming toward us? → Do you know the woman coming toward us?
- 2. The scientists who are researching the causes of cancer are making progress.
- 3. We have an apartment which overlooks the park.
- 4. The photographs which were published in the newspaper were extraordinary.
- 5. The rules that allow public access to wilderness areas need to be reconsidered.
- 6. The psychologists who study the nature of sleep have made important discoveries.
- 7. Antarctica is covered by a huge ice cap that contains 70 percent of the earth's fresh water.
- 8. When I went to Alex's house to drop off some paperwork, I met Jacob, who is his partner.
- 9. Many of the students who hope to enter this university will be disappointed because only one-tenth of those who apply for admission will be accepted.
- 10. Kuala Lumpur, which is the capital of Malaysia, is a major trade center in Southeast Asia.

#### **Exercise 52. Listening.** (Charts 13-10 and 13-11)



Listen to the sentences. Choose the correct meaning (a. or b.) for each sentence. In some cases, both a. and b. are correct.

Example: You will hear: The experiment conducted by the students was successful.

You will choose: (a.) The students conducted an experiment.

(b.) The experiment was successful.

- 1. a. There is a fence around our house.
  - b. Our house is made of wood.
- 2. a. All schoolchildren receive a good education.
  - b. That school provides a good education.
- 3. a. The university president will give a speech.
  - b. Dr. Stanton will give a speech.
- 4. a. There is a galaxy called the Milky Way.
  - b. Our solar system is called the Milky Way.

#### **Exercise 53. Looking at grammar.** (Charts 13-10 and 13-11)

Change the adjective phrases to adjective clauses.

- 1. We visited Barcelona, a city in northern Spain.
  - $\rightarrow$  We visited Barcelona, which is a city in northern Spain.
- 2. Corn was one of the agricultural products introduced to the European settlers by the Indians. Some of the other products introduced by the Indians were potatoes, peanuts, and tobacco.
- 3. Mercury, the nearest planet to the sun, is also the smallest of the planets orbiting our sun.
- 4. The pyramids, the monumental tombs of ancient Egyptian pharaohs, were constructed more than 4,000 years ago.
- 5. Any student not wanting to go on the trip should inform the office.
- 6. Be sure to follow the instructions given at the top of the page.

Exercise 54. Looking at grammar. (Charts 13-10 and 13-11) Change the adjective clauses to adjective phrases.  Early Failures of Famous People	
Early Failures of Famous People	
(1) Many famous people did not enjoy immediate success in their early lives. Abraham Lincoln, -who was one of the truly great presidents of the United States, ran for public office 26 times and lost 23 of the elections.	e
<ul><li>(2) Walt Disney, who was the creator of Mickey Mouse and the founder of his own movie production company, once was fired by a newspaper editor because he had no good ideas.</li><li>(3) Thomas Edison, who was the inventor of the light bulb and the phonograph, was believed.</li></ul>	
by his teachers to be too stupid to learn.	
(4) Albert Einstein, who was one of the greatest scientists of all time, performed badly in	
almost all of his high school courses and failed his first college entrance exam.	
Complete the sentences in Part II by turning the information in Part I into adjective phrase Use commas as necessary.	es.
<ul> <li>Part I.</li> <li>a. It is the lowest place on the earth's surface.</li> <li>✓b. It is the highest mountain in the world.</li> <li>c. It is the capital of Iraq.</li> <li>d. It is the capital of Argentina.</li> <li>e. It is the largest city in the Western Hemisphere.</li> <li>f. It is the largest city in the United States.</li> <li>g. It is the most populous country in Africa.</li> <li>h. It is the northernmost country in Latin America.</li> <li>i. They are sensitive instruments that measure the shaking of the ground.</li> <li>j. They are devices that produce a powerful beam of light.</li> </ul>	
Part II.	
1. Mount Everest <u>the highest mountain in the world</u> is in the Himalay	as.

1.	Mount Everest <u>, the highest mountain in the world</u> , is in the Himalayas.
2.	One of the largest cities in the Middle East is Baghdad
3.	Earthquakes are recorded on seismographs
4.	The Dead Sea
	is located in the Middle East between Jordan and Israel.
5.	The newspaper reported an earthquake in Buenos Aires
6.	Industry and medicine are continually finding new uses for lasers

	7.	Mexico		_								
		lies just south of the United States.										
	8.	The nation Nigeria	. consist	S								
		of over 250 different cultural groups even though English is the official language.										
	9.	Both Mexico City and New	York Ci	y								
	face challenging futures.											
2	Exercise 56. Listening. (Chapters 12 and 13)  Part I. Listen to the lecture about animals and earthquake predictions with your book of the open your book and read the statements. Circle "T" for true and "F" for false.											
11	1.	That animals can predict earthquakes is an indisputable fact.	T F									
	2.	Some animals exhibit unusual behavior before an earthquake.	T F									
	3.	According to the lecture, scientists are certain that the energy in the air										
		changes before an earthquake.	T F									
	4.	Some scientists believe that animal behavior can be helpful in earthquake prediction.	T F									
	Part II. Listen again. Complete the sentences with the words you hear.											
		Animals and Earthquakes										
	-	animals can predict earthquakes has been widely de	bated fo	r								
	hun	dreds of years. In fact, as far back as 373 B.C., villagers										
	hundreds of animals deserted the Greek town of Helice a few days before an earthquake											
	destroyed it. There are other interesting phenomena											
	For example, before an earthquake, dogs may begin barking or howling for no reason; chickens											
	might stop laying eggs; and some pets will go into hiding.											
	In Asia in 2004, many animals accustomed to being											
	on t	he beach in the early morning refused to go there the morning of the big tsunami.	In									
	Tha	uiland, a herd of buffalo on a beach noticed or heard	_									
		de them run to the top of a hill before the tsunami was anywhere in sight. The villag	gers									
	10.5	them were saved.										

			e people can.			_	
	8	befor	re an earthqu	ake can be d	etected. A	Anoth	ier idea
	9	the energy	y in the air ch	anges	10		animals are distu
by the	ese changes.						
So	me scientists	dismiss these	ideas, while	others	11		they are worth
resea	rching furthe	r. Those scien	ntists	12		itnesse	ed this strange an
behav	vior	13	ani		more sens	sitive t	to subtle changes
earth	than people	13	14	stu	dying the	ir beh	avior can be usef
the p	rediction of e	arthquakes.	14				
Comi	bine each gro nce as the in-		choppy senter	nces into one	sentence		e the <u>underlined</u> Use adjective cla
Combon senter and a	bine each gro ence as the in- adjective phra Chihuahua is mountainous	oup of short, of dependent clases wherever divided into area in the w	choppy senter huse and build possible. two regions. rest. The other	nces into one d your senter It is the larger er region is a	e sentence nce aroun est Mexic desert ba	ad it. I	
Combon senter and a	bine each gro ence as the in- adjective phra Chihuahua is mountainous	oup of short, of dependent classes wherever divided into area in the w	choppy senter huse and build possible. two regions. rest. The other	nces into one d your senter It is the large er region is a	e sentence nce aroun est Mexic desert ba	ad it. I	Use adjective clau ite. One region is the north and ea
Combination of the combination o	bine each gro ence as the in- adjective phra Chihuahua is mountainous ————————————————————————————————————	oup of short, of dependent clases wherever divided into area in the way, the larges the west and	choppy senter ause and build possible.  two regions. rest. The other than the adesert basine area of land	It is the larger region is a state, is divident in the nort.  It is an am	e sentence nce aroun est Mexic desert ba ed into two h and eas	ean sta sin in vo regional	Use adjective clau ite. One region is the north and ea
Combination of the combination o	bine each grounce as the incadjective phrace in the control of the	oup of short, of dependent clases wherever divided into area in the way, the larges the west and	choppy senter ause and build possible.  two regions. rest. The other than the adesert basine area of land	It is the larger region is a state, is divident in the nort.  It is an am	e sentence nce aroun est Mexic desert ba ed into two h and eas	ean sta sin in vo regional	Use adjective claude. One region is the north and easons, a mountaino
Combination of the combination o	bine each grounce as the incadjective phrace in the control of the	oup of short, of dependent clases wherever divided into area in the way, the larges the west and	choppy senter ause and build possible.  two regions. rest. The other than the adesert basine area of land	It is the larger region is a state, is divident in the nort.  It is an am	e sentence nce aroun est Mexic desert ba ed into two h and eas	ean sta sin in vo regional	Use adjective claude. One region is the north and easons, a mountaino
Combined and a l. g	bine each grounce as the invadientive phradical discretive phradical dis	oup of short, of dependent classes wherever divided into area in the way, the largest the west and covers a larged rida. The landed e of the world	choppy senter ause and build possible.  two regions. rest. The other and the set Mexican at a desert basing a desert basing a desert basing a line and dincludes lake	It is the larger region is a state, is divided in the nort.  It is an amoves, golf cour	essentence acce aroundest Mexic desert banded into two hand east usement passes, camp	can statistic in the can stati	Use adjective claude. One region is the north and easons, a mountaino.  It is located in hotels, and a wild third largest islan.

		1 7. 1 1	and at the acceptance	6.1
Arabi	his land has been	host to many	prosperous civiliza us Islamic empires	tions. These

## **Exercise 58. Check your knowledge.** (Chapter 13)

Correct the errors. All of the sentences are adapted from student writing.

- 1. Baseball is the only sport in which I am interested in it.
- 2. My favorite teacher, Mr. Chu, he was always willing to help me after class.
- 3. It is important to be polite to people who lives in the same building.
- 4. My sister has two children, who their names are Ali and Talal.
- 5. He comes from Venezuela that is a Spanish-speaking country.
- 6. There are some people in the government who is trying to improve the lives of the poor.
- 7. My classroom is located on the second floor of Carver Hall that is a large brick building in the center of the campus.
- 8. A myth is a story expresses traditional beliefs.
- 9. There is an old legend telling among people in my country about a man lived in the seventeenth century and saved a village from destruction.
- 10. An old man was fishing next to me on the pier was muttering to himself.
- 11. The road that we took it through the forest it was narrow and steep.
- 12. There are ten universities in Thailand, seven of them are located in Bangkok is the capital city.

- 13. At the national park, there is a path leads to a spectacular waterfall.
- 14. At the airport, I was waiting for some relatives which I had never met them before.
- 15. It is almost impossible to find two persons who their opinions are the same.
- 16. On the wall, there is a colorful poster which it consists of a group of young people who dancing.
- 17. The sixth member of our household is Pietro that is my sister's son.
- 18. Before I came here, I didn't have the opportunity to speak with people who English is their native tongue.

#### **Exercise 59. Let's write.** (Chapter 13)

Write a paragraph on one or more of the given topics. Try to use adjective clauses and phrases.

#### Topics:

- 1. Write about three historical figures from your country. Give your reader information about their lives and accomplishments.
- 2. Write about your favorite TV shows. What are they? What are they about? Why do you enjoy them?
- 3. Who are some people in your country who are popular with young people (e.g., singers, movie stars, political figures, etc.)? Tell your readers about these people. Assume your readers are completely unfamiliar with them.
- 4. You are a tourist agent for your hometown/country. Write a descriptive brochure that would make your readers want to visit your hometown/country.



# Chapter 14

# Gerunds and Infinitives, Part 1

#### ☐ Exercise 1. Warm-up. (Chart 14-1)

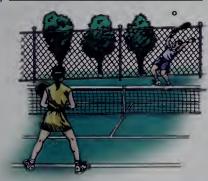
Complete the sentences with the words in the list. Give your own opinion. Then answer the questions.

baseball golf badminton basketball soccer tennis

- 1. Playing \_\_\_\_\_\_ is fun.
- 2. My friends and I enjoy playing \_\_\_\_\_
- 3. I don't know much about playing

#### In which sentence is playing

- a. the object of the verb?
- b. the subject?
- c. the object of a preposition?



## 14-1 Gerunds: Introduction

- s v (a) *Playing* tennis is fun.
- s v o (b) We enjoy playing tennis.
- (c) He's excited about playing tennis.

- A *gerund* is the *-ing* form of a verb used as a noun.\* A gerund is used in the same ways as a noun, i.e., as a subject or as an object.
- In (a): *playing* is a gerund. It is used as the subject of the sentence. *Playing tennis* is a *gerund phrase*.
- In (b): *playing* is a gerund used as the object of the verb *enjoy*.
- In (c): *playing* is a gerund used as the object of the preposition *about*.

- (1) Walking is good exercise.  $\rightarrow$  walking = a gerund used as the subject of the sentence.
- (2) Bob and Ann are playing tennis.  $\rightarrow$  playing = a present participle used as part of the present progressive tense.
- (3) I heard some surprising news.  $\rightarrow$  surprising = a present participle used as an adjective.

<sup>\*</sup>Compare the uses of the -ing form of verbs:

Exercise 2. Warm-up. (Chart 14-2		Exercise	2.	Warm-u	<b>p.</b> (	Chart	14-2
----------------------------------	--	----------	----	--------	-------------	-------	------

Each phrase in blue contains a preposition. What do you notice about the form of the verb that follows each preposition?

- 1. Sonya is excited about **moving** to a new city.
- 2. You'd better have a good excuse for being late.
- 3. I'm looking forward to going on vacation soon.

14-2 Using Gerund	ls as the Objects	of Prepositions
<ul><li>(a) We talked about going to Cana</li><li>(b) Sue is in charge of organizing to</li><li>(c) I'm interested in learning more</li></ul>	he meeting.	A gerund is frequently used as the object of a preposition.
(d) I'm used to sleeping with the w (e) I'm accustomed to sleeping* v (f) I look forward to going home n	vith the window open.	In (d) through (f): <i>to</i> is a preposition, not part of an infinitive form, so a gerund follows.
(g) We talked about not going to the decided we should go.	he meeting, but finally	NEGATIVE FORM: <i>not</i> precedes a gerund.
Common preposition combination be excited be worried about doing it  complain dream talk think  apologize blame someone forgive someone have an excuse have a reason be responsible thank someone	keep someone	object  be opposed  be used

<sup>\*</sup>Possible in British English: I'm accustomed to sleep with the window open.

#### Exercise 3. Looking at grammar. (Chart 14-2)

Complete each sentence with a preposition and a form of go.

- 1. We thought <u>about going</u> to the beach.
- 2. We talked \_\_\_\_\_\_ there
- 3. We're interested \_\_\_\_\_\_ there.
- 4. My family is excited \_\_\_\_\_ there

- 5. The children insisted \_\_\_\_\_\_ there.
- 6. They're looking forward \_\_\_\_\_\_ there.
- 7. The rain prevented us \_\_\_\_\_ there.
- there. 8. A storm kept us \_\_\_\_



#### Exercise 4. Looking at grammar. (Chart 14-2)

Complete each sentence with a preposition and a form of the verb in parentheses.

SITUATION 1: An airplane flight.

- 1. Two children are excited (take) \_\_\_\_about taking \_\_\_\_ their first flight.
- 2. They have been looking forward (be) \_\_\_\_\_\_ above the clouds.
- 3. A first-time flyer is worried ( fly) \_\_\_\_\_\_ in stormy weather.
- 4. One passenger is blaming another passenger (spill) his coffee.
- 5. A man is complaining (have) \_\_\_\_\_\_ an aisle seat rather than a window seat.
- 6. The pilot was late, but he had an excuse (be) \_\_\_\_\_\_ late.
- 7. The co-pilot will be responsible (fly) \_\_\_\_\_\_ the plane.
- 8. Security personnel are prohibiting a woman (get) \_\_\_\_\_\_ on the flight.

	9.	The teenager	has been accused (steal)	a purse.
	10.	An elderly wo	oman said he was responsible (take)	it.
	11.	The police are	e blaming him (do)	_ it.
	12.	The teenager	said he was trying to prevent someone else (take)	it.
	13.	He is upset.	The police are listening to the woman instead (liste	n)
		to his version	of the story.	
	14.	He has not ye innocence.	et succeeded (convince)	the police of his
ì			oking at grammar. (Chart 14-2) ntence with an appropriate preposition and the -in	ng form of the given verb.
	1.	look	Alice isn't interested in looking	for a new job.
	2.	do	You are capable	better work.
	3.	have	I'm accustomed	a big breakfast.
	4.	help	Thank you me c	arry my suitcases.
	5.	know	Mrs. Grant insisted	the whole truth.
	6.	be	I believe honest	at all times.
	7.	live	You should take advantage	here.
	8.	go, not	Fatima had a good reason	to class yesterday
	9.	search	Everyone in the neighborhood participated for the lost child.	
	10.	make	I apologized to Yoko	her wait for me.
	11.	go	In addition to scl part-time job.	hool full-time, Spiro has a
	12.	run	I stopped the child	into the street.
	13.	go	Where should we go for dinner tonight? Would y	ou object
			to an Italian rest	aurant?
	14.	clarify	The mayor made another public statement for th	
			the new tax prop	
	15.	wear	Larry isn't used	a suit and tie every day.

SITUATION 2: At a police station.

## Exercise 6. Listening. (Chart 14-2)



Listen to each dialogue. Summarize it by completing each sentence with a preposition and a gerund phrase.

1.	The man apologizedfor being late.
2.	The woman succeeded
3.	Both speakers are complaining
4.	The man thanked his friend
5.	The man didn't have an excuse
6.	The woman isn't used
7.	The flu kept the man

#### Exercise 7. Let's talk: interview. (Chart 14-2)

Interview two classmates for each question. Share some of their answers with the class.

- 1. Where \ you \ think \ go \ today? → Where are you thinking about going today?
- 2. What \ you \ not accustomed \ do?
- 3. What \ you \ interested \ find out about?
- 4. Where \ you \ look forward \ go \ on your next trip?
- 5. What \ be \ a good reason \ not \ do \ your homework?

#### Exercise 8. Let's talk. (Chart 14-2)

Answer the questions in complete sentences. Use prepositions followed by gerunds in your answers. Work in pairs or small groups.

#### Example:

SPEAKER A (book open): Your friend was rude. Did she apologize?

SPEAKER B (book closed): Yes, she apologized for being rude. OR No, she didn't apologize for being rude.

- 1. Your neighbor helped you carry heavy boxes. Did you thank him/her?
- 2. You're going to visit your friends in another town this weekend. Are you looking forward to that?
- 3. You didn't come to class on time yesterday. Did you have a good excuse?
- 4. You're living in a cold/warm climate. Are you accustomed to that?
- 5. You're going to a tropical island for vacation. Are you excited?
- 6. A customer interrupted you while you were talking to the store manager. Did she apologize?
- 7. The students in the class did role-plays. Did all of them participate?

(Change roles if working in pairs.)

- 8. Someone broke the window. Do you know who was responsible?
- 9. People in some countries have their biggest meal at lunch. Are you used to doing that?
- 10. The weather is hot/cold. What does that prevent you from doing?
- 11. The advanced students have to do a lot of homework. Do they complain?
- 12. Your wallet was missing after your friend visited. Do you blame him?
- 13. You didn't study grammar last night. What did you do instead?
- 14. You studied last weekend. What did you do in addition?

#### Exercise 9. Let's talk. (Chart 14-2)

Answer the questions with by + a gerund or gerund phrase to express how something is done. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

- 1. How do you turn off a cell phone?  $\rightarrow$  By pushing a button.
- 2. How can students improve their listening comprehension?
- 3. How do people satisfy their hunger?
- 4. How do people quench their thirst?
- 5. How did you find out what quench means?
- 6. What are some ways employees get in trouble with their manager?
- 7. How do dogs show they are happy?
- 8. In a restaurant, how do you catch the server's attention?

#### Exercise 10. Let's talk: interview. (Chart 14-2)

Part I. Interview your classmates about the different ways people express emotions. Answers can include descriptions of facial expressions, actions, what people say, etc. Try to use by + gerund in your answers. Share some of the answers with the class.

Example: excitement

SPEAKER A: How do people show excitement at a sports event?

SPEAKER B: People show excitement at a sports event by clapping their hands, jumping up and down, and yelling.

1. happiness

3. anger

5. confusion

7. agreement

2. sadness

4. frustration 6. disagreement

8. surprise

Part II. Draw a face that shows an emotion. Ask a classmate to guess which emotion you've tried to show.



#### Exercise 11. Warm-up. (Chart 14-3)

Complete the sentences with phrases in the list that are true for you. What do you notice about the form of the verbs in these phrases?

buying things online going online to get news reading newspapers spending hours at a computer surfing the internet talking about politics watching commercials on TV watching the news on TV

1.	I enjoy			
	,-,			

2. I don't enjoy \_\_\_\_\_

3. I avoid \_

#### Common Verbs Followed by Gerunds Gerunds are used as the objects of certain verbs. playing tennis. In (a): enjoy is followed by a gerund (playing). Enjoy is not (a) | enjoy followed by an infinitive. INCORRECT: I enjoy to play tennis. Common verbs that are followed by gerunds are listed below. (b) Joe quit smoking. Examples (b) and (c) have the same meaning. Some phrasal verbs,\* e.g., give up, are followed by gerunds. See these phrasal (c) Joe gave up smoking. verbs in parentheses below. Verb + gerund enjoy quit (give up) consider appreciate finish (get through) postpone (put off) discuss

delay

keep (keep on)

## **Exercise 12. Looking at grammar.** (Chart 14-3)

Make sentences with the given words. Use any tense and subject. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

Example: enjoy \ drink tea

SPEAKER A: enjoy [pause] drink tea

stop\*\*

SPEAKER B: I enjoy drinking tea with breakfast.

- 1. mind \ open the window
- 2. finish \ eat dinner
- 3. get through \ eat dinner
- 4. stop \ rain

mind

- 5. keep \ work
- 6. keep on \ work

(Change roles if working in pairs.)

- 7. postpone \ do my work
- 8. put off \ do my work
- 9. delay \ leave on vacation
- 10. consider \ get a job
- 11. talk about \ go to a movie
- 12. mention \ go out of town

mention

suggest

<sup>\*</sup>A phrasal verb consists of a verb and a particle (a small word such as a preposition) that together have a special meaning. For example, put off means "postpone."

<sup>\*\*</sup>Stop can also be followed by an infinitive of purpose. He stopped at the station (in order) to get some gas. See infinitives of purpose, Charts 14-7, p. 317, and 15-1, p. 331.

	Exercise 13. Listening. (Chart 14-3) Listen to the conversations. Complete the sentences with appropriate verbs.			
CD 2 Track 13	1.	The speakers enjoy <u>watching</u> mo	vies on weekends.	
	2.	The speakers have given up	for better weather.	
	3.	The speakers are going to keep on	·	
	4.	The speakers are discussing	to a concert in the city.	
	5.	The speakers have put off	their homework.	
	6.	The speakers are going to delay	the office.	
۵	Exercise 14. Looking at grammar. (Chart 14-3) Complete the sentences with appropriate gerunds.			
	1.	When Beth got tired, she stoppedworking	ng/studying	
	2.	Would you mind the door? Thanks.		
	3.	3. I have a lot of homework tonight, but I'd still like to go with you later on. I'll call you when I get through		
	4.	Where are you considering	for your break?	
	5.	Sometimes I put off my	y apartment.	
	6.	You have to decide where you want to go to s that decision much long	• •	
	7.	I wanted to go to Mexico. Sally suggested	to Hawaii.	
	8.	Tony mentioned the bu	as to school instead of walking.	
	9.	I appreciate able to stud	dy in peace and quiet.	
٥		ercise 15. Warm-up. (Chart 14-4)	es that are true for you. All the choices en	

Complete the sentences by circling all the activities that are true for you. All the choices end in -ing. What do you notice about the verbs in blue?

- 1. Last week I went shopping running biking dancing.
- 2. I like to go hiking swimming camping sightseeing.
- 3. I've never gone fishing bowling skiing diving.



# 14-4 Go + Gerund

(a) Did you go shopping?

(b) We went fishing vesterday.

Go is followed by a gerund in certain idiomatic expressions to express, for the most part, recreational activities.

#### Go + gerund

J			
go biking	go dancing	go running	go skiing
go birdwatching	go fishing*	go sailing	go skinnydipping
go boating	go hiking	go shopping	go sledding
go bowling	go hunting	go sightseeing	go snorkeling
go camping	go jogging	go skating	go swimming
go canoeing/kayaking	go mountain climbing	go skateboarding	go window shopping

<sup>\*</sup>Also, in British English: go angling.

# Exercise 16. Let's talk. (Chart 14-4)

Discuss the activities listed in Chart 14-4. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

- 1. Which ones have you done? When? Briefly describe your experiences.
- 2. Which ones do you like to do?
- 3. Which ones do you never want to do?
- 4. Which ones have you not done but would like to do?

## **Exercise 17. Listening.** (Chart 14-4)



Listen to the story with your book closed. Then open your book and listen again. Complete the sentences with a form of go and any verb that makes sense.



- 1. The first thing Saturday morning, Ron <u>went canoeing</u>
- 2. He brought a fishing rod so he could \_
- 3. He saw some friends on a sailboat but didn't \_\_\_
- 4. He \_\_\_\_\_\_ instead.
- 5. After lunch, he \_\_\_\_\_
- with some of his friends. 6. He finished the day by \_\_\_\_

#### Exercise 18. Let's talk. (Chart 14-4)

Make a sentence that is true for you using the words in parentheses. Then ask a classmate, "How about you?"

*Example:* I (*enjoy*, *don't enjoy*) \ go \ shop \ for clothes

SPEAKER A: I don't enjoy going shopping for clothes. How about you?

SPEAKER B: No, I don't enjoy it either. OR Actually, I enjoy it.

- 1. I (go, never go) \ dance \ on weekends
- 2. I (like to go, don't like to go) \ bowl
- 3. I (sometimes postpone, never postpone) \ do \ my homework
- 4. I (really appreciate, don't appreciate) \ get \ emails from advertisers
- 5. I (am considering, am not considering) \ look \ for a new place to live
- 6. I (enjoy, don't enjoy) \ play \ card games
- 7. I (used to go, never went) \ fish \ as a child
- 8. I (go, never go) \ jog \ for exercise

#### **Exercise 19. Warm-up.** (Chart 14-5)

Read the story. Look at the phrases in blue. <u>Underline</u> the verb that follows each phrase. What form do these verbs take?

Ms. Jones, the teacher, is new and inexperienced. She speaks very quickly, so students have a hard time <u>following</u> her. Because they have difficulty understanding her, they spend a lot of class time asking questions. In response, Ms. Jones gives long, wordy explanations and wastes a lot of class time trying to make herself understood. The students sit at their desks looking confused, and Ms. Jones stands in front of the class feeling frustrated.

14-5 Special Expressions Follo	owed by -ing
(a) We had fun We had a good time  Playing volleyball.	-ing forms follow certain special expressions:  have fun/a good time + -ing
(b) I had trouble I had difficulty I had a hard time I had a difficult time	have trouble/difficulty + -ing have a hard time/difficult time + -ing
(c) Sam spends most of his time studying.	spend + expression of time or money + -ing
(d) I waste a lot of time watching TV.	waste + expression of time or money + -ing
(e) She sat at her desk writing a letter.	sit + expression of place + -ing
(f) I stood there wondering what to do next.	stand + expression of place + -ing
(g) He is lying in bed reading a novel.	lie + expression of place + -ing
(h) When I walked into my office, I found George using my telephone.	find + (pro)noun + -ing catch + (pro)noun + -ing
(i) When I walked into my office, I caught a thief looking through my desk drawers.	In (h) and (i): Both <i>find</i> and <i>catch</i> mean "discover."  Catch often expresses anger or displeasure.

	mplete the sentences with appropriate <i>-ing</i> verbs.
1.	We had a lot of fun playing games at the picnic.
2.	I have trouble Mrs. Maxwell when she speaks. She talks too fast.
3.	I spent five hours my homework last night.
4.	Olga is standing at the corner for the bus.
5.	Ricardo is sitting in class notes.
6.	It was a beautiful spring day. Dorothy was lying under a tree to the birds sing.
7.	We wasted our money to that movie. It was very boring.
8.	Ted is an indecisive person. He has a hard time up his mind about anything.
9.	I wondered what the children were doing while I was gone. When I got home, I found them TV.
Wo	some candy even though he'd told them not to spoil their dinners.  Procise 21. Let's talk: pairwork. (Chart 14-5)  rk with a partner. Complete a sentence about yourself using an -ing verb. Ask your tner, "How about you?"
SPE	ample: Sometimes I have trouble  AKER A: Sometimes I have trouble understanding spoken English. How about you?
1. 2.	AKER B: Yeah. Me too. I have a lot of trouble understanding people in TV shows especially.
3. 4. 5.	EVERY B: Yeah. Me too. I have a lot of trouble understanding people in TV shows especially.  Every week I spend at least an hour  In my free time, I have fun  Sometimes I sit in class

Exercise 20. Looking at grammar. (Chart 14-5)

		e 22. Listening. (Chart 14-5) the sentences. Complete the sentences, orally or in writing, using -ing verbs.
CD 2	Example:	You will hear: I play soccer every day. I love it!
Track 15	Ziviiiipiii	You will write (or say): The speaker has fun
	1. The	speaker has trouble
	2. The	speaker caught his son
	3. The	speaker stands at the kitchen counter in the mornings
	4. The	speaker has a hard time
	5. The	speaker wasted two hours
	6. The	speaker had a good time
	7. The	speaker found Tom
	8. The	speaker spent an hour
<b>a</b>	Make quanswers value 1. Who 2. Who 3. Who 4. Who 5. Who	e 23. Let's talk: interview. (Chart 14-5) estions with the given words. Interview two people for each item. Share some of the with the class.  at \ you \ have difficulty \ remember?  at \ you \ have a hard time \ learn?  at \ you \ have a good time \ play?  at English sounds \ you \ have a hard time \ pronounce?  at \ people \ waste money \ do?  at \ people \ waste time \ do?
5		e 24. Warm-up. (Chart 14-6)  () all the correct sentences.
		We hope visiting them soon.
		We hope to visit them soon.
		We hope you to visit them soon.
	2. a	We told you to call us.
	b	We told to call us.
	с	We told calling us.
	3. a	I invited to go to the party.
	b	I invited Ella to go to the party.

c. \_\_\_ Ella was invited to go to the party.

# 14-6 Common Verbs Followed by Infinitives

#### Verb + Infinitive

(a) I	hone	to	SPP	VOL	again	soon

(b) He promised to be here by ten.

An infinitive = to + the simple form of a verb (to see, to be, to go, etc.).

Some verbs are followed immediately by an infinitive, as in (a) and (b).

(c) He promised not to be late.

Negative form: **not** precedes the infinitive, as in (c).

#### Common verbs followed by infinitives

hope to (do something)	
plan to	

intend to\*

decide to

promise to agree to offer to

refuse to

seem to appear to pretend to

ask to

expect to would like to want to

need to

Verb + Object + Infinitive

#### (d) Mr. Lee told me to be here at ten o'clock.

(e) The police ordered the driver to stop.

(f) I was told to be here at ten o'clock.

(g) The driver was ordered to stop.

Some verbs are followed by a (pro)noun object and then an infinitive, as in (d) and (e).

These verbs are followed immediately by an infinitive when they are used in the passive, as in (f) and (g).

#### Common verbs followed by (pro)nouns and infinitives

tell someone to advise someone to\*\* encourage someone to remind someone to

invite someone to permit someone to allow someone to warn someone to

require someone to order someone to force someone to ask someone to

expect someone to would like someone to want someone to need someone to

#### Verb + Infinitive/Verb + Object + Infinitive

#### (h) I expect to pass the test.

(i) I expect Mary to pass the test.

Some verbs have two patterns:

verb + infinitive, as in (h)

• verb + object + infinitive, as in (i)

In (h): I think I will pass the test. In (i): I think Mary will pass the test.

#### Common verbs followed by infinitives or by objects and then infinitives

ask to / ask someone to expect to / expect someone to want to / want someone to

would like to / would like someone to

need to / need someone to

<sup>\*</sup>Intend is usually followed by an infinitive (I intend to go to the meeting.) but sometimes may be followed by a gerund (I intend going to the meeting.) with no change in meaning.

<sup>\*\*</sup>A gerund is used after advise (active) if there is no noun or pronoun object. COMPARE:

<sup>(1)</sup> He advised buying a Fiat.

<sup>(2)</sup> He advised me to buy a Fiat. I was advised to buy a Fiat.

Exercise 25. Looking at grammar. (Che Complete the sentences with to leave or me to possible.	
1. He told <u>me to leave</u> .	10. He promised
2. He decided <u>to leave</u> .	11. She hoped
3. He asked <u>to leave / me to leave</u> .	12. He permitted
4. He offered	13. She expected
5. She wanted	14. He forced
6. He agreed	15. She allowed
7. She would like	16. He reminded
8. He warned	17. She planned

# Exercise 26. Looking at grammar. (Chart 14-6)

9. She refused

Report what was said by using the verbs in the list to introduce an infinitive phrase.

18. He pretended \_

advise	encourage	order	require
allow	expect	permit	tell
ask	force	remind	warn

- 1. The professor said to Alan, "You may leave early."
  - → The professor allowed Alan to leave early. OR
  - $\rightarrow$  Alan was allowed to leave early.
- 2. Roberto said to me, "Don't forget to take your book back to the library."
- 3. Mr. Chang thinks I have a good voice, so he said to me, "You should take singing lessons."
- 4. Mrs. Alvarez was very stern and a little angry. She shook her finger at the children and said to them, "Don't play with matches!"
- 5. I am very relieved because the Dean of Admissions said to me, "You may register for school late."
- 6. The law says, "Every driver must have a valid driver's license."
- 7. My friend said to me, "You should get some automobile insurance."
- 8. The robber had a gun. He said to me, "Give me all of your money."
- 9. My boss said to me, "Come to the meeting ten minutes early."

)	Wor	k in small groups. Speaker A forms the question, and Speaker B gives the answer. aker C changes the sentence to passive (the <i>by</i> -phrase can be omitted).
	SPEA SPEA	MKER A: What did someone remind you do recently?  AKER B: My roommate reminded me to recharge my cell phone.  AKER C: Mario was reminded to recharge his cell phone.
	1.	What \ a family member \ remind \ you \ do \ recently?
	2.	Where \ a friend \ ask \ you \ go \ recently?
	3.	What \ the government \ require \ people \ do?
	4.	What \ doctors \ advise \ patients \ do?
	5.	What \ teachers \ expect \ students \ do?
	6.	What \ our teacher \ tell \ you \ do \ recently?
	7.	What \ the laws \ not permit \ you \ do?
	8.	Where \ parents \ warn \ their kids \ not \ go?
	9.	What \ our teacher \ encourage \ us \ do to practice our English?
		rcise 28. Looking at grammar. (Charts 14-3 and 14-6) aplete each sentence with a gerund or an infinitive.
	1.	We're going out for dinner. Would you like us?
	2.	Jack avoided <u>looking at</u> me.
	3.	I was broke, so Jenny offered me a little money.
	4.	Would you mind the door for me?
	5.	Even though I asked the people in front of me at the movie quiet, they kept
	6.	Lucy pretended the answer to my question.
	7.	The teacher seems in a good mood today, don't you think?
	8.	I don't mind alone.
	9.	Mrs. Jackson warned her young son not
		the hot stove.
	10.	Residents are not allowed
		pets in my apartment building.
	11	All applicants are required
		an entrance examination.

12.	My boss expects me	the work ASA	AP.*	
13.	Joan and David were considering	r	narried in June, but they final	ly
	decided unti	l August.		
14.	Jack advised me	a new apartment.		
15.	I was advised	_ a new apartment.		
16.	Jack advised	a new apartment.		
17.	Jack suggested	a new apartment.		
18.	When we were in New York, we ha	d a really good time _	in Centra	al
	Park on sunny days.			
19.	This is my first term at this school	. I haven't really had a	any problems, but sometimes	I
	have trouble	the lectures. Some pr	rofessors speak too fast.	



20. Ms. Gray is a commuter. Every workday, she spends almost two hours

# Exercise 29. Warm-up. (Chart 14-7)

Which pairs (a. and b.) have basically the same meaning? Which pairs have different meanings?

- 1. a. It began to snow.
  - b. It began snowing.
- 2. a. I remembered to call my parents.
  - b. I remembered calling my parents.
- 3. a. We love to listen to music.
  - b. We love listening to music.

- 4. a. He forgot to buy a gift.
  - b. He forgot buying a gift.
- 5. a. I stopped to talk to my friend.
  - b. I stopped talking to my friend.

<sup>\*</sup>ASAP = as soon as possible.

# Common Verbs Followed by Either Infinitives or Gerunds

Some verbs can be followed by either an infinitive or a gerund, sometimes with no difference in meaning, as in Group A below, and sometimes with a difference in meaning, as in Group B below.

#### Group A: Verb + Infinitive or Gerund, with No Difference in Meaning

begin start continue	like love prefer*	hate can't stand can't bear	The verbs in Group A may be followed by either an infinitive or a gerund with little or no difference in meaning.
(a) It began to (b) I started to			In (a): There is no difference between <i>began to rain</i> and <i>began raining</i> .
(c) It was begin	nning to rain.		If the main verb is progressive, an infinitive (not a gerund) is usually used, as in (c).

#### Group B: Verb + Infinitive or Gerund, with a Difference in Meaning

remember regret stop forget try	The verbs in Group B may be followed by either an infinitive or a gerund, but the meaning is different.
d) Judy always remembers to lock the door.	Remember + infinitive = remember to perform responsibility, duty, or task, as in (d).
e) Sam often <i>forgets to lock</i> the door.	<b>Forget</b> + infinitive = forget to perform a responsibility, duty, or task, as in (e).
f) I <i>remember seeing</i> the Alps for the first time. The sight was impressive.	<b>Remember</b> + gerund = remember (recall) something that happened in the past, as in (f).
g) I'll never forget seeing the Alps for the first time.	Forget + gerund = forget something that happened in the past, as in (g).**
h) I regret to tell you that you failed the test.	<b>Regret</b> + infinitive = regret to say, to tell someone, to inform someone of some bad news, as in (h).
i ) I <i>regret lending</i> him some money. He never paid me back.	Regret + gerund = regret something that happened in the past, as in (i).
j ) I'm trying to learn English.	Try + infinitive = make an effort, as in (j).
k) The room was hot. I <i>tried opening</i> the window, but that didn't help. So I <i>tried turning</i> on the fan, but I was still hot. Finally, I turned on the air conditioner.	Try + gerund = experiment with a new or different approach to see if it works, as in (k).
The students stopped talking when the professor entered the room. The room became quiet.	Stop + gerund = stop an activity.
m) When Ann saw her professor in the hallway, she <i>stopped</i> ( <i>in order</i> ) <i>to talk</i> to him.	Stop can also be followed immediately by an infinitive of purpose, as in (m): Ann stopped walking in order to talk to her professor. (See Chart 15-1, p. 331.)

<sup>\*</sup>Notice the patterns with prefer:

prefer + gerund: I prefer staying home to going to the concert.

prefer + infinitive: I'd prefer to stay home (rather) than (to) go to the concert.

<sup>\*\*</sup>Forget followed by a gerund usually occurs in a negative sentence or in a question: e.g., I'll never forget, I can't forget, Have you ever forgotten, and Can you ever forget are often followed by a gerund phrase.

		ercise 30. Looking at grammar mplete each sentence with the correct f	
	1.	I always remember (turn)to turn	off all the lights before I leave my house.
	2.	I remember (play)	with dolls when I was a child.
	3.	What do you remember (do)	when you were a child?
	4.	What do you remember (do)	before you leave for class every day?
	5.	What did you forget (do)	before you left for class this morning?
	6.	I won't ever forget (watch)	our team score the winning goal in the
		last seconds of the championship gam	ie.
	7.	Don't forget (do)	_ your homework tonight.
	8.	Please stop (bite)	_ your fingernails.
	9.	I stopped (get)	gas yesterday and was shocked at the high price.
	10.	I stopped (drive)	so much because of the high price of gas.
CD 2 Track 16	1. 2. 3.	<ul><li>a. Joan thought about her phone call</li><li>b. Joan didn't forget to call her husba</li></ul>	she went to the farmers' market with her hers' market with her grandmother.  smoke.  g. g to eat before the movie. ing he did.
u	1. 2.		form of the verb in parentheses.  To swim in the ocean.
			nals that have been cruelly abused by people.

4.	I'm afraid of flying. When a plan-		
	runway, my heart starts (race)		
	(move*)	, and my heart is starting (race) _	
5.	When I travel, I prefer (drive)	to (take) _	
	a plane.		
6.	I prefer (drive)	rather than (take)	
	a plane.		
7.	I regret (inform)	you that your loan app	lication has not been
	approved.		
8.	I regret (listen, not)	to my father's advice	e. He was right.
9.	When a student asks a question, t	the teacher always tries (explain)	
	the problem as clearly as possible		
0.	I tried everything, but the baby st	ill wouldn't stop (cry)	•
		Eva 3	
	I tried (hold)		\${AR\$
	I tried (feed)		727 37
	refused the food and continued (a		
	I tried (burp)		Vi in the second
	I tried (change)	his diaper.	

Usual: The baby is starting to walk. (instead of walking)

If the main verb is not progressive, either form is used:

Babies start to walk around one. OR Babies start walking around one.

Nothing worked. The baby wouldn't stop crying.

<sup>\*</sup>If possible, native speakers usually prefer to use an infinitive following a progressive verb instead of using two -ing verbs in a row.

ū	Exercise 33. Let's talk. (Charts Speaker A gives the cues. Speaker B verb tense, or modal can be used. We	makes sentences from the verb combinations. Any name,
	Examples:  Speaker A (book open): like \ go Speaker B (book closed): I like to go	(OR going) to the park.
	Speaker A (book open): ask \ open Speaker B (book closed): Kostas aske	d me to open the window.
	<ol> <li>advise \ go</li> <li>offer \ lend</li> <li>start \ laugh</li> <li>remind \ take</li> <li>be allowed \ have</li> </ol>	Change roles.  11. continue \ walk  12. finish \ do  13. encourage \ go  14. can't stand \ have to wait  15. regret \ take
	Change roles.  6. postpone \ go  7. look forward to \ see  8. forget \ bring  9. remember \ go  10. suggest \ go	Change roles.  16. decide \ ask \ come  17. stop \ walk  18. consider \ not go  19. keep \ put off \ do  20. intend \ finish
0	themselves using the given question vertical themselves using the given	sing the words in parentheses. Ask other students about word. Share some of the answers with the class.  There?
	<ul> <li>→ I like to go to Central Park on weekends?</li> <li>1. (enjoy \ listen to) What?</li> <li>2. (be interested in \ learn) What?</li> <li>3. (be used to \ have \ for breakfast)</li> <li>4. (prefer \ go to bed) What time?</li> <li>5. (can't stand \ watch) What?</li> <li>6. (decide \ study English) Why?</li> </ul>	on weekends. How about you? Where do you like to go  What?
	<ol> <li>Mary reminded me (be, not)</li> <li>I've volunteered (help)</li> </ol>	not to be late for the meeting.  at the local school during my time off and
	( paint) the  3. We discussed (quit)  own business.	e lunchroom.  our jobs and (open) our

4.	I'm getting tired. I need (take)	a bre	eak.
5.	Sometimes students avoid (look) a que		he teacher if they don't want
6.	Most children prefer (watch) to the radio.	televisi	on to (listen)
	The taxi driver refused (take) cash.		
8.	The travel agent advised us (wait, no	ot)	_ until August (make)
9.	Keep (talk) I	'm listening to you.	
10.	Linda offered (water)	my plants whil	e I was out of town.
11.	Igor suggested (go) weekend. How does that sound to y	70u?	in the mountains this
12.	The doctor ordered Mr. Gray (smok		
13.	Don't tell me his secret. I prefer (kr	now, not)	
14.	Toshi was allowed (renew)	his studen	nt visa.
15.	Don't forget (tell) (swim)		
16.	Sally reminded me (ask)	you ( <i>tell</i> ) _	Bob
	(remember) (br	ring)	his soccer ball to the picnic.
17.	Recently, Jo has been spending most book on pioneer women.	t of her time (do)	
18.	The little boy had a lot of trouble (convince)  anyone he had seen a mermaid.		
			And the second

### Exercise 36. Warm-up. (Chart 14-8)

All of the sentences are correct. What differences do you notice in their grammatical structure? Do you agree or disagree with the statements? Why or why not?

- 1. Speaking a second language without an accent is nearly impossible for adult language learners.
- 2. To speak a second language without an accent is nearly impossible for adult language learners.
- 3. It is nearly impossible for adult language learners to speak a second language without an accent.

<b>14-8</b> $It$ + Infinitive; Gerunds and In	finitives as Subjects
(a) It is difficult to learn a second language.	Often an infinitive phrase is used with <i>it</i> as the subject of a sentence. The word <i>it</i> refers to and has the same meaning as the infinitive phrase at the end of the sentence.  In (a): <i>It</i> means "to learn a second language."
(b) Learning a second language is difficult.	A gerund phrase is frequently used as the subject of a sentence, as in (b).
(c) To learn a second language is difficult.	An infinitive can also be used as the subject of a sentence, as in (c), but far more commonly an infinitive phrase is used with <i>it</i> , as in (a).
(d) It is easy for young children to learn a second language.  Learning a second language is easy for young children.  To learn a second language is easy for young children.	The phrase <i>for</i> ( <i>someone</i> ) may be used to specify exactly who the speaker is talking about, as in (d).

# ☐ Exercise 37. Looking at grammar. (Chart 14-8)

Make sentences beginning with it. Use a form of the given word followed by an infinitive phrase for each sentence.

- 1. be dangerous  $\rightarrow$  It's dangerous to ride a motorcycle without wearing a helmet.
- 2. be important
- 3. not be easy
- 4. be silly
- 5. must be interesting
- 6. be always a pleasure
- 7. be smart
- 8. not cost much money
- 9. be necessary
- 10. take time

#### ☐ Exercise 38. Looking at grammar. (Chart 14-8)

Add for (someone) and any other words to give a more specific and accurate meaning to each sentence.

- 1. It isn't possible to be on time.
  - → It isn't possible for me to be on time for class if the bus drivers are on strike and I have to walk to class in a rainstorm.
- 2. It's easy to speak Spanish.
- 3. It's important to learn English.
- 4. It is essential to get a visa.
- 5. It's important to take advanced math courses.
- 6. It's difficult to communicate.
- 7. It was impossible to come to class.
- 8. It is a good idea to study gerunds and infinitives.

#### Exercise 39. Let's talk: pairwork. (Chart 14-8)

Work with a partner. Speaker A gives the cue. Speaker B completes the sentence with an infinitive phrase. Speaker A restates the sentence using a gerund phrase as the subject.

#### Example:

Speaker A (book open): It's fun . . .

Speaker B (book closed): ... to ride a horse. SPEAKER A (book open): Riding a horse is fun.

#### Change roles.

- 1. It's dangerous . . . 5. It is wrong . . .
- 2. It's easy . . . 6. It takes a lot of time . . .
- 7. It's a good idea . . . 3. It's impolite . . .
- 4. It is important . . . 8. Is it difficult . . . ?

#### Exercise 40. Let's talk: interview. (Chart 14-8)

Interview two different students for each item. Ask the students to answer each question using a gerund phrase as the subject.

- 1. What is easy for you?
- 2. What is hard for you?
- 3. What is or isn't interesting for you?
- 4. What has been a good experience for you?
- 5. What sounds like fun to you?
- 6. What is considered impolite in your country?
- 7. What is a complicated process?
- 8. What demands patience and a sense of humor?

# 14-9 Reference List of Verbs Followed by Gerunds

Verbs with a bullet (•) can also be followed by infinitives. See Chart 14-10.

1.	admit	He admitted stealing the money.
2.	advise•	She advised waiting until tomorrow.
3.	anticipate	I anticipate having a good time on vacation.
4.	appreciate	I appreciated hearing from them.
5.	avoid	He avoided answering my question.
6.	can't bear•	I can't bear waiting in long lines.
7.	begin•	It began raining.
8.	complete	I finally completed writing my term paper.
9.	consider	I will consider going with you.
10.	continue•	He continued speaking.
11.	delay	He delayed leaving for school.
12.	deny	She denied committing the crime.
13.	discuss	They discussed opening a new business.
14.	dislike	I dislike driving long distances.
15.	enjoy	We enjoyed visiting them.
16.	finish	She finished studying about ten.
17.	forget•	I'll never forget visiting Napoleon's tomb.
18.	hate•	I hate making silly mistakes.
19.	can't help	I can't help worrying about it.
20.	keep	I keep hoping he will come.
21.	like•	I like going to movies.
22.	love•	I love going to operas.
23.	mention	She mentioned going to a movie.
24.	mind	Would you mind helping me with this?
25.	miss	I miss being with my family.
26.	postpone	Let's postpone leaving until tomorrow.
27.	practice	The athlete practiced throwing the ball.
28.	prefer•	Ann prefers walking to driving to work.
29.	quit	He quit trying to solve the problem.
30.	recall	I don't recall meeting him before.
31.	recollect	I don't recollect meeting him before.
32.	recommend	She recommended seeing the show.
33.	regret•	I regret telling him my secret.
34.	remember•	I can remember meeting him when I was a child.
35.	resent	I resent her interfering in my business.
36.	resist	I couldn't resist eating the dessert.
37.	risk	She risks losing all of her money.
38.	can't stand•	I can t stand waiting in long lines.
39.	start•	It started raining.
40.	stop	She stopped going to classes when she got sick.
41.	suggest	She suggested going to a movie.
42.	tolerate	She won't tolerate cheating during an examination.
43.	try•	I tried changing the light bulb, but the lamp still didn't work.
44.	understand	I don't understand his leaving school.

# 14-10 Reference List of Verbs Followed by Infinitives

Verbs with a bullet (•) can also be followed by gerunds. See Chart 14-9.

## Verbs Followed Immediately by an Infinitive

1.	afford	I can't afford to buy it.	24.	like•	I like to go to the movies.
2.	agree	They agreed to help us.	25.	love•	I love to go to operas.
3.	appear	She appears to be tired.	26.	manage	She managed to finish her work
4.	arrange	I'll arrange to meet you at the			early.
		airport.	27.	mean	I didn't mean to hurt your feelings.
5.	ask	He asked to come with us.	28.	need	I need to have your opinion.
6.	can't bear•	I can't bear to wait in long lines.	29.	offer	They offered to help us.
7.	beg	He begged to come with us.	30.	plan	I'm planning to have a party.
8.	begin•	It began to rain.	31.	prefer•	Ann prefers to walk to work.
9.	care	I don't care to see that show.	32.	prepare	We prepared to welcome them.
10.	claim	She <i>claims to know</i> a famous	33.	pretend	He pretends not to understand.
		movie star.	34.	promise	I promise not to be late.
11.	consent	She finally consented to marry him.	35.	refuse	I refuse to believe his story.
12.	continue•	He continued to speak.	36.	regret•	I regret to tell you that you failed.
13.	decide	I have decided to leave on Monday.	37.	remember•	I remembered to lock the door.
14.	demand	I demand to know who is	38.	seem	That cat seems to be friendly.
		responsible.	39.	can't stand•	I can't stand to wait in long lines.
15.	deserve	She deserves to win the prize.	40.	start•	It started to rain.
16.	expect	I expect to enter graduate school in	41.	struggle	I struggled to stay awake.
		the fall.	42.	swear	She swore to tell the truth.
17.	fail	She failed to return the book to the	43.	talk	He tends to talk too much.
		library on time.	44.	threaten	She threatened to tell my parents.
18.	forget•	I forgot to mail the letter.	45.	try•	I'm trying to learn English.
19.	hate•	I hate to make silly mistakes.	46.	volunteer	He volunteered to help us.
20.	hesitate	Don't hesitate to ask for my help.	47.	wait	I'll wait to hear from you.
21.	hope	Jack hopes to arrive next week.	48.	want	I want to tell you something.
22.	intend	He intends to be a firefighter.	49.	wish	She wishes to come with us.
23.	learn	He learned to play the piano.			

# Verbs Followed by a (Pro)noun + an Infinitive

50.	advise•	She advised me to wait until tomorrow.	64.	invite	Harry invited the Johnsons to come to his party.
51. 52.	allow ask	She allowed me to use her car. I asked John to help us.	65.	need	We needed Chris to help us figure out the solution.
53. 54.	beg	They begged us to come.  Her laziness caused her to fail.	66. 67.	order	The judge ordered me to pay a fine.  He permitted the children to stay up
55.	cause challenge	She challenged me to race her to		·	late.
56.	convince	the corner. I couldn't convince him to accept	68.	persuade remind	I persuaded him to come for a visit.  She reminded me to lock the door.
57	dava	our help.	70.	require	Our teacher requires us to be on time.
57.	dare	He dared me to do better than he had done.	71.	teach	My brother taught me to swim.
58. 59.	encourage expect	He encouraged me to try again.  I expect you to be on time.	72.	tell	The doctor told me to take these pills.
60.	forbid	I forbid you to tell him.	73.	9	I urged her to apply for the job.
61.	force hire	They forced him to tell the truth.  She hired a boy to mow the lawn.	74.	want warn	I want you to be happy.  I warned you not to drive too fast.
63.	instruct	He instructed them to be careful.			

# Exercise 41. Let's talk: pairwork. (Charts 14-9 and 14-10)

Work with a partner. Partner A gives the cue. Partner B completes the sentence with *doing it* or *to do it*. Check Charts 14-9 and 14-10 for the correct verb form if necessary.

Example: I promise

PARTNER A (book open): I promise . . . PARTNER B (book closed): . . . to do it.

- 1. We plan . . .
- 2. I can't afford . . .
- 3. She didn't allow me . . .
- 4. I don't care . . .
- 5. Please remind me . . .
- 6. I am considering . . .
- 7. Our director postponed . . .
- 8. He persuaded me . . .
- 9. I don't mind . . .
- 10. Everyone avoided . . .

#### Change roles.

- 11. I refused ...
- 12. I hope . . .
- 13. She convinced me . . .
- 14. He mentioned . . .
- 15. I expect . . .
- 16. I encouraged him . . .
- 17. I warned him not . . .
- 18. We prepared . . .
- 19. I don't recall...
- 20. We decided . . .

#### Change roles.

- 21. He resented . . .
- 22. When will you finish . . .?
- 23. Did vou practice . . .
- 24. She agreed . . .
- 25. They consented . . .

- 26. Stop . . .
- 27. I didn't force him . . .
- 28. I couldn't resist . . .
- 29. Somehow, the cat managed . . .
- 30. Did the little boy admit . . . ?

#### Change roles.

- 31. He denied . . .
- 32. I didn't mean . . .
- 33. She swore . . .
- 34. I volunteered . . .
- 35. He suggested . . .
- 36. He advised me . . .
- 37. He struggled . . .
- 38. I don't want to risk . . .
- 39. Do you recommend . . . ?
- 40. I miss . . .

#### Change roles.

- 41. I can't imagine . . .
- 42. She threatened . . .
- 43. He seems to dislike . . .
- 44. The children begged . . .
- 45. She challenged me . . .
- 46. Did he deny . . . ?
- 47. She taught me . . .
- 48. Do you anticipate . . . ?
- 49. I don't recollect . . .
- 50. I'll arrange . . .

# **Exercise 42. Game.** (Charts 14-9 and 14-10)

Divide into teams. Your teacher will begin a sentence by using any of the verbs in Charts 14-9 and 14-10. Complete the sentence with *to do it* or *doing it*, or with your own words. Each correct completion scores one point.

#### Example:

TEACHER: I reminded Mario . . .

STUDENT A: ... to do it. OR ... to be on time.

TEACHER: Yes. One point!

	tercise 43. Looking at grammar. (Charts 14-9 and 14-10) toose the correct form of the verbs in <i>italics</i> . In some sentences, both verbs are correct.						
1	. Hassan volunteered bringing / to bring some food to the reception.						
2	. The students practiced <i>pronouncing   to pronounce</i> the "th" sound in the phrase "these thirty-three dirty trees."						
3	. In the fairy tale, the wolf threatened eating / to eat a girl named Little Red Riding Hood.						
4	4. The movers struggled <i>lifting   to lift</i> the piano up the stairs.						
5	. Anita demanded knowing / to know why she had been fired.						
6	. My skin can't tolerate being / to be in the sun all day. I get sunburned easily.						
7	. Mr. Kwan broke the antique vase. I'm sure he didn't mean doing / to do it.						
8	. Fred Washington claims being / to be a descendant of George Washington.						
9	. Linda failed passing / to pass the entrance exam.						
10	. I hate getting / to get to work late.						
11	. I can't bear seeing / to see animals suffer.						
12	. Ming Wan just started a new business. He risks losing / to lose everything if it doesn't succeed.						
	ercise 44. Looking at grammar. (Charts 14-9 and 14-10) emplete each sentence with an appropriate form of the verb in parentheses.						
1	. How did you manage (find) to find out about the surprise party?						
2							
	. I think Sam deserves (have) another chance.						
	. I think Sam deserves (have) another chance.  . Olga finally admitted (be) responsible for the problem.						
3							
3	. Olga finally admitted (be) responsible for the problem.						
3 4 5	Olga finally admitted (be) responsible for the problem.  Mrs. Freeman can't help (worry) about her children.						
3 4 5 6	Olga finally admitted (be) responsible for the problem.  Mrs. Freeman can't help (worry) about her children.  Children, I forbid you (play) in the street. There's too much traffic.						

(visit)

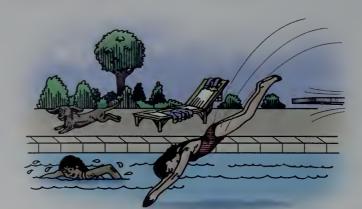
9. Nadia keeps (promise) \_

never does.

\_\_\_\_\_ us, but she

11.	I finally managed (persuade)	Yoko (stay)	in
	school and (finish)	her degree.	

her across the pool.



#### Exercise 45. Let's talk. (Chapter 14)

12. Margaret challenged me (race)

Work in groups of three to five. Choose one of the story beginnings or make up your own. Each group member continues the story by adding a sentence or two. At least one of the sentences should contain words from the list on page 329, plus a gerund or infinitive phrase (but it is okay to continue the story without using a gerund or infinitive if it works out that way). As a group, use as many of the words in the list as you can.

Example: Yoko had a bad night last night. First, when she got home, she discovered that . . . SPEAKER A: ... her door was unlocked. She didn't *recall leaving* her door unlocked. She always remembers to lock her door and in fact specifically remembered

locking it that morning. So she became afraid that someone had broken into her apartment.

SPEAKER B: She thought about going inside, but then decided it would be better not to go into her apartment alone. What if there was a burglar inside?

SPEAKER C: Instead of going into her apartment alone, Yoko walked to her next-door neighbor's door and knocked.

or Lr	"Are you all right?" he asked her.
Etc.	
Stor	y beginnings:
1.	() is having trouble with (her/his) roommate, whose name is (). (Her/His) roommate keeps many pets even though the lease they signed forbids residents to keep animals in their apartments. Yesterday, one of these pets, a/an
2.	It was a dark and stormy night. () was all alone at home. Suddenly

3.	Not long ago, ( ) and ( ) were walking home together after dark. They heard a strange whooshing sound. When they looked up in the night sky, they saw a huge hovering aircraft. It glowed! It was round and green! ( ) was frightened and curious at the same time. (She/He) wanted to , but
4.	Once upon a time, () lived in a faraway village in a remote mountainous region. All of the villagers were terrified because of the dragon that lived nearby. At least once a week the dragon would descend on the village and
5.	( ) had a bad day yesterday. First of all, when (she/he) got up in the morning, (she/he) discovered that

List of words and phrases to use in your story:

Prepositional expressions followed by gerunds	Verbs follo or infinitiv	wed by gerunds es	It + an infinitive or a gerund subject
be accused of	admit	mind	be a bad experience
be accustomed to	advise	need	be a bad idea
in addition to	afford	offer	be better
be afraid of	agree	permit	be clever
apologize (to someone) for	ask	persuade	be dangerous
believe in	avoid	plan	be difficult
blame (someone) for	beg	postpone	be easy
be capable of	begin	prefer	be essential
be committed to	consider	prepare	be foolish
complain about	continue	pretend	be a good experience
dream of	convince	promise	be a good idea
be excited about	decide	quit	be fun
forgive (someone) for	demand	recall	be hard
be guilty of	deny	refuse	be important
instead of	discuss	regret	be impossible
be interested in	dislike	remember	be interesting
look forward to	encourage	remind	be necessary
be opposed to	enjoy	risk	be a pleasure
prevent (someone) from	expect	seem	be possible
be scared of	fail	start	be relaxing
stop (someone) from	force	stop	take effort
succeed in	forget	struggle	take energy
take advantage of	hesitate	suggest	take money
be terrified of	hope	threaten	take patience
thank (someone) for	invite	wait	take time
think of	learn	want	
be tired of	like	warn	
be worried about	manage		

#### Exercise 46. Check your knowledge. (Chapter 14) Correct the errors.

- 1. I don't mind to have a roommate.
- 2. Most students want return home as soon as possible.
- 3. Learning about another country it is very interesting.
- 4. I tried very hard to don't make any mistakes.
- 5. The task of find a person who could tutor me in English wasn't difficult.
- 6. All of us needed to went to the ticket office before the game yesterday.
- 7. I'm looking forward to go to swimming in the ocean.
- 8. Ski in the Alps it was a big thrill for me.
- 9. Don't keep to be asking me the same questions over and over.
- 10. During a fire drill, everyone is required leaving the building.
- 11. I don't enjoy to play card games. I prefer to spend my time for read or watch movies.
- 12. Is hard for me understand people who speak very fast.
- 13. When I entered the room, I found my young son stand on the kitchen table.
- 14. When I got home, Irene was lying in bed think about what a wonderful time she'd had.



# Chapter 15

# Gerunds and Infinitives, Part 2

## Exercise 1. Warm-up. (Chart 15-1)

Which sentences answer the question "Why"?

- 1. Joe went to the library to study last night.
  - → Why did Joe go to the library last night? To study.
- 2. Lucy wants to leave now.
  - → (The sentence doesn't answer the question "Why?")
- 3. Eva opened the window to let in some fresh air.
- 4. Oscar came to this school in order to learn English.
- 5. Rick needs to call his mother.
- 6. Rick needs to call his mother to tell her the good news.

15-1 Infinitive of Purpose: In Order To				
<ul><li>(a) He came here <i>in order to study</i> English.</li><li>(b) He came here <i>to study</i> English.</li></ul>	In order to is used to express purpose. It answers the question "Why?" In order is often omitted, as in (b).			
<ul> <li>(c) INCORRECT: He came here for studying English.</li> <li>(d) INCORRECT: He came here for to study English.</li> <li>(e) INCORRECT: He came here for study English.</li> </ul>	To express purpose, use (in order) to, not for, with a verb.*			
(f) I went to the store <i>for</i> some bread.  (g) I went to the store <i>to buy</i> some bread.	For can be used to express purpose, but it is a preposition and is followed by a noun object, as in (f).			

<sup>\*</sup>Exception: The phrase be used for expresses the typical or general purpose of a thing. In this case, the preposition for is followed by a gerund: A saw is used for cutting wood. Also possible: A saw is used to cut wood.

# **Exercise 2. Looking at grammar.** (Chart 15-1)

Complete the sentences with to or for.

Isabella spent a month in Miami. She went there . . .

- 1. <u>to</u> see her cousins.
- 2. <u>for</u> a vacation.
- 3. \_\_\_\_\_ business.
- 4. \_\_\_\_\_ meet with company executives.



However, to talk about a particular thing and a particular situation, **be used** + an infinitive is used: A chain saw was used to cut (NOT for cutting) down the old oak tree.

	Э.	discuss long-term plans for the company.
	6.	spend time with her parents.
	7.	a visit with childhood friends.
		ercise 3. In your own words. (Chart 15-1) applete the sentences with your own words. Express the purpose of the action.
	1.	I went to Chicago to <u>visit my grandparents.</u>
	2.	Ron went to Chicago for <u>a medical conference.</u>
	3.	I went to the grocery store for
	4.	Reisa went to the grocery store to
	5.	I went to the doctor to
	6.	My son went to the doctor for
	7.	I swim every day to
	8.	Kevin swims every day for
Ū		ercise 4. Looking at grammar. (Chart 15-1)  In order wherever possible. If nothing should be added, write Ø.
	1.	I went to the garden centerin order to get some fertilizer for my flowers.
	2.	When the teacher asked him a question, Scott pretended to understand
		what she was saying.
	3.	My roommate asked me to clean up the dishes after dinner.
	4.	Mustafa climbed onto a chair to change a light bulb in the ceiling.
	5.	Rita has to work at two jobs to support herself and her three children.
	6.	I really want to learn Italian before I visit Venice next year.
	7.	I jog three times a week to stay healthy.
	8.	Karen finally went to the dentist to get some relief from her toothache.
	9.	It's easier for me to understand written English than it is to understand
		spoken English.
	10.	Is it important to speak English without an accent as long as people
		understand what you're saying?

# Exercise 5. Check your knowledge. (Chart 15-1)

Correct the errors.

to

- 1. I went to the library for study last night.
- 2. Helen borrowed my dictionary for to look up the spelling of occurred.
- 3. The teacher opened the window for letting some fresh air into the room.
- 4. I came to this school for learn English.
- 5. I traveled to Osaka for to visit my sister.

#### Exercise 6. Let's talk: interview. (Chart 15-1)

Ask two classmates each question. Share some of their responses with the class.

What are two reasons why some people . . .

- 1. go to Hawaii for vacation?
- 3. cheat on exams?
- 5. tell white lies?\*

2. exercise?

- 4. meditate?
- 6. become actors?

#### Exercise 7. Warm-up. (Chart 15-2)

Look at the adjectives in blue. What do you notice about the words that come after them? about the words that come before them?

- 1. Anya was sorry to hear that her favorite restaurant closed.
- 2. Nate is certain to pass his test.
- 3. Timmy was sad to learn his pet goldfish had died.
- 4. I would be happy to help you.

# 15-2 Adjectives Followed by Infinitives

(a) We were sorry to hear the bad news.

Certain adjectives can be immediately followed by infinitives, as in (a) and (b).

(b) I was surprised to see Ted at the meeting.

In general, these adjectives describe a person (or persons), not a thing. Many of these adjectives describe a person's feelings or attitudes.

#### Common adjectives followed by infinitives

fortunate to

glad to (do it) sorry to\*
happy to sad to\*
pleased to upset to\*
delighted to disappointed to\*
content to
relieved to embarrassed to
lucky to proud to

ashamed to

ready to prepared to anxious to eager to willing to motivated to

determined to

careful to hesitant to reluctant to afraid to

certain to

unlikely to

likely to

surprised to\* amazed to\* astonished to\* shocked to\* stunned to\*

<sup>\*</sup>The expressions with asterisks are usually followed by infinitive phrases with verbs such as see, learn, discover, find out, hear.

<sup>\*</sup>white lies = lies that aren't considered serious, e.g., telling a friend her dress looks nice when you don't think it does.

<b>Exercise 8. In your own words.</b> (Chart 15-2		Exercise	8. In	your o	wn word	s. (Chart	15-2
---	--	----------	-------	--------	---------	-----------	------

Complete the sentences using the expressions listed in Chart 15-2 and your own words. Use infinitive phrases in your completions.

- 1. Nicole always speeds on the expressway. She's . . . .
  - → She's certain to get stopped by the police.
  - → She's likely to get a ticket.
- 2. I've worked hard all day long. Enough's enough! I'm . . . .
- 3. Next month, I'm going to a family reunion the first one in 25 years. I'm very much looking forward to it. I'm . . . .
- 4. Some children grow up in unhappy homes. My family, however, has always been loving and supportive. I'm . . . .
- 5. Ivan's run out of money again, but he doesn't want anyone to know his situation. He needs money desperately, but he's . . . .
- 6. Rosalyn wants to become an astronaut. That has been her dream since she was a little girl. She has been working hard toward her goal and is . . . .
- 7. Our neighbors had extra tickets to the ballet, so they invited us to go with them. Since both of us love the ballet, we were . . . .
- 8. Andrea recently told me what my wayward brother is up to these days. I couldn't believe my ears! I was . . . .

#### Exercise 9. Let's talk. (Chart 15-2)

Work in small groups. Complete the sentences with adjectives from Chart 15-2 that make sense. Discuss your answers.

SITUATION 1: Mr. Wah was offered an excellent job in another country. He sees advantages and disadvantages to moving.

He is	· · ·	
1.	sad to / prepared to / reluctant to	leave his country.
2.		move away from his parents.
3.		take his wife and children away from
	family and friends.	
4.		try a new job.
5.		learn a new language.
	VATION 2: There have been a lot of nighttime burglar residents have been	ies in the town of Viewmont.
6.		leave their homes overnight.
7.		lock their doors and windows at nigh

watch for strangers on the streets.

9.		have weekly meetings with the police
	for updates on their progress.	
10.		hear that the police suspect
	neighborhood teenagers.	

#### **Exercise 10. Let's talk: interview.** (Chart 15-2)

Make questions using the words in parentheses. Ask two classmates each question. Share some of their answers with the class.

- 1. What are children sometimes (afraid \ do)?
- 2. When you're tired in the evening, what are you (content \ do)?
- 3. What should drivers be (careful \ do) in traffic?
- 4. If one of your friends has a problem, what are you (willing \ do)?
- 5. What are people who don't speak English well (reluctant \ do)?
- 6. What are you (determined \ do) before you are too old?
- 7. What are some things people are (ashamed \ do)?
- 8. Can you tell me something you were (shocked \ find out)?
- 9. Can you tell me something you were (sad \ hear)?
- 10. What are you (eager \ do) in the near future?

#### Exercise 11. Warm-up. (Chart 15-3)

In which sentences are the speakers expressing a negative idea (in other words, expressing the idea that there's something wrong or that there's a bad result)?

- 1. The soup is too spicy. I can't eat it.
- 2. The soup is very spicy, but I like it.
- 3. It's very late, but the restaurant is still open.
- 4. We're too late. The restaurant has closed.

15-3 Using Infinitives with Too and Enough			
COMPARE:  (a) That box is <i>too heavy</i> for Bob to lift.  (b) That box is <i>very heavy</i> , but Bob can lift it.	In the speaker's mind, the use of <i>too</i> implies a negative result.  In (a): <i>too heavy</i> = It is <i>impossible</i> for Bob to lift that box.  In (b): <i>very heavy</i> = It is <i>possible but difficult</i> for Bob to lift that box.		
<ul> <li>(c) I am strong enough to lift that box. I can lift it.</li> <li>(d) I have enough strength to lift that box.</li> <li>(e) I have strength enough to lift that box.</li> </ul>	Enough follows an adjective, as in (c). Usually enough precedes a noun, as in (d). In formal English, it may follow a noun, as in (e).		

#### Exercise 12. Let's talk. (Chart 15-3)

Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

Part I. Think of a negative result for each sentence. Make negative statements using infinitive phrases.

- 1. That ring is too expensive.
  - → Negative result: I can't buy it. That ring is too expensive for me to buy.
- 2. I'm too tired.
  - → Negative result: I don't want to go to the meeting. I'm too tired to go to the meeting.
- 3. It's too late.
- 4. It's too cold.
- 5. Physics is too difficult.
- 6. I'm too busy.
- 7. My son is too young.
- 8. The mountain cliff is too steep.

**Part II.** Now think of a positive result for each sentence. Make positive statements using infinitive phrases.

- 9. That ring is very expensive, but it isn't too expensive.
  - $\rightarrow$  Positive result: I can buy it. That ring isn't too expensive for me to buy.
- 10. I'm very tired, but I'm not too tired.
- 11. My suitcase is very heavy, but it's not too heavy.
- 12. I'm very busy, but I'm not too busy.

#### **Exercise 13. Let's talk.** (Chart 15-3)

Discuss possible answers to the given questions. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

- 1. What is a child too young to do but an adult old enough to do?
- 2. What is your pocket big enough to hold? What is it too small to hold?
- 3. What do you have enough time to do after class today? Are you too busy to do something you'd like to do or should do?
- 4. Is there enough space in this classroom for 100 people? Or is it too small to hold that many people? How many people is this room big enough to hold comfortably?
- 5. Here's an English saying: "Too many cooks spoil the soup." What do you think it means?
- 6. Do you think it is very important to practice your English? Do you get enough practice? In your opinion, how much practice is enough?
- 7. Is it very difficult or too difficult to learn English?

# Exercise 14. Listening. (Chart 15-3)

Listen to Speaker A. Choose the response that you expect Speaker B to give.

CD 2 Example: You will hear: Oh, no. I spilled the coffee!

You will choose: a. I'm sorry. I didn't fill your cup full enough.

(b.) I'm sorry. I filled your cup too full.

#### SPEAKER B:

- 1. a. Yes. It was too good to eat.
  - b. Yes. It was very good.
- 2. a. No. She's old enough to stay home alone.
  - b. Never. She's too young to stay home alone.
- 3. a. I agree. It can be very difficult at times.
  - b. I agree. It's too difficult.
- 4. a. Really well. They're too clean. Thanks.
  - b. Really well. They're very clean. Thanks.
- 5. a. I know. He shouldn't be driving.
  - b. I know he's very old, but it's okay for him to keep driving.
- 6. a. I guess we don't have enough big envelopes.
  - b. I guess we don't have big enough envelopes.
- **Exercise 15. Grammar and speaking.** (Charts 14-7, 14-8, 14-11, and 15-1 → 15-3) Complete the sentences with your own words. Try to use a gerund or infinitive in each statement. Then work with a partner. Ask him/her to agree or disagree with your statements (and to explain why). Share some of their answers with the class.

	PARTNER A	AGREES?
1. It's important for	yes	no
2. A person should never forget to	yes	no
3. Teachers often advise their students to	yes	no
4. I'm not willing to	yes	no
5. It's too difficult for most people to	yes	no
6. In order to, employees should	yes	no
7. It's easy to	yes	no
8. It's hard to get accustomed to	yes	no

# ☐ Exercise 16. Warm-up. (Chart 15-4)

Choose the correct form of the passive verbs. Reminder: A passive verb is a form of be + the past participle.\* For example, the patient was seen by a specialist.

- 1. The patient appreciated (to be seen | being seen) by a specialist.
- 2. It was important for him (to be seen / being seen) by a specialist.

<sup>\*</sup>See Chart 11-2, p. 213.

13-4 Passive infinitives	s and Gerunds
(a) I didn't expect to be asked to his party.	PASSIVE INFINITIVE: <b>to be</b> + past participle In (a): <b>to be asked</b> is a passive infinitive. The understood by-phrase is by him: I didn't expect to be asked to his party (by him).
(b) I enjoyed being asked to his party.	PASSIVE GERUND: being + past participle In (b): being asked is a passive gerund. The understood by-phrase is by him: I enjoyed being asked to his party (by him).
Exercise 17. Looking at g Complete the sentences with the	
2. Mark also hopes	
	expects to it.
	to it.
	to it, but I probably won't be.
6. Everyone I know wants	to Ann's birthday party.
Exercise 18. Looking at g Complete each sentence with th	rammar. (Chart 15-4) e correct form of the verb in parentheses
1. I don't enjoy (laugh)	peing laughed at by other people.
2. Ryan is a convincing liar. It	t's easy (fool) to be fooled by his lies.
3. Sometimes adolescents comby their parents.	nplain about not (understand)
4. Your compositions are supp	posed (write) in ink.
	lling to help if there is a problem in the office, but she doesn't at home unless there is an emergency.
6. Despite his name, Freddie	Frankenstein has a good chance of (elect)e local school board.
7. You must tell me the truth.	I insist on your (tell) the truth.
8. Don't all of us want (love)	and (need)
by other people?	

0	Exercise 19. Let's talk Agree or disagree with the in small groups, or as a class	following statements and explain your reasons why. Work in pairs,
	<ul><li>2. I didn't like being given</li><li>3. I always expect to be to</li></ul>	a advice by my family and friends. a advice by my family when I was young. ald the absolute and complete truth by everyone at all times. and to an event where there are a lot of famous people.
٦	sentences have the same or	rue for you. Use the same noun to complete each sentence. Do the different meanings?
		·
	2. My	needs cleaning.
	3. My	needs to be cleaned.
15	5-5 Using Gerunds	s or Passive Infinitives Following Need
	I <i>need to paint</i> my house.  John <i>needs to be told</i> the truth.	Usually an infinitive follows <i>need</i> , as in (a) and (b).
(0)	My house peeds pointing	In cortain circumstances, a gorund may follow need, as in (a). In this case, the

15-5 Using Gerunds or Passive Infinitives Following Need			
<ul><li>(a) I need to paint my house.</li><li>(b) John needs to be told the truth.</li></ul>	Usually an infinitive follows <i>need</i> , as in (a) and (b).		
<ul><li>(c) My house needs painting.</li><li>(d) My house needs to be painted.</li></ul>	In certain circumstances, a gerund may follow <i>need</i> , as in (c). In this case, the gerund carries a passive meaning. Usually the situations involve fixing or improving something.  Examples (c) and (d) have the same meaning.		

	ercise 21. Looking at grammar. (Chart 15-5) inplete each sentence with an appropriate form of the verb in parenthe	ses.
1.	The chair is broken. I need (fix) to fix it. The c	chair needs (fix)
	fixing / to be fixed	
2.	The baby's diaper is wet. It needs (change)	
3.	What a mess! This room needs (clean)	_ up. We need
	(clean) it up before the company arrives.	
4.	My shirt is wrinkled. It needs (iron)	
5.	There is a hole in our roof. The roof needs (repair)	·
6.	I have books and papers all over my desk. I need (take)	some time to
	straighten up my desk. It needs (straighten)	_ up.
7.	The apples on the tree are ripe. They need (pick)	
8.	The dog's been digging in the mud. He needs (wash)	

#### Exercise 22. Let's talk. (Chart 15-5)

Look at the picture. What needs doing/to be done?



#### **Exercise 23. Let's talk or write.** (Chart 15-5)

Choose a situation. Think about what needs to be done and make a list of all the tasks. Then talk or write about your list.

#### Situations:

- 1. a student applying to a university
- 2. a parent trying to get young children off to school in the morning
- 3. a group of students planning for an end-of-the-year party
- 4. a person going on vacation to another country for a month
- 5. an engaged couple making plans for a wedding
- 6. a farmer on a large farm in the early morning
- 7. a restaurant owner preparing to open for dinner

# Exercise 24. Warm-up. (Chart 15-6)

See and hear are called "verbs of perception." In other words, they express things that we can perceive (become aware of) through our physical senses. What do you notice about the verb forms following see and hear?

- 1. a. CORRECT: I saw Mr. Reed give something to the boss.
  - b. CORRECT: I saw Mr. Reed giving something to the boss.
  - c. INCORRECT: I saw Mr. Reed to give something to the boss.
- 2. a. CORRECT: I heard Mr. Reed say something to the boss.
  - b. CORRECT: I heard Mr. Reed saying something to the boss.
  - c. INCORRECT: I heard Mr. Reed to say something to the boss.

15-6 Using Verbs of Perception							
<ul> <li>(a) I saw my friend run down the street.</li> <li>(b) I saw my friend running down the street.</li> <li>(c) I heard the rain fall on the roof.</li> <li>(d) I heard the rain falling on the roof.</li> </ul>	Certain verbs of perception are followed by either the simple form* or the -ing form** of a verb.  Examples (a) and (b) have essentially the same meaning, except that the -ing form emphasizes the idea of "while." In (b): I saw my friend while she was running down the street.						
(e) When I walked into the apartment, I <i>heard</i> my roommate <i>singing</i> in the shower.	Sometimes (not always) there is a clear difference between using the simple form or the <i>-ing</i> form.						
(f) I <i>heard</i> a famous opera star <i>sing</i> at the concert last night.	The use of the <i>-ing</i> form gives the idea that an activity is already in progress when it is perceived, as in (e): The singing was in progress when I first heard it.						
	In (f): I heard the singing from beginning to end. It was not in progress when I first heard it.						
Verbs of perception followed by the simple form or the -ing form							
see look at hear notice observe listen to watch	feel smell						
*The simple form of a verb = the infinitive form with  **The -ing form refers to the present participle.	out to. INCORRECT: I saw my friend -to run down the street.						

# Exercise 25. Let's talk. (Chart 15-6)

Describe what you see and hear.

- 1. Ask a classmate to stand up and sit back down. What did you just see him/her do?
- 2. Close your eyes. What do you hear happening right now?
- 3. Ask a classmate to do something. As he/she continues to do this, describe what you see and hear him/her doing.

#### **Exercise 26. Looking at grammar.** (Chart 15-6)

Part I. Complete the sentences with any appropriate verbs. Both the simple form and the -ing form are possible with little or no difference in meaning.

1.	Polly was working in her garden, so she didn't hear the phonering / ringing
2.	I like to listen to the birds when I get up early in the morning.
3.	The guard observed a suspicious-looking person into the bank
4.	There was an earthquake in my hometown last year. It was just a small one, but I could feel the ground
5.	I was almost asleep last night when I suddenly heard someoneon the door.
6.	While I was waiting for my plane, I watched other planes and

Part II. Read each situation. Complete the sentence below it with the verb form that seems better to you. Remember that the -ing form gives the idea that an activity is in progress when it is perceived.

Both the simple form and the -ing form of a verb are grammatically correct, so you can't make a grammar mistake. But a speaker might choose one instead of the other.

SITUATION 1: I smell smoke. Something must be burning.
Do you smell something <u>burning</u> ? I do.
SITUATION 2: The front door slammed. I got up to see if someone had come in.
When I heard the front door, I got up to see if someone had come in.
SITUATION 3: Uncle Ben is in the bedroom. He is snoring.  I know Uncle Ben is in the bedroom because  I can hear him
SITUATION 4: When I walked past the park, some children were playing softball.
When I walked past the park, I saw some children softball.
SITUATION 5: It was graduation day in the auditorium. When the school principal called my name, I walked to the front of the room.
When I heard the school principal my name, I walked to the front of the
auditorium to receive my diploma.
SITUATION 6: I glanced out the window. Adam was walking toward the house. I was surprised.  I was surprised when I saw Adam toward the house.
SITUATION 7: A fly landed on the table. I swatted it with a rolled-up newspaper.
As soon as I saw the fly on the table, I swatted it with a rolled-up newspaper.
SITUATION 8: Someone is calling for help in the distance. I suddenly hear that.
Listen! Do you hear someone for help? I do.

# Exercise 27. Warm-up. (Chart 15-7)

Check  $(\checkmark)$  the sentences that are correct.

- 1. \_\_\_ My parents let me sleep late on weekends.
- 2. \_\_\_ My parents let me to sleep late on weekends.
- 3. \_\_\_ After I wake up, I help them do the chores.
- 4. \_\_\_ After I wake up, I help them to do the chores.

15-7	Using t	he Simple F	Form after Let and Help
(b)   let n	ther <i>lets</i> me <i>di</i> ny friend <i>borro</i> <i>go</i> to a movie.	w my bicycle.	Let is followed by the simple form of a verb, not an infinitive.  INCORRECT: My father lets me -to- drive his car.
` '		ne wash my car. ne to wash my car.	Help is often followed by the simple form of a verb, as in (d).  Although less common, an infinitive is also possible, as in (e).  Both (d) and (e) are correct.
		•	vords. (Chart 15-7) r own words. Use verb phrases.
1.	Don't let m	ne <u>forget to</u>	take my house keys with me.
2.	The teache	r usually lets us _	
3.	Why did yo	ou let your roomn	nate
4.	You should	n't let other peop	le
5.	A stranger	helped the lost ch	nild
6.	It was very	kind of my friend	to help me
7.	Keep work	ing. Don't let me	·
8.	Could you	help me	
Mat	ch the converse ADAM:	Mom, can I go o	descriptions that follow them.
2.		and play. How of	out and play?  a deal. First you clean up your room. Then you can go out does that sound? It needs to be clean before Grandma comes ening. And if you do it now, you can stay out and play until have to come home early to clean your room. Okay?
3.	ADAM: Mrs. Lee: ADAM:	Mom, can I go o Sure, but first yo Okay.	out and play? ou need to clean up your room. Okay?
a.	Mrs. Lee n	onversations: ot Adam to clean nade Adam clean	up his room.

# 15-8 Using Causative Verbs: Make, Have, Get

- (a) I made my brother carry my suitcase.
- (b) I had my brother carry my suitcase.
- (c) I got my brother to carry my suitcase.

#### **Forms**

- X makes Y do something. (simple form)
  X has Y do something. (simple form)
- X gets Y to do something. (infinitive)

Make, have, and get can be used to express the idea that "X" causes "Y" to do something. When they are used as causative verbs, their meanings are similar but not identical.

In (a): My brother had no choice. I insisted that he carry my suitcase.

In (b): My brother carried my suitcase because I asked him to.

In (c): I managed to persuade my brother to carry my suitcase.

#### Causative Make

- (d) Mrs. Lee *made* her son *clean* his room.
- (e) Sad movies make me cry.

Causative *make* is followed by the simple form of a verb, not an infinitive.

INCORRECT: She made him to-clean his room.

*Make* gives the idea that "X" gives "Y" no choice.

In (d): Mrs. Lee's son had no choice.

#### Causative Have

- (f) I had the plumber repair the leak.
- (g) Jane had the waiter bring her some tea.

Causative *have* is followed by the simple form of a verb, not an infinitive.

INCORRECT: I had him to repair the leak.

*Have* gives the idea that "X" requests "Y" to do something. In (f): The plumber repaired the leak because I asked him to.

#### Causative Get

- (h) The students got the teacher to dismiss class early.
- Jack got his friends to play soccer with him after school.

Causative get is followed by an infinitive.

**Get** gives the idea that "X" **persuades** "Y" to do something. In (h): The students managed to persuade the teacher to let them leave early.

#### **Passive Causatives**

- (j) I had my watch repaired (by someone).
- (k) I got my watch repaired (by someone).

The past participle is used after *have* and *get* to give a passive meaning. In this case, there is usually little or no difference in meaning between *have* and *get*.

In (i) and (k): I caused my watch to be repaired by someone.

# **Exercise 30. Looking at grammar.** (Chart 15-8)

Choose the meaning that is closest to the meaning of the verb in **boldface**.

- 1. The teacher had her class write a composition.
  - a. gave them no choice
- b. persuaded them
- c. requested them to do this
- 2. Mrs. Wilson made the children wash their hands before dinner.
  - a. gave them no choice
- b. persuaded them
- c. requested them to do this
- 3. Kostas got some neighborhood kids to help him clean out his garage.
  - a. gave them no choice
- b. persuaded them
- c. requested them to do this

	4.	My boss made me redo my report because he wasn't satisfied with it.
		a. gave me no choice b. persuaded me c. requested me to do this
	5.	I got Rosa to lend me some lunch money.
		a. gave her no choice b. persuaded her c. requested her to do this
	6.	The police officer had the driver get out of his car.
		a. gave him no choice b. persuaded him c. requested him to do this
3	Exe	rcise 31. Looking at grammar. (Chart 15-8)
	Con	inplete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.
	1.	I made my son (wash) wash the windows before he could go outside to play.
	2.	Mrs. Crane had her house (paint)painted
	3.	I went to the bank to have a check (cash)
	4.	Tom had a bad headache yesterday, so he got his twin brother, Tim, (go)
		to class for him. The teacher didn't know the difference.
	5.	When Scott went shopping, he found a jacket that he
		really liked. After he had the sleeves (shorten)
		, it fit him perfectly.
	6.	When my laptop stopped working, I took it to the
		computer store to have it $(fix)$
		computer store to have it (yiii)
	7.	Peeling onions always makes me (cry)
	8.	Tom Sawyer was supposed to paint the fence, but he
		didn't want to do it. He was a very clever boy. Somehow he got his friends (do)
		it for him.
	9.	We had a professional photographer (take) pictures of everyone at
		the wedding. We had over 500 pictures (take)
j	Thi	ercise 32. Let's talk or write. (Chart 15-8) hk about the shopping area nearest your home. What can people do there? Make ences with can and can't.
	At ti	he shopping area nearest my home, people can/can't get
	1.	car \ fix 4. laundry \ do 7. shoes \ repair
		hair \ cut 5. picture \ take 8. clothes \ dry-clean
	3.	checks \ cash 6. blood pressure \ check 9. money \ exchange

## Exercise 33. Let's talk or write. (Chart 15-8)

Ask and answer the questions. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

- 1. What do children sometimes try to **get** their parents **to do** (perhaps at a toy store or grocery store)?
- 2. What do bosses sometimes make their employees do?
- 3. What does our teacher sometimes have us do?
- 4. Do teachers usually **let** their students **leave** the classroom whenever they want to? What kinds of things do teacher usually not **let** their students **do** inside a classroom?
- 5. What do your classmates (or friends) sometimes help you do?

### (Change roles if working in pairs.)

- 6. What didn't your parents let you do when you were a child?
- 7. Will you **let** your children **do** those things? (Or, if you're a parent, do you **let** your children **do** those things?)
- 8. Did your parents **make** you **do** certain things when you were a child?
- 9. What do you sometimes have the server at a restaurant do?
- 10. What do you sometimes get your friends to do?

# **Exercise 34. Check your knowledge.** (Chapter 15)

Correct the errors.

- 1. My parents made me to promise to write them once a week.
- 2. I asked my roommate to let me to use his shoe polish.
- 3. I heard a car door to open and closing.
- 4. I had my friend to lend me his car.
- 5. You should visit my country. It is too beautiful.
- 6. I went to the college bookstore for getting my books for the new term.
- 7. One of our fights ended up with me having to sent to the hospital for getting stitches.
- 8. Lilly deserves to be tell the truth about what happened last night.
- 9. Barbara always makes me laughing. She has a great sense of humor.
- 10. Stop telling me what to do! Let me to make up my own mind.
- 11. I went to the pharmacy for having my prescription to be filled.
- 12. You shouldn't let children playing with matches.
- 13. When Shelley needed a passport photo, she had her picture taking by a professional photographer.

- 14. I've finally assembled enough information for beginning writing my research paper.
- 15. Omar is at the park right now. He is sit on a park bench watch the ducks swimming in the pond. The sad expression on his face makes me to feel sorry for him.
- 16. The music director tapped his baton for beginning the rehearsal.

Exercise 35.	<b>Looking</b> at	grammar.	(Chapters	14 and	15)
Choose the cor	rect completion	ns			

	1.	My cousins	helped me_	into my new	apartment
--	----	------------	------------	-------------	-----------

(a.) move

(b.) to move

c. moving

d. being moved

2. It was a hot day, and the work was hard. I could feel sweat \_ down my back.

a. trickle

b. to trickle

c. trickling

d. trickled

3. You can lead a horse to water, but you can't make him \_\_\_

a. drink

b. to drink

c. drinking

d. to be drunk



4.	As he contemplated the meaning of life, Edward stood on the beach out of	over
	the ocean.	

a. look

b. to look

c. looking

d. looked

5. He's a terrific soccer player! Did you see him \_\_\_\_ that goal?

a. make

b. to make

c. making

d. made

6. We spent the entire class period \_\_\_\_\_ about the revolution.

b. to talk

c. talking

d. being talked

7. Only seven people applied for the sales job, so Maleek has a good chance of \_\_\_\_\_ for an interview.

a. chosen

b. being chosen

c. to be chosen

d. to choose

		a. told			c. to be told	i	d. telling
	9.	I was getting sleep	y, so I had	my friend	the car.		
		a. drive	b. being	g driven	c. to be driv	ven (	d. to drive
	10.	The witness to the the newspaper.	murder w	anted her na	me kept secret. Sh	ne asked not	in
		a. identify	b. being	g identified	c. to be ide	ntified o	d. to identify
CD 2 Crack 18	Firs	ercise 36. Readi t, read the paragrap and, listen to the pa	h and try 1	to complete	the sentences using		the list.
		to be understood able to read		solve	to read being		
			An Issu	ie in Health	Care: Illiteracy		
	A	according to some es	stimates, w	ell over half	of the people in th	e world are fur	nctionally
	illite	erate. This means th	ey are una	ble to perfor	m everyday tasks l	secause they ca	an't read,
	und	erstand, and respon	d appropri	ately to info	mation. One of the	ne problems th	is creates in
		th care is that millio				dir	
		licine bottles or pac			1	a paren	
					-		
		d and being unable		9			clearly
		now that it is impor				4	Clearly
	One	e solution is pictures		·		g today	
	con	yey health-care infor		is problem b	y6		_ pictures to
		ercise 37. Looking	9	•			
	1.	My children enjoy something special		being allow	ved to stay	up late when	there's
	2.	I couldn't get to sl			ong time I just lay	in bed (think)	

8 If you hear any news, I want immediately

3.	Jacob's at an awkward age. He's o	ld enough (have)	adult problems
	but too young (know)	how (handle)	them.
4.	I don't anticipate (have)	any difficulties	(adjust)
	to a different culture when I go ab	road.	
5.	We sat in his kitchen (sip)	very hot, si	trong tea and (eat)
	pastries fr		
6.	I don't like ( force) the room (st		A STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR
	whenever my roommate feels like		
	a party.		
7.	Let's (have) us for dinne		
8.	Do you know that your co-workers	s complain about your* ( <i>cor</i>	ne)
	late to wo	rk and (leave)	early?
9.	Fish don't use their teeth for (cheu	v)	They use them for (grab)
	, (hold)	, or (te	ear)
	Most fish (swallow)	their prey whole.	
10.	It is the ancient task of the best ar	tists among us (force)	us (use)
	our ability ( fa	<i>gel</i> ) an	d (share)
	emotions.		
11.	Traffic has become too heavy for t	he Steinbergs (commute)	
	easily to their jobs in the city from		
	to an apar	rtment in the city (be)	closer to
	their work. Both of them hate the	long commute. They want	(spend)
	more time (do)	things they really enjoy	y (do)
	in their free time rather than being	tied up on the highway du	ring rush hour.

<sup>\*</sup>In formal English, a possessive adjective (e.g., your coming) is used to modify a gerund. In informal English, the object form of a pronoun is frequently used (you coming).

1		ercise 38. Looking at grammar. (Chapters 14 and 15) applete each sentence with the correct form of the verb in parentheses.		
		I was tired, so I just watched them (play) volleyball instead	of	
		(join) them.		
	2.	Emily stopped her car ( <i>let</i> ) a black cat ( <i>run</i> ) acrostreet.	oss th	e
	3.	I'm tired. I wouldn't mind just (stay) home tonight and (general to bed early.	t)	
	4.	I can't seem (get) rid of the cockroaches in my apartment. Every see them (run) all over my kitchen counters. It drives me cronsidering (have) the whole apartment (spray) by a professional pest control expert.	_	
	5.	Last week I was sick with the flu. It made me (feel) awful. I did enough energy (get) out of bed. I just lay there (feel) sorry for myself. When my father heard me (sneeze) and (cough), he opened my bedroom door (ask)  I needed anything. I was really happy to see his kind and caring face, but there we anything he could do to make the flu (go) away.	m	ne i
D 2 ck 19	Par book  1. 2.	ercise 39. Let's talk and listen. (Chapters 14 and 15)  t I. Answer these questions. Then listen to the lecture on lightning storms with yok closed.  Have you ever been in a lightning storm?  How did you protect yourself?		
	Par	t II. Open your book and read the statements. Circle "T" for true and "F" for fal		
	1.	1	T	F
	2.	It's advisable to make yourself as small as possible when a storm is nearby.	T	F
	3.	If you are lucky enough to be near a car during a storm, get inside it.	T	F
	4.	Few lightning deaths occur after a storm has passed.	Т	F

Part III. Listen to the lecture again. Complete the sentences with the words you hear.

# Protecting Yourself in a Lightning Storm

Lightning storms ca	n occur suddenly and without warn	ing. It's important	
	safe if you're outside	when a storm begins.	Some people
•	open shelters like picnic areas	2	themselves.
They are	that this can be a fata	l mistake. Tall objects	are
4	lightning, so when you are out	in the open, you shoul	d try
	yourself as small as possible	6	
	hance that a lightning bolt will strik		7
a depression in the gro	und to hide in, like a hole or a ditch	, is even better.	'
8	a building is safer than	,	but it's not
without dangers.	10	away from doors an	d windows. If
you're talking on a pho	ne with a cord, hang up. Lightning		
phone cord and strike t	the person holding the phone. Even	TVs can conduct ligh	tning through
the cable or antenna, so	o it's a good idea	away from the tele	vision. It's also
inadvisable	a shower or bath sir	nce plumbing can cond	duct electricity
	afe are cars? Surprisingly, the inside		
metal roof, but	any part of the	car that leads to the ou	itside.
There's a 30/30 rule	regarding lightning. As soon as you	ı see lightning,	14
the seconds until you h	ear thunder. If you hear thunder be	efore you reach 30, thi	
15	shelter immediately. Additional	lly, even if the storm	
16	, you want	in a protected place f	or 30 minutes
	sounds of thunder or have seen the l		
lightning deaths, in fac-	t more than half in the United State	s, occur after a storm	has passed.

# Exercise 1. Warm-up. (Chart 16-1)

Identify the parts of speech of the words in blue and the word that connects them. What do you notice about the words in blue?

	Part of speech	Connective
1. The old man is extremely kind and generous.	adjective	and
2. He received a book and a sweater for his birthday.		
3. She spoke angrily and bitterly about the war.		
4. In my spare time, I enjoy reading novels or watching television.		
5. He will leave early but arrive late.		

# 16-1 Parallel Structure

One use of a conjunction is to connect words or phrases that have the same grammatical function in a sentence. This use of conjunctions is called "parallel structure." The conjunctions used in this pattern are and, but, or, and nor. These words are called "coordinating conjunctions."

- (a) Steve and his friend are coming to dinner.
- (b) Susan raised her hand and snapped her fingers.
- (c) He is waving his arms and (is) shouting at us.
- (d) These shoes are old but comfortable.
- (e) He wants to watch TV or (to) listen to some music.
- In (a): noun + and + noun
- In (b): verb + and + verb
- In (c): verb + and + verb (The second auxiliary may be omitted if it is the same as the first auxiliary.)
- In (d): adjective + but + adjective
- In (e): infinitive + or + infinitive (The second to is usually
- omitted.)

# Exercise 2. Looking at grammar. (Chart 16-1)

Choose the correct completions.

- 1. My roommate is friendly and
  - (a.) helpful
- (b.) kind

c. kindness

- 2. Jack opened the window and
  - a. turn on the fan
- b. turning on the fan
- c. turned on the fan

	3.	a. generous b. generosity c. intelligence	
	4.	Kate was listening to the radio and at the same time.  a. study  b. studying  c. studies	
	5.	I was tired and after our long hike.  a. hungry b. hunger c. thirsty	
	6.	Everyone had a good time at the party and home happy.  a. go  b. went  c. going	
	7.	No one wanted to stay after the party and up.  a. clean b. cleaning c. cleaned	
	8.	No one enjoys staying and up at the end of a party.  a. clean b. cleaning c. cleaned	
1		rcise 3. Looking at grammar. (Chart 16-1) uplete each sentence with one word that gives the same idea as the words in parentheses.	
	1.	Lisa was saddened and <u>upset</u> by the news.  (her feelings were upset)	
	2.	We enjoy fish and for dinner.  (we eat vegetables)	
	3.	The clerk spoke impatiently and when I asked for help.  (her words were rude)	
	4.	Mr. Evans is very old but (has a lot of strength)	
	5.	The driver ran a stop sign and down the street.  (he was driving at a high speed)	
1		rcise 4. Warm-up. (Chart 16-2) ck ( / ) the sentences that are correctly punctuated. Notice the use of commas.	
	1.	Oranges, and strawberries are high in vitamin C. (not correct)	
	2.	Oranges and strawberries are high in vitamin C.	
	3.	Oranges, strawberries, and broccoli are high in vitamin C.	
	4.	Oranges, strawberries and broccoli are high in vitamin C.	
	5.	Oranges strawberries and broccoli are high in vitamin C.	
	6.	Oranges, strawberries, and broccoli, are high in vitamin C.	



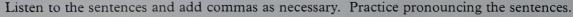
# (a) Steve and Joe are in class. (b) INCORRECT PUNCTUATION: Steve, and Joe are in class. (c) Steve, Joe and Rita are in class. (d) Steve, Joe, and Rita are in class. (e) Steve, Joe, Rita, Jan and Kim are in class. (e) Steve, Joe, Rita, Jan and Kim are in class.

NOTE: A comma often represents a pause in speech.

<sup>\*</sup>The purpose of punctuation is to make writing clear for readers. This chart and others in this chapter describe the usual use of commas in parallel structures. Sometimes commas are required according to convention (i.e., the expected use by educated language users). Sometimes use of commas is a stylistic choice made by the experienced writer.



# Exercise 5. Listening and punctuation. (Chart 16-2)





- 1. My bedroom has a bed, a desk (optional comma), and a lamp.
- 2. The price of the meal includes a salad a main dish and dessert.
- 3. The price of the meal includes a salad and a main dish.
- 4. Elias waited for his son wife and daughter.
- 5. Elias waited for his son's wife and daughter.
- 6. Susan raised her hand snapped her fingers and asked a question.
- 7. Red yellow gold and olive green are the main colors in the fabric.
- 8. I love films full of action adventure and suspense.
- 9. I love action and adventure films.

(f) Steve, Joe, Rita, Jan, and Kim are in class.

10. "Travel is fatal to prejudice bigotry and narrow-mindedness." —Mark Twain\*

# Exercise 6. Looking at grammar. (Charts 16-1 and 16-2)

Parallel structure makes repeating the same words unnecessary. Cross out the words that are unnecessary, and then combine the two given sentences into one concise sentence that contains parallel structure.

- 1. Molly opened the door. -Molly greeted her guests.
  - → Molly opened the door **and** greeted her guests.
- 2. Molly is opening the door. Molly is greeting her guests.
- 3. Molly will open the door. Molly will greet her guests.
- 4. Linda is kind. Linda is generous. Linda is trustworthy.
- 5. Please try to speak more loudly. Please try to speak more clearly.

<sup>\*</sup>Mark Twain (1835-1910) is a well-known American writer and humorist. His most famous novel is *The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn*. He is also famous for his witty quotations.

- 6. He gave her flowers on Sunday. He gave her candy on Monday. He gave her a ring on Tuesday.
- 7. He decided to quit school. He decided to go to California. He decided to find a job.
- 8. I am looking forward to going to Italy. I am looking forward to eating wonderful pasta every
- 9. The boy was old enough to work. The boy was old enough to earn some money.
- 10. I should have finished my homework. Or I should have cleaned up my room.
- 11. I like coffee. I do not like tea.
  - $\rightarrow$  I like coffee **but** not tea.
- 12. I have met his mother. I have not met his father.
- 13. Jake would like to live in Puerto Rico. He would not like to live in Iceland.



# Exercise 7. Looking at grammar. (Charts 16-1 and 16-2)

First, complete the unfinished sentence in each group. Second, combine the sentences into one concise sentence that contains parallel structure.

1.	The country lane was narrow. The country lane was steep.
	The country lane was
	The country lane was narrow,steep. and muddy
2.	I dislike living in a city because of the air pollution. I dislike living in a city because of the crime.
	I dislike living in a city because of
	I dislike living in a city because of the air pollution,
3.	Hawaii has a warm climate. Hawaii has beautiful beaches. Hawaii has many interesting tropical trees.
	Hawaii has many interesting tropical
	Hawaii has a warm climate, beautiful beaches,
4.	Mary Hart would make a good president because she works effectively with others.  Mary Hart would make a good president because she has a reputation for integrity.  Mary Hart would make a good president because she has a reputation for independent thinking.
	Mary Hart would make a good president because she
	Mary Hart would make a good president because she works effectively with others,

٦	Con	ercise 8. Looking at grammar.  unplete the sentences with your own wo	(Charts 16-1 and 16-2) ords. Use parallel structure.				
	1.	Judge Holmes served the people of th	is country with fairness, ability, and _	honesty .			
	2.	Ms. Garcia has proven herself to be a	hard-working, responsible, and				
		manager.					
	3.	The professor walked through the doc	or and				
	4.	I was listening to music and					
		when I heard a knock at the door.					
	5.	I get up at seven every morning, eat a light breakfast, and					
	6.		and attending conce	erts in the park			
		are two of the things my wife and I like to do on summer weekends.					
	7.	Our whole family enjoys camping. We	e especially enjoy fishing in mountain	streams and			
	1.	A good friend needs to be	and	<del></del> ,			
	2.	English teachers should have these qu	aalities:	<del></del> ,			
		, and	<del></del>				
	3.	Parents need to	and	<u> </u>			
	4.	Doctors should	or	<u> </u>			
	5.	,	, and				
		are three easy ways for me to relax at	the end of the day.				
	6.	In my free time, I like to	,,	, and			
	7.	Three activities I don't enjoy are		, and			
	8.		, and	are difficult			
		subjects for me.					

### Exercise 10. Check your knowledge. (Charts 16-1 and 16-2)

Correct the errors. All of the sentences are adapted from student writing.

- 1. By obeying the speed limit, we can save energy, lives, and it costs us less.
- 2. My home offers me a feeling of security, warm, and love.
- 3. The pioneers hoped to clear away the forest and planting crops.
- 4. When I refused to help Alice, she became very angry and shout at me.
- 5. When Nadia moved, she had to rent an apartment, make new friends, and to find a job.
- 6. All plants need light, to have a suitable climate, and an ample supply of water and minerals from the soil.
- 7. Slowly and being cautious, the firefighter climbed the burned staircase.
- 8. On my vacation, I lost a suitcase, broke my glasses, and I missed my flight home.
- 9. With their keen sight, fine hearing, and they have a refined sense of smell, wolves hunt elk, deer, moose, and caribou.
- 10. When Anna moved, she had to rent an apartment, make new friends, and to find a job.
- 11. The Indian cobra snake and the king cobra use poison from their fangs in two ways: by injecting it directly into their prey or they spit it into the eyes of the victim.



# Exercise 11. Warm-up. (Chart 16-3)

What do you notice about the subject-verb agreement in each pair of sentences?

- 1. a. Either my brother or my sister is going to tutor me in science.
  - b. Either my brother or my sisters are going to tutor me in science.
- 2. a. Neither my brother nor my sister is a teacher.
  - b. Neither my brother nor my sisters are teachers.
- 3. a. Not only my brother but also my sister has a doctorate in science.
  - b. Not only my brother but also my sisters have doctorates in science.

16-3	Paired Conjunctions: Both And; Not Only	But Also;
	Either Or; Neither Nor	

(a)	Both my mother and my sister are here.	Two subjects connected by <b>both and</b> take a plural verb, as in (a).
(b) (c) (d) (e)	Not only my mother but also my sister is here.  Not only my sister but also my parents are here.  Neither my mother nor my sister is here.  Neither my sister nor my parents are here.	When two subjects are connected by <i>not onlybut also</i> , <i>eitheror</i> , or <i>neithernor</i> , the subject that is closer to the verb determines whether the verb is singular or plural.
(f) (g) (h)	The research project will take <i>both</i> time <i>and</i> money.  Sue saw not only a fox in the woods but (also) a bear.  I'll take either chemistry or physics next quarter.	Notice the parallel structure in the examples. The same grammatical form should follow each part of the paired conjunctions.*
(i) (i)	That book is <i>neither</i> interesting <i>nor</i> accurate.	In (f): both + noun + and + noun In (g): not only + noun + but also + noun In (h): either + noun + or + noun In (i): neither + adjective + nor + adjective  NOTE: Paired conjuctions are usually used for emphasis; they draw attention to both parts of the parallel structure.

<b>Exercise</b>	12.	Looking	at	grammar.	(Chart	16-3)
					(	

Complete the sentences with is/are.

- 1. Both the teacher and the student <u>are</u> here.
- 2. Neither the teacher nor the student \_\_\_\_\_ here.
- 3. Not only the teacher but also the student \_\_\_\_\_ here.
- 4. Not only the teacher but also the students \_\_\_\_\_ here.
- 5. Either the students or the teacher \_\_\_\_\_ planning to come.
- 6. Either the teacher or the students \_\_\_\_\_ planning to come.
- 7. Both the students and the teachers \_\_\_\_\_ planning to come.
- 8. Both the students and the teacher \_\_\_\_\_ planning to come.

# Exercise 13. Looking at grammar. (Chart 16-3)

Answer the questions. Use paired conjunctions. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

### Part I. Use both ... and.

- 1. You've met his father. Have you met his mother?
  - → Yes. I've met both his father and his mother.
- 2. The driver was injured in the accident. Was the passenger injured in the accident?
- 3. Wheat is grown in Kansas. Is corn grown in Kansas?
- 4. The city suffers from air pollution. Does it suffer from water pollution?

<sup>\*</sup>Paired conjunctions are also called "correlative conjunctions."

### Part II. Use not only ... but also.

- 5. I know you are studying math. Are you studying chemistry too?
  - → Yes. I'm studying not only math but also chemistry.
- 6. I know his cousin is living with him. Is his mother-in-law living with him too?
- 7. I know you lost your wallet. Did you lose your keys too?
- 8. I know she goes to school. Does she have a full-time job too?

### Part III. Use either ... or.

- 9. Omar has your book, or Rosa has your book. Is that right?
  - → Yes. Either Omar or Rosa has my book.
- 10. You're going to give your friend a book for her birthday, or you're going to give her some jewelry. Is that right?
- 11. Your sister will meet you at the airport, or your brother will meet you there. Right?
- 12. They can go swimming, or they can play tennis. Is that right?

### Part IV. Use neither ... nor.

- 13. He doesn't like coffee. Does he like tea?
  - $\rightarrow$  No. He likes neither coffee nor tea.
- 14. Her husband doesn't speak English. Do her children speak English?
- 15. They don't have a refrigerator for their new apartment. Do they have a stove?
- 16. The result wasn't good. Was the result bad?

# **Exercise 14. Listening.** (Chart 16-3)

Choose the sentence (a. or b.) that has the same meaning as the sentence you hear.

Example: You will hear:

Sarah is working on both a degree in biology and a degree in

chemistry.

- You will choose: a. Sarah is working on only one degree.
  - (b.) Sarah is working on two degrees.
- 1. a. Ben will call Mary and Bob.
  - b. Ben will call one of them but not both.
- 2. a. My mother and my father talked to my teacher.
  - b. Either my mother or my father talked to my teacher.
- 3. a. Simon saw both a whale and a dolphin.
  - b. Simon didn't see a whale, but he did see a dolphin.
- 4. a. Our neighborhood had electricity but not water.
  - b. Our neighborhood didn't have electricity or water.
- 5. a. We will have two teachers today.
  - b. We will have one teacher today.

# Exercise 15. Looking at grammar. (Chart 16-3)

Combine each pair of sentences into one new sentence with parallel structure. Use both ... and; not only ... but also; either ... or; neither ... nor.

- 1. He does not have a pen. He does not have paper.
  - → He has neither a pen nor paper.
- 2. You can have tea, or you can have coffee.
  - → You can have tea or coffee.
- 3. Tanya enjoys horseback riding. Beth enjoys horseback riding.
- 4. Arthur is not in class today. Ricardo is not in class today.
- 5. Arthur is absent. Ricardo is absent.
- 6. We can fix dinner for them here, or we can take them to a restaurant.
- 7. The leopard faces extinction. The tiger faces extinction.
- 8. The library doesn't have the book I need. The bookstore doesn't have the book I need.
- 9. We could fly, or we could take the train.
- 10. The hospital will not confirm the story. The hospital will not deny the story.
- 11. Coal is an irreplaceable natural resource. Oil is an irreplaceable natural resource.
- 12. Her roommates don't know where she is. Her brother doesn't know where she is.

# Exercise 16. Listening. (Charts $16-1 \rightarrow 16-3$ )

CD 2 Track 22

Part I. Answer these questions. Then listen to the short lecture on bats with your book closed.

- 1. Do you ever see bats?
- 2. Are you afraid of them?

*Part II.* Open your book. Choose the correct completions. Then listen again and check your answers.

### Bats

- (1) What do people in your country think of bats? Are they mean and scary creatures, or are they symbols of both happiness and (*luck*), *lucky*)?
- (2) In Western countries, many people have an unreasoned fear of bats. According to scientist Dr. Sharon Horowitz, bats are not only (harm, harmless) but also (benefit, beneficial) mammals. "When I was a child, I believed that a bat would attack me and (tangle, tangled) itself in my hair. Now I know better," said Dr. Horowitz.
- (3) Contrary to popular Western myths, bats do not (attack, attacking) humans. Although a few bats may have diseases, they are not major carriers of rabies or other frightening diseases. Bats help natural plant life by pollinating plants, spreading seeds, and (to eat, eating) insects. If you get rid of bats that eat overripe fruit, then fruit flies can flourish and (destroy, destruction) the fruit industry.
- (4) According to Dr. Horowitz, bats are both gentle and (train, trainable) pets. Not many people, however, own or train bats, and bats themselves prefer to avoid people.

### Exercise 17. Warm-up. (Chart 16-4)

Check (1) the items with correct punctuation. NOTE: Only one of the items has incorrect punctuation.

- 1. \_\_\_ Thunder clouds rolled by. Flashes of lightning lit the sky.
- 2. \_\_\_ Thunder clouds rolled by, flashes of lightning lit the sky.
- 3. \_\_\_\_ Thunder clouds rolled by, and flashes of lightning lit the sky.
- 4. \_\_\_ Thunder clouds rolled by. And flashes of lightning lit the sky.

# Separating Independent Clauses with Periods; Connecting Them with And and But

(	a)	It was raining hard.	There was a strong wind.

(b) INCORRECT PUNCTUATION: It was raining hard, there was a strong wind.

Example (a) contains two independent clauses (i.e., two complete sentences).

A period,\* NOT A COMMA, is used to separate two independent clauses. The punctuation error in (b) is called a "run-on sentence."

In spoken English, a pause, slightly longer than a pause for a comma, separates the two sentences.

- (c) It was raining hard, and there was a strong wind.
- (d) It was raining hard. And there was a strong wind.
- (e) It was raining hard and there was a strong wind.
- (f) It was late, but he didn't care.
- (g) It was late. But he didn't care.

And and but (coordinating conjunctions) are often used to connect two independent clauses.

PUNCTUATION:

Usually a comma immediately precedes the conjunction, as in (c) and (f).

In informal writing, a writer might choose to begin a sentence with a conjunction, as in (d) and (g).

In a very short sentence, a writer might choose to omit the comma in front of and, as in (e). (Omitting the comma in front of but is rare.)

# Exercise 18. Looking at grammar. (Chart 16-4)

Punctuate the sentences by adding commas and periods. Do not add any words. Add capitalization as necessary.

- 1. The boys walked the girls ran.
  - → The boys walked. The girls ran.
- 2. The boys walked and the girls ran.
- 3. The teacher lectured the students took notes.
- 4. The teacher lectured and the students took notes.
- 5. Elena came to the meeting but Pedro staved home.
- 6. Elena came to the meeting her brother stayed home.

<sup>\*</sup>In British English, a period is called a "full stop."

# Exercise 19. Listening and grammar. (Chart 16-4)



Listen to the sentences, paying special attention to pauses. Add periods and commas where you hear pauses. Add capitalization as necessary.

- 1. Both Jamal and I had many errands to do yesterday. Jamal had to go to the post office and the bookstore I had to go to the post office the travel agency and the bank.
- 2. Roberto slapped his hand on his desk in frustration he had failed another examination and had ruined his chances for a passing grade in the course.
- 3. When Alex got home he took off his coat and tie threw his briefcase on the kitchen table and opened the refrigerator looking for something to eat Ann found him sitting at the kitchen table when she got home.\*
- 4. When Tara went downtown yesterday she bought birthday presents for her children shopped for clothes and saw a movie at the theater it was a busy day but she felt fine because it ended on a relaxing note.
- 5. It was a wonderful picnic the children waded in the stream collected rocks and insects and flew kites the teenagers played an enthusiastic game of baseball the adults busied themselves preparing the food supervising the children and playing some volleyball.

# Exercise 20. Looking at grammar. (Charts 16-2 and 16-4)

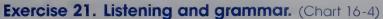
Punctuate the sentences by adding commas and periods. Do not add any words. Add capitalization as necessary.

- 1. Janice entered the room and looked around she knew no one.
- 2. A thermometer is used to measure temperature a barometer measures air pressure.
- 3. Derek made many promises but he had no intention of keeping them.
- 4. The earthquake was devastating tall buildings crumbled and fell to the ground.
- 5. Birds have certain characteristics in common they have feathers wings and a beak with no teeth birds lay hard-shelled eggs and their offspring are dependent on parental care for an extended period after birth.
- 6. The ancient Egyptians had good dentists archeologists have found mummies that had gold fillings in their teeth.

Examples: When the phone rang, I answered it. (comma used)

I answered the phone when it rang. (no comma used)

<sup>\*</sup> See Chart 17-1, p. 365, for the punctuation of adverb clauses. Commas are used when the adverb clause comes before the main clause but not when it comes after the main clause.





Part I. Read the passage on butterflies quickly. How does the lack of punctuation and capitalization make a difference in how easily you can read the passage?



### Butterflies

A butterfly is a marvel it begins as an ugly caterpillar and turns into a work of art the sight of a butterfly floating from flower to flower on a warm, sunny day brightens anyone's heart a butterfly is a charming and gentle creature caterpillars eat plants and cause damage to some crops but adult butterflies feed principally on nectar from flowers and do not cause any harm when cold weather comes some butterflies travel great distances to reach tropical climates they can be found on every continent except Antarctica because they are so colorful and beautiful butterflies are admired throughout the world.

**Part II.** Listen to the passage with your book open. Listen for pauses and add periods, commas, and capital letters as necessary. Then read the passage again and make sure it is punctuated the way you think is best.

**Part III.** Listen to the passage one more time to see if your punctuation reflects the spoken pauses.

# Exercise 22. Let's read and talk. (Chapter 16)

Part I. Read the paragraph about Dr. Martin Luther King, Jr.

Martin Luther King, Jr., was the leader of the 1960s civil rights movement in the United States that sought to end segregation and racial discrimination against African-Americans. In 1964, Dr. King became the youngest person to receive the Nobel Peace Prize. He was assassinated in 1968, but his powerful and inspiring words still live.



Part II. Underline the parallel structures that you find in these quotes from the speeches and writings of Dr. Martin Luther King, Jr. Discuss the ideas. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

- 1. "The hope of a secure and livable world lies with disciplined nonconformists who are dedicated to justice, peace and brotherhood."
- 2. "The ultimate measure of a man is not where he stands in moments of comfort and convenience, but where he stands at times of challenge and controversy."
- 3. "In the end, we will remember not the words of our enemies, but the silence of our friends."
- 4. "Nonviolence is the answer to the crucial political and moral question of our time: the need for mankind to overcome oppression and violence without resorting to oppression and violence. Mankind must evolve for all human conflict a method which rejects revenge, aggression, and retaliation. The foundation of such a method is love."

# Exercise 23. Let's write. (Chapter 16)

Choose one of the given topics. Write two versions of the same paragraph. The first version should be a draft in which you get your ideas on paper. Then the second version should be a "tightened" revision of the first. Look for places where two or three sentences can be combined into one by using parallel structure. In the second version, use as few words as possible and still communicate your meaning.

### Topics:

- 1. Give a physical description of your place of residence (apartment, dorm room, etc.)
- 2. Describe the characteristics and activities of a successful student.
- 3. Give your reader directions for making a particular food dish.

### Example:

First Draft:

You'll need several ingredients to make spaghetti sauce. You'll need some ground beef. Probably about one pound of ground beef is enough. You should also have an onion. If the onions are small, you should use two. Also, find a green pepper and put it in the sauce. Of course, you will also need some tomato sauce or tomatoes.

Revision:

To make spaghetti sauce, you will need one pound of ground beef, one large or two small onions, a green pepper, and some tomato sauce or tomatoes.



# Exercise 1. Warm-up. (Chart 17-1)

The words in blue are adverb clauses. What do you notice about their sentence placement and punctuation?

- 1. He closed the window when it got windy.
- 2. Because it got windy, he closed the window.
- 3. Even though it was windy, he opened the window.
- 4. Would you please close the window if it gets windy?

# Introduction

Adverb clauses are used to show relationships between ideas. They show relationships of time, cause and effect, contrast, and condition.

(a) (b)	when the phone rang, the baby woke up. The baby woke up when the phone rang.	In (a) and (b): when the phone rang is an adverb clause of time. Examples (a) and (b) have the same meaning.  PUNCTUATION:  When an adverb clause precedes a main clause, as in (a), a comma is used to separate the clauses.  When the adverb clause follows, as in (b), usually no comma is used.
(c) (d)	Because he was sleepy, he went to bed.  He went to bed because he was sleepy.	In (c) and (d), <i>because</i> introduces an adverb clause that shows a cause-and-effect relationship.
(e)	INCORRECT PUNCTUATION: When we were in New York. We saw several plays.	Adverb clauses are dependent clauses. They cannot stand alone as a sentence in written English. They must be connected to a main (or independent) clause.*
(f)	INCORRECT PUNCTUATION: He went to bed. Because he was sleepy.	Simolog to a man (S. maspondon) diago.

TIM	1E	CAUSE AND EFFECT	CONTRAST	CONDITION
after before	by the time (that)	because now that	even though although	if unless
when	as/so long as	since	though	only if
while as	whenever every time (that)		DIRECT CONTRAST	whether or not even if
as soon as since	the first time (that) the last time (that)		while	in case
until	the next time (that)	12 17 11 11		

<sup>\*</sup>See Chart 13-1, p. 270, for the definition of dependent and independent clauses.

<sup>\*\*</sup>Words that introduce adverb clauses are called "subordinating conjunctions."

# Exercise 2. Looking at grammar. (Chart 17-1)

Check  $(\checkmark)$  the sentences that are grammatically complete and contain the correct punctuation.

- 1. <u>✓</u> I woke up.
- 2. \_\_\_ When the door slammed.
- 3. \_\_\_\_ I woke up. When the door slammed.
- 4. \_\_\_\_ I woke up when the door slammed.
- 5. \_\_\_ When the door slammed, I woke up.
- 6. \_\_\_\_ The door slammed. I woke up.
- 7. \_\_\_\_ As soon as you finish dinner, you will need to pick up Andy at work.
- 8. \_\_\_ The first time I saw you at the school dance last February.
- 9. \_\_\_\_ Every time the phone rings and I answer it.
- 10. \_\_\_\_ We won't know the results until the doctor calls.
- 11. \_\_\_\_ We got something to eat. After we went to the movie.

# ☐ Exercise 3. Looking at grammar. (Chart 17-1)

<u>Underline the adverb clauses</u>. Add punctuation and capitalization as necessary. Do not add or delete any words.

W

- 1. when Abder was in New York, he stayed with his cousins.
- 2. we went inside when it began to rain
- 3. it began to rain we went inside
- 4. when it began to rain we went inside
- 5. when the mail comes my assistant opens it
- 6. my assistant opens the mail when it comes
- 7. the mail comes around ten o'clock every morning my assistant opens it

# Exercise 4. Looking at grammar. (Charts 16-2, 16-4, and 17-1)

Add punctuation and capitalization as necessary. Do not add or delete any words.

- 1. As soon as the rain began the children wanted to go outdoors they love to play outside in the warm summer rain I used to do the same thing when I was a child.
- 2. I had a cup of tea before I left for work this morning but I didn't have anything to eat I rarely eat breakfast.
- 3. When Jack and his wife go on vacation they have to drive or take the train because his wife is afraid of flying.

- 4. After Ellen gets home from work she likes to read the newspaper she follows the same routine every day after work as soon as she gets home she changes her clothes gets a snack and a drink and sits down in her favorite chair to read the newspaper in peace and quiet she usually has about half an hour to read the paper before her husband arrives home.
- 5. When you speak to someone who is hard of hearing you do not have to shout it is important to face the person directly and speak clearly my elderly father is hard of hearing but he can understand me when I look directly at him and say each word clearly.
- 6. Jane wears contact lenses because she is near-sighted without them, she can't see from one end of a basketball court to the other when one of her contacts popped out during a recent game both teams stopped playing and searched the floor for the lens.



# ☐ Exercise 5. Warm-up. (Chart 17-2)

Add the word(s) in parentheses to the correct place in each sentence. Add commas and capitalization as necessary.

### while

- 1. Anya listened to some music she was working at her computer. (while)
- 2. I go to bed I always brush my teeth. (before)
- 3. I was a child I've been interested in butterflies. (ever since)
- 4. I'm going to meet some friends I leave class today. (after)
- 5. People speak English too fast Oscar can't catch the meaning. (when)
- 6. The teacher speaks too fast Oscar is going to ask her to slow down. (the next time)

17-2 Us	sing Adverb Clauses to Show Tir	me Relationships
after*	<ul><li>(a) After she graduates, she will get a job.</li><li>(b) After she (had) graduated, she got a job.</li></ul>	A present tense, NOT a future tense, is used in an adverb clause of time, as in (a) and (c) (See Chart 4-3, p. 67, for tense usage in
before*	(c) I will leave <i>before</i> he comes. (d) I (had) left <i>before</i> he came.	future time clauses.)
when	<ul> <li>(e) When I arrived, he was talking on the phone.</li> <li>(f) When I got there, he had already left.</li> <li>(g) When it began to rain, I stood under a tree.</li> <li>(h) When I was in Chicago, I visited the museums.</li> <li>(i) When I see him tomorrow, I will ask him.</li> </ul>	when = at that time  Notice the different time relationships expressed by the tenses.
while as	(j) While I was walking home, it began to rain. (k) As I was walking home, it began to rain.	while, as = during that time
by the time	(I) By the time he arrived, we had already left.  (m) By the time he comes, we will have already left.	by the time = one event is completed before another event  Notice the use of the past perfect and future perfect in the main clause.
since	(n) I haven't seen him since he left this morning.  (o) I've known her ever since I was a child.	since = from that time to the present In (o): ever adds emphasis.  NOTE: The present perfect is used in the main clause.
until till	<ul><li>(p) We stayed there until we finished our work.</li><li>(q) We stayed there till we finished our work.</li></ul>	until, till = to that time and then no longer (Till is used more in speaking than in writing; it is generally not used in formal English.)
as soon as	(r) As soon as it stops raining, we will leave. (s) Once it stops raining, we will leave.	as soon as, once = when one event happens, another event happens soon afterward
as long as so long as	(t) I will never speak to him again as long as I live. (u) I will never speak to him again so long as I live.	as long as, so long as = during all that time, from beginning to end
whenever every time	(v) Whenever I see her, I say hello. (w) Every time I see her, I say hello.	whenever = every time
the first time	(x) The first time (that) I went to New York, I went to an opera.	Adverb clauses can be introduced by:
the last time	(y) I saw two plays the last time (that) I went to New York.	second third, etc.
the next time	(z) The next time (that) I go to New York, I'm going to see a ballet.	last next etc.

<sup>\*</sup>After and before are commonly used in the following expressions:

shortly after
a short time after
a little while after
not long after
soon after

shortly before
a short time before
a little while before
not long before

٦	Con	ercise 6. Looking at grammar. (Charts 17-1 and 17-2) inplete the sentences with your own words. Add brackets around the adverb clause in each ence.				
	1.	I will call you [before I				
	2.	Last night I went to bed after I my homework.				
	3.	Tonight I will go to bed after I my homework.				
	4.	Ever since I was a child, I afraid of dogs.				
	5.	Be sure to reread your composition for errors before you it to the teacher tomorrow.				
	6.	By the time I left my apartment this morning, the mail carrier the mail.				
	7.	I have known Jim Bates since he ten years old.				
	8.	A black cat ran across the road as I my car to work this morning.				
	9.	By the time I leave this city, I here for four months.				
	10.	Whenever Mark angry, his nose gets red.				
	11.	I to the beach whenever the weather was nice, but now I don't have time to do that because I have to study.				
	12.	We will have a big party when				
	13.	The next time I to Hawaii, I'm going to visit Mauna Loa, the world's largest active volcano.				
	14.	I had fried chicken the last time I at that restaurant.				
2		ercise 7. Looking at grammar. (Charts 17-1 and 17-2) Inbine each pair of sentences with the words in parentheses. Add commas as necessary.				
		The other passengers will get on the bus soon. We'll leave. (as soon as) $\rightarrow$ As soon as the other passengers get on the bus, we'll leave.				
		I left the room. I turned off the lights. (after)				
		I left the room. I turned off the lights. (before)  Suki feels nervous. She bites her nails. (whenever)				
	5.	The frying pan caught on fire. I was making dinner. (while)				
		We were sitting down to eat. Someone knocked on the door. (just as*)				

just before = immediately before.
just after = immediately after.

<sup>\*</sup>Just adds the idea of "immediately":

just as = at that immediate or same moment.

7.	The audience burst into appla	use. The singer finished her song. (as soon as)		
	We have to wait here. Nancy will come. (until)			
9.	Julia will come. We can leave for the theater. (as soon as)			
10.	My roommate walked into the	room. I knew something was wrong. (just as soon as)		
11.	I stood up to give my speech.	I got butterflies in my stomach. ( just before)		
12.	I saw the great pyramids of Eg	ypt in the moonlight. I was speechless. (the first time)		
13.	Lori started working at this couthe last six months. (since)	mpany six months ago. Lori has gotten three promotions in		
14.	The weather will get warmer so	oon. We can start spending more time outside. (once)		
		had written more than 37 plays. (by the time)		
16.	Sam will go to get his driver's l	icense. He'll remember to take his glasses. (the next time)		
Exe	ercise 8. Looking at gram	<b>mar.</b> (Chart 17-2)		
Cho	pose the best completions.			
1.	As soon as Martina saw the fire	e, she the fire department.		
	a. was telephoning	-		
	(b.) telephoned	d. has telephoned		
2.	Before Jennifer won the lottery			
	a. hasn't entered	c. wasn't entering		
	b. doesn't enter	d. hadn't entered		
3.		rie made in India, he homesick.		
	a. will have felt	c. feels		
	b. felt	d. is feeling		
4.	Since I left Venezuela six years	ago, I to visit friends and family several times.		
	a. return	c. am returning		
	b. will have returned	d. have returned		
5.	While he was washing his new	car, Mr. De Rosa a small dent in the rear fender.		
	a. has discovered	c. is discovering		
	b. was discovering	d. discovered		
6.	Yesterday while I was attending	g a sales meeting, Matthew on the company's annual		
	report.			
	a. was working	c. has worked		
	b. had been working	d. works		
7.		atil his little daughter was born. After she won his heart, he		
	decided he wanted a big family			
	a. doesn't want	c. wasn't wanting		
	b. hadn't wanted	d. hasn't wanted		

8.	After the norse threw her to the	
	Jennifer picked herself up and sa	id, "I on another
	horse as long as I live."	
	a. never ride	c. will never ride
	b. have never ridden	d. do not ride
9.	The next time Paul to Nev	v York, he will visit the
	Metropolitan Museum of Art's f	amous collection of
	international musical instrument	ts.
	a. will fly	c. has flown
	b. flies	d. will have flown
10.	Ever since Maurice arrived, he _	quietly in the corner. Is something wrong?
	a. sat	c. had been sitting
	b. has been sitting	d. will have sat
	<u> </u>	
11.	After Nela for twenty minu	ites, she began to feel tired.
	a. jogging	c. has been jogging
	b. had been jogging	d. has jogged
	or man been jogging	
12.	Peter, since you got home	from football practice?
		c. are you eating
	b. will you eat	d. do you eat
	or war you out	a. do jou out
13.	By the time the young birds	_ the nest for good, they will have learned how to fly.
	a. will leave	c. are leaving
	b. will have left	d. leave
	0	- <del></del>
14.	The last time I in Athens, 1	the weather was hot and humid.
	a. had been	c. am
	b. was	d. will have been
	<b>5.</b>	a. Will have open
Exe	rcise 9. Looking at gramm	<b>nar.</b> (Charts 17-1 and 17-2)
Read	d the description of events. Make	e sentences using the words below the example.
Ever	775.	
		nall and went to buy some jeans.
	03 A thief broke into her car an	
	30 Judy returned to her car.	
4:	31 Judy called the police.	
	The police arrived.	MARKET
4:	35 Judy began crying in frustra	tion.
Exa	mple: just after	
	$\rightarrow$ Just after Judy parked h	er car, a thief broke into it.
	just after 3. when	5. by the time
2.	just as 4. while	6. as soon as

Work	rcise 10. Let's talk. (Charts 17-1 and 17-2) in small groups. Complete the sentences with your own words. Each member of the p should finish each sentence.
Exan	uple: After I left class yesterday, $\rightarrow$ After I left class yesterday, I met my cousin for tea.
2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7.	After I leave class today,  Before I go to bed tonight,  As soon as I get up tomorrow,  Whenever I feel nervous,  The first time I came to this class,  Ever since I was a child,  As long as I live,  Just as I was falling asleep last night,
Liste	rcise 11. Listening and grammar. (Charts 17-1 and 17-2) n to the story about Marco's and Anya's cultural misunderstandings with your book d. Then open your book and complete the sentences.
1.	The first time Marco was asked "How's it going?",
2.	At first, every time someone asked Anya how she was,
3.	The next time Marco wants to get the server's attention at a restaurant,
4.	Since Marco and Anya have come to this country,
5.	Whenever they have a cultural misunderstanding,
	rcise 12. Warm-up. (Chart 17-3) ch adverb clauses give the idea of "because"?
	Work group  Exam  1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7. 8.  Exel Liste close 1.  2.

- 1. Now that I've finished art school, I can focus on finding work as an illustrator.
- 2. Since I was young, I have been artistic.
- 3. Since you're artistic, you can illustrate the story.

17-3	7-3 Using Adverb Clauses to Show Cause and Effect		
because	<ul><li>(a) Because he was sleepy, he went to bed.</li><li>(b) He went to bed because he was sleepy.</li></ul>	An adverb clause may precede or follow the independent clause. Notice the punctuation in (a) and (b).	
now that	<ul> <li>(c) Now that I've finished the semester, I'm going to rest a few days and then take a trip.</li> <li>(d) Jack lost his job. Now that he's unemployed, he can't pay his bills.</li> </ul>	Now that means "because now." In (c): Now that I've finished the semester means "because the semester is now over." Now that is used for present causes of present or future situations.	
since	<ul> <li>(e) Since Monday is a holiday, we don't have to go to work.</li> <li>(f) Since you're a good cook and I'm not, you should cook the dinner.</li> </ul>	When <i>since</i> is used to mean "because," it expresses a known cause; it means "because it is a fact that" or "given that it is true that." Cause-andeffect sentences with <i>since</i> say, "Given the fact that X is true, Y is the result." In (e): "Given the fact that Monday is a holiday, we don't have to go to work."	
	(g) Since I came here, I have met many people.	NOTE: <b>Since</b> has two meanings. One is "because." It is also used in time clauses, as in (g). See Chart 17-2.	

### **Exercise 13. Looking at grammar.** (Chart 17-3)

Combine each pair of sentences with the words in parentheses. Add commas as necessary.

- 1. We can go swimming every day. The weather is warm. (now that)
  - → We can go swimming every day now that the weather is warm.
- 2. The students had done poorly on the test. The teacher decided to give it again. (since)
  - → Since the students had done poorly on the test, the teacher decided to give it again.
- 3. Cold air hovers near the earth. It is heavier than hot air. (because)
- 4. You paid for the theater tickets. Please let me pay for our dinner. (since)
- 5. Do you want to go for a walk? The rain has stopped. (now that)
- 6. Our TV set was broken. We listened to the news on the radio. (because)
- 7. Many young people move to the cities in search of employment. There are few jobs available in the rural areas. (since)
- 8. The civil war has ended. A new government is being formed. (now that)
- 9. Ninety-two thousand people already have reservations with an airline company for a trip to the moon. I doubt that I'll get the chance to go on one of the first tourist flights. (since)



		ercise 14. Looking at grammar. (amplete the sentences with your own words			
	1.	Now that I've finally finished			
	2. The teacher didn't				
		because			
	3.	Since it's too expensive to			
	4.	Gary can't stay out all night with his frie	nds now that		
	5.	Since we don't have class tomorrow			
		ercise 15. Warm-up. (Chart 17-4) ich sentence expresses an unexpected resi	ılt?		
		Because I was very tired, I went to bed e Even though I was very tired, I stayed up			
1	7-4	Expressing Contrast (Unex	meeted Result): Using		
		Even Though	peeted Result). Comg		
	Beca	Even Though  ause the weather was cold, I didn't go swimming.	Because is used to express expected results.		
(b)	Beca Even Beca	Even Though  ause the weather was cold, I didn't go swimming.  a though the weather was cold, I went swimming.  ause I wasn't tired, I didn't go to bed.			
(b) (c) (d) *Alth	Beca Even Beca Even	Even Though  ause the weather was cold, I didn't go swimming. In though the weather was cold, I went swimming.  Buse I wasn't tired, I didn't go to bed. In though I wasn't tired, I went to bed.	Because is used to express expected results.  Even though is used to express unexpected results.*  NOTE: Like because, even though introduces an adverb		
(b) (c) (d) *Alth	Beca Even Beca Even ough an	Even Though  ause the weather was cold, I didn't go swimming.  a though the weather was cold, I went swimming.  ause I wasn't tired, I didn't go to bed.  a though I wasn't tired, I went to bed.  and though have basically the same meaning and use as a	Because is used to express expected results.  Even though is used to express unexpected results.*  NOTE: Like because, even though introduces an adverb clause.  Even though. See Chart 19-6, p. 406, for information on the use of		
(b) (c) (d) *Altha	Beca Even Beca Even Fough an	Even Though  ause the weather was cold, I didn't go swimming. In though the weather was cold, I went swimming.  Buse I wasn't tired, I didn't go to bed. In though I wasn't tired, I went to bed.  Ind though have basically the same meaning and use as and though.  Percise 16. Looking at grammar.	Because is used to express expected results.  Even though is used to express unexpected results.*  NOTE: Like because, even though introduces an adverb clause.  Even though. See Chart 19-6, p. 406, for information on the use of		
(b) (c) (d) *Altha	Beca Even Beca Even ough an	Even Though  ause the weather was cold, I didn't go swimming. In though the weather was cold, I went swimming.  ause I wasn't tired, I didn't go to bed. In though I wasn't tired, I went to bed.  In though have basically the same meaning and use as and though.  Ercise 16. Looking at grammar. (ause the correct completions.  Because it was a dark, cloudy day,	Because is used to express expected results.  Even though is used to express unexpected results.*  NOTE: Like because, even though introduces an adverb clause.  Even though. See Chart 19-6, p. 406, for information on the use of Chart 17-4)		
(b) (c) (d) *Altha	Beca Even Beca Even ough an Cho	Even Though  ause the weather was cold, I didn't go swimming. In though the weather was cold, I went swimming.  Buse I wasn't tired, I didn't go to bed. In though I wasn't tired, I went to bed.  In though have basically the same meaning and use as a did though.  Percise 16. Looking at grammar. (Coose the correct completions.  Because it was a dark, cloudy day,	Because is used to express expected results.  Even though is used to express unexpected results.*  NOTE: Like because, even though introduces an adverb clause.  Even though. See Chart 19-6, p. 406, for information on the use of Chart 17-4)  b. I put on my sunglasses		

Con	nplete the sentences with <i>even though</i> or <i>oecause</i> .
1.	Tim's in good shape physically even though he doesn't get much exercise.
2.	Barry's in good shape physically <u>because</u> he gets a lot of exercise.
3.	Melissa has a job, she doesn't make enough money to support her four children.
4.	Yoko has a job, she is able to pay her rent and feed her family.
5.	Sherry didn't learn Spanish she lived in Mexico for a year.
6.	Joe speaks Spanish well he lived in Mexico for a year.
7.	Jing-Won jumped into the river to rescue a little girl who was drowning
	he wasn't a good swimmer.
8.	A newborn kangaroo can find its mother's pouch its eyes are not yet open.
9.	Some people protest certain commercial fishing operations dolphins, considered to be highly intelligent and social mammals, are killed unnecessarily.
10.	the earthquake damaged the bridge across Skunk River, the
	Smiths were able to cross the river they had a boat.
Wor	ercise 18. Let's talk. (Chart 17-4) k in pairs, in small groups, or as a class. Speaker A asks the question. Speaker B answers question beginning with Yes/No and followed by Even though.
SPE	mples:  AKER A (book open): It was raining. Did you go to the zoo anyway?  AKER B (book closed): Yes. Even though it was raining, I went to the zoo.
	AKER A (book open): You studied hard. Did you pass the test?  AKER B (book closed): No. Even though I studied hard, I didn't pass the test.
1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6.	You weren't tired. Did you go to bed anyway?  The phone rang many times, but did you wake up?  The food was terrible. Did you eat it anyway?  You didn't study. Did you pass the test anyway?  The weather is terrible today. Did you stay home?  You fell down the stairs. Did you get hurt?
	You told the truth, but did anyone believe you? You turned on the air conditioner. Is it still hot in here? You mailed the letter a week ago. Has it arrived yet? You have a lot of money. Can you afford to buy an airplane? Your grandmother is ninety years old. Is she still young at heart?

12. ( . . . ) told a joke. You didn't understand it. Did you laugh anyway?

Exercise 17. Looking at grammar. (Chart 17-4)

J	Exercise 19. Warm-up. (Chart 17-5) Check (✓) the sentences that show contrast (i.e., show that "this" is the opposite of "that").
	1 I am a vegetarian, while my husband is a meat-eater.
	2 While I was shopping, I ran into some friends from high school.
	3 While some people prefer hot weather, I prefer cooler climates.

17-5 Showing Direct Contrast: While			
<ul> <li>(a) Mary is rich, while John is poor.</li> <li>(b) John is poor, while Mary is rich.</li> <li>(c) While John is poor, Mary is rich.</li> <li>(d) While Mary is rich, John is poor.</li> </ul>	While is used to show direct contrast: "this" is exactly the opposite of "that."*  Examples (a), (b), (c), and (d) all have the same meaning.  Note the use of the comma in (a) and (b): In using while for direct contrast, a comma is often used even if the while-clause comes second (unlike the punctuation of most other adverb clauses).		
COMPARE:  (e) The phone rang while I was studying.	REMINDER: While is also used in time clauses and means "during that time," as in (e). See Chart 17-2.		

<sup>\*</sup>Whereas can have the same meaning and use as while, but it occurs mostly in formal written English and occurs with considerably less frequency than while: Mary is rich, whereas John is poor.

### Exercise 20. Looking at grammar. (Chart 17-5) Choose the best completion for each sentence. 1. Some people are tall, while others are \_ a. intelligent c.) short b. thin d. large 2. A box is square, while \_\_\_ c. we use envelopes for letters a. a rectangle has four sides b. my village has a town square in the center d. a circle is round 3. While some parts of the world get an abundance of rain, others \_\_\_\_\_. a. are warm and humid c. get little or none b. are cold and wet d. get a lot 4. In some nations the favorite beverage is coffee, while a. I like tea c. in others it is tea b. it has caffeine d. they drink tea 5. Some people like cream and sugar in their coffee, while \_\_\_\_\_. a. others like it black c. milk is good in coffee too b. others drink hot coffee d. sugar can cause cavities 6. Steve is an interesting storyteller and conversationalist, while his brother \_ c. has four children a. is a newspaper reporter b. bores other people by talking d. knows a lot of stories too about himself all the time

Exercise 2	1. L	et's t	talk. (	Chart	17-5)
------------	------	--------	---------	-------	-------

Ask two classmates to complete each sentence. Share some of their completions with the class.

Example: Some people are talkative, while . . . .

- → Some people are talkative, while others are quiet.
- → While some people are talkative, others are quiet.
- 1. Some people have curly hair, while . . . .
- 2. Some people prefer to live in the country, while . . . .
- 3. While some people know only their native language, . . . .
- 4. The climate at sea level at the equator is always hot, while the climate at the North and South poles . . . .
- 5. Some people ..., while ....
- 6. Some countries . . . , while . . . .

# Exercise 22. Warm-up. (Chart 17-6)

Check  $(\checkmark)$  the sentence with if that is grammatically correct.

- 1. \_\_\_ If I will need help, I will ask you.
- 2. \_\_\_ If I need help, I will ask you.
- 3. \_\_\_ If I will need help, I ask you.

# 17-6 Expressing Conditions in Adverb Clauses: If-Clauses

(a) If it rains tomorrow, I will take my umbrella.

If-clauses (also called "adverb clauses of condition") present possible conditions. The main clause expresses RESULTS.

In (a): POSSIBLE CONDITION = it may rain tomorrow RESULT = I will take my umbrella

A present tense, not a future tense, is used in an if-clause even though the verb in the if-clause may refer to a future event or situation, as in (a).\*

### Words that introduce adverb clauses of condition (if-clauses)

even if unless whether or not in case only if

# Exercise 23. Looking at grammar. (Chart 17-6)

Make sentences with *if* using the given conditions.

Example: It may be cold tomorrow.

- → If it's cold tomorrow, I'm going to stay home.
- → We can't go on a picnic if it's cold tomorrow.
- 1. The teacher may not be in class tomorrow.
- 2. You will stay up until two in the morning.
- 3. Maybe the sun will be shining when you get up tomorrow morning.
- 4. Predictions about global warming may be correct.
- 5. Think of something that may happen this year in world politics.

<sup>\*</sup>See Chapter 20 for uses of other verb forms in sentences with if-clauses.

# Exercise 24. Warm-up. (Chart 17-7)

Check (✓) the sentences that logically follow the question and are grammatically correct.

Do you have your cell phone with you?

- 1. \_\_\_ If you do, could I use it?
- 2. \_\_\_ If so, could I use it?
- 3. \_\_\_\_ If not, I can use the pay phone.
- 4. \_\_\_\_ If you don't, I can use the pay phone.
- 5. \_\_\_ If you are, could I use it?



# 17-7 Shortened If-Clauses

- (a) Are you a student? If so / If you are, the ticket is half-price. If not / If you aren't, the ticket is full price.
- (b) It's a popular concert. Do you have a ticket? If so / If you do, you're lucky. If not / If you don't, you're out of luck.

When an *if*-clause refers to the idea in the sentence immediately before it, it is sometimes shortened.

- In (a): If so / If you are = If you are a student
  If not / If you aren't = If you aren't a student
- In (b): If so / If you do = If you have a ticket
  If not / If you don't = If you don't have a ticket

# ☐ Exercise 25. Looking at grammar. (Chart 17-7)

First, complete the sentences in two ways:

- a. Use so or not.
- b. Use a helping verb or main verb be.

Second, give the full meaning of the shortened *if*-clause.

- 1. Does Lisa want to go out to dinner with us?

  - b. If she <u>does</u>, tell her to meet us at 8:00.
    - → Meaning: if Lisa wants to go out to dinner with us
- 2. Are you free this weekend?
  - a. If \_\_\_\_\_, do you want to go to a movie?
  - b. If you \_\_\_\_\_, do you want to go to a movie?
- 3. Do you have a ride to the theater?
  - a. If \_\_\_\_\_, would you like to ride with us?
  - b. If you \_\_\_\_\_, would you like to ride with us?

4. Are you coming to the meeting?
a. If, I'll see you there.
b. If you, I'll see you there.
5. Did you use a spellcheck on your email to me?
a. If, it didn't catch all the spelling errors.
b. If you, it didn't catch all the spelling errors.
6. We need some rice. Can you stop at the store on your way home today?
a. If, I'll do it.
b. If you, I'll do it.
Exercise 26. Warm-up. (Chart 17-8) Check (✓) all the sentences that are true for David.
SITUATION: If David gets married, he will be happy. If he doesn't get married, he will be happy
1 David will be happy if he doesn't get married.
2 If he gets married, David won't be happy.
3 Even if David gets married, he won't be happy.
4 Even if David doesn't get married, he will be happy.
5 David will be happy whether or not he gets married.
6 Whether or not David gets married, he will be happy.

17-8 Adverb Clauses of Condition: Using Whether Or Not and Even If					
Whether or not					
(a) I'm going to go swimming tomorrow whether or not it is cold. OR whether it is cold or not.	Whether or not expresses the idea that neither this condition nor that condition matters; the result will be the same.  In (a): "If it is cold, I'm going swimming. If it is not cold, I'm going swimming. I don't care about the temperature. It doesn't matter."				
Even if					
(b) I have decided to go swimming tomorrow.  Even if the weather is cold, I'm going to go swimming.	Sentences with <i>even if</i> are close in meaning to those with <i>whether or not</i> .  Even if gives the idea that a particular condition does not matter. The result will not change.				

# Exercise 27. Looking at grammar. (Chart 17-8)

Choose the sentence (a. or b.) that has the same meaning as the given sentence.

- 1. Even if I get an invitation to the reception, I'm not going to go.
  - a. I won't go to the reception without an invitation.
  - (b.) I don't care if I get an invitation. I'm not going.
- 2. Even if the weather improves, I won't go to the beach.
  - a. I'm going to the beach if the weather improves.
  - b. I don't care if the weather improves. I'm not going to the beach.
- 3. Whether or not you want help, I plan to be at your house at 9:00.
  - a. I'm going to help you because I think you need help.
  - b. I'm going to help you because you want me to.
- 4. I won't tell even if someone pays me.
  - a. I won't tell whether or not someone gives me money.
  - b. If someone pays me enough money, I will tell.
- 5. Even if John apologizes, I won't forgive him!
  - a. John needs to apologize for me to forgive him.
  - b. I don't care if John apologizes. It doesn't matter.
- 6. I have to go to work tomorrow whether I feel better or not.
  - a. Whether I go to work or not depends on how I feel.
  - b. I'm going to work tomorrow no matter how I feel.

# **Exercise 28. Looking at grammar.** (Chart 17-8)

Use the given information to complete sentences a. and b.

**SITUATION 1:** Usually people need to graduate from school to get a good job. But it's different for Ed. Maybe Ed will graduate from school, and maybe he won't. It doesn't matter because he has a good job waiting for him in his father's business.

- a. Ed will get a good job whether or not . . . .
  - → Ed will get a good job whether or not he graduates.
- b. Ed will get a good job even if . . . .
  - → Ed will get a good job even if he doesn't graduate.

**SITUATION 2:** Cindy's uncle tells a lot of jokes. Sometimes they're funny, and sometimes they're not. It doesn't matter.

- a. Cindy laughs at the jokes whether . . . or not.
- b. Cindy laughs at the jokes even if . . . .

**SITUATION 3:** Maybe you are finished with the exam, and maybe you're not. It doesn't matter. The time is up.

- a. You have to hand in your examination paper whether . . . or not.
- b. You have to hand in your examination paper even if . . . .

**SITUATION 4:** It might snow, or it might not. We don't want to go camping in the snow, but it doesn't matter.

- a. We're going to go camping in the mountains whether . . . or not.
- b. We're going to go camping in the mountains even if . . . .

**SITUATION 5:** Max's family doesn't have enough money to send him to college. He would like to get a scholarship, but it doesn't matter because he's saved some money to go to school and has a part-time job.

- a. Max can go to school whether or not . . . .
- b. Max can go to school even if . . . .

**SITUATION 6:** Sometimes the weather is hot, and sometimes the weather is cold. It doesn't matter. My grandfather always wears his gray sweater.

- a. My grandfather wears his gray sweater whether or not . . . .
- b. My grandfather always wears his gray sweater even if . . . .

**SITUATION 7:** Your approval doesn't matter to me.

- a. I'm going to marry Harry whether . . . or not.
- b. I'm going to marry Harry even if . . . .

#### Exercise 29. Warm-up. (Chart 17-9)

Choose the sentence (1. or 2.) that has the same meaning as the given sentence.

If by chance you have trouble, you can reach me at this number.

- 1. In case you have trouble, you can reach me at this number.
- 2. When you have trouble, you can reach me at this number.

# 17-9 Adverb Clauses of Condition: Using In Case

(a) I'll be at my uncle's house in case you (should) need to reach me.

*In case* expresses the idea that something probably won't happen, but it might. *In case* means "if by chance this should happen."

NOTE: Using **should** in an adverb clause emphasizes the speaker's uncertainty that something will happen.

## ☐ Exercise 30. Looking at grammar. (Chart 17-9)

Combine each pair of sentences. Begin your new sentence with In case.

- 1. You probably won't need to get in touch with me, but maybe you will. If so, I'll give you my phone number.
  - → In case you (should) need to get in touch with me, I'll give you my phone number.
- 2. You probably won't need to see me, but maybe you will. If so, I'll be in my office tomorrow morning around ten.
- 3. I don't think you need any more information, but maybe you do. If so, you can call me.
- 4. You probably don't have any more questions, but maybe you do. If so, ask Dr. Smith.
- 5. Russ probably won't call, but maybe he will. If so, please tell him that I'm at the library.
- 6. You will probably be satisfied with your purchase, but maybe not. If not, you can return it to the store.

#### **Exercise 31. Looking at grammar.** (Charts 17-8 and 17-9)

Complete the sentences with your own words. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

- 1. I have my umbrella with me just in case . . . .
- 2. It's a good idea for you to keep a written record of your credit card numbers in case . . . .
- 3. Our boss doesn't accept illness as an excuse for missing work. We have to go to work even if . . . .
- 4. I think I'd better clean up the apartment in case . . . .
- 5. Are you planning to apply for a scholarship? If so, ....
- 6. Do you have to work this Saturday? If not, . . . .

#### Exercise 32. Warm-up. (Chart 17-10)

Choose the logical completions.

- 1. I'll be at work on time tomorrow if there (is, isn't) a lot of heavy traffic.
- 2. I'll be at work on time tomorrow unless there (is, isn't) a lot of heavy traffic.
- 3. We'll have the party outside unless it is (rainy, sunny).
- 4. We'll have the party inside unless it is (rainy, sunny).

# 17-10 Adverb Clauses of Condition: Using Unless

(a) I'll go swimming tomorrow unless it's cold.

unless = if . . . not

(b) I'll go swimming tomorrow if it isn't cold.

In (a): unless it's cold means "if it isn't cold."

Examples (a) and (b) have the same meaning.

## Exercise 33. Looking at grammar. (Chart 17-10)

Make sentences with the same meaning as the given sentences. Use unless.

- 1. I will go to the zoo if it isn't cold.
  - ightarrow I will go to the zoo unless it's cold.
- 2. You can't travel abroad if you don't have a passport.
- 3. You can't get a driver's license if you're not at least sixteen years old.
- 4. If I don't get some new batteries for my camera, I won't be able to take pictures when Laura and Rob get here.
- 5. You'll get hungry during class if you don't eat breakfast.

## ☐ Exercise 34. Looking at grammar. (Chart 17-10)

Complete the sentences with your own words. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

- 1. Your letter won't be delivered unless . . . .
  - → Your letter won't be delivered unless it has the correct postage.
- 2. I'm sorry, but you can't see the doctor unless . . . .

- 3. I can't graduate from school unless . . . .
- 4. ... unless you put it in the refrigerator.
- 5. Unless it rains, . . . .
- 6. Certain species of animals will soon become extinct unless . . . .
- 7. ... unless I get a raise in salary.
- 8. Tomorrow I'm going to . . . unless . . . .
- 9. The political situation in . . . will continue to worsen unless . . . .
- 10. Unless you . . . .

#### Exercise 35. Warm-up. (Chart 17-11)

Answer the questions about Scott.

SITUATION: Scott closes his bedroom window at night only if it's raining hard.

- 1. Does Scott close his bedroom window if the temperature is below freezing?
- 2. Does Scott close his bedroom window if it's windy outside?
- 3. Does Scott close his bedroom window if there's a light rain?
- 4. Does Scott close his bedroom window if there is a heavy rain?

17-11 Adverb Clauses of Condition: Using Only If			
(a) The picnic will be canceled <i>only if it rains</i> .  If it's windy, we'll go on the picnic.  If it's cold, we'll go on the picnic.  If it's damp and foggy, we'll go on the picnic.  If it's unbearably hot, we'll go on the picnic.	Only if expresses the idea that there is only one condition that will cause a particular result.		
(b) Only if it rains will the picnic be canceled.	When <i>only if</i> begins a sentence, the subject and verb of the main clause are inverted, as in (b).* No commas are used.		

<sup>\*</sup>Other subordinating conjunctions and prepositional phrases preceded by *only* at the beginning of a sentence require subject-verb inversion in the main clause:

Only when the teacher dismisses us can we stand and leave the room.

Only after the phone rang did I realize that I had fallen asleep in my chair.

Only in my hometown do I feel at ease.

## **Exercise 36. Looking at grammar.** (Chart 17-11)

Check  $(\checkmark)$  the sentences that are true for this situation.

SITUATION: You can take Saturday off only if you work Thursday.

- 1. \_\_\_ You must work Thursday if you want Saturday off.
- 2. \_\_\_\_ You can take Saturday off if you work another day of your choice.
- 3. \_\_\_\_ If you work Thursday, you don't have to work Saturday.
- 4. \_\_\_\_ You can work Thursday, but it's not a requirement if you want Saturday off.

#### Exercise 37. Looking at grammar. (Chart 17-11)

**Part I.** Read the situations and complete the sentences. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

**SITUATION 1:** John must take an additional science class in order to graduate. That is the only condition under which he can graduate. If he doesn't take an additional science class, he can't graduate.

He can graduate only if . . . .

→ He can graduate only if he takes an additional science class.

SITUATION 2: You have to have an invitation in order to go to the party. That is the only condition under which you will be admitted. If you don't have an invitation, you can't go.

You can go to the party only if . . . .

SITUATION 3: You have to have a student visa in order to study here. Unless you have a student visa, you can't go to school here.

You can attend this school only if . . . .

SITUATION 4: Jimmy's mother doesn't want him to chew gum, but sometimes he chews it anyway.

Jimmy . . . only if he's sure his mother won't find out.

**SITUATION 5:** If you want to go to the movie, we'll go. If you don't want to go, we won't go. We . . . only if you want to.

**SITUATION 6:** The temperature has to reach 32°F / 0°C before water will freeze. Water will freeze only if . . . .

**SITUATION 7:** You must study hard. Then you will pass the exam. Only if you study hard . . . .

SITUATION 8: You have to have a ticket. Then you can get into the soccer stadium.

Only if you have a ticket . . . .

SITUATION 9: His parents make Steve finish his homework before he can watch TV in the evening.

Only if Steve's homework is finished . . . .

SITUATION 10: I have to get a job. Then I will have enough money to go to school.

Only if 1 get a job . . . .

Part II. Complete the sentences with your own words.

- 1. Yes, Paul, I will marry you but only if . . . .
- 2. I... only if ....
- 3. Only if . . . .

#### **Exercise 38. Looking at grammar.** (Charts 17-10 and 17-11)

Make sentences with the same meaning as the given sentences. Use only if and unless.

- 1. If you don't study hard, you won't pass the test.
  - → You will pass the test only if you study hard.
  - → You won't pass the test unless you study hard.
- 2. If I don't get a job, I can't pay my bills.
- 3. Your clothes won't get clean if you don't use soap.
- 4. I can't take any pictures if the flash doesn't work.
- 5. I don't wake up if the alarm clock doesn't ring.
- 6. If eggs aren't kept at the proper temperature, they won't hatch.
- 7. Don't borrow money from friends if you don't absolutely have to.
- 8. Anita doesn't talk in class if the teacher doesn't ask her specific questions.

#### **Exercise 39. Looking at grammar.** (Charts $17-6 \rightarrow 17-11$ )

Combine these two sentences using the words below the example.

It may or may not rain. The party will be held inside/outside.

Example: if

- → If it rains, the party will be held inside.
- → If it doesn't rain, the party will be held outside.
- 1. even if

- 3. in case
- 5. only if

- 2. whether or not
- 4. unless

#### Exercise 40. Reading and grammar. (Chapter 17)

**Part I.** Read the passage about the ways people learn.

#### How Do People Learn Best?

How do people learn best? There is not one answer because much depends on individual learning styles and needs. Over 300 years ago, however, the noted inventor Benjamin Franklin made some observations regarding learning that still hold true for a great many learners today: "Tell me and I forget. Teach me and I remember. Involve me and I learn."

Imagine that you are learning how to fold a paper airplane. The person teaching you presents the information verbally. She begins by saying:

Take a piece of paper.

Fold it in half.

Open the paper.

Look at the crease in the middle.

Now take one corner and fold it down along the crease.



Benjamin Franklin

The instructions continue this way. How well are you going to learn how to fold a paper airplane?

Now imagine that your instructor is standing before you with paper and gives the directions while folding the paper herself. Will this help you more?

Finally, imagine that both you and your instructor have paper. Each time she gives you instructions, both you and she fold your own papers.

Of the three methods, which one will be the most effective in helping you learn how to fold a paper airplane?

It's interesting to think about Benjamin Franklin's quote in relation to learning English. How do you learn English best? Is "being told" effective for you? What about "being taught"? How about "being involved"?

Part II. Think about your experiences learning English vocabulary and complete the sentences with your own words. Punctuate carefully.

Ι.	1 Tememoet new words best when
2.	I often forget the meanings of new words unless
_	
3.	Even if I
4.	I only if
5.	If you want to increase your vocabulary,
6.	If teachers want to help their class learn new vocabulary, they
7.	Although
8.	When I am involved in my learning, I feel



# Chapter 18

# Reduction of Adverb Clauses to Modifying Adverbial Phrases

☐ Exercise 1. Warm-up. (Charts 18-1 and 18-2)

Check (✓) the sentences that are grammatically correct.

- 1. \_\_\_ While sitting at my desk, I fell asleep.
- 2. \_\_\_\_ While I was sitting at my desk, I fell asleep.
- 3. \_\_\_\_ While was sitting at my desk, I fell asleep.
- 4. \_\_\_\_ Before I went into the theater, I turned off my cell phone.
- 5. \_\_\_\_ Before go into the theater, I turned off my cell phone.
- 6. \_\_\_\_ Before going into the theater, I turned off my cell phone.

18	3-1 Introdu	ction	
(a) (b)	Adverb clause:  Modifying phrase:	While I was walking to class, I ran into an old friend.  While walking to class, I ran into	In Chapter 13, we discussed changing adjective clauses to modifying phrases. (See Chart 13-11, p. 294.) Some adverb clauses may also be changed to modifying phrases, and the ways in which the
(c)	Adverb clause:	an old friend.  Before I left for work, I ate breakfast.	to modifying phrases, and the ways in which the changes are made are the same:  • If there is a <i>be</i> form of the verb, omit the subject of the dependent clause and <i>be</i> verb, as in (b).
(d)	Modifying phrase:	Before leaving for work, I ate breakfast.	<ul> <li>OR</li> <li>If there is no <i>be</i> form of a verb, omit the subject and change the verb to -<i>ing</i>, as in (d).</li> </ul>
(e)	Change possible:	While I was sitting in class, I fell asleep. While sitting in class, I fell asleep.	An adverb clause can be changed to a modifying phrase only when the subject of the adverb clause and the subject of the main clause are the same.
(f)	Change possible:	While Ann was sitting in class, she fell asleep. (clause) While sitting in class, Ann fell asleep.	A modifying adverbial phrase that is the reduction o an adverb clause modifies the subject of the main clause.
(g)	No change possible:	While the teacher was lecturing to the class. I fell asleep.*	No reduction (i.e., change) is possible if the subjects of the adverb clause and the main clause are different, as in (g).
(h)	INCORRECT:	While watching TV last night, the phone rang.	In (h): While watching is called a "dangling modifier" or a "dangling participle," i.e., a modifier that is incorrectly "hanging alone" without an appropriate noun or pronoun subject to modify.

<sup>\*</sup>While lecturing to the class, I fell asleep means "While I was lecturing to the class, I fell asleep."

# Exercise 2. Looking at grammar. (Chart 18-1) Check (✓) the sentences that are grammatically correct. . \_\_\_\_ While sitting at my computer, the fire alarm went off. 2. \_\_\_ While sitting at my computer, I heard the fire alarm go off. 3. \_\_\_\_ While standing on the top floor of the building, the crowd below looked like ants. 4. \_\_\_\_ While standing on the top floor of the building and looking down, Patrick suddenly felt dizzy. 5. \_\_\_\_ Before getting up, Mary likes to lie in her warm bed and plan her day. 6. \_\_\_\_ Before getting up, Mary's alarm clock went off three times by accident. 7. \_\_\_\_ While working on his new novel, William found himself telling the story of his childhood. 8. \_\_\_\_ After standing in line for hours to buy concert tickets, the theater manager told us

18-2 Changing Time Clauses to Modifying Adverbial Phrases			
<ul><li>(a) Clause:</li><li>(b) Phrase:</li></ul>	Since Maria came to this country, she has made many friends.  Since coming to this country, Maria has made many friends.	Adverb clauses beginning with <i>after</i> , <i>before</i> , <i>while</i> , and <i>since</i> can be changed to modifying adverbial phrases.	
<ul><li>(c) Clause:</li><li>(d) Phrase:</li><li>(e) Phrase:</li></ul>	After he (had) finished his homework, Peter went to bed.  After finishing his homework, Peter went to bed.  After having finished his homework, Peter went to bed.	In (c): There is no difference in meaning between After he finished and After he had finished. (See Chart 3-5, p. 50.)  In (d) and (e): There is no difference in meaning between After finishing and After having finished.	
(f) Phrase:	Peter went to bed after finishing his homework.	The modifying adverbial phrase may follow the main clause, as in (f).	

# ☐ Exercise 3. Looking at grammar. (Charts 18-1 and 18-2)

<u>Underline</u> the subject of the adverb clause and the subject of the main clause in each sentence. Change the adverb clauses to modifying adverbial phrases if possible.

- 1. While Joe was driving to school yesterday, he had an accident.
  - → While driving to school yesterday, Joe had an accident.
- 2. While Joe was watching TV last night, the telephone rang. (no change)
- 3. Before I came to class, I had a cup of coffee.

the concert was sold out.

- 4. Before the student came to class, the teacher had already given a quiz.
- 5. Since I came here, I have learned a lot of English.
- 6. Since Alberto opened his new business, he has been working 16 hours a day.
- 7. Omar left the house and went to his office after he (had) finished breakfast.

- 8. Before the waiter came to our table, I had already made up my mind to order shrimp.
- 9. You should always read a contract before you sign your name.
- 10. While Jack was trying to sleep last night, a mosquito kept buzzing in his ear.



- 11. While Susan was climbing the mountain, she lost her footing and fell onto a ledge several feet below.
- 12. After I heard Marika describe how cold it gets in Minnesota in the winter, I decided not to go there for my vacation in January.

#### Exercise 4. Let's talk: interview. (Chart 18-2)

Ask two classmates each question. Ask them to answer in complete sentences. Share some of their answers with the class.

What do you do ...

- 1. before going to bed?
- 4. while sitting in class?
- 2. after waking up?
- 5. before leaving school for the day?
- 3. after arriving at school?
- 6. while preparing for a difficult exam?

#### Exercise 5. Warm-up. (Charts 18-3 and 18-4)

Read the sentences and answer the questions.

- 1. Hiking through the woods yesterday, Alan saw a bear. QUESTION: Who was hiking through the woods?
- 2. Walking through the woods, the bear spotted Alan. QUESTION: Who was walking through the woods?

# Expressing the Idea of "During the Same Time" in Modifying Adverbial Phrases

- (a) While I was walking down the street, I ran into an old friend.
- (b) While walking down the street, I ran into an old friend.
- (c) Walking down the street, I ran into an old friend.

Sometimes while is omitted, but the -ing phrase at the beginning of the sentence gives the same meaning (i.e., "during the same time").

Examples (a), (b), and (c) have the same meaning.

# **18-4** Expressing Cause and Effect in Modifying Adverbial Phrases

(a) (b) (c) (d)	Because she needed some money to buy a book, Sue cashed a check.  Needing some money to buy a book, Sue cashed a check.  Because he lacked the necessary qualifications, he was not considered for the job.  Lacking the necessary qualifications, he was not considered for the job.	Often an -ing phrase at the beginning of a sentence gives the meaning of "because."  Examples (a) and (b) have the same meaning.  Because is not included in a modifying phrase. It is omitted, but the resulting phrase expresses a cause-and-effect relationship, as in (b) and (d).
(e) (f)	Having seen that movie before, I don't want to go again.  Having seen that movie before, I didn't want to go again.	Having + past participle gives the meaning not only of "because" but also of "before."
(g) (h) (i)	Because she was unable to afford a car, she bought a bicycle.  Being unable to afford a car, she bought a bicycle.  Unable to afford a car, she bought a bicycle.	A form of <i>be</i> in the adverb clause may be changed to <i>being</i> . The use of <i>being</i> makes the cause-and-effect relationship clear.  Examples (g), (h), and (i) have the same meaning.

#### Exercise 6. Looking at grammar. (Charts 18-3 and 18-4)

<u>Underline</u> the modifying adverbial phrases and discuss their meanings. Which ones give the meaning of "because"? Which ones give the meaning of "while"? Do some of the sentences give the idea of both?

- 1. <u>Driving to my grandparents' house last night</u>, I saw a young woman who was selling flowers. I stopped so that I could buy some for my grandmother. (*Meaning* = "while")
- 2. Being a widow with three children, Mrs. Romero has no choice but to work.
- 3. Sitting on the airplane and watching the clouds pass beneath me, I let my thoughts wander to the new experiences that were in store for me during the next two years of living abroad.
- 4. Having guessed at the answers for most of the test, I did not expect to get a high score.
- 5. Realizing that I had made a dreadful mistake when I introduced him as George Johnson, I walked over to him and apologized. I know his name is John George.
- 6. Tapping his fingers loudly on the airline counter, Todd made his impatience known.
- 7. Having broken her arm in a fall, Elena had to learn to write with her left hand.
- 8. Lying on her bed in peace and quiet, Lisa soon forgot her troubles.

#### Exercise 7. Looking at grammar. (Chart 18-4)

Change the adverb clauses to modifying adverbial phrases.

- 1. Because Sam didn't want to hurt her feelings, he didn't tell her the bad news.
  - Not wanting to hurt her feelings, Sam didn't tell her the bad news.
- 2. Because the little boy believed no one loved him, he ran away from home.
- 3. Because I had forgotten to bring a pencil to the examination, I had to borrow one.
- 4. Because Chelsea is a vegetarian, she does not eat meat.

	ercise 8. Looking at groose all the possible answers	<b>ammar.</b> (Charts $18-2 \rightarrow 18-4$ for each sentence.	4)
1.	Before to you, I had a	never understood that formula.  (b.) talking	c. I talked
2.	After the chapter fou a. I read	r times, I finally understood the b. read	author's theory.
3.		degree, he has had three jobs, ea b. completing	
4.	across Canada, I cou a. Traveling	ld not help being impressed by b. While I was traveling	_
5.		nion leader had been an electrici b. Gaining	
6.	in an airplane before	, the little girl was surprised and	a little frightened when her
	ears popped. a. Had never flown	b. Having never flown	c. Because she had never flown
7.	Before vice-president representative.	t of marketing and sales, Peter N	AcKay worked as a sales
	a. became	b. becoming	c. he became
8.	the cool evening bree a. Because enjoying	eze and listening to the sounds of b. Enjoying	of nature, we lost track of time.  c. We were enjoying
9.	to spend any more m lunch. He made himself a	oney this month, Jim decided a sandwich instead.	gainst going to a restaurant for
	a. Not wanting	b. Because he didn't want	c. Because not wanting
If po		<b>ammar.</b> (Charts 18-3 and 18 of sentences by making a modify	· ·
1.	The children had nothing to → Having nothing to do, the		
2.		I offered to play a game with the	
3. 4.		steering wheel. She paid the bride steering wheel. Bob put the m	
5.		he hospital. I called her family	to find out what was wrong.
-	7777 1 1 1 1 1 1	11 1 1 1	. 1 1 1

- 6. We slowly approached the door to the hospital. The nurse stepped out to help us.
- 7. I live a long distance from my work. I have to commute daily by train.
- 8. Abdul lives a long distance from his work. His car is essential.
- 9. I am a married man. I have many responsibilities.

- 10. Martha was picking strawberries in the garden. A bumblebee stung her.
- 11. I recognized his face, but I had forgotten his name. I just smiled and said, "Hi."
- 12. Ann was convinced that she could never learn to play the piano. She stopped taking lessons.

#### **Exercise 10. Game.** (Charts 18-3 and 18-4)

Work in teams. Make sentences by combining the ideas in Column A and Column B. Use the idea in Column A as a modifying adverbial phrase. Show logical relationships. The first group to combine all the ideas correctly is the winner.

Example: Having sticky pads on their feet, flies can easily walk on the ceiling.

#### Column A

- 1. They have sticky pads on their feet.
- 2. She has done very well in her studies.
- 3. She was born two months prematurely.
- 4. He had done everything he could for the patient.
- 5. She had never eaten Thai food before.
- 6. He had no one to turn to for help.
- 7. They are extremely hard and nearly indestructible.
- 8. They are able to crawl into very small places.

#### Column B

- a. Marta didn't know what to expect when she went to the Thai restaurant for dinner.
- b. Mice can hide in almost any part of a house.
- c. Sayid was forced to work out the problem by himself.
- d. The doctor left to attend other people.
- e. Nancy expects to be hired by a top company after graduation.
- f. Diamonds are used extensively in industry to cut other hard minerals.
- ✓ g. Flies can easily walk on the ceiling.
  - h. Monique needed special care for the first few days of her life.

		11. Looking at grammar. (Charts 18-1 → 18-4) the sentences that are grammatically correct. Rewrite the incorrect sentences.
1.	<u> </u>	After leaving the theater, we stopped at a coffee shop for a late-night snack.
2.		After leaving the theater, Tom's car wouldn't start, so we had to take a taxi home.  After we left the theater, Tom's car wouldn't start, so we had to take a taxi home.  After leaving the theater, we discovered that Tom's car wouldn't start, so we took a taxi home.
3.	—	Not wanting to interrupt the conversation, I stood quietly and listened until I could have a chance to talk.
4.	_	Being too young to understand death, my mother gave me a simple explanation of where my grandfather had gone.
5.		When asked to explain his mistake, the new employee cleared his throat nervously.
6.	—	While working in my office late last night, someone suddenly knocked loudly at my door and nearly scared me to death!
7.		After hurrying to get ready for the picnic, it began to rain just as we were leaving.
8.		While walking across the street at a busy intersection, a truck nearly hit me.

#### Exercise 12. Warm-up. (Chart 18-5)

Which sentences have the same meaning?

- 1. When Sharon heard the news of her friend's death, she began to cry.
- 2. Upon hearing the news of her friend's death, Sharon began to cry.
- 3. On hearing the news of her friend's death, Sharon began to cry.

18-5 Using Upon + -ing in Modifying Adverbial Phrases			
<ul> <li>(a) Upon reaching the age of 21, I received my inheritance.</li> <li>(b) When I reached the age of 21, I received my inheritance.</li> </ul>	Modifying adverbial phrases beginning with <i>upon</i> + - <i>ing</i> usually have the same meaning as adverb clauses introduced by <i>when</i> .  Examples (a) and (b) have the same meaning.		
(c) On reaching the age of 21, I received my inheritance.	Upon can be shortened to on.  Examples (a), (b), and (c) all have the same meaning.		

#### Exercise 13. Looking at grammar. (Chart 18-5)

Make sentences using upon + -ing.

- 1. When Carl saw his wife and child get off the airplane, he broke into a big smile.
  - → Upon seeing his wife and child get off the airplane, Carl broke into a big smile.
- 2. When Tina crossed the marathon finish line, she fell in exhaustion.
- 3. When I looked in my wallet, I saw I didn't have enough money to pay my restaurant bill.



- 4. Sam found that he had made a math error when he re-read the data.
- 5. When you finish the examination, bring your paper to the front of the room.
- 6. There must have been 300 students in the room on the first day of class. The professor slowly read through the list of names. When I heard my name, I raised my hand to identify myself.
- 7. Captain Cook had been sailing for many weeks with no land in sight. Finally, one of the sailors shouted, "Land ho!" When he heard this, Cook grabbed his telescope and searched the horizon.

#### Exercise 14. Looking at grammar. (Charts $18-1 \rightarrow 18-5$ )

Change the adverb clause in each sentence to a modifying adverbial phrase if possible. Change punctuation, capitalization, and word order as necessary.

- 1. After it spends some time in a cocoon, a caterpillar will emerge as a butterfly.
  - → After spending some time in a cocoon, a caterpillar will emerge as a butterfly.
- 2. When the movie started, it suddenly got very quiet inside the theater. (no change)
- 3. When we entered the theater, we handed the usher our tickets.
  - → Upon entering the theater, we handed the usher our tickets.
- 4. Because I was unprepared for the test, I didn't do well.
  - → Being unprepared for the test, I didn't do well. OR Unprepared for the test, I didn't do well.
- 5. Before I left on my trip, I checked to see what shots I would need.
- 6. Jane's family hasn't received any news from her since she arrived in Kenya two weeks ago.
- 7. Because I hadn't understood the directions, I got lost.
- 8. My father reluctantly agreed to let me attend the game after he had talked it over with my mother.
- 9. When I discovered I had lost my key to the apartment, I called the building superintendent.
- 10. Because the forest area is so dry this summer, it is prohibited to light campfires.
- 11. After we had to wait for more than half an hour, we were finally seated at the restaurant.

## ☐ Exercise 15. Let's talk. (Chapter 18)

Work in small groups. Imagine your friend is traveling to a foreign country and has never been abroad before. Give advice by making several suggestions for each item.

- 1. Before leaving on your trip, . . .
  - → you'll need to get a visa.
  - → you should find out if you need immunizations.
  - → give a friend or family member your itinerary.
  - → don't forget to have someone pick up your mail.
- 2. Upon arriving at the airport, ...
- 3. After getting to your destination, . . .
- 4. When talking with the local people, . . .
- 5. While visiting tourist sites, . . .
- 6. Before leaving for home, . . .
- 7. In general, when traveling to a foreign country, . .



#### Exercise 16. Listening. (Chapter 18)

Listen to each conversation. Choose the sentence (a. or b.) that has the same meaning.

A: William, don't forget to pick up some groceries after work. Example: You will hear:

> B: Oh yeah, thanks. That's the first thing I'll do when I leave the office.

You will choose: (a.) After leaving work, William will stop at the grocery store.

b. Before leaving work, William will pick up some groceries.

- 1. a. Fearing people will laugh at her if she plays the piano, Rose doesn't want to play at the family gathering.
  - b. Knowing she plays beautifully, Rose is happy to play the piano at the family gathering.
- 2. a. Not wanting to upset him, Jan isn't going to talk to Thomas this afternoon.
  - b. Hoping to change Thomas' work behavior, Jan is going to talk to him this afternoon.
- 3. a. Upon finding her wedding ring, Susan hid it in a box.
  - b. On finding her wedding ring, Susan felt relieved.
- 4. a. Never having voted in an election, Sam is taking it very seriously.
  - b. Having done a lot of research before choosing a candidate, Sam voted in the presidential election.

#### Exercise 17. Reading and grammar. (Chapter 18)

**Part I.** Read the passage and <u>underline</u> the modifying adverbial phrases.

#### The First Telephone

Alexander Graham Bell, a teacher of the deaf in Boston, invented the first telephone. One day in 1875, while running a test on his latest attempt to create a machine that could carry voices, he accidentally spilled acid on his coat. Naturally, he called for his assistant, Thomas A. Watson, who was in another room. Bell said, "Mr. Watson, come here. I want you." Upon hearing words coming from the machine, Watson immediately realized that their experiments had at last been successful. He rushed excitedly into the other room to tell Bell that he had heard his words over the machine.

After successfully testing the new machine again and again, Bell confidently announced his invention to the world. For the most part, scientists appreciated his accomplishment, but the general public did not understand the revolutionary nature of Bell's invention. Believing the telephone was a toy with little practical application, most people paid little attention to Bell's announcement.

Part II. Read the statements. Circle "T" for true and "F" for false.

- Bell was testing a machine when Watson made a discovery.
   Watson heard words coming from the machine.
   Watson tested the new device again and again.
   Bell announced his phone was a toy.
- Exercise 18. Listening. (Chapter 18)

CD 2 Track 27 Part I. Look at the picture of the keyboard while listening to the lecture.



**QWERTY** keyboard

Part II. Read the statements. Circle "T" for true and "F" for false.

1. While working on a typewriter design, Sholes came up up with more than one pattern for the keyboard. Т F 2. Upon discovering that the keys hit one another if the letters were in alphabetical order, Sholes developed a keyboard called "QWERTY." T F 3. Needing a keyboard that allowed typists to type letters as rapidly as possible, Sholes decided his design would be the best choice. T F 4. Having a long history of successful use, QWERTY is not likely to F be replaced any time soon.



# Chapter 19

# Connectives That Express Cause and Effect, Contrast, and Condition

#### ☐ Exercise 1. Warm-up. (Chart 19-1)

Which sentences express the same meaning as the given situation?

SITUATION: Monday was a holiday.

RESULT: All schools were closed.

- 1. All schools were closed on Monday because it was a holiday.
- 2. Because of the holiday, all schools were closed on Monday.
- 3. Due to the holiday, all schools were closed on Monday.
- 4. Due to the fact that it was a holiday, all schools were closed on Monday.
- 5. Because all schools were closed on Monday, it was a holiday.

19-1 Using Because Of and Due To			
(a) Because the weather was cold, we stayed home.	Because introduces an adverb clause; it is followed by a subject and a verb, as in (a).		
<ul><li>(b) Because of the cold weather, we stayed home.</li><li>(c) Due to the cold weather, we stayed home.</li></ul>	Because of and due to are phrasal prepositions; they are followed by a noun object, as in (b) and (c).		
(d) Due to the fact that the weather was cold, we stayed home.	Sometimes (Usually in more formal writing) due to is followed by a noun clause introduced by the fact that.		
(e) We stayed home because of the cold weather. We stayed home due to the cold weather. We stayed home due to the fact that the weather was cold.	Like adverb clauses, these phrases can also follow the main clause, as in (e).		

# ☐ Exercise 2. Looking at grammar. (Charts 17-3 and 19-1)

Identify the cause and effect in each pair of sentences. Then combine the sentences with because.

- 1. Jon is a heavy smoker. Jon has breathing problems.
- 2. Martina feels homesick. Martina moved to a new town.
- 3. Mr. Jordan's house has no heat. Mr. Jordan lost his job.
- 4. Victor has gained weight. Victor is going to eat less.

		mplete the sentences with <i>because</i>			
	1.	We postponed our trip	the bad driving conditions.		
	2.	Sue's eyes were red	she had been swimming in a chlorinated pool.		
	3.	We can't visit the museum tomo	orrow it isn't open.		
	4.	Jim had to give up jogging	his sprained ankle.		
	5.	heavy fog	at the airport, our plane was delayed for several hours.		
	6.	the elevate	or was broken, we had to walk up six flights of stairs.		
	7.	Thousands of Irish people emig	rated to the United States the potato		
		famine in Ireland in the mid-19	th century.		
ū		ercise 4. Looking at grammar mplete the sentences with the ide			
	1.	. (The traffic was heavy.) We were late to the meeting due tothe heavy traffic			
	2.		all of the cooking and cleaning because of		
	3.	(It was noisy in the next apartmen	t.) I couldn't get to sleep last night because of		
	4.	(Our parents are generous.) Beca	use of,		
			have received the best of everything.		
	5.	(Circumstances are beyond our con	atrol.) Due to		
			, our office is closed today.		
		ercise 5. Warm-up. (Chart leck (🗸) the sentences that logical	9-2) ly complete the idea of the given sentence.		
	Nac	dia likes fresh vegetables.			
	1.	Therefore, she has a vegeta	able garden in her yard.		
	2.	As a result, she doesn't gro	ow her own vegetables.		
	3.	Therefore, she buys canne	d vegetables at the store.		
	4.	As a result, she buys produ	ice from local farmers.		
	5.	She eats a lot of frozen veg	etables, therefore.		
	6.	Consequently, she eats pro	oduce from her garden.		

#### 19-2 Cause and Effect: Using Therefore, Consequently, and So (a) Al failed the test because he didn't study. Examples (a), (b), and (c) have the same meaning. Therefore and consequently mean "as a result." In (b) Al didn't study. Therefore, he failed the test. grammar, they are called transitions (or conjunctive adverbs). (c) Al didn't study. Consequently, he failed the test. Transitions connect the ideas between two sentences. They are used most commonly in formal written English and rarely in spoken English. (d) Al didn't study. Therefore, he failed the test. A transition occurs in the second of two related sentences (e) Al didn't study. He, therefore, failed the test. Notice the patterns and punctuation in the examples. A (f) Al didn't study. He failed the test, therefore. period (NOT a comma) is used at the end of the first sentence.\* The transition has several positions in the second POSITIONS OF A TRANSITION: sentence. The transition is separated from the rest of the transition + S + V (+ rest of sentence) sentence by commas. S + transition + V (+ rest of sentence) S + V (+ rest of sentence) + transition In (q): So is used as a conjunction between two independent (g) Al didn't study, so he failed the test. clauses. It has the same meaning as therefore. So is common in both formal written and spoken English. A comma usually precedes so when it connects two sentences, as in (g). \*A semicolon is also possible in this situation. See the footnote to Chart 19-3. **Exercise 6. Looking at grammar.** (Chart 19-2) Rewrite the sentence with the given words. Punctuate carefully. The children stayed home because a storm was approaching. 1. therefore 2. consequently 3. so Exercise 7. Looking at grammar. (Charts 17-3, 19-1, and 19-2) Punctuate the sentences. Add capital letters as necessary. NOTE: Two sentences need no changes. 1. adverb clause: Because it was cold she wore a coat. 2. adverb clause: She wore a coat because it was cold. 3. prepositional phrase: Because of the cold weather she wore a coat.

She wore a coat because of the cold weather.

The weather was cold therefore she wore a coat.

The weather was cold she wore a coat therefore.

The weather was cold so she wore a coat.

4. prepositional phrase:

5. transition:

6. transition:

7. conjunction:

#### Exercise 8. Looking at grammar. (Charts 17-3, 19-1, and 19-2)

Punctuate the sentences. Add capital letters as necessary.

- 1. Pat always enjoyed studying sciences in high school therefore she decided to major in biology in college.
- 2. Due to recent improvements in the economy fewer people are unemployed.
- 3. Last night's storm damaged the power lines consequently the town was without electricity.
- 4. Due to the snowstorm only five students came to class the teacher therefore canceled the class.

#### Exercise 9. Warm-up. (Chart 19-3)

Check  $(\checkmark)$  the sentences that have the correct punctuation.

- 1. \_\_\_\_ Doctors sometimes recommend yoga for their patients. Because it can lower stress.
- 2. \_\_\_\_ Because yoga can lower stress doctors sometimes recommend it for their patients.
- 3. \_\_\_\_ Yoga can lower stress. Doctors, therefore, sometimes recommend it for their patients.
- 4. \_\_\_\_ Yoga can lower stress, so doctors sometimes recommend it for their patients.

19-3 Summary of Patterns and Punctuation			
Adverb Clauses	<ul><li>(a) Because it was hot, we went swimming.</li><li>(b) We went swimming because it was hot.</li></ul>	An adverb clause may precede or follow an independent clause.  PUNCTUATION: A comma is used if the adverb clause comes first.	
Prepositions	<ul> <li>(c) Because of the hot weather, we went swimming.</li> <li>(d) We went swimming because of the hot weather.</li> </ul>	A preposition is followed by a noun object, not by a subject and verb.  PUNCTUATION: A comma is usually used if the prepositional phrase precedes the subject and verb of the independent clause.	
Transitions	(e) It was hot. <i>Therefore</i> , we went swimming.  (f) It was hot. We, therefore, went swimming.  (g) It was hot. We went swimming, therefore.	A transition is used with the second sentence of a pair. It shows the relationship of the second idea to the first idea. A transition is movable within the second sentence.  PUNCTUATION: A period is used between the two independent clauses.* A comma may NOT be used to separate the clauses. Commas are usually used to set the transition off from the rest of the sentence.	
Conjunctions	(h) It was hot, so we went swimming.	A conjunction comes between two independent clauses.  PUNCTUATION: Usually a comma is used immediately in front of a conjunction.	

<sup>\*</sup>A semicolon (;) may be used instead of a period between the two independent clauses.

It was hot; therefore, we went swimming.

It was hot; we, therefore, went swimming.

It was hot; we went swimming, therefore.

In general, a semicolon can be used instead of a period between any two sentences that are closely related in meaning: *Peanuts are not nuts; they are beans.* Notice that a small letter, NOF a capital letter, immediately follows a semicolon.

#### **Exercise 10. Looking at grammar.** (Charts 17-3 and 19-3)

Combine the sentences using the given words. Discuss correct punctuation.

#### We postponed our trip. The weather was bad.

Example: because  $\rightarrow$  We postponed our trip because the weather was bad. → **Because** the weather was bad, we postponed our trip.

- 1. therefore
- 3. so

5. consequently

- 2. since
- 4. because of 6. due to the fact that

#### **Exercise 11. Looking at grammar.** (Charts 17-3, 19-2, and 19-3)

Combine each pair of ideas with the words in parentheses.

- 1. My cell phone doesn't work. The battery is dead. (because)
  - → My cell phone doesn't work because the battery is dead. OR
  - → Because the battery is dead, my cell phone doesn't work.
- 2. Pat doesn't want to return to the Yukon to live. The winters are too severe. (because)
- 3. It is important to wear a hat on cold days. We lose sixty percent of our body heat through our head. (since)
- 4. Bill couldn't pick us up after the concert. His car wouldn't start. (therefore)
- 5. When I was in my teens and twenties, it was easy for me to get into an argument with my father. Both of us can be stubborn and opinionated. (because)
- 6. A camel can go completely without water for eight to ten days. It is an ideal animal for desert areas. (due to the fact that)
- 7. Robert emailed the software company for technical support. He got some new business software that didn't work. (so)
- 8. A tomato is classified as a fruit, but most people consider it a vegetable. It is often eaten in salads along with lettuce, onions, cucumbers, and other vegetables. (since)
- 9. There is consumer demand for ivory. Many African elephants are being slaughtered ruthlessly. Many people who care about saving these animals from extinction refuse to buy any item made from ivory. (due to, consequently)
- 10. Most 15th-century Europeans believed the world was flat and that a ship could conceivably sail off the end of the earth. Many sailors of the time refused to venture forth with explorers into unknown waters. (because)

#### Exercise 12. Warm-up. (Chart 19-4)

Read about Alan and Lisa. Imagine their reactions as parents and complete the sentences with phrases in the list or your own ideas. What do you notice about so/such and the words in blue?

SITUATION: Alan and Lisa are the proud parents of triplets. Before their triplets were born, however, they were told they were going to have twins. Imagine their surprise when they found out they were the parents of three babies. Alan was incredibly happy. Lisa was utterly exhausted.

couldn't laugh or cry began to cry fell asleep called friends danced around the room went into shock 1. Ed was so happy that he . . . . 3. Ed was such a happy dad that he . . . . 4. Lisa was *such* a tired mom that she . . . . 2. Lisa was so tired that she . . . .

# **19-4** Other Ways of Expressing Cause and Effect: Such ... That and So ... That

<ul> <li>(a) Because the weather was nice, we went to the zoo.</li> <li>(b) It was such nice weather that we went to the zoo.</li> <li>(c) The weather was so nice that we went to the zoo.</li> </ul>	Examples (a), (b), and (c) have the same meaning.
(d) It was such good coffee that I had another cup.  (e) It was such a foggy day that we couldn't see the road.	Such that encloses a modified noun: such + adjective + noun + that
(f) The coffee is so hot that I can't drink it. (g) I'm so hungry that I could eat a horse. (h) She speaks so fast that I can't understand her. (i) He walked so quickly that I couldn't keep up with him.	So that encloses an adjective or adverb: $so + \begin{cases} adjective \\ or \\ adverb \end{cases} + that$
<ul> <li>(j) She made so many mistakes that she failed the exam.</li> <li>(k) He has so few friends that he is always lonely.</li> <li>(l) She has so much money that she can buy whatever she wants.</li> <li>(m) He had so little trouble with the test that he left twenty minutes early.</li> </ul>	So that is used with many, few, much, and little.
(n) It was such a good book (that) I couldn't put it down. (o) I was so hungry (that) I didn't wait for dinner to eat something.	Sometimes, primarily in speaking, <i>that</i> is omitted.

# **Exercise 13. Looking at grammar.** (Chart 19-4)

Complete the sentences with **so** or **such**.

- 1. It was <u>such</u> an enjoyable party that no one wanted to leave.
- 2. The party was \_\_\_\_\_ 50\_\_ enjoyable that no one wanted to leave.
- 3. We had \_\_\_\_\_ 50\_\_\_ much fun that no one wanted to leave.
- 4. Maya is \_\_\_\_\_ afraid of flying that she travels by train or bus.
- 5. You've been \_\_\_\_\_ kind that I don't know how to thank you.
- 6. The article had \_\_\_\_\_ little current information that it wasn't useful.
- 7. The teacher has repeated herself \_\_\_\_\_ many times that it's becoming a joke.
- 8. It was \_\_\_\_\_ a long trip abroad that I got very homesick.
- 9. My elderly aunt has \_\_\_\_\_ few friends that I am beginning to worry about her.

## Exercise 14. Let's talk. (Chart 19-4)

Work in small groups. Take turns making sentences using so/such . . . that with the given ideas. Try to exaggerate your answers. Share your favorite sentences with the class.

Example: I'm hungry. In fact, I'm . . . .

- → I'm so hungry. In fact, I'm so hungry (that) I could eat a horse.
- 1. I'm really tired. In fact, I'm . . . .
- 2. I didn't expect it! I was really surprised. In fact, I was . . . .

- 3. I took a very slow bus to town. In fact, it was . . . .
- 4. I saw a shark while I was swimming in the ocean. I was frightened. In fact, I was . . . .
- 5. We rented a video. It was a very exciting movie. In fact, it was . . . .
- 6. The weather was really, really hot. In fact, it was . . . .
- 7. My wallet fell out of my pocket and I lost a lot of money. In fact, I lost . . . .
- 8. I ordered an expensive meal at a restaurant. The server brought a small plate with a tiny amount of food to your table. In fact, it was . . . .

#### Exercise 15. Looking at grammar. (Chart 19-4)

Make sentences using so or such by combining the ideas in Column A and Column B.

Example: The wind was strong. -> The wind was so strong that it blew my hat off my head.

#### Column A

- 1. The wind was strong.
- 2. The radio was too loud.
- 3. Olga did poor work.
- 4. The food was too hot.
- 5. There are many leaves on a single tree.
- 6. The tornado struck with great force.
- 7. Few students showed up for class.
- 8. Charles used too much paper when he was writing his report.

#### Column B

- a. It burned my tongue.
- b. She was fired from her job.
- ✓c. It blew my hat off my head.
  - d. The teacher postponed the test.
  - e. It is impossible to count them.
  - f. It lifted cars off the ground.
  - g. I couldn't hear what Michael was saying.
- h. The wastepaper basket overflowed.



## Exercise 16. Warm-up. (Chart 19-5)

Check  $(\checkmark)$  the sentences that correctly complete the given sentence.

Kay got a new job so that . . .

- 1. \_\_\_\_ she could be closer to home.
- 2. \_\_\_\_ she is very excited.
- \_ her husband is taking her out to dinner to celebrate.
- 4. \_\_\_\_ she could earn more money.

# 19-5 Expressing Purpose: Using So That

- (a) I turned off the TV *in order to enable my roommate* to study in peace and quiet.
- (b) I turned off the TV so (that) my roommate could study in peace and quiet.

In order to expresses purpose. (See Chart 15-1, p. 331.) In (a): I turned off the TV for a purpose. The purpose was to make it possible for my roommate to study in peace and quiet.

#### So That + Can or Could

- (c) I'm going to cash a check so that I can buy my textbooks.
- (d) I cashed a check so that I could buy my textbooks.

So that also expresses purpose.\* It expresses the same meaning as in order to. The word "that" is often omitted, especially in speaking.

So that is often used instead of in order to when the idea of ability is being expressed. Can is used in the adverb clause for a present/future meaning.

In (c): so that I can buy = in order to be able to buy

Could is used after so that in past sentences, as in (d).\*\*

#### So That + Will / Would or Simple Present

- (e) I'll take my umbrella so that I won't get wet.
- (f) Yesterday I took my umbrella so that I wouldn't get wet.
- (g) I'll take my umbrella so that I don't get wet.

In (e): so that I won't get wet = in order to make sure that I won't get wet

Would is used in past sentences, as in (f).

In (g): It is sometimes possible to use the simple present after *so that* in place of *will*; the simple present expresses a future meaning.

\*NOTE: In order that has the same meaning as so that but is less commonly used.

Example: I turned off the TV in order that my roommate could study in peace and quiet.

Both so that and in order that introduce adverb clauses. It is unusual but possible to put these adverb clauses at the beginning of a sentence: So that my roommate could study in peace and quiet, I turned off the TV.

\*\*Also possible but less common: the use of *may* or *might* in place of *can* or *could* (e.g., *I cashed a check so that I might buy my textbooks.*).

## Exercise 17. Looking at grammar. (Chart 19-5)

Combine each set of ideas by using so (that).

- 1. Please turn down the radio. I want to be able to get to sleep.
  - $\rightarrow$  Please turn down the radio so (that) I can get to sleep.
- 2. My wife turned down the radio. I wanted to be able to get to sleep.
  - → My wife turned down the radio so (that) I could get to sleep.
- 3. Put the milk in the refrigerator. We want to make sure it won't (OR doesn't) spoil.
  - → Put the milk in the refrigerator so (that) it won't (OR doesn't) spoil.
- 4. I put the milk in the refrigerator. I wanted to make sure it didn't spoil.
  - → I put the milk in the refrigerator so (that) it wouldn't spoil.
- 5. Please be quiet. I want to be able to hear what Sharon is saying.
- 6. I asked the children to be quiet. I wanted to be able to hear what Sharon was saying.
- 7. I'm going to cash a check. I want to make sure that I have enough money to go to the store.
- 8. I cashed a check yesterday. I wanted to make sure that I had enough money to go to the store.

- 9. Ann and Larry have a six-year-old child. Tonight they're going to hire a babysitter. They want to be able to go out with some friends.
- 10. Last week Ann and Larry hired a babysitter. They wanted to be able to go to a dinner party at the home of Larry's boss.
- 11. Be sure to put the meat in the oven at 5:00. You want to be sure that it will be (OR is) ready to eat by 6:30.
- 12. Yesterday I put the meat in the oven at 5:00. I wanted it to be ready to eat by 6:30.
- 13. I'm going to leave the party early. I want to be able to get a good night's sleep tonight.
- 14. When it started to rain, Harry opened his umbrella. He wanted to be sure he didn't get wet.
- 15. The little boy pretended to be sick. He wanted to stay home from school.

#### **Exercise 18. Looking at grammar.** (Charts 19-2 and 19-5)

Add that to the sentence if so means in order that. If so means therefore, add a comma.

- 1. I borrowed some money so  $\wedge$  I could pay my rent.
- 2. I didn't have enough money for a movie, so I went home and watched TV.
- 3. I need a visa so I can travel overseas.
- 4. I needed a visa so I went to the embassy to apply for one.
- 5. Marta is trying to improve her English so she can become a tour guide.
- 6. Olga wants to improve her English so she has hired a tutor.
- 7. Tarek borrowed money from his parents so he could start his own business.
- 8. I turned off the TV so I could concentrate on my paperwork.

#### Exercise 19. Warm-up. (Chart 19-6)

Usually when someone breaks an arm, he/she goes to a doctor. That is expected behavior. Answer the same question about expected behavior for each statement. Circle yes or no.

		EXPECT BEHAVIO	
1.	Ron broke his arm, but he didn't go to the doctor.	yes	no
2.	Joe went to the doctor because he broke his arm.	yes	no
3.	Sue broke her arm, so she went to the doctor.	yes	no
4.	Amy broke her arm; nevertheless, she didn't go to the doctor.	yes	no
5.	Despite having a broken arm, Rick didn't go to the doctor.	yes	no
6.	Eva was in so much pain from her broken arm that she went to		
	the doctor.	yes	no
7.	Jeff broke his arm; therefore, he went to the doctor.	yes	no

# 19-6 Showing Contrast (Unexpected Result)

All of these sentences have the same meaning. The idea of cold weather is contrasted with the idea of going swimming. Usually if the weather is cold, one does not go swimming, so going swimming in cold weather is an "unexpected result." It is surprising that the speaker went swimming in cold weather.

Adverb Clauses	even though although though	<ul> <li>(a) Even though it was cold, I went swimming.</li> <li>(b) Although it was cold, I went swimming.</li> <li>(c) Though it was cold, I went swimming.</li> </ul>
Conjunctions	but anyway but still yet still	<ul> <li>(d) It was cold, but I went swimming anyway.</li> <li>(e) It was cold, but I still went swimming.</li> <li>(f) It was cold, yet I still went swimming.</li> </ul>
Transitions	nevertheless nonetheless however still	<ul> <li>(g) It was cold. Nevertheless, I went swimming.</li> <li>(h) It was cold; nonetheless, I went swimming.</li> <li>(i) It was cold. However, I still went swimming.</li> </ul>
Prepositions	despite in spite of despite the fact that in spite of the fact that	<ul> <li>(j) I went swimming despite the cold weather.</li> <li>(k) I went swimming in spite of the cold weather.</li> <li>(l) I went swimming despite the fact that the weather was cold.</li> <li>(m) I went swimming in spite of the fact that the weather was cold.</li> </ul>

_	exercise 20. Looking at graffilliat. (Charis 19-2 and 19-6)
	Complete the sentences with <i>inside</i> or <i>outside</i> to make logical statements.
	1. To refer all have one will be discussed discussion.

- 1. It rained, but we still had our wedding \_\_\_\_\_\_.
- 2. It rained, so we had our wedding \_\_\_\_\_\_.
- 3. It rained; nevertheless, we had our wedding \_\_\_\_\_\_.
- 4. Though it rained, we had our wedding \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5. Even though it rained, we had our wedding \_\_\_\_\_
- 6. Although it rained, we had our wedding \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7. Despite the fact that it rained, we had our wedding \_\_\_\_\_
- 8. It rained; therefore, we had our wedding \_\_\_\_\_\_.

# Exercise 21. Looking at grammar. (Chart 19-6)

Complete the sentences with am or am not to make logical statements.

- 1. The roads are icy; nevertheless, I \_\_\_\_\_ going shopping.
- 2. Though the roads are icy, I \_\_\_\_\_ staying home.
- 3. Even though the roads are icy, I \_\_\_\_\_ going shopping.
- 4. I \_\_\_\_\_\_ going shopping although the roads are icy.
- 5. The roads are icy, yet I \_\_\_\_\_\_ going shopping anyway.
- 6. Despite the fact that the roads are icy, I \_\_\_\_\_ staying home.
- 7. In spite of the icy roads, I \_\_\_\_\_ going shopping.

Par	t I. Complete the sentences with b	ut, even though, or nevertheless.
1.	Bob ate a large dinner.	, he is still hungry.
2.	Bob ate a large dinner,	he is still hungry.
3.	Bob is still hungry	he ate a large dinner.
4.	I had a lot of studying to do,	I went to a movie anyway.
5.	I had a lot of studying to do.	, I went to a movie.
6.	I had a	lot of studying to do, I went to a movie.
7.	I finished all of my work	I was very sleepy.
8.	I was very sleepy,	I finished all of my work anyway.
9.	I was very sleepy.	, I finished all of my work.
13.		she jumped into the pool.
		n't know how to swim, she jumped into the pool, she jumped into the pool.
	ercise 23. Looking at gramm commas, periods, and capital letter	nar. (Chart 19-6) s as necessary. Do not add, omit, or change any wo
1.		advice nevertheless she did not follow it.  d advice. Nevertheless, she did not follow it.
2.	Anna's father gave her some good	advice but she didn't follow it.
3.	Even though Anna's father gave he	er some good advice she didn't follow it.
4.	Anna's father gave her some good	advice she did not follow it however.
5.	Thomas was thirsty I offered him	some water he refused it.
6.	Thomas refused the water althoug	th he was thirsty.

8. Thomas was thirsty yet he refused to drink the water that I offered him.

#### ☐ Exercise 24. Looking at grammar. (Chart 19-6)

Combine the sentences using the given words. Discuss correct punctuation. Use the negative if necessary to make a logical statement.

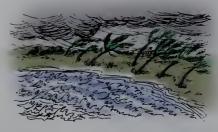
#### His grades were low. He was admitted to the university.

- 1. even though
- 2. but ... anyway
- 3. yet . . . still

- 4. nonetheless
- 5. despite
- 6. because of

#### Exercise 25. Warm-up. (Chart 19-7)

Read the question and the answers that follow. Which answers express "direct contrast," i.e., the idea that "this" is the opposite of "that"?



hurricane



tornado

What is the difference between hurricanes and tornadoes?

- 1. Hurricanes develop over warm oceans while tornadoes form over land.
- 2. Hurricanes develop while they are traveling over warm ocean water.
- 3. Hurricanes develop over warm oceans, but tornadoes form over land.
- 4. Hurricanes develop over warm oceans; however, tornadoes form over land.
- 5. Hurricanes develop over warm oceans; on the other hand, tornadoes form over land.

#### 19-7 Showing Direct Contrast All of the sentences have the same meaning: "This" is the opposite of "that." Adverb Clauses while (a) Mary is rich, while John is poor.\* (b) John is poor, while Mary is rich. Conjunctions but (c) Mary is rich, but John is poor. (d) John is poor, but Mary is rich. (e) Mary is rich; however, John is poor. Transitions however (f) John is poor; Mary is rich, however. on the other hand (g) Mary is rich. John, on the other hand, is poor. (h) John is poor. Mary, on the other hand, is rich.

<sup>\*</sup>Sometimes a comma precedes a while-clause that shows direct contrast. A comma helps clarify that while is being used to express contrast rather than time. The use of a comma in this instance is a stylistic choice by the writer.

#### Exercise 26. Looking at grammar. (Chart 19-7)

Make two sentences with the same meaning as the given sentence. Use however or on the other hand. Punctuate carefully.

- 1. Florida has a warm climate, while Alaska has a cold climate.
- 2. While Fred is a good student, his brother is lazy.
- 3. Elderly people in my country usually live with their children, but the elderly in the United States often live by themselves.

#### Exercise 27. Looking at grammar. (Chart 19-7)

Complete the sentences with your own words.

- 1. Some people really enjoy swimming, while others . . . are afraid of water.
- 2. In the United States, people drive on the right-hand side of the road. However, people in . . . .
- 3. While my desk always seems to be a mess, my . . . .
- 4. My oldest son is shy, while my youngest son . . . .

#### **Exercise 28. Let's talk or write.** (Chart 19-7)

Part I. Read the information below about extroverts and introverts. Make several sentences with the words in the list, either orally or in writing using the words but, however, on the other hand, or while.

#### General Characteristics of Extroverts and Introverts

#### Extroverts . . .

like to be the center of attention. like to talk more than listen. enjoy meeting people. prefer being active. like to work in groups. don't always think before speaking. don't mind noise. like crowds. are energized by being with others.

#### Introverts . . .

are uncomfortable being the center of attention. like to listen more than talk. are reserved when meeting people. like to spend time alone. don't like to work in groups. think carefully before speaking. prefer the quiet. avoid crowds. can find it tiring to spend time with others.

#### Examples:

- → Extroverts like to talk more than listen, while introverts like to listen more than talk.
- → Introverts like to listen more than talk. Extroverts, however, like to talk more than listen.

Part II. Are you an extrovert or introvert? Compare yourself to someone you know who is different from you. Make several sentences.

#### Exercise 29. Let's talk. (Chart 19-7)

Think of two different countries you are familiar with. How are they different? Use while, however, on the other hand, and but. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

- 1. size
- 2. population
- 3. food
- 4. time of meals
- 5. economic system
- 6. educational system
- 7. role of women
- 8. language

- 9. educational costs
- 10. medical care
- 11. public transportation
- 12. dating customs

#### Exercise 30. Warm-up. (Chart 19-8)

Choose the logical verb for each sentence: can or can't.

SITUATION: Sarah drinks coffee every morning. It wakes her up.

- 1. If Sarah drinks coffee in the morning, she can / can't wake up quickly.
- 2. Unless Sarah drinks coffee in the morning, she can / can't wake up quickly.
- 3. Sarah drinks coffee every morning; otherwise, she can / can't wake up quickly.
- 4. Sarah drinks coffee in the morning, or else she can / can't wake up quickly.

19-8 Expressing Conditions: Using Otherwise and Or (Else)							
Adverb Clauses	<ul> <li>(a) If I don't eat breakfast, I get hungry.</li> <li>(b) You'll be late if you don't hurry.</li> <li>(c) You'll get wet unless you take your umbrella.</li> </ul>	If and unless state conditions that produce certain results. (See Charts 17-6 and 17-10, pp. 377 and 382.)					
Transitions	<ul> <li>(d) I always eat breakfast. <i>Otherwise</i>, I get hungry during class.</li> <li>(e) You'd better hurry. <i>Otherwise</i>, you'll be late.</li> <li>(f) Take your umbrella. <i>Otherwise</i>, you'll get wet.</li> </ul>	Otherwise expresses the idea "if the opposite is true, then there will be a certain result."  In (d): otherwise = if I don't eat breakfast					
Conjunctions	<ul> <li>(g) I always eat breakfast, or (else) I get hungry during class.</li> <li>(h) You'd better hurry, or (else) you'll be late.</li> <li>(i) Take your umbrella, or (else) you'll get wet.</li> </ul>	Or else and otherwise have the same meaning.					

#### Exercise 31. Looking at grammar. (Chart 19-8)

Make sentences with the same meaning as the given sentence. Use otherwise.

- 1. If I don't call my mother, she'll start worrying about me.
  - → I am going to / should / had better / have to / must call my mother. Otherwise, she'll start worrying about me.
- 2. If you don't leave now, you'll be late for class.
- 3. Unless you have a ticket, you can't get into the theater.
- 4. You can't enter that country unless you have a passport.
- 5. If Tom doesn't get a job soon, his family won't have enough money for food.
- 6. Only if you speak both Japanese and Chinese fluently will you be considered for that job.\*
- 7. Mary can go to school only if she gets a scholarship.
- 8. If I don't wash my clothes tonight, I won't have any clean clothes to wear tomorrow.

<sup>\*</sup>Notice that the subject and verb in the main clause are inverted because the sentence begins with *only if.* See Chart 17-11, p. 383.

# 19-9 Summary of Connectives: Cause and Effect, Contrast, and Condition

	Adverb Claus	e Words	Transitions	Conjunctions	Prepositions
Cause and Effect	because since now that	so (that)	therefore consequently	so	because of due to
Contrast	even though although though	while	however nevertheless nonetheless on the other hand	but ( anyway) yet ( still)	despite in spite of
Condition	if unless only if even if whether or not	in case	otherwise	or (else)	

<b>Exercise 32</b>	. Looking	at grammar.	(Chart 19-9)
			(011011111

Using the two ideas of "to study" and "to pass or fail the exam," complete the sentences. Punctuate and capitalize as necessary.

1.	Because I did not study <u>I failed the exam</u> .	_
2.	I failed the exam because	
3.	Although I studied	
4.	I did not study therefore	
5.	I did not study however	
6.	I studied nevertheless	
7.	Even though I did not study	
8.	I did not study so	
9.	Since I did not study	
10.	If I study for the exam	
11.	Unless I study for the exam	
12.	I must study otherwise	
13.	Even if I study	
14.	I did not study consequently	
15.	I did not study nonetheless	

17.	Only if I study	
18.	I studied hard yet	
19.	You'd better study or else	
	ercise 33. Listening. (Chart 19-9) en to each sentence and choose the logical	completion (a. or b.).
Exa	mple: You will hear: I was exhausted wh You will choose: (a.) I didn't take a na	_
1.	a. my back gets sore.	b. my back doesn't get sore.
2.	a. my old one works fine.	b. my old one doesn't work.
3.	a. I hurry.	b. I don't hurry.
4.	a. I hurried.	b. I didn't hurry.
5.	a. our offices are hot.	b. our offices aren't hot.
6.	a. the noise bothers me.	b. the noise doesn't bother me.

# ☐ Exercise 34. Game. (Charts 17-2, 19-4, and 19-9)

7. a. I fell asleep during dinner.

16. I will probably fail the exam whether

Work in teams. Combine these two ideas using the words below the example. The time is now, so use present and future tenses. The team that correctly combines the most sentences wins.

b. I didn't fall asleep during dinner.

## to go (or not to go) to the beach \ hot, cold, nice weather

#### Example: because

- → Because the weather is cold, we aren't going to go to the beach.
- → We're going to go to the beach **because** the weather is hot.

1.	so that	8.	because of	15.	therefore
2.	so	9.	consequently	16.	only if
3.	nevertheless	10.	as soon as	17.	nonetheless
4.	despite	11.	such that	18.	in spite of
5.	now that	12.	since	19.	even if
6.	once	13.	but anyway	20.	yet still
7	although	14.	unless	21.	whether or not

#### Exercise 35. Reading. (Chart 19-9)

Part I. Read the passage comparing optimists and pessimists.

#### Optimists vs. Pessimists

Have you ever heard the expression that a glass is half full or half empty? If not, imagine that you are looking at a glass that is filled exactly halfway with liquid. Now, is the glass half full or half empty to you? People who say it is half full are called optimists, while people who say it is half empty are called pessimists. In simple terms, optimists see the best in the world, while pessimists see the worst.



One of the clearest ways to see the differences between the two is to look at the way optimists and pessimists explain events. When something bad happens, optimists tend to see the event as a single event which does not affect other areas of their lives. For example, Sarah is an optimistic person. When she gets a low grade on a test, she will say something like this to herself: "Oh well, that was one test I didn't do well on. I wasn't feeling well that day. I have another test in a few weeks. I'll do better on that one."

Pessimists, on the other hand, will feel that an event is just one of a string of bad events affecting their lives, and that they're somehow the cause of it. Let's take a look at Susan. She is a pessimist. When she gets a low grade on a test, she might say: "I failed again. I never do well on tests. I'm stupid. I should just quit trying." And when something does go well for Susan, she often attributes her success to luck. She may say, "I was just lucky that time," and she doesn't expect to do well again. While optimists don't see themselves as failures, pessimists do.

Research has shown that optimism can be a learned trait and that, despite their upbringing, people can train themselves to respond to events in more positive terms. For example, Paul has a tendency to react negatively to events. The first thing he has to do is become conscious of that behavior. Once he identifies how he is reacting, he can reframe his thoughts in more positive terms, as Sarah did when she failed the test. As Paul begins to do more of this, he forms new patterns of response, and over time these responses become more automatic. Gradually he can develop a more positive outlook on life.

What about you? How do you see life? Is the glass half full or half empty?

#### **Part II.** Complete the sentences with information from the reading.

- 1. Optimists think positively about life, while . . . .
- 2. An optimist may do poorly on a test; nevertheless, . . . .
- 3. Things sometimes go well for a pessimist; however, . . . .
- 4. Pessimists see themselves as failures; on the other hand, . . . .
- 5. Optimists don't see a single event affecting other areas of their lives; consequently, . . . .
- 6. Optimists see the best in the world; therefore, . . . .
- 7. Optimists see the best in the world; however, . . . .
- 8. Although people may have been raised as pessimists, . . . .
- 9. If a pessimist wants to change how he reacts, . . . .

## Exercise 36. Listening. (Chapters 17 → 19)

Part I. Answer these questions. Then listen to the lecture with your book closed.

- 1. What makes you yawn?
- 2. Do you yawn when others around you yawn?

Part II. Open your book and read the statements. Circle "T" for true and "F" for false.

1.	Yawning is so contagious that when one person	
	yawns, others nearby may yawn as well.	

According to the speaker, people are not necessarily

3. According to the speaker, people yawn only if others around them yawn.

tired even though they may yawn.

4. It's been proven that unless people yawn, they can't stay awake.

5. It's possible that at some point in history, people yawned so that they could stay awake and keep others awake in times of danger.

6. According to the speaker, if you are talking to people and they begin yawning, you can be certain that they have become bored by you.

T F

T

T

T

T

T

F

F

F

F

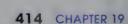
F

## Exercise 37. Check your knowledge. (Chapters 1 → 19)

These sentences are taken from student writing. You are the editor for these students. Rewrite the sentences, correcting errors, combining ideas, and making whatever revisions in phrasing or vocabulary you feel will help the writers say what they intended to say.

Example: My idea of the most important thing in life. It is to be healthy. Because a person can't enjoy life without health.

- In my opinion, the most important thing in life is good health because a person cannot enjoy life fully without it.
- 1. We went shopping after ate dinner. But the stores were closed. We had to go back home even we hadn't found what were we looking for.
- 2. I want explain that I know a lot of grammars but is my problem I haven't enough vocabularies.
- 3. When I got lost in the bus station a kind man helped me, he explained how to read the huge bus schedule on the wall. Took me to the window to buy a ticket and showed me where was my bus, I will always appreciate his kindness.



- 4. I had never understand the important of know English language. Until I worked at a large international company.
- 5. Since I was young my father found an American woman to teach me and my brothers English, but when we move to other town my father wasn't able to find other teacher for other five years.
- 6. I was surprised to see the room that I was given at the dormitory. Because there aren't any furniture, and dirty.
- 7. When I meet Mr. Lee for the first time, we played video games at the student center even though we can't communicate very well, but we had a good time.
- 8. Because the United States is a large and also big country. It means that they're various kinds of people live there and it has a diverse population.
- 9. My grammar class was start at 10:35. When the teacher was coming to class, she returned the last quiz to my classmates and I. After we have had another quiz.
- 10. If a wife has a work, her husband should share the houseworks with her. If both of them help, the houseworks can be finish much faster.
- 11. The first time I went skiing. I was afraid to go down the hill. But then I think to myself, "Why not? Give it a try. You'll make it!" After stand around for ten minutes without moving. Finally, I decided go down that hill.

## **Exercise 38. Listening and writing.** (Chapter 19)



Listen to each passage twice. Then work together in pairs or small groups to write out the passage. Summarize what you heard. Then listen again and revise your writing as necessary.

PASSAGE 1: Turtles

PASSAGE 2: Boy or Girl?

#### **Exercise 1. Warm-up.** (Chart 20-1)

Each sentence talks about a "condition" and the "result" of this condition. <u>Underline</u> the result clause in each sentence. Notice the verbs in blue. In which sentence does a past verb refer to present or future time?

- 1. If I have extra money, I usually buy computer equipment with it.
- 2. I will buy a new laptop computer next month if I have some extra money.
- 3. If I had some extra money, I would buy a new laptop today or tomorrow.
- 4. I would have bought a new laptop last month if I had had some extra money.

# **20-1** Overview of Basic Verb Forms Used in Conditional Sentences

Situation	If-clause	Result clause	Examples
True in the Present/Future	simple present	will + simple form	If I have enough time, I watch TV every evening.  If I have enough time, I will watch TV later on tonight.
Untrue in the Present/Future	simple past	would + simple form	If I had enough time, I would watch TV now or later on.
Untrue in the Past	past perfect	would have + past participle	If I had had enough time, I would have watched TV yesterday.

## ☐ Exercise 2. Looking at grammar. (Chart 20-1)

Complete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses.

- 1. I usually send my parents an email every week. That is a true fact. In other words:

  If I (have) \_\_\_\_\_ have \_\_\_\_ enough time, I (send) \_\_\_\_\_ send \_\_\_\_ my parents an email every week.
- 2. I may have enough time to send my parents an email later tonight. I want to send them an email tonight. Both of those things are true. In other words:

If I (have)	enough time, I (send)	my
parents an	email later tonight.	

3.	I don't have enough time right now, so I won't send my parents an email. I'll try to do it later. I want to email them, but the truth is that I just don't have enough time right now. In other words:
	If I (have) enough time right now, I (send) my parents an email.
4.	I won't have enough time tonight, so I won't send my parents an email. I'll try to do it tomorrow. I want to email them, but the truth is that I just won't have enough time. In other words:
	If I (have) enough time later tonight, I (send) my parents an email.
5.	I wanted to send my parents an email last night, but I didn't have enough time. In other words:
	If I (have) enough time, I (send) my parents an email last night.
	ercise 3. Warm-up. (Chart 20-2) cuss the differences in meaning, if any, in each pair of sentences.
1.	<ul><li>a. If it rains, the streets get wet.</li><li>b. If it rains tomorrow, the streets will get wet.</li></ul>
2.	<ul><li>a. If you heat water, it boils.</li><li>b. If you heat water, it will boil.</li></ul>
3.	<ul><li>a. If it should rain tomorrow, we'll cancel the picnic.</li><li>b. If it rains tomorrow, we'll cancel the picnic.</li></ul>

20-2 True in the Present or Future				
<ul> <li>(a) If I don't eat breakfast, I always get hungry during class.</li> <li>(b) Water freezes OR will freeze if the temperature reaches 32°F/0°C.</li> <li>(c) If I don't eat breakfast tomorrow morning, I will get hungry during class.</li> <li>(d) If it rains, we should stay home. If it rains, I might decide to stay home. If it rains, we can't go. If it rains, we're going to stay home.</li> <li>(e) If anyone calls, please take a message.</li> </ul>	In conditional sentences that express true, factual ideas in the present/future, the <i>simple present</i> (not the simple future) is used in the <i>if</i> -clause.  The result clause has various possible verb forms. A result clause verb can be:  • the <i>simple present</i> , to express a habitual activity or situation, as in (a).  • either the <i>simple present</i> or the <i>simple future</i> , to express an established, predictable fact or general truth, as in (b).  • the <i>simple future</i> , to express a particular activity or situation in the future, as in (c).  • <i>modals</i> and <i>phrasal modals</i> such as <i>should</i> , <i>might</i> , <i>can</i> , <i>be going to</i> , as in (d).*  • an <i>imperative</i> verb, as in (e).			
(f) If anyone should call, please take a message.	Sometimes <b>should</b> is used in an <i>if</i> -clause. It indicates a			

same.

little more uncertainty than the use of the simple present, but basically the meaning of examples (e) and (f) is the

<sup>\*</sup>See Chart 9-1, p. 157, for a list of modals and phrasal modals.

### Exercise 4. Let's talk. (Chart 20-2)

Answer the questions. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

- 1. If it's cold tomorrow, what are you going to wear to class?
- 2. If it's cold, what do you usually wear?
- 3. Fish can't live out of water. If you take a fish out of water, what will happen/what happens?
- 4. If I want to learn English faster, what should I do?
- 5. Tell me what to do, where to go, and what to expect if I visit your hometown as a tourist.

### Exercise 5. Looking at grammar. (Chart 20-2)

Choose the correct verb for the result clauses. In some cases, both answers are correct.

- 1. If I find out the answer, I will let / let you know.
- 2. If I have extra time, I tutor / am going to tutor students in math.
- 3. If it snows, the roads are / will be closed.
- 4. If you run up a hill, your heart beats / will beat fast.
- 5. If it should rain tomorrow, we *might change | will change* our plans.
- 6. If my cell phone battery goes dead, I will recharge / would recharge it.

# **Exercise 6. Listening.** (Chart 20-2)

If + pronoun can be difficult to hear at the beginning of sentences because these words are generally unstressed. Additionally, if at the beginning of a sentence is often reduced to /f/. Listen to the sentences spoken in casual, relaxed English. Complete the sentences with the non-reduced forms of the words you hear.

Example:	You will hear: If I hear anything, I'll tell you.		
	You will write:	If I hear	anything, I'll tell you.
1			too fast, please tell me.
2			married, everyone will be shocked.
3			okay, I'll ask for some advice.
4			to quit, I hope he lets us know soon.
5			, we'll need to try something else.
6			harder, I'm sure she'll succeed.
7			the job, I'll call you right away.

# Exercise 7. Warm-up. (Chart 20-3)

Choose the correct completions.

- 1. If Tom were a teacher, he would teach law.
  - a. Tom is / isn't a teacher.
  - b. Tom teaches / doesn't teach law.

- 2. If it were 5:00, we could leave.
  - a. It is / isn't 5:00.
  - b. We can / can't leave now.

20-3 Untrue (Contrary to	o Fact) in the Present or Future
(a) If I taught this class, I wouldn't give tests.	In (a): In truth, I don't teach this class.
(b) If he were here right now, he would help u	s. In (b): In truth, he is not here right now.
(c) If I were you, I would accept their invitation	n. In (c): In truth, I am not you.
	NOTE: <b>Were</b> is used for both singular and plural subjects. <b>Was</b> (with <i>I</i> , he, she, it) is sometimes used in informal speech: If I was you, I'd accept their invitation.
COMPARE: (d) If I had enough money, I would buy a car.	In (d): The speaker wants a car but doesn't have enough money.  Would expresses desired or predictable results.
(e) If I had enough money, I <i>could</i> buy a car.	In (e): The speaker is expressing one possible result.  could = would be able to; could expresses possible options.
Exercise 8. Looking at gram Complete the sentences with the ver	
1. If I have enough apples, I (bak	e) <u>will bake</u> an apple pie this afternoon.
2. If I had enough apples, I (bake	e) <u>would bake / could bake</u> an apple pie.
3. I will fix your bicycle if I (have	a screwdriver of the proper size.
4. I would fix your bicycle if I (ho	ave) a screwdriver of the proper size.
5. I (go) to	o a movie tonight if I don't have any homework to do.
6. I (go)	to a movie tonight if I didn't have any homework to do.
7. Sally always answers the phone	e if she (be) in her office.
8. Sally would answer the phone	if she (be) in her office right now.
Exercise 9. Let's talk. (Chart : Discuss the questions. Work in small	
Under what conditions, if any, would y	nou
1. exceed the speed limit while d	riving? 4. steal food?
2. lie to your best friend?	5. carry a friend on your back?
3. disobey an order from your bo	oss? 6. not pay your rent?
Exercise 10. Looking at gran Complete the sentences with the ve	mmar. (Charts 20-2 and 20-3)  Perbs in parentheses. Work in pairs or small groups.
1. I (be, not)	a student in this class if English (be) my
native language.	
2. Most people know that oil floa	ats on water. If you pour oil on water, it (float)

	3.	If there (be)	110 0x	sygen on earth, me as we ki	now it (exist, not)
	4.	My evening newspaper has bee	n late ev	ery day this week. If the pa	aper (arrive, not)
			on time	e today, I'm going to cance	l my subscription.
	5.	If I (be)	bird, I (	want, not)	
			_ to live	my whole life in a cage.	
	6.	How long (human beings, live)			
			_ if all di	seases in the world were	<b>1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1</b>
		completely eradicated?			
	7.	If you boil water, it (disappear)			
		into the atmosphere as vapor.			
	8.	If people (have)	p	aws instead of hands with	fingers and opposable
		thumbs, the machines we use i	n everyd:	ay life (have to)	
		be constructed very differently	. We ( <i>be</i> ,	not)	
		able to turn knobs, push small	buttons,	or hold tools and utensils s	securely.
<u> </u>	Fine	ercise 11. Let's talk: intervel a partner to interview. Give hement. Change roles after item	im/her a	fact. Ask your partner to	
	Exa	mple: Ocean water is salty.  → If ocean water weren't s.  for everyone in the world		le could drink it and there wo	uld be enough water
	Fact				
	1.	There is gravity on the earth.		Children don't get everyth	hing they want.
		People don't have wings.  Cars can't fly.		Guns exist.  There isn't enough food of	on the earth for everyone.
	3.	Curo currery,	0.	There is a consulation of	22
0		ercise 12. Warm-up. (Chack (1/2)) the sentences that have		eaning.	
	1.	If Ann were available, sh	ne would	help us.	
	2.	If Ann had been availab			
	3.	If Ann is available, she v			
	4.	If Ann had been availab	ie, sne co	uid nave neiped us.	

20-4 Untrue (Contrary to Fact) in the Past			
<ul> <li>(a) If you had told me about the problem, I would have helped you.</li> <li>(b) If they had studied, they would have passed the exam.</li> <li>(c) If I hadn't slipped on the stairs, I wouldn't have broken my arm.</li> </ul>	In (a): In truth, you did not tell me about it. In (b): In truth, they did not study. Therefore, they failed the exam. In (c): In truth, I slipped on the stairs. I broke my arm. NOTE: The auxiliary verbs are often reduced in speech. "If you'd told me, I would've helped you (OR <i>I-duv</i> helped you)."*		
COMPARE:  (d) If I had had enough money, I would have bought a car.  (e) If I had had enough money, I could have bought a car.	In (d): would expresses a desired or predictable result.  In (e): could expresses a possible option.  could have bought = would have been able to buy		

<sup>\*</sup>In casual, informal speech, some native speakers sometimes use would have in an if-clause: If you would've told me about the problem, I would've helped you. This verb form usage is generally considered to be grammatically incorrect in standard English, but it occurs fairly commonly.

## Exercise 13. Looking at grammar. (Chart 20-4)

Complete the sentences with a factual or truthful statement.

- 1. If I had worn a jacket, I wouldn't have been so cold at the park, but the truth is . . . . → I didn't wear a jacket.
- 2. If Martin hadn't become a soccer player, he would have been a soccer coach, but the truth is . . . .
- 3. If I hadn't answered my cell phone while I was driving, I wouldn't have caused the accident, but the truth is . . . .
- 4. If Professor Stevens had given a fair test, more students would have passed, but the truth is . . . .

# Exercise 14. Looking at grammar. (Charts $20-1 \rightarrow 20-4$ )

Underline the clause that expresses a condition. Write "T" if the condition is a true condition (i.e., a condition that exists in fact). Write "U" if the condition is untrue (i.e., a condition that does not exist in fact). Then decide if the sentence refers to present/future or past time.

1.	<u></u>	If the weather is warm, we'll eat outdoors.	present/future	past
2.	<u>U</u>	If the weather were warm, we would eat outdoors.	present/future	past
3.		If the weather had been warm, we would have eaten outdoors.	present/future	past
4.		If I had more money, I would work less.	present/future	past
5.		If I had had more money, I would have worked less.	present/future	past
6.	_	If I take time off from work, I feel more relaxed.	present/future	past
7.		If I hadn't had to work, I could have seen you.	present/future	past
8.		If I didn't have to work, I could see you.	present/future	past

-		nplete each sentence with would		lone.
	1.	Rita believes in hard work and	wants her children to work hard.	She always tells them,
		"If you work hard every day, yo	vu we	11."
	2.	Scott is smart, but he doesn't w	vork very hard. As a result, he is	not very successful at
		his job. His co-workers often to	ell him, "If you worked hard ever	ry day, you
		well	"·	
	3.	Mark planned to study hard for	r a test yesterday, but some friend	ds called, and he decided to
		go out with them. He didn't do	well on his test the next day. H	lis teacher told him, "If you
		had worked hard yesterday, you	1	well on the test."
j		ercise 16. Looking at gran uplete the sentences with the ver		
		If I (have)	•	ou.
	2.	If I (have)	enough money, I would go with	ı vou.
		If I (have)		
		If the weather is nice tomorrow		
		If the weather were nice today,		
	6.	If the weather had been nice ye	sterday, we (go)	to the zoo.
	7.	If Sally (be)	at home tomorrow, I am goin	g to visit her.
	8.	Jim isn't home right now. If he	(be) at home	3
		right now, I (visit)	him.	
	9.	Linda wasn't at home yesterday	7. If she (be)	
		at home y	vesterday, I (visit)	
			her.	
	10.	Last night Alex ruined his swea	ter when he washed it.	
		If he (read)	the label, he (wash, not)	and the second second
			it in hot water.	

LAIIO	wer the questions with yes of no.
1.	If the weather had been good yesterday, we would not have canceled the picnic.
	a. Was the picnic canceled?
	b. Was the weather good?no
2.	If I had an envelope and a stamp, I would mail this letter today.
	a. Do I have an envelope and a stamp right now?
	b. Do I want to mail this letter today?
	c. Am I going to mail this letter today?
3.	Ann would have made it to class on time this morning if the bus hadn't been late.
	a. Did Ann try to make it to class on time?
	b. Did Ann make it to class on time?
	c. Was the bus late?
4.	If I didn't have any friends, I would be lonely.
	a. Am I lonely?
	b. Do I have friends?
Wor	ercise 18. Let's talk. (Chart 20-4) k with a partner. Speaker A gives the cue. Speaker B begins the response with But if I known.
Exai	mple:
	AKER A (book open): There was a test yesterday. You didn't know that, so you didn't study But if I had known (that there was a test yesterday), I would have studied.
1.	Your friend was in the hospital. You didn't know that, so you didn't visit her.
	I've never met your friend. You didn't know that, so you didn't introduce me.
3.	There was a meeting last night. You didn't know that, so you didn't go.

Exercise 17. Looking at grammar. (Charts  $20-1 \rightarrow 20-4$ )

### Change roles.

dinner.

- 5. I wanted to go to the soccer game. You didn't know that, so you didn't buy a ticket for me.
- 6. I was at home last night. You didn't know that, so you didn't visit me.
- 7. Your sister wanted a gold necklace for her birthday. You didn't know that, so you didn't buy her one.

4. Your friend's parents are in town. You didn't know that, so you didn't invite them to

8. I had a problem. You didn't know that, so you didn't offer to help.

### Exercise 19. Let's listen and talk. (Chart 20-4)



Part I. Answer this question: Why do you think dinosaurs became extinct? Then close your book and listen to the short talk on dinosaurs.



Part II. Open your book and read the statements. Circle "T" for true and "F" for false.

1. According to one theory, if an asteroid had collided with the earth, several disastrous changes in the earth's climate would have taken place.

F

F

2. This theory suggests that if an asteroid had not collided with the earth, dinosaurs would still exist. Т

### Part III. Discuss these questions.

- 1. If dinosaurs still existed, what do you think the world would be like?
- 2. Would it be possible for dinosaurs and human beings to coexist on the same planet?

# **Exercise 20. Listening.** (Charts $20-1 \rightarrow 20-4$ )



In conditional sentences, /h/ is often dropped in the auxiliary verbs *have* and *had*. Listen to the sentences spoken in casual, relaxed English. Complete the sentences with the non-reduced CD 2 Track 33 forms of the words you hear.

SITUATION: Jon told several good friends a lie, and they recently found out. Here are their reactions:

Example:	If he had been truthful, he wouldn't have lost If he had been truthful, he wouldn't	* * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *
1	 the truth sooner,	differently.
2	 him,	so foolish.
3	 me what a great guy Jon was	, ————
	 him so easily.	
4	another person,	so shocked.
5	,	more respect for him.

	ercise 21. Looking at grammar. (Charts 20-1 → 20-4) mplete the sentences with the verbs in parentheses.				
1.	You should tell your father exactly what happened. If I (be) you, I (tell)				
	him the truth as soon as possible.				
2.	If I (have) my camera with me yesterday, I (take)				
	a picture of Alex standing on his head.				
3.	I'm almost ready to plant my garden. I have a lot of seeds. Maybe I have more than I				
	need. If I (have) more seeds than I need, I (give)				
	some to my neighbor.				
4.	George has only two pairs of socks. If he (have) more than two pairs of				
	socks, he (have to, not) wash his socks so often.				
5.	The cowboy pulled his gun to shoot at the rattlesnake, but				
	he was too late. If he (be) quicker to				
	pull the trigger, the snake (bite, not)				
	him on the foot. It's a good				
	thing he was wearing heavy leather boots.				
6.	What (we, use) to look at				
٠.	ourselves when we comb our hair if we (have, not)				
	mirrors?				
7.	It's been a long drought. It hasn't rained for over a month. If it (rain, not)				
••	soon, a lot of crops (die) If the				
	crops (die), many people (go) hungry this coming				
	winter.				
8	A: Shhh! Your father is taking a nap. Uh-oh. You woke him up.				
٥.	B: Gee, I'm sorry, Mom. If I (realize) he was sleeping, I				
	(make, not) so much noise when I came in.				
0	A: Since I broke my foot, I haven't been able to get to the basement to wash my clothes.				
9.	B: Why didn't you say something? I (come) over and				
	(wash) them for you if you (tell) me.				
	A: I know you (come) right away if I (call)				
	you. I guess I didn't want to bother you.				
	B: Nonsense! What are good neighbors for?				

1		rcise 22. Listening. (Charts $20-1 \rightarrow 20-4$ ) en to the statements and answer the questions.
CD 2 Track 34	Exa	wouldn't have told anybody. I know how to keep a secret.  You will answer: a. Did I tell anybody the news?  b. Did Bob ask me to keep it a secret?
	1.	a. Am I going to go to the art museum?  b. Do I have enough time?
	2.	a. Did Mrs. Jones receive immediate medical attention? b. Did she die?
	3.	a. Am I a carpenter?  b. Do I want to build my own house?  c. Am I going to build my own house?
	4.	a. Was the hotel built to withstand an earthquake?  b. Did the hotel collapse?
		rcise 23. Looking at grammar. (Charts 20-1 → 20-4) uplete each sentence with an appropriate auxiliary verb.
	1.	I don't have a pen, but if I, I would lend it to you.
	2.	He is busy right now, but if he <u>weren't</u> , he would help us.
	3.	I didn't vote in the election, but if I <u>had</u> , I would have voted for Senator Todd.
	4.	I don't have enough money, but if I, I would buy that book.
	5.	The weather is cold today, but if it, I'd go swimming.
	6.	She didn't come, but if she, she would have met my brother.
	7.	I'm not a good cook, but if I, I would make all of my own meals.
	8.	He didn't go to a doctor, but if he, the cut on his hand wouldn't have gotten infected.
	9.	I always pay my bills. If I, I'd get in a lot of trouble.
	10.	Helium is lighter than air. If it, a helium-filled balloon wouldn't float upward.
	11.	I called my husband to tell him I would be late. If I, he would have gotter worried about me.

# Exercise 24. Let's talk: pairwork. (Charts $20-1 \rightarrow 20-4$ )

Work with a partner. Speaker A asks the questions. Speaker B begins the answers with No, but.

Example:

Speaker A (book open): Do you have a dollar?

SPEAKER B (book closed): No, but if I did (No, but if I had a dollar), I would lend it to you.

- 1. Are you rich?
- 2. Do you have a car?
- 3. Are you a bird?
- 4. Did you forget to bring a pen to class today?
- 5. Do you have your own airplane?
- 6. Are you the teacher of this class?

### Change roles.

- 7. Are you at home right now?
- 8. Do you speak (another language)?
- 9. Did you forget to bring your grammar book to class today?
- 10. Is the weather hot/cold today?
- 11. Do you live in (a different city)?
- 12. Are you hungry?

# Exercise 25. Warm-up. (Chart 20-5)

Match the true or factual sentences in Column A to the conditional sentences in Column B.

### Column A

- 1. I was painting my apartment when you asked me to go to a movie.
- 2. I am painting my apartment right now.

### Column B

- a. If I weren't painting my apartment, I would go to a movie with you.
- b. If I hadn't been painting my apartment, I would have gone to a movie with you.

# Using Progressive Verb Forms in Conditional Sentences

Notice the use of progressive verb forms in these examples. Even in conditional sentences, progressive verb forms are used in progressive situations. (See Chart 1-2, p. 3, for a discussion of progressive verbs.)

- (a) True: It is raining right now, so I will not go for a walk.
- (b) Conditional: If it were not raining right now, I would go for a walk.
- It was raining yesterday afternoon, so I did not go for a walk. (c) True:
- (d) Conditional: If it had not been raining, I would have gone for a walk.

# Exercise 26. Looking at grammar. (Chart 20-5)

Change the statements to conditional sentences.

- 1. You weren't listening, so you didn't understand the directions. But . . . . → if you had been listening, you would have understood the directions.
- 2. You aren't wearing a coat, so you're cold. But . . . .
- 3. Joe got a ticket because he was driving too fast. But . . .
- 4. I'm enjoying myself, so I won't leave. But . . . .
- 5. You were sleeping, so I didn't tell you the news as soon as I heard it. But . . . .

	Cor	ercise 27. Looking at grammar. (Chart 20-5) explore each sentence with the correct form of the verb in parentheses. Make untrue or trary-to-fact statements.
	1.	It's snowing. We can't go to the park.
		If it (snow) <u>weren't snowing</u> , we could go to the park.
	2.	It wasn't snowing. We went to the park.
		If it (snow) had been snowing we wouldn't have gone to the park.
	3.	Elena just got out of the shower. She's drying her hair with a hair dryer, so she can't hear the phone ring.
		If Elena (dry) her hair, she could hear the phone ring.
	4.	Elena was waiting for a phone call from Tom, but as it happened, she was drying her hair when he called and couldn't hear the phone ring.
		If Elena ( <i>dry</i> ) her hair when Tom called, she could have heard the phone ring.
	5.	Max is at a party at his friend's apartment, but he's not having any fun. He wants to leave.
		Max wouldn't want to leave early if he (have) fun.
	6.	Mrs. Chang was talking on her cell phone while she was driving and wasn't paying enough attention to traffic. When the car in front of her stopped, she crashed into it.
		If Mrs. Chang (talk) on her cell phone, she probably wouldn't have gotten into an accident.
0		ercise 28. Warm-up. (Chart 20-6) sose the correct time words.
	1.	If I had done my homework (now / earlier), I would know the answers (now / earlier).
	2.	Anita wouldn't be sick (now / earlier) if she had followed the doctor's orders (now / earlier).
		THE RESERVE OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TWO IS NOT THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TWO IS NAMED IN COLUMN TWO

# **20-6** Using "Mixed Time" in Conditional Sentences

Frequently the time in the *if*-clause and the time in the result clause are different: one clause may be in the present and the other in the past. Notice that past and present times are mixed in these sentences.

- (a) True: I did not eat breakfast several hours ago, so I am hungry now.
- (b) Conditional: If I had eaten breakfast several hours ago, I would not be hungry now.

  (past) (present)
- (c) True: He is not a good student. He did not study for the test yesterday.
- (d) Conditional: If he *were* a good student, he *would have studied* for the test yesterday.

  (present) (past)

# **Exercise 29. Looking at grammar.** (Chart 20-6)

Change the statements to conditional sentences. Begin each one with But.

- 1. I'm hungry now because I didn't eat dinner.
  - → But if I'd eaten dinner, I wouldn't be hungry now.
- 2. The room is full of flies because you left the door open.
- 3. You are tired this morning because you didn't go to bed at a reasonable hour last night.
- 4. I didn't finish my report yesterday, so I can't begin a new project today.
- 5. I'm not you, so I didn't tell him the truth.
- 6. I don't know anything about plumbing, so I didn't fix the leak in the sink myself.
- 7. Anita got sick because she didn't follow the doctor's orders.

### Exercise 30. Warm-up. (Chart 20-7)

The following sentences are correct. Make sentences with the same meaning using if. Notice the order of the words in blue.

- 1. Were I the teacher, I would give fewer tests.
- 2. Had I known about your problem, I would have helped you.
- 3. Should anyone come, please tell them I'm asleep.

# 20-7 Omitting If

- (a) Were I you, I wouldn't do that.
- (b) Had I known, I would have told you.
- (c) Should anyone call, please take a message.

With were, had (past perfect), and should, sometimes if is omitted and the subject and verb are inverted.

In (a): Were I you = if I were you

In (b): Had I known = if I had known

In (c): Should anyone call = if anyone should call

# Exercise 31. Looking at grammar. (Chart 20-7)

Make sentences with the same meaning by omitting if.

- 1. If you should need more money, go to the bank before six o'clock.
  - → Should you need more money, go to the bank before six o'clock.
- 2. If I were you, I wouldn't do that.
- 3. If they had realized the danger, they would have done it differently.
- 4. If I were your teacher, I would insist you do better work.
- 5. If you should change your mind, please let me know immediately.
- 6. She would have gotten the job if she had been better prepared.
- 7. Your boss sounds like a real tyrant. If I were you, I would look for another job.
- 8. I'll be out of the office until June 12th. If you should need to reach me, I'll be at our company headquarters in Seoul.
- 9. The artists and creative thinkers throughout the history of the world have changed all of our lives. If they had not dared to be different, the history of civilization would have to be rewritten.
- 10. If there should be a global nuclear war, life on earth as we know it would end forever.

### **Exercise 32. Listening.** (Chart 20-7)

Choose the sentence that best expresses the meaning of the sentence you hear.

Example: You will hear: Should you need help, I'll be in the room next door.

You will choose: a. I'll be helping others in the room.

- (b.) I'm available to help you.
- c. You shouldn't ask me for help.
- d. Do you need help from me?
- 1. a. I get a lot of speeding tickets.
  - b. I was driving too fast.
  - c. I like to drive fast.
  - d. I didn't get a ticket.
- 2. a. You shouldn't call me on my cell.
  - b. Did you have questions?
  - c. Call me soon.
  - d. Call me if you have questions.
- 3. a. We're glad you told us.
  - b. We were happy to help you.
  - c. We needed to know earlier.
  - d. Why did you tell us so soon?

- 4. a. I took the fastest way to the theater.
  - b. I didn't take the fastest way.
  - c. The theater was too far away.
  - d. I took several different routes.
- 5. a. We stayed home.
  - b. We didn't stay home.
  - c. Someone warned us.
  - d. Several people warned us.
- 6. a. Are we rich?
  - b. Rich people live in houses overlooking the ocean.
  - c. We aren't rich.
  - d. We live in a house overlooking the ocean.

### ☐ Exercise 33. Warm-up. (Chart 20-8)

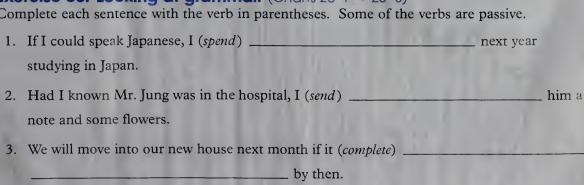
Read the paragraph. Check  $(\checkmark)$  the sentences that are true.

One night a fire started in Janet's apartment. A blanket on the sofa got too close to an electric heater. Janet was in a deep sleep and wasn't aware of the fire. Fortunately, her neighbors saw smoke coming out of the window and threw rocks at her bedroom window to wake her up. Janet was very grateful that she wasn't killed or injured in the fire.

- 1. \_\_\_\_ Janet would have kept sleeping, but the neighbors woke her up.
- 2. \_\_\_\_ Janet would have awakened without her neighbors' help.
- 3. \_\_\_\_ Janet was awakened by her neighbors; otherwise, she wouldn't have woken up.

# (a) I would have gone with you, but I had to study. (b) I never would have succeeded without your help. (c) She ran; otherwise, she would have missed her bus. Often the if-clause is implied, not stated. Conditional verbs are still used in the result clause. In (a): the implied condition = if I hadn't had to study In (b): the implied condition = if you hadn't helped me Conditional verbs are frequently used following otherwise. In (c), the implied if-clause = if she had not run

	<b>Exercise 34. Looking at grammar.</b> (Chart 20-8) Identify the implied conditions by making sentences using <i>if</i> -clauses.	
	<ol> <li>I would have visited you, but I didn't know that you were at home.         <ul> <li>I would have visited you if I had known you were at home.</li> </ul> </li> <li>It wouldn't have been a good meeting without Rosa.         <ul> <li>It wouldn't have been a good meeting if Rosa hadn't been there.</li> </ul> </li> <li>I would have answered the phone, but I didn't hear it ring.</li> <li>I couldn't have finished the work without your help.</li> <li>I like to travel. I would have gone to Nepal last summer, but I didn't have enough money.</li> <li>I stepped on the brakes. Otherwise, I would have hit the child on the bicycle.</li> <li>Olga turned down the volume on the CD player. Otherwise, the neighbors probably would have called to complain about the noise.</li> <li>Tarek would have finished his education, but he had to quit school and find a job in orde to support his family.</li> </ol>	
CD 2	<b>Exercise 35. Listening.</b> (Chart 20-8) Choose the statement (a. or b.) that is true for each sentence you hear. In some cases both answers are correct.	
Track 36	Example: You will hear: I canceled your dentist appointment for Tuesday. Otherwise, you would have had two appointments in one day.  You will choose: a. I thought you needed two appointments.  b. I didn't think you wanted two appointments.	
	<ol> <li>a. If I had had your number, I would have called.</li> <li>b. I didn't have your number; otherwise, I would have called.</li> </ol>	
	<ul><li>2. a. If my parents hadn't helped me, I wouldn't have gone to college.</li><li>b. If I hadn't gone to college, my parents wouldn't have helped me.</li></ul>	
	<ul><li>3. a. I picked up your clothes.</li><li>b. I wasn't able to pick up your clothes.</li></ul>	
	<ul><li>4. a. If someone had told us about the party, we would have come.</li><li>b. We came to the party even though you didn't tell us about it.</li></ul>	
	<ul><li>5. a. If I'd had your advice, I would have known what to do.</li><li>b. Because of your advice, I knew what to do.</li></ul>	
	Exercise 36. Looking at grammar. (Charts 20-1 → 20-8) Complete each sentence with the verb in parentheses. Some of the verbs are passive.	
	If I could speak Japanese, I (spend) next year studying in Japan.	
	2 Had I known Mr Jung was in the hospital I (send)	a



4.	It's too bad that it's snowing. If it (snow, not), we for a drive.	could go
5.	I was very tired. Otherwise, I (go) to the party wi	th you
6.	last night.  I'm glad I have so many friends and such a wonderful family. Life without friends family (be) lonely for me.	or
7.	If you (sleep, not) last night when we arrived, I won asked you to go with us, but I didn't want to wake you up.	uld have
8.	Bill has such a bad memory that he (forget) his he (be, not) attached to his body.	ead if it
9.	A: What would you be doing right now if you (be, not)in class?  B: I (sleep)	
10.	A: Boy, is it ever hot today!  B: You said it! If there (be) only a breeze, it (be, not) quite so unbearable.	
11.	A: Hi. Sorry I'm late.  B: That's okay.  A: I (be) here sooner, but I had car trouble.	
12.	A: Want to ride on the roller coaster?  B: No way! I (ride, not) on the roller coaster even if you paid me a million dollars!	
13.	A: Are you coming to the party?  B: I don't think so, but if I change my mind, I (tell) you.	
Con	ercise 37. In your own words. (Charts 20-1 -> 20-8) Explored the sentences with your own words, either orally or in writing. If written, as mas as necessary.	id
<ul><li>2.</li><li>3.</li></ul>	If it hadn't rained  If it weren't raining  You would have passed the test had  It's a good thing we took a map with us. Otherwise	

- 5. Without electricity modern life . . . .
- 6. If you hadn't reminded me about the meeting tonight . . . .
- 7. Should you need any help . . . .
- 8. If I could choose any profession I wanted . . . .
- 9. If I were at home right now . . . .
- 10. Without your help yesterday . . . .
- 11. Were I you . . . .
- 12. What would you do if . . . .
- 13. If I had the chance to live my childhood over again . . . .
- 14. Had I known . . . .
- 15. Can you imagine what life would be like if . . . .

### **Exercise 38. Let's talk.** (Charts $20-1 \rightarrow 20-8$ )

Explain what you would do in these circumstances. Work in pairs or small groups.

### Example:

SPEAKER A (book open): Suppose the student sitting next to you drops her pen.

What would you do?

SPEAKER B (book closed): I would pick it up for her.

- 1. Suppose/pretend there is a fire in this building right now. What would you do?
- 2. Suppose there is a fire in your room or apartment or house. You have time to save only one thing. What would you save?
- 3. Suppose you go to the bank to cash a check for (twenty dollars). The bank teller cashes your check and you leave, but when you count the money, you find she gave you (thirty dollars) instead of (twenty). What would you do?
- 4. Same situation, but she gave you only (fifteen dollars) instead of (twenty).
- 5. John was cheating during an examination. Suppose you were the teacher and you saw him. What would you have done?
- 6. You are at a party. A man starts talking to you, but he is speaking so fast that you can't catch what he is saying. What would you do?
- 7. Late at night you're driving your car down a deserted street. You're all alone. In an attempt to avoid a dog in the road, you swerve and hit a parked car. You know that no one saw you. What would you do?
- 8. Ricardo goes to a friend's house for dinner. His friend serves a dish that he can't stand/doesn't like at all. What if you were Ricardo?
- 9. Suppose you go to another city to visit a friend. You have never been there before. Your friend said he would meet you at the airport, but he's not there. You wait a long time, but he never shows up. You try to call him, but nobody answers the phone. Now what?

# Exercise 39. Warm-up. (Chart 20-9)

Which sentences are true for you? Circle yes or no. What do you notice about the words in blue?

1.	I wish I were someplace else right now.	yes	no
2.	I wish I could travel all around the world next year.	yes	no
3.	I wish I had learned English when I was a child.	yes	no

20-9 Y	Verb	Forms	Following	Wish
--------	------	-------	-----------	------

Wish is used when the speaker wants reality to be different, to be exactly the opposite.

	"True" Statement	Verb Form Following Wish	Wish is followed by a noun clause. (See Chart 12-5.
A Wish about the Future	<ul> <li>(a) She will not tell me.</li> <li>(b) He isn't going to be here.</li> <li>(c) She can't come tomorrow.</li> </ul>	I wish (that) she would tell me. I wish he were going to be here. I wish she could come tomorrow.	p. 253.) Past verb forms, similar to those in conditional sentences, are used in the noun clause.
A Wish about the Present	(d) I don't know French.  (e) It is raining right now.  (f) I can't speak Japanese.	I wish I knew French. I wish it weren't raining right now. I wish I could speak Japanese.	For example, in (a): would, the past form of will, is used to make a wish about the future.  In (d): the simple past (knew) is used to make a wish about
A Wish about the Past	(g) John <i>didn't come</i> . (h) Mary <i>couldn't come</i> .	I wish John had come.* I wish Mary could have come.	the present.  In (g): the past perfect ( <i>had come</i> ) is used to make a wish about the past.

<sup>\*</sup>Sometimes in very informal speaking: I wish John would have come.

Exercise 40.	Looking	at	grammar.	(Chart 20-9)

Complete the sentences with an appropriate verb form.

1. Our classroom doesn't have any windows. I wish our classroom <u>had</u> windows. 2. The sun isn't shining. I wish the sun \_\_\_\_\_ right now. 3. I didn't go shopping. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ shopping. 4. I don't know how to dance. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_\_ how to dance. 5. It's cold today. I'm not wearing a coat. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_ 6. I don't have enough money to buy that book. I wish I \_\_\_\_\_\_ enough money. 7. I can't go with you tomorrow, but I wish I \_\_\_\_\_\_. 8. My friend won't ever lend me his car. I wish he \_\_\_\_\_ me his car for my date tomorrow night. 9. Mrs. Takasawa isn't coming to dinner with us tonight. I wish she to dinner with us. 10. The teacher is going to give an exam tomorrow. I wish he \_ \_\_\_\_\_ us an exam tomorrow. 11. You can't meet my parents. I wish you \_\_\_\_\_ them, but they're out of town. to the meeting. 12. Khalid didn't come to the meeting. I wish he \_\_\_ 13. I'm not lying on a sunny beach. I wish I \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_ on a sunny beach.

	two classmates each question. Share some of their answers with the class.
	What is something you can't do but you wish you could do? What do you wish you were doing right now?
	What is something you don't have but wish you had?
	What is something that didn't happen yesterday but that you wish had happened?
	What is something you don't know but wish you knew?  What is something that has never happened in your life but that you wish would happe
6. 7.	What is something that has never happened in your life but that you wish had not happened?
	What is something you have to do but wish you didn't have to do?
	What is something that will not happen tomorrow but that you wish would happen?
10.	What is something you were unable to do yesterday but you wish you could have done
Exe	ercise 42. Looking at grammar. (Chart 20-9)
	nplete the sentences with an appropriate auxiliary verb.
1.	I'm not at home, but I wish I <u>were</u> .
2.	I don't know her, but I wish Idid
3.	I can't sing well, but I wish I
4.	I didn't go, but I wish I
5.	He won't talk about it, but I wish hewould
6.	I didn't read that book, but I wish I
7.	I want to go, but I can't. I wish I
8.	I don't have a bicycle, but I wish I
9.	He didn't buy a ticket to the game, but he wishes he
10.	It probably won't happen, but I wish it
11.	He isn't old enough to drive a car, but he wishes he
12.	They didn't go to the movie, but they wish they
13.	I don't have a driver's license, but I wish I
	I'm not living in an apartment, but I wish I

- 1. Jim's neighbors play loud music. He wishes they were quieter (now / soon).
- 2. Jim's neighbors are going to move. He wishes they would move (soon / last week).

# 20-10 Using Would to Make Wishes about the Future (a) It is raining. I wish it would stop. (I want it to stop raining.) (b) I'm expecting a call. I wish the phone would ring. (I want the phone to ring.) (c) It's going to be a good party. I wish you would come. (d) We're going to be late. I wish you would hurry. Would is usually used to indicate that the speaker wants something to happen or someone other than the speaker to do something in the future. The wish may or may not come true (be realized). In (c) and (d): I wish you would . . . is often used to make a request.

# Exercise 44. Looking at grammar. (Charts 20-9 and 20-10)

Use the given information to answer each pair of questions. Use wish + would.

Example:

Tom: Why are you watching the telephone?

Sue: I'm waiting to hear from Sam. I want him to call me. I need to talk to him right now. We had an argument. I need to make sure everything's okay.

- (a) What does Sue want to happen in the near future?
  - → She wishes the phone would ring.
- (b) What else does Sue wish?
  - → She wishes Sam would call her. She wishes she could talk to Sam right now. She probably wishes she and Sam hadn't had an argument.
- 1. Anna: Can't you come to the concert? Please change your mind. I'd really like you to come.

YOKO: No, I can't. I have to work.

- (a) What does Anna want Yoko to do?
- (b) What else does Anna wish?
- 2. Helen is a neat and orderly person. Judy, her roommate, is messy. Judy never picks up after herself. She leaves dirty dishes in the sink. She drops her clothes all over the apartment. She never makes her bed. Helen nags Judy to pick up after herself.
  - (a) What does Helen want Judy to do?
  - (b) What does Judy probably wish?

# Exercise 45. Listening. (Charts 20-9 and 20-10)

Listen to the sentences spoken in casual, relaxed English. Complete the sentences with the non-reduced forms of the words you hear.

Exa	mple:	You will hear:	I wish I didn'in a day!	t need so much	sleep. I c	ould get so i	much more done
		You will write:	~	didn't need	_ so much	sleep.	
1.	Alice	doesn't like he	r job as a nurse	e. She wishes			
	to nu	rsing school.					
2.	A: I	wish					_ go to work today
	D. C	a da T Tanish		a la ali dan			

6

CD 2 Track 37

3.	We had a good time in the mountains over vacation.	I wish
	with us. If with us,	
	a good time.	
4.	I know that something's bothering you. I wish	
	me what it is. Maybe I can help.	
5.	A: My feet are killing me! I wish	more comfortable shoes.
	B: Yeah, me too. I wish	that we were going to have
	to walk this much.	

### Exercise 46. Let's talk. (Charts 20-9 and 20-10)

Answer the questions. Use wish. Work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

- 1. Where do you wish you were right now? What do you wish you were doing?
- 2. Are you pleased with the weather today, or do you wish it were different?
- 3. Look around this room. What do you wish were different?
- 4. Is there anything you wish were different about the place you are living?
- 5. What do you wish were different about this city/town?
- 6. What do you wish were different about this country?
- 7. What do you wish were different about a student's life? about a worker's life?
- 8. Your friend gave you his phone number, but you didn't write it down because you thought you would remember it. Now you have forgotten the number. What do you wish?
- 9. You didn't eat breakfast/lunch/dinner before you came to class. Now you are hungry. What do you wish?
- \_ ) stayed up very late last night. Today she is tired and sleepy. What does she probably wish?

### Exercise 47. Let's talk or write. (Chapter 20)

Answer the questions, either orally or in writing. If orally, work in pairs, in small groups, or as a class.

- 1. If you could have free service for the rest of your life from a chauffeur, cook, housekeeper, or gardener, which would you choose? Why?
- 2. If you had to leave your country and build a new life, where would you go? Why?
- 3. If you had control of all medical research in the world and, by concentrating funds and efforts, could find the cure for only one disease in the next 25 years, which disease would you select? Why?
- 4. You have promised to spend an evening with your best friend. Then you discover you have the chance to spend the evening with (name of a famous person). Your friend is not invited. What would you do? Why?
- 5. Assume that you have a good job. If your boss told you to do something that you think is wrong, would you do it? Why or why not? (You understand that if you don't do it, you will lose your job.)
- 6. If you had to choose among perfect health, a loving family, and wealth (and you could have only one of the three during the rest of your life), which would you choose? Why?





# **UNIT A: Basic Grammar Terminology**

# A-1 Subjects, Verbs, and Objects

(a) Birds fly. (noun) (verb)

(b) The baby cried.

(c) The student needs a pen. (noun) (verb) (noun)

(d) My friend enjoyed the party.
(noun) (verb) (noun)

Almost all English sentences contain a subject (S) and a verb (V). The verb may or may not be followed by an object (O).

VERBS: Verbs that are not followed by an object, as in (a) and (b), are called "intransitive verbs."

Common intransitive verbs: agree, arrive, come, cry, exist, go, happen, live, occur, rain, rise, sleep, stay, walk.

Verbs that are followed by an object, as in (c) and (d), are called "transitive verbs."

Common transitive verbs: build, cut, find, like, make, need, send, use, want.

Some verbs can be either intransitive or transitive.

Intransitive: A student studies.
Transitive: A student studies books.

SUBJECTS AND OBJECTS: The subjects and objects of verbs are nouns (or pronouns).

Examples of nouns: person, place, thing, John, Asia, pen, information, appearance, amusement.

# A-2 Adjectives

- (a) Ann is an *intelligent* student. (adjective) (noun)
- (b) The *hungry* child ate fruit. (adjective) (noun)
- (c) I saw some **beautiful** pictures.

  INCORRECT: beautiful 9 pictures

Adjectives describe nouns. In grammar, we say that adjectives modify nouns. The word *modify* means "change a little." Adjectives give a little different meaning to a noun: *intelligent student, lazy student, good student.* 

Examples of adjectives: young, old, rich, beautiful, brown, French, modern.

An adjective is neither singular nor plural. A final -s is never added to an adjective.

A·	-3 Adv	verbs				
(a)	He walks q		Adverbs modify verb	os. Often they answer	the question "How?	,,
	(a	adverb)	In (a): How does he	walk? Answer: Quic	kly.	
(b)	She opened	the door <i>quietly</i> . (adverb)	Adverbs are often for Adjective: quick Adverb: quick		an adjective.	
(c)	lam extrem	nely happy. rb) (adjective)	Adverbs are also us adjectives, as in (c).	ed to modify adjective	s, i.e., to give inform	ation about
(d)	Ann will com	ne tomorrow. (adverb)		ed to express time or on, never, usually, alw		es: tomorrow,
MIDS	SENTENCE ADVI	ERBS:		occur in the middle of	a sentence. Midser	ntence adverbs
(e)	Ann always	comes on time.	have usual positions	•		
(f)	Ann is alway	ys on time.	• come in front of in (e);	of simple present and	simple past verbs (e	except <i>be</i> ), as
(g)	Ann has alw	vays come on time.		ple present and simple	e past), as in (f);	
(h)	Does she al	ways come on time?	come between	n a helping verb and a	main verb, as in (g)	•
			In a question, a mid	sentence adverb com	es directly after the s	subject, as in (h)
Con	mmon midse	ntence adverbs				
	ever	usually	generally	seldom	never	already
	always	often frequently	sometimes occasionally	rarely hardly ever	not ever	finally just probably

common prepos	itions				
about	at	beyond	into	since	up
above	before	by	like	through	upon
across	behind	despite	near	throughout	with
after	below	down	of	till	within
against	beneath	during	off	to	without
along	beside	for	on	toward(s)	
among	besides	from	out	under	
around	between	in	over	until	
<ul><li>a) The 'student'</li></ul>	studies in the lib	rary.' phrase	. It consists of a	preposition (PREP) and it	ts object (o). The
s V	O PREP the party at your	O of PREP In (a):	of a preposition is in the library is a	s a noun or pronoun. a prepositional phrase.	

### A-5 The Verb Be (a) John is a student. A sentence with **be** as the main verb has three basic patterns: (be) (noun) In (a): **be** + a noun In (b): be + an adjective intelligent. (b) John is In (c): be + a prepositional phrase (adjective) (be) at the library. (c) John was (prep. phrase) (d) Mary is writing a letter. Be is also used as an auxiliary verb in progressive verb tenses and in the (e) They were listening to some music. That letter was written by Alice. In (d): is = auxiliary; writing = main verb

### Tense Forms of Be

	SIMPLE PRESENT	SIMPLE PAST	PRESENT PERFECT
Singular	l <b>am</b> you a <b>re</b>	l was you w <b>ere</b>	l have been you have been
	he, she, it <b>is</b>	he, she, it was	he, she, it has been
Plural	we, you, they a <b>re</b>	we, you, they were	we, you, they have been

# A-6 Linking Verbs

(a)	The soup	smells	good.	Other verbs like be that may be followed immediately by an adjective are called
		(linking verb)	(adjective)	"linking verbs." An adjective following a linking verb describes the subject of a
				sentence *

- (b) This food tastes delicious.
- (c) The children feel happy.
- (d) The weather became cold.

Common verbs that may be followed by an adjective:

- · feel, look, smell, sound, taste
- · appear, seem
- become (and get, turn, grow when they mean "become")

### \*COMPARE:

- (1) The man looks angry. → An adjective (angry) follows look. The adjective describes the subject (the man). Look has the meaning of "appear."
- (2) The man looked at me angrily. → An adverb (angrily) follows look at. The adverb describes the action of the verb. Look at has the meaning of "regard, watch."



Ann is at the laudromat. She looks very busy.

# **B-1** Forms of Yes/No and Information Questions

A yes/no question = a question that may be answered by yes or no

A: Does he live in Chicago?

B: Yes, he does. OR No, he doesn't.

An information question = a question that asks for information by using a question word

A: Where does he live?

B: In Chicago.

Question word order = (Question word) + helping verb + subject + main verb

Notice that the same subject-verb order is used in both yes/no and information questions.

(Question Word)	Helping Verb	Subject	Main Verb	(Rest of Sentence)	
(a) (b) Where (c) (d) Where (e) (f) Where	Does does Do do Did did	she she they they	live live? live live? live	there? there? there?	If the verb is in the simple present, use <i>does</i> (with <i>he, she, it</i> ) or <i>do</i> (with <i>I, you, we, they</i> ) in the question. If the verb is simple past, use <i>did</i> .  Notice: The main verb in the question is in its simple form; there is no final <i>-s</i> or <i>-ed</i> .
(g) (h) Where (i) (j) Where (k) (l) Where (m) (n) Where	Is is Have have Can can Will	he he they they Mary Mary	living living? lived lived? live live? be living be living?	there? there? there?	If the verb has an auxiliary (a helping verb), the same auxiliary is used in the question. There is no change in the form of the main verb.  If the verb has more than one auxiliary, only the first auxiliary precedes the subject, as in (m) and (n).
(o) Who (p) Who	Øcan	Ø	lives come?	there?	If the question word is the subject, usual question-word order is not used; <i>does</i> , <i>do</i> , and <i>did</i> are not used. The verb is in the same form in a question as it is in a statement.  Statement: <i>Tom came</i> .  Question: <i>Who came?</i>
(q) (r) Where (s) (t) Where	Are are Was was	they they? Jim Jim?	Ø Ø Ø	there?	Main verb <b>be</b> in the simple present (am, is, are) and simple past (was, were) precedes the subject. It has the same position as a helping verb.

	Question	Answer	
When	(a) When did they arrive? When will you come?	Yesterday. Next Monday.	When is used to ask questions about time.
Where	(b) Where is she? Where can I find a pen?	At home. In that drawer.	Where is used to ask questions about place.
Why	(c) Why did he leave early? Why aren't you coming with us?	Because he's ill. I'm tired.	Why is used to ask questions about reason.
How	(d) How did you come to school? How does he drive?	By bus. Carefully.	How generally asks about manner.
	(e) How much money does it cost? How many people came?	Ten dollars. Fifteen.	How is used with much and many.
	(f) How old are you?  How cold is it?  How soon can you get here?  How fast were you driving?	Twelve. Ten below zero. In ten minutes. 50 miles an hour.	How is also used with adjectives and adverbs.
	(g) How long has he been here? How often do you write home? How far is it to Miami from here?	Two years. Every week. 500 miles.	How long asks about length of time. How often asks about frequency. How far asks about distance.
Who	(h) Who can answer that question? Who came to visit you?	I can. Jane and Eric.	Who is used as the subject of a question. It refers to people.
	(i) Who is coming to dinner tonight? Who wants to come with me?	Ann, Bob, and Al. We do.	Who is usually followed by a singular verb even if the speaker is asking about more than one person.
Whom	<ul> <li>(j) Who(m) did you see? Who(m) are you visiting?</li> <li>(k) Who(m) should I talk to? To whom should I talk? (formal)</li> </ul>	I saw George. My relatives. The secretary.	Whom is used as the object of a verb or preposition. In everyday spoken English, whom is rarely used; who is used instead. Whom is used only in formal questions.
		7//17/	NOTE: <b>Whom</b> , not <b>who</b> , is used if preceded by a preposition.
Whose	(I) Whose book did you borrow? Whose key is this? (Whose is this?)	David's. It's mine.	Whose asks questions about possession.

(continued)

	Question	Answer	
What	(m) What made you angry? What went wrong?	His rudeness. Everything.	What is used as the subject of a question. It refers to things.
	(n) What do you need? What did Alice buy?	I need a pencil. A book.	What is also used as an object.
	(o) What did he talk about?  About what did he talk? (formal)	His vacation.	
	(p) What kind of soup is that? What kind of shoes did he buy?	It's bean soup. Sandals.	What kind of asks about the particular variety or type of something.
	(q) What did you do last night? What is Mary doing?	I studied. Reading a book.	What + a form of do is used to ask questions about activities.
	(r) What countries did you visit? What time did she come? What color is his hair?	Italy and Spain. Seven o'clock. Dark brown.	What may accompany a noun.
	(s) What is Ed like?	He's kind and friendly.	What + be like asks for a general description of qualities.
	(t) What is the weather like?	Hot and humid.	
	(u) What does Ed look like?	He's tall and has dark hair.	What + look like asks for a physical description.
	(v) What does her house look like?	It's a two-story,* red brick house.	
Which	(w) I have two pens.  Which pen do you want? Which one do you want? Which do you want?	The blue one.	Which is used instead of what when a question concerns choosing from a definite, known quantity or group.
	(x) Which book should I buy?	That one.	
	(y) Which countries did he visit? What countries did he visit?	Peru and Chile.	In some cases, there is little difference in meaning between which and what when they accompany a noun, as in (y)
	(z) Which class are you in? What class are you in?	This class.	and (z).

<sup>\*</sup>American English: a two-story house. British English: a two-storey house.

# **B-3** Shortened Yes/No Questions

- (a) Going to bed now? = Are you going to bed now?
- (b) Finish your work? = Did you finish your work?
- (c) Want to go to the movie with us? = Do you want to go to the movie with us?

Sometimes in spoken English, the auxiliary and the subject you are dropped from a yes/no question, as in (a), (b), and (c).

В	B-4 Negative Questions						
(a) (b)	Doesn't she live in the dormitory?  Does she not live in the dormitory? (very formal)	In a yes/no question in which the verb is negative, usually a contraction (e.g., does + not = doesn't) is used, as in (a).  Example (b) is very formal and is usually not used in everyday speech.  Negative questions are used to indicate the speaker's idea (i.e., what she/he believes is or is not true) or attitude (e.g., surprise, shock, annoyance, anger).					
(-)	Bob returns to his dorm room after his nine o'clock class. Matt, his roommate, is there. Bob is surprised.  Bob says, "What are you doing here? Aren't you supposed to be in class now?"  Alice and Mary are at home. Mary is about to leave on a trip, and Alice is going to take her to the airport.  Alice says, "It's already two o'clock. We'd better leave for the airport. Doesn't your plane leave at three?"	In (c): Bob believes that Matt is supposed to be in class now.  Expected answer: Yes.  In (d): Alice believes that Mary's plane leaves at three. She is asking the negative question to make sure that her information is correct.  Expected answer: Yes.					
(e)	The teacher is talking to Jim about a test he failed. The teacher is surprised that Jim failed the test because he usually does very well.  The teacher says: "What happened? Didn't you study?"	In (e): The teacher believes that Jim did not study.  Expected answer: No.					
(f)	Barb and Ron are riding in a car. Ron is driving. He comes to a corner where there is a stop sign, but he does not stop the car. Barb is shocked.  Barb says, "What's the matter with you? Didn't you see that stop sign?"	In (f): Barb believes that Ron did not see the stop sign.  Expected answer: No.					

# **B-5** Tag Questions

- (a) Jack can come, can't he?
- (b) Fred can't come, can he?

A tag question is a question added at the end of a sentence. Speakers use tag questions mainly to make sure their information is

correct or to seek agreement.\*

AFFIRMATIVE SENTENCE + NEGATIVE TAG → AFFIRMATIVE ANSWER EXPECTED

Mary is here, isn't she? You *like* tea, *don't* you? They have left, haven't they?

Yes, she is. Yes. I do. Yes, they have.

NEGATIVE SENTENCE + AFFIRMATIVE TAG → NEGATIVE ANSWER EXPECTED

Mary isn't here, is she? You don't like tea, do you? They haven't left, have they?

No. she isn't. No, I don't. No, they haven't.

(c)	This/That is your book, isn't it?				
	These/Those are yours, aren't they's				

The tag pronoun for this/that = it. The tag pronoun for *these/those* = *they*.

### (d) There is a meeting tonight, isn't there?

In sentences with there + be, there is used in the tag.

Sentences with negative words take affirmative tags.

### (e) Everything is okay, isn't it?

(f) Everyone took the test, didn't they?

Personal pronouns are used to refer to indefinite pronouns. They is usually used in a tag to refer to everyone, everybody, someone, somebody, no one, nobody.

- (g) Nothing is wrong, is it?
- (h) Nobody called on the phone, did they?
- (i) You've never been there, have you?
- In (j): am I not? is formal English.
- (j) I am supposed to be here, am I not? (k) I am supposed to be here, aren't !?
- In (k): aren't 1? is common in spoken English.

- \*A tag question may be spoken:
  - (1) with a rising intonation if the speaker is truly seeking to ascertain that his her information, idea, belief is correct (e.g., Ann lives in an apartment, doesn't she?); OR
  - (2) with a falling intonation if the speaker is expressing an idea with which she he is almost certain the listener will agree (e.g., It's a nice day today, isn't it?).



Jim could use some help, couldn't he?

# **UNIT C:** Contractions

# Contractions

IN SPEAKING: In everyday spoken English, certain forms of be and auxiliary verbs are usually contracted with pronouns, nouns, and question words.

IN WRITING:

- (1) In written English, contractions with pronouns are common in informal writing, but they're not generally acceptable in formal writing.
- (2) Contractions with nouns and question words are, for the most part, rarely used in writing. A few of these contractions may be found in quoted dialogue in stories or in very informal writing, such as a chatty letter to a good friend, but most of them are rarely if ever written.

In the following, quotation marks indicate that the contraction is frequently spoken but rarely, if ever, written.

	With Pronouns	With Nouns	With Question Words
am	I'm reading a book.	0	"What'm" I supposed to do?
is	She's studying.  It's going to rain.	My "book's" on the table.  Mary's at home.	Where's Sally? Who's that man?
are	You're working hard. They're waiting for us.	My "books're" on the table. The "teachers're" at a meeting.	"What're" you doing? "Where're" they going?
has	She's been here for a year.  It's been cold lately.	My "book's" been stolen! Sally's never met him.	Where's Sally been living? What's been going on?
have	I've finished my work. They've never met you.	The "books've" been sold. The "students've" finished the test.	"Where've" they been? "How've" you been?
had	He'd been waiting for us. We'd forgotten about it.	The "books'd" been sold. "Mary'd" never met him before.	"Where'd" you been before that? "Who'd" been there before you?
did	0	O	"What'd" you do last night? "How'd" you do on the test?
will	I'll come later. She'll help us.	The "weather'II" be nice tomorrow. "John'II" be coming soon.	"Who'II" be at the meeting? "Where'II" you be at ten?
would	He'd like to go there. They'd come if they could.	My "friends'd" come if they could. "Mary'd" like to go there too.	"Where'd" you like to go?

# D-1 Using Not and Other Negative Words

(a) AFFIRMATIVE: The earth is round(b) NEGATIVE: The earth is not flat.

Not expresses a negative idea.

AUX + NOT + MAIN VERB there (c) | wi/go have not gone there. going there. ain not not there. l was there. l do not go there. He does not go there. I did not go

Not immediately follows an auxiliary verb or be.

NOTE: If there is more than one auxiliary, *not* comes immediately after the first auxiliary: *I will not be going there*.

 ${\it Do}$  or  ${\it does}$  is used with  ${\it not}$  to make a simple present verb (except  ${\it be}$ ) negative.

Did is used with not to make a simple past verb (except be) negative.

### Contractions of auxiliary verbs with not

are not = aren't\*
cannot = can't
could not = couldn't
did not = didn't
does not = doesn't
do not = don't

has not = hasn't have not = haven't had not = hadn't is not = isn't must not = mustn't should not = shouldn't was not = wasn't were not = weren't will not = won't would not = wouldn't

(d) I almost *never* go there.
I have *hardly ever* gone there.

In addition to *not*, the following are negative adverbs: never, rarely, seldom hardly (ever), scarcely (ever), barely (ever)

(e) There's no chalk in the drawer.

No also expresses a negative idea.

COMPARE: NOT VS. NO

(f) I do not have any money.

(g) I have no money.

Not is used to make a verb negative, as in (f).

No is used as an adjective in front of a noun (e.g., money), as in (g).

NOTE: Examples (f) and (g) have the same meaning.

# **D-2** Avoiding Double Negatives

(a) INCORRECT: I den't have no money.

(b) CORRECT: I don't have any money.

CORRECT: I have no money.

Sentence (a) is an example of a "double negative," i.e., a confusing and grammatically incorrect sentence that contains two negatives in the same clause. One clause should contain only one negative.\*

A person who doesn't have love can't be truly happy.

I don't know why he isn't here.

# D-3 Beginning a Sentence with a Negative Word

- (a) Never will I do that again!
- (b) Rarely have I eaten better food.
- (c) Hardly ever does he come to class on time.

When a negative word begins a sentence, the subject and verb are inverted (i.e., question word order is used).\*

<sup>\*</sup>Sometimes in spoken English you will hear "ain't." It means "am not," "isn't," or "aren't." Ain't is not considered proper English, but many people use ain't regularly, and it is also frequently used for humor.

<sup>\*</sup>Negatives in two different clauses in the same sentence cause no problems; for example:

<sup>\*</sup>Beginning a sentence with a negative word is relatively uncommon in everyday usage; it is used when the speaker/writer wishes to emphasize the negative element of the sentence and be expressive.

# **UNIT E: Preposition Combinations**

# **E** Preposition Combinations with Adjectives and Verbs

Α	be absent from		dream of, about	0	object to
	be accused of		be dressed in		be opposed to
	be accustomed to	Е	be engaged in, to	Р	participate in
	be acquainted with	_	be engaged in, to	•	be patient with
	be addicted to		be equipped with		be pleased with
	be afraid of		escape from		be polite to
	agree with		excel in, at		•
	be angry at, with		be excited about		pray for
	be annoyed with, by		excuse for		be prepared for
	apologize for		be exhausted from		prevent from
	apply to, for				prohibit from
	approve of		be exposed to		be protected from
	argue with, about	F	be faithful to		be proud of
	arrive in, at	•	be familiar with		provide with
	be associated with		feel like	Q	be qualified for
	be aware of		fight for	•	be qualified for
	la a li a comita		be filled with	R	recover from
В	believe in		be finished with		be related to
	blame for		be fond of		be relevant to
	be blessed with		forget about		rely (up)on
	be bored with, by		forgive for		be remembered for
С	be capable of		be friendly to, with		rescue from
_	care about, for		be frightened of, by		respond to
	be cluttered with		be furnished with		be responsible for
	be committed to		be furnished with		ze respensible te.
		G	be gone from	S	be satisfied with
	compare to, with	_	be grateful to, for		be scared of, by
	complain about, of		be guilty of		stare at
	be composed of		so gain, or		stop from
	be concerned about	н	hide from		subscribe to
	be connected to		hope for		substitute for
	consist of				succeed in
	be content with	1	be innocent of		
	contribute to		insist (up)on	Т	take advantage of
	be convinced of		be interested in		take care of
	be coordinated with		introduce to		talk about, of
	count (up)on		be involved in		be terrified of, by
	be covered with				thank for
	be crowded with	J	be jealous of		think about, of
D	decide (up)on		lean from		be tired of, from
	be dedicated to	K	keep from		
	depend (up)on		be known for	U	be upset with
	be devoted to	L	be limited to		be used to
	be disappointed in, with	_	be located in		
	be discriminated against		look forward to	V	vote for
	distinguish from		100K IOIWaid to	w	be worried about
	be divorced from	М	be made of, from	•	be worned about
	be done with	1	be married to		
	Do done with				

# **UNIT F: The Subjunctive in Noun Clauses**

# F Using the Subjunctive in Noun Clauses

(a) The teacher demands that we be on time.

(b) I insisted that he pay me the money.

(c) I recommended that she not go to the concert.

(d) It is important that they be told the truth.

A subjunctive verb uses the simple form of a verb. It does not have present, past, or future forms; it is neither singular nor plural.

Sentences with subjunctive verbs generally *stress importance or urgency.* A subjunctive verb is used in *that-*clauses that follow the verbs and expressions listed below.

In (a): be is a subjunctive verb; its subject is we.

In (b): pay (not pays, not paid) is a subjunctive verb; it is in its simple form, even though its subject (he) is singular.

Negative: not + simple form, as in (c).

Passive: simple form of be + past participle, as in (d).

(e) I suggested that she see a doctor.

(f) I suggested that she should see a doctor.

Should is also possible after suggest and recommend.\*

### Common verbs and expressions followed by the subjunctive in a noun clause

advise (that) ask (that) demand (that)

insist (that)

propose (that) recommend (that) request (that)

suggest (that)

it is critical (that) it is essential (that) it is imperative (that) it is important (that) it is necessary (that) it is vital (that)

\*The subjunctive is more common in American English than British English. In British English, should + simple form is more usual than the subjunctive: The teacher insists that we should be on time.

# **UNIT G: Troublesome Verbs**

### Raise / Rise, Set / Sit, Lay / Lie **Transitive** Raise, set, and lay are transitive verbs; Intransitive they are followed by an object. (a) raise, raised, raised (b) rise, rose, risen Rise, sit, and lie are intransitive; they Tom raised his hand. The sun rises in the east. are NOT followed by an object.\* In (a): raised is followed by the object (c) set, set, set (d) sit, sat, sat hand. will set the book on the desk. I sit in the front row. In (b): rises is not followed by an object. (e) lay, laid, laid (f) lie,\*\* lay, lain He is lying on his bed. NOTE: Lay and lie are troublesome for I am laying the book on the desk. native speakers too and are frequently misused. lay = put lie = recline

<sup>\*</sup>See Appendix Chart A-1 for information about transitive and intransitive verbs.

<sup>\*\*</sup>Lie is a regular verb (lie, lied) when it means "not tell the truth": He lied to me about his age.



Please note: You may want to pause the audio after each item or in longer passages so that there is enough time to complete each task.

# Chapter 1: Overview of Verb Tenses

### Exercise 4, p. 2.

- 1. I cooked my own dinner last night.
- 2. I bought a textbook yesterday.
- 3. I get on the internet every day.
- 4. I will be home tonight.
- 5. I am going to watch a movie this weekend.

### Exercise 6, p. 3.

- 1. At midnight last night, I was sleeping.
- 2. Right now I am thinking about grammar.
- 3. Tomorrow I will be sitting in class at this time.
- 4. Tonight at 9:00, I will be watching TV.
- 5. Last night at 9:00, I was watching TV.

### Exercise 8, p. 4.

- 1. I have done my homework already.
- 2. Before I went to bed last night, I had done all my homework.
- 3. By the time I finish this chapter, I will have done several verb exercises.
- 4. I have studied all the English verb tenses.
- 5. Before I began this class, I had studied all the English verb tenses.

### Exercise 15, p. 9.

- 1. Hoped. We hoped to see you last week. Hoped.
- 2. Stopped. The rain finally stopped. Stopped.
- 3. Waiting. The taxi is waiting. Waiting.
- 4. Sitting. He's sitting in a taxi. Sitting.
- 5. Started. The movie started late. Started.
- 6. Happened. What happened yesterday? Happened.
- 7. Planning. We're planning a birthday party. Planning.
- 8. Enjoyed. We enjoyed our vacation. Enjoyed.
- 9. Worried. We worried about you. Worried.
- 10. Studying. I'm studying English. Studying.

### Exercise 18, p. 12.

- 1. We are renting an apartment in the city.
- 2. We preferred to rent and see how we liked city life.
- 3. The earthquake destroyed the town.
- 4. Our children visited their grandparents.
- 5. We gained a little weight on our vacation.
- 6. I'm planning a short trip this summer.
- 7. I'm taking a few weeks off from work.
- 8. Right now I am replying to several emails.
- 9. I'm done. I replied to all of them.

# Chapter 2: Present and Past; Simple and Progressive

### Exercise 5, p. 15.

- 1. Hey, look out the window! It's raining . . .
- 2. We get a lot of rain here . . .
- 3. Besides the rain, it also snows here a little . . .
- 4. Did you hear? We can go skiing this weekend. It's snowing in the mountains . . .
- 5. We go hiking a lot. We especially like to hike in the mountains . . .
- 6. Our son is spending some time in the mountains . . .

### Exercise 12, p. 22.

- 1. Did she lose her notebook?
- 2. Did she forget her homework?
- 3. Did she make a lot of mistakes on the writing test?
- 4. Did she write several words incorrectly?
- 5. Did she take another student's homework to copy?
- 6. Did he do his homework?
- 7. Did he understand the homework?
- 8. Did he bring his homework to class?
- 9. Did he get a good grade on the test?
- 10. Did he know all the answers on the test?
- 11. Did she begin class on time?
- 12. Did she speak clearly?
- 13. Did she give a fair test?
- 14. Did she spend extra time helping her students?
- 15. Did she tell her students jokes?
- 16. Did she teach her students a song?
- 17. Did she sing with her students?



### Exercise 14, p. 23.

- 1. Did they swim in the water?
- 2. Did they stand in the waves?
- 3. Did they fall down in the waves?
- 4. Did they run barefoot on the sand?
- 5. Did they lie in the sun?
- 6. Did they wear sunscreen?
- 7. Did they dig in the sand?
- 8. Did they build giant sandcastles?
- 9. Did they write their names in the sand?
- 10. Did they draw pictures in the sand?
- 11. Did they hide their feet in the sand?
- 12. Did they sing songs?
- 13. Did some bees sting them?
- 14. Did they see the sunset?

### Exercise 16, p. 24.

- 1. Did she wake up sick?
- 2. Did she catch a cold?
- 3. Did her head hurt?
- 4. Did she take her temperature?
- 5. Did she have a fever?
- 6. Did she feel bad?
- 7. Did she keep her pajamas on?
- 8. Did she lie on the couch?
- 9. Did she sleep for several hours?
- 10. Did she dream about scary things?
- 11. Did she eat some chicken soup?
- 12. Did she speak to the doctor?
- 13. Did she take some medicine?
- 14. Did she read the instructions on the label?

### Exercise 18, p. 25.

- 1. Yesterday I felt . . .
- 2. Yesterday Mr. Jones taught . . .
- 3. Did you fill . . .
- 4. The children drew . . .
- 5. The man hid . . .
- 6. One student withdrew . . .
- 7. When I was cooking dinner, I burnt . . .
- 8. Did you shrink . . .
- 9. The audience wept . . .
- 10. The plants grew . . .

### Exercise 19, p. 25.

### Part I.

### A Scary Night

I had a terrible experience last night. You won't believe what happened! A thief burst into my apartment while I was asleep. There I was, just sleeping peacefully when someone broke the glass in the sliding door!

The sound woke me up. I heard the sliding door open, so I reached for the phone by the bed and called the police. My voice shook as I told the operator there was an intruder in my home.

I hid in my bedroom closet while the thief was creeping around my office. Soon I heard sirens as the police sped to my building. From the crack in the closet door, I saw the thief as he ran outside with my computer. The police jumped out of their cars and followed the thief, but he managed to get away in a car that was waiting for him. The police got back in their cars and drove after him. Later I learned that they caught the thief a few miles from my building.

I felt really frightened by all this. It really upset me, as you can imagine. I think I'll stay at my sister's house tonight.

### Part II.

- 1. The thief entered quietly.
- 2. He opened a window.
- 3. The woman spoke with the intruder.
- 4. The woman went into her closet.
- 5. The police caught the thief in the woman's apartment.
- 6. The woman felt relaxed at the end of the story.

### Exercise 20, p. 26.

- 1. lasted, tried
- 6. missed, reached
- 2. helped, stopped
- 7. saved, smelled
- 3. described, wanted4. invited, wanted
- 8. watched, asked9. finished, robbed

9. counted

5. believed, kissed

### Exercise 21, p. 27.

- 1. typed 4. replied 7. canceled 2. closed 5. succeeded 8. finished
- 3. rented 6. looked

### Exercise 22, p. 27.

- 1. Olga blinked (blink/t/), yawned (yawn/d/), and stretched (stretch/t/).
- Mrs. Olsen mopped (mop/t/) the kitchen floor, vacuumed (vacuum/d/) the carpet, and dusted (dust/ad/) the furniture.
- The meeting started (start/əd/) late and ended (end/əd/) early.
- My friend jumped (jump/t/) up and down and yelled (yell/d/) when she got the news.
- The airplane departed (depart/əd/) at six and landed (land/əd/) at eight.
- 6. When I asked (ask/t/) the doctor about some medication, he suggested (suggest/əd/) a new one.

### Exercise 29, p. 32.

### First Day of Class

It was my first day of class. I finally found the right room. The room was already full of students.

On one side of the room, students were talking to each other in Japanese or Arabic. On the other side, students were speaking in Spanish or Portuguese. It sounded like the United Nations. Some of the students, however, were sitting quietly by themselves, not talking to anyone.

I looked for an empty seat in the last row and sat down. In a few minutes, the teacher walked into the room, and all the multilingual conversation suddenly stopped.

# Chapter 3: Perfect and Perfect Progressive Tenses

# Exercise 2, p. 37.

- 1. I wrote a book. Have you ever . . .
- 2. I lost my wallet. Have you ever . . .
- 3. I climbed a mountain last year. Have you ever . . .
- 4. I gave a speech to a large audience. Have you ever . . .
- 5. I told a lie. Have you ever . . .
- 6. I once sang in public. Have you ever . . .
- 7. I rode on a motorcycle once. Have you ever . . .
- 8. I drank Turkish coffee. Have you ever . . .
- 9. I took a cooking class. Have you ever . . .
- 10. I shook hands with a famous person. Have you ever . . .
- 11. I helped another person with English. Have you ever . . .
- 12. I slept in a tent. Have you ever . . .
- 13. I drove a truck. Have you ever . . .
- 14. I had a car accident. Have you ever . . .
- 15. I studied biology. Have you ever . . .
- 16. I once played a violin. Have you ever . . .

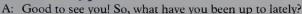
### Exercise 10, p. 41.

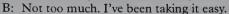
- 1. The Browns have decided to grow their own vegetables.
- 2. It's past midnight. Where have you been?
- 3. Laura has offered to help us move into our new apartment.
- 4. Is Nick in trouble again? What's he done this time?
- 5. Janet has traveled all over the world.
- 6. Her parents have traveled a lot too.

# Exercise 11, p. 42.

- 1. My teacher's in the classroom.
- 2. Your teacher has already left.
- 3. All of the other teachers have already left too.
- 4. You're late! Where have you been?
- 5. Susan has a guilty look on her face. What's she done?
- 6. Finally! The mail's come.
- My neighbors have lived in the same apartment for over thirty years.
- 8. Vicky's planning a trip to Brazil.
- 9. It's great to see you. How have you been?
- 10. India's been an independent country since 1947.
- 11. The weather's very nice.
- 12. The weather's been warm lately.
- 13. The children have finished their drawings.
- 14. Ruth has read four novels so far this month.

### Exercise 18, p. 48.





A: How nice! Glad to hear you haven't been working too hard. By the way, how are your parents? I haven't seen them for a while.

- B: They're doing great. They're traveling now that they're retired.
- A: How long have they been retired?
- B: Gosh, I don't know. It's been a couple of years now.
- A: So, they've been traveling a lot?
- B: Yeah. They've been staying in warm, sunny places in the winter and spending summers here.
- A: What a great way to spend retirement! I'm glad to hear they're enjoying themselves.

### Exercise 20, p. 49.

- 1. Susan got to the doctor's office at 9:00 A.M. It is now 9:30, and she's still in the waiting room.
- Alexi arrived in this country last month. He bought a motorcycle right away and uses it to get around town.
- 3. Joe will soon make his decision about which job to take.
- 4. Mika is stuck in rush-hour traffic. She's going to be late for her first day of work at a new job. She left home at 7:00 and now it's 8:30.
- 5. Andrew and Donna are in the middle of a chess match. They're getting tired and would like some lunch. Their chess match started three hours ago.

# Exercise 25, p. 52.

- 1. I'm sorry we missed the meeting. We had forgotten about it.
- 2. The movie had already begun by the time we got there.
- 3. I couldn't change my schedule. I had already planned my day.
- 4. I got home late. My roommate had already gone to bed.

#### Exercise 26, p. 53.

- 1. We had never seen it. He had never seen it. They had never seen it.
- 2. We got home late. The children had already fallen asleep.
- 3. My roommates had finished dinner by the time I got home.
- 4. My roommates had dinner early.
- 5. We couldn't drive across the river. The flood had washed away the bridge.
- 6. You were at Jim's at 8:00. Where had you been before that?
- 7. I had never visited there before. I'd like to go again. I had a good time.





### Exercise 27, p. 53.

- 1. You're a new student, aren't you? How long've you been in this country?
- 2. You must miss your old neighbor. How long had you known Mr. Kim before he moved away?
- 3. You're looking for Jack? Jack has left. He isn't here.
- 4. We were late, and Natasha had left by the time we got there.
- 5. Unfortunately, I didn't have my cell phone with me when we got lost. I'd left it at home.
- 6. Since we're teachers, we have the summers off and do a lot of traveling. We'd like to travel to Africa next.
- 7. Talk about long marriages! Can you believe that Mr. and Mrs. Cho have been married for 65 years?
- 8. Serena's an amazing chef. She's created so many new and popular dishes that it's almost impossible to get a reservation at her restaurant.

### Exercise 28, p. 54.

#### A Pleasant Surprise

Last night Amy got home from work two hours late. Usually she's home by 7:30, but last night she didn't get there until almost 9:30.

When she got home, her husband, Jamal, had already eaten dinner and was washing the dishes. With a worried tone in his voice, he asked her where she'd been. She told him she'd had to work late, and then, on her way home, there'd been a big accident that had slowed traffic to a crawl. He asked her why she hadn't called. She said she'd forgotten to recharge her cell phone, so she couldn't call him.

Jamal smiled warmly and said that he was just glad that she was safely home. Then he offered to make her dinner — which she gratefully accepted. A home-cooked meal sounded wonderful. It'd been a long day!

# Exercise 33, p. 58.

- 1. Yoko has recently learned to ski.
- 2. Yoko has been learning how to ski.
- 3. Mia has worked as an auto mechanic, but she prefers other types of work.
- 4. Jon has been traveling since he received his job promotion a month ago.
- 5. Jon had been working in sales when he became vice-president for human resources.

# Chapter 4: Future Time

# Exercise 3, p. 61.

- 1. Let's go to the beach. The children enjoy going there
- 2. Yes, I'm sure they'll enjoy it.
- 3. The children'll enjoy going to the beach.
- We meet at the library every Wednesday night for our book club.
- 5. We'll meet you in the reference section of the library.

- 6. Where'll I find information on organic gardening?
- 7. You'll find the information you're looking for in the gardening section of our bookstore.
- 8. These books have the information you're looking for.

#### Exercise 5, p. 62.

- 1. You'll need to turn in all your assignments by tomorrow.
- 2. We'll review for the final exam on Monday.
- 3. The test'll have 50 questions.
- 4. There'll be 50 questions on the exam.
- 5. You'll have the whole hour to complete the test.
- 6. It's a long exam. Sorry, but nobody'll finish early.
- 7. It'll be a lot of work. Study hard!
- 8. The results'll be available in my office the next day.

### Exercise 6, p. 62.

- Next in the news: The United Nations is going to vote on the new trade resolution tomorrow afternoon.
- 2. The election's almost here. I think I'm going to (gonna) vote for Carol Johnson. I like her.
- 3. Good evening, ladies and gentleman. It is clear that our town has a number of problems. What are we going to do to make our town a better place to live? I'd like to offer a few suggestions this evening.
- 4. Oh, no! We're out of gas. We're in the middle of nowhere. It's past midnight. Yikes! What're we going to (gonna) do?

# Exercise 12, p. 66.

- 1. So, you were talking about your plans for the summer. What are you going to do?
- 2. Can you help me out? I've got to get this letter in the mail by noon.
- 3. Tell me again. Why are you leaving work early?
- 4. Darn, this flashlight doesn't work.
- 5. Here's the broom. What did you want it for?

# Chapter 5: Review of Verb Tenses

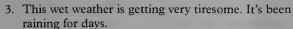
# Exercise 4, p. 78.

#### A Silly Mistake

When I got home to my apartment last night, I took out my key to open the door as usual. As always, I put it in the lock, but the door didn't open. I tried my key again and again with no luck. So I knocked on the door for my wife to let me in. Finally the door opened, but I didn't see my wife on the other side. I saw a stranger. I had been trying to get into the wrong apartment! I quickly apologized and went to my own. I felt very stupid about what I had done.

#### Exercise 8, p. 80.

- 1. Flight 907 landed at 8:06 P.M.
- 2. It was evening, and Greg was home alone. He was lying on his couch in the living room. He had been listening to classical music for almost an hour.



- 4. On the way to the theater, we got stuck in traffic, so we were late. The concert was just starting as we walked in.
- 5. Janice is interested in learning to fly a small plane. She's had two lessons so far.
- 6. There was a robbery at the bank ten minutes ago, and the police still haven't come. By the time they get here, the thief'll be far away.

# Chapter 6: Subject-Verb Agreement

### Exercise 3, p. 85.

- 1. ride/z/ 4. rug/z/ 7. wish/əz/ 2. write/s/ 5. sleep/s/ 8. page/əz/
- 3. rob/z/ 6. lock/s/ 9. month/s/

# Exercise 5, p. 86.

- 1. Cats sleep eighteen hours a day.
- 2. People come in many shapes and sizes.
- Maria practices pronunciation by reading sentences aloud.
- 4. The cafeteria serves good sandwiches.
- Our teacher encourages us to speak English outside of class.
- 6. When Jack has a cold, he coughs and sneezes.

# Exercise 9, p. 88.

- 1. The students . . .
- 2. The students in this classroom . . .
- 3. Each student . . .
- 4. Every student . . .
- 5. Every student in Mrs. Walker's classes . .
- 6. The students and teachers . . .
- 7. Every student and teacher . . .
- 8. Each student and teacher . . .

# Exercise 15, p. 91.

- 1. Still hungry? There're some leftovers in the fridge.
- 2. If you want more to eat, there's an apple left over from lunch.
- 3. Don't leave yet. There're email messages waiting for your response.
- 4. Excuse me. There's someone on the phone for you.
- 5. I need your help. Is there a place we could go to talk?
- 6. It's very crowded. Are there chairs for us to sit down?
- 7. I think there're extra chairs in the hallway.
- 8. Moving is a lot of work. Is there anything I can do to help?

# Chapter 7: Nouns

# Exercise 14, p. 108.

- 1. Joseph and Rob are taxi drivers.
- 2. They're drivers. They drive taxis for a living.
- 3. Maria and her sister have good jobs. They're office managers.
- 4. Managers of big offices have a lot of responsibilities.
- 5. I don't enjoy traveling in airplanes anymore. The seats are getting smaller and smaller.
- 6. Airplane seats are getting more and more uncomfortable, don't you think?
- Schools often offer a lot of after-school activities for students.
- 8. Anna enjoys school activities such as playing on the soccer team and being in the debate club.

# Exercise 23, p. 117.

- 1. My boss has unreasonable expectations.
- 2. This is not an easy situation to deal with.
- 3. I feel uneasy about this situation.
- 4. This is a difficult situation.
- 5. My boss has made an unreasonable request.
- 6. The speaker presented a complicated problem.
- 7. The speaker presented complicated problems.
- 8. The presentation was uncomplicated.

# Exercise 30, p. 121.

#### Computer Bugs

When there is a problem with a computer, we often say we have a "computer bug." Of course, it's not a real insect. It refers to a technical difficulty we are having. The expression actually goes back to Thomas Edison, who was a famous inventor. When he was working on his first phonograph, he had a lot of problems. He attributed the problems to an imaginary insect that had hidden inside the machine. He is quoted in a newspaper as saying there was "a bug" in his phonograph. This was in 1889, and it is the first recorded use of the word *bug* in such a context.

### Exercise 39, p. 128.

- 1. I don't really like much salt on my food.
- 2. I have a long plane ride ahead of me.
- 3. Mr. Hong arrived in Canada only a few days ago. He's never studied English. I think he knows how to say "hello," but I haven't heard him say any other English words.
- 4. Talk to Mr. Hong's daughter. She studied English in school before they emigrated. If you speak slowly, she'll understand you, and you can have a conversation with her.
- 5. Linda is in Mexico, but she can't speak Spanish. She can't find a job. She's almost out of money.



- 6. Billy has loving parents and grandparents. He's healthy and happy. He has cousins and friends to play with. He's a lucky little boy.
- 7. Mr. Perez doesn't know how to be a good boss. He has a bad temper and yells at people all the time about nothing.

# Chapter ! lerouns

### Exercise 10, p. 139.

- 1. Where's Kim?
  - A: I don't know. I haven't seen him this morning.
  - B: I think he's in the restroom.
  - C: I'm looking for him too.
  - D: Ask his assistant. He'll know.
  - E: Have you tried looking in his office? I know he's not there much, but maybe he'll surprise you.
- 2. The Nelsons are giving their daughter a motorcycle for graduation.
  - A: Hmmm. Does she like motorcycles that much?
  - B: Really? Is she a motorcycle rider?
  - C: That's an odd gift. I wonder what they were thinking.
  - D: That's what the Smiths gave their son. I think he's already had an accident.
  - E: I'm not a fan of motorcycles. Cars just don't see them in traffic.
  - F: I think it's a wonderful gift! I've had mine for years, and it's been great.

### Exercise 20, p. 146.

- 1. Hey Jon, I see you finally cleaned your apartment. How did you find the time to do it . . .
- 2. Do you like my dress? I made it . . .
- 3. We were going to take a trip with our cousins, but the plans got so complicated that we finally decided to go by . . .
- 4. My brother has an antique car. He restored it . . .
- 5. Mr. and Mrs. Peterson are planning to sell their house. They are going to put an ad in the paper and sell it . . .
- 6. My sister-in-law is an architect. She designed her office . . .

# Exercise 30, p. 151.

- 1. This coffee is delicious. Could I please have another cup?
- 2. The coffee isn't in this grocery bag, so I'll look in the other one.
- 3. There are supposed to be ten chairs in the room, but I count only five. Where are the others?
- 4. No, let's not use this printer. Let's use the other one.

- 5. Bob is a nickname for Robert. Others are Rob and Robbie.
- 6. The sky is clearing. It's going to be another beautiful day.

#### Exercise 34, p. 154.

- 1. The teacher asked the students the same question.
  One after another they gave the wrong answer.
- 2. Mr. and Mrs. Clark lead such busy lives that they see each other only on weekends.
- 3. Mr. Perez is doing fine. Susan spoke with him just the other day.
- 4. A: I have a secret about Danny and me.
  - B: Let me guess. You're engaged!
  - A: Yes! But it's a secret. We haven't told anyone other than you.
- 5. A: Have you sent party invitations yet?
  - B: Everyone except Jan knows about the surprise party.

# Chapter 9: Modals, Part 1

# Exercise 7, p. 161.

- 1. This is a non-smoking restaurant. Would you mind putting out your cigarette?
- 2. The music's awfully loud. Would you mind if I turned it down?
- 3. It's getting cool in here. Would you mind closing the window?
- 4. I can't reach the salt and pepper. Would you mind passing it to me?
- 5. I can't talk now. Mind if I called you back?

# Exercise 17, p. 166.

#### Situation 1: Class registration

Here is some important information you need for class registration next Monday. If you are a new student, you will need to register in person. Bring some form of photo ID, such as a passport or driver's license, or you cannot register. If you are a returning student, you can register online or in person.

#### Situation 2: Class changes and tuition

If you want to change classes next week, you need to do so in person. You cannot do this online. Also, it is very important that you pay your tuition in full by the second week of classes, which is the deadline for payment, or you will have to drop your classes.

# Exercise 24, p. 169.

- 1. The key's in the desk drawer, but it's not necessary to lock the front door when you leave.
- 2. When you apply for a visa, it's very important that you show proof of citizenship.
- 3. It's a good idea to arrive at the airport early tomorrow. The security lines will be long.
- 4. Only airline passengers with boarding passes will be allowed into the boarding area.

# Exercise 26, p. 170.

- 1. Your sister is broke now because she spent all her money carelessly.
- Your friends went to Hawaii over vacation. They had a good time. You didn't go with them, and now you are sorry.
- 3. Jack had too much coffee, and now he can't sleep.
- 4. The little girl told a lie. She got into a lot of trouble.

# Chapter 10: Modals, Part 2

# Exercise 9, p. 184.

**Situation:** Tom and his young son, Billy, hear a noise on the roof.

Tom: I wonder what that noise is.

Billy: It may be a bird.

Tom: It can't be a bird. It's running across the roof. Birds don't run across roofs.

Billy: Well, some birds do. It could be a big bird that's running fast.

Tom: No, I think it must be some kind of animal. It might be a mouse.

Billy: It sounds much bigger than a mouse. It may be a dragon!

Tom: Son, it couldn't be a dragon. We don't have any dragons around here. They exist only in storybooks.

Billy: It could be a little dragon that you don't know about.

Tom: Well, I suppose it might be some kind of lizard.

Billy: I'll go look.

Tom: That's a good idea.

Billy: Guess what, Dad. It's a rat!

# Exercise 21, p. 192.

What's wrong? Your parents look upset.

- 1. We should ask them.
- 2. We shouldn't ask them.
- 3. You may have upset them.
- 4. You should try to find out.
- 5. Maybe you shouldn't have stayed out so late.
- 6. You'd better have a good excuse for being late.
- 7. You could have told them what you planned to do.
- 8. You must have known your behavior would cause problems.

# Exercise 31, p. 199.

- 1. The secretary can help you.
- 2. My mother can't speak English.
- 3. My friend can meet you at the airport.
- 4. Mr. Smith can answer your question.
- 5. We can't come to the meeting.
- 6. Can't you come?
- 7. You can take that course.

- 8. I can't cook.
- 9. I can't drive a stick-shift car.
- 10. Our son can count to ten.

# Exercise 33, p. 200.

An Experiment in Human Behavior

A researcher in human behavior conducted an experiment. First she talked to a group of four-year-olds.

"How many of you can dance?" All of the children raised their hands.

"How many of you can sing?" All of the hands shot up.

"And finally, how many of you can draw?" Every child's hand was raised.

Next the researcher went to a college class of twentyfive students in their late teens and early twenties.

"How many of you can dance?" she asked. About a third of the students raised their hands.

"How many of you can sing?" Some hands were raised, but fewer than were raised for the first question.

"How many of you can draw?" Only two hands went up.

### Exercise 44, p. 208.

- Carlos was planning to come to the party, but he didn't show up. It was a great party. There was delicious food, and we danced until midnight.
- 2. I have a whole lot of material I need to review before the exam, but I just don't feel like studying this afternoon.
- 3. Tony's over an hour late for our meeting. That's not like him. I hope nothing bad has happened.
- 4. Rick was supposed to be at work early today to train his new assistant, but he woke up with a high fever. He can't even get out of bed.
- 5. The teacher called on Sonya in class yesterday, but she kept looking out the window and didn't respond.

# Chapter 11: The Passive

# Exercise 10, p. 216.

- 1. A famous architect has been asked to design the new library.
- 2. There was a group of noisy kids at the movie theater. They had been told several times to leave.
- 3. I was ignored by the salesclerk while she spent five minutes talking on the phone.
- 4. After the speech, the audience will ask the speaker follow-up questions.
- 5. The staff is planning a retirement party for Dr. Wilson.
- Since the beginning of the modern industrial age, many of the natural habitats of plants and animals have been altered or destroyed by human development.



# Exercise 15, p. 219.

How Chocolate Is Made

Chocolate is made from the seeds of roasted cocoa beans. After the seeds have been roasted, the inside of the seed is pressed into a liquid. This liquid is called chocolate liquor. The liquor contains fat, which is separated from the liquor. After this has been done, a solid is left. This solid, which is known as cocoa cake, is ground up and becomes unsweetened cocoa. This is a very bitter chocolate. To make it taste better, other substances such as cocoa butter and sugar will be added later.

### Exercise 22, p. 224.

The 2004 Indian Ocean Tsunami

In 2004, several countries that border the Indian Ocean, including Indonesia, Thailand, India, Malaysia, and Somalia, were hit by an earthquake and subsequent tsunami. (As you may already know, a tsunami is a giant ocean wave.) In just a few short hours, millions of lives were changed forever. The earthquake was measured at 9.3 on the Richter scale. It was the fourth largest earthquake since 1900 and the second largest that has ever been recorded on the Richter scale.

The quake was followed by four giant waves as high as 100 feet (or 30 meters). Whole villages were destroyed. Thousands of people were swept out to sea, and many others died due to lack of medical care. In total, almost 300,000 people were killed, and 1.3 million people were left homeless. Aftershocks from the earthquake continued for several days.

Tragically, the damage could have been lessened if there had been a tsunami early-warning system. Such a system already exists for the Pacific Ocean, but it doesn't reach to the Indian Ocean. Since the tsunami disaster, governments have been working together to develop an early-warning system so that Southeast Asia will not experience such destruction again from a tsunami.

#### Exercise 30, p. 230.

- 1. Water is composed of hydrogen and oxygen.
- 2. I am not acquainted with Dr. William's books.
- 3. I'm finally accustomed to living here.
- 4. You're so busy. I think you're involved in too many activities.
- 5. Are you prepared for the next test?
- 6. Mr. and Mrs. Miller are devoted to each other.
- 7. I'm concerned about my grandfather's health.
- 8. Are you satisfied with your progress?

#### Exercise 43, p. 237.

- Excuse me. Your application form has some missing information.
- 2. As the owner of her own design business, Carol works hard to have satisfied customers.
- 3. After the earthquake, frightened residents were afraid to sleep indoors for several days.

- 4. I think James will be single forever. He's just not the marrying type.
- 5. The airplane pilot had a few scary moments when lightning hit his plane.
- The finished product was exactly what the client had asked for.

### Exercise 44, p. 238.

- 1. When I ride on a roller coaster, my heart pounds with excitement. The ride is . . .
- 2. During the ride, I feel . . .
- 3. The art museum has an exhibit that people are upset about. People who visit the museum are . . .
- 4. People say that the exhibit is . . .
- 5. My parents enjoy talking with my friend, Maria. They find her . . .
- 6. Maria gets along well with my parents. She thinks they are . . .
- 7. Not one of the students could understand Professor Steven's explanations. Whenever he explains a math problem, the students become more . . .
- 8. His explanations are terribly . . .

# Exercise 47, p. 239.

The Olympic Games

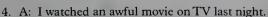
The Olympic Games began more than 2,000 years ago in Olympia, a small town in Greece. The games were established for two purposes. One was to showcase the physical qualities and athletic performances of its young men. At that time, only Greek males were allowed to compete. In fact, women were not even permitted to watch the games, and the only spectators were men. The other goal was to encourage good relationships among Greek cities. People of other nationalities were not invited to participate.

The winner of each event was crowned with a wreath made of olive leaves. Additionally, his statue could be placed in Olympia for all to see. Winning athletes were treated as heroes when they returned to their cities because with their victory, they brought fame and honor to their hometowns.

# Chapter 12: Noun Clauses

### Exercise 11, p. 248.

- 1. A: It's a beautiful day. Let's walk over to Lakeside Park. It's not far from here, is it?
  - B: Gosh, I don't know how far it is.
- 2. A: Do you want to walk to the farmers' market with me tomorrow morning? They have lots of fresh fruits and vegetables.
  - B: Gee, I don't know. Maybe. How far is it?
- 3. A: That was a terrible movie!
  - B: I agree. I don't know why we watched the whole thing.



- B: Well, if it was awful, why did you watch it?
- 5. A: Is Jeannie going to be 49 or 50 this year?
  - B: I don't know. I can never remember how old she is.
- 6. A: Excuse me. I'm still unsure about the pronunciation of that word.
  - B: Which one?
  - A: This one right here. How is this word pronounced?
- 7. A: You look upset.
  - B: I am. I'm very upset.
  - A: So, what is the problem?

# Exercise 41, p. 264.

- 1. I'm not going to the personnel meeting because I have to finish a report.
- 2. I can't lend Marta any money because my wallet is in my coat pocket back at home.
- 3. Someone in this room is wearing very strong perfume. It's giving me a headache.
- 4. Hi, Emma. I'll meet you at the coffee shop at 9:00. I promise not to be late.
- 5. I'm considering looking for a new job. What do you think I should do?
- 6. We are going to be late for the concert. My wife has to attend a business function after work.

# Chapter 13: Adjective Clauses

# Exercise 5, p. 271.

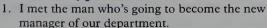
#### Part I.

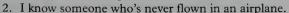
- 1. He has a friend who'll help him.
- 2. He has a friend who's helping him.
- 3. He has a friend who's helped him.
- 4. He has friends who're helping him.
- 5. He has friends who've helped him.
- 6. He has a friend who'd helped him.
- 7. He has a friend who'd like to help him.

#### Part II.

- 8. We know a person who'll be great for the job.
- 9. We know a person who'd like to apply for the job.
- 10. That's the man who's giving the speech at our graduation.
- 11. I know a nurse who's traveled around the world helping people.
- 12. Let's talk to the people who're planning the protest march
- 13. There are people at the factory who've worked there all their adult lives.
- 14. The doctor who'd been taking care of my mother retired.

# Exercise 19, p. 278.





- 3. I talked to the man whose wife was in the car accident on Fifth Street yesterday. She's in the hospital, but she's going to be okay.
- 4. I forget the name of the woman who's going to call you later Mrs. Green or Mrs. White or something like that.
- 5. I need to hurry. The neighbor whose bike I borrowed is waiting for me to return it.
- 6. I got an email from a friend who's studying in Malaysia. It was really good to hear from her.
- 7. I recently heard from a friend who's been out of the country for over two months. He finally sent me an email.
- 8. I'm thinking about getting a pet. There's a woman at work whose dog just had puppies. I might adopt one.

### Exercise 21, 279.

- 1. That's the person who's going to help us.
- 2. That's the person whose help we need.
- 3. I'd like to introduce you to a teacher who's spent time in Africa.
- 4. I'd like to introduce you to the teacher whose husband is from Africa.
- 5. The company is looking for a person who's bilingual.
- 6. The company is looking for a person whose native language is Arabic.
- 7. The company is looking for a person who's had a lot of experience in sales.
- 8. They want to hire a person who's familiar with their sales territory.

# Exercise 29, p. 281.

- The man who organized the community dinner is a friend of mine.
- 2. Two people died in the accident that blocked all lanes of the highway for two hours.
- 3. The small town where I was born is now a large city.
- 4. The music teacher who directs the school band plays in a rock band on weekends.
- 5. The camera that Jack gave me for my birthday takes excellent digital pictures.
- 6. My neighbor often drops in for a visit about the time when we would like to sit down to dinner.

# Exercise 33, p. 284.

- A: Do you see that guy who's wearing the baseball cap?
- B: I see two guys that're wearing baseball caps. Do you mean the one whose T-shirt says "Be Happy"?
- A: Yeah, him. Do you remember him from high school? He looks a little different now, doesn't he? Isn't he the one whose wife joined the circus?



- (6)
- B: Nah, I heard that story too. That was just a rumor. When the circus was in town last summer, his wife spent a lot of time there, so people started wondering why. Some people started saying she was working there as a performer. But the truth is that she was only visiting a cousin who's a manager for the circus. She just wanted to spend time with him while he was in town.
- A: Well, you know, it was a story that sounded pretty fishy to me. But people sure enjoyed talking about it. The last thing that I heard was that she'd learned how to eat fire and swallow swords!
- B: Rumors really take on a life of their own, don't they?!

# Exercise 36, p. 286.

- 1. Did you hear about the man who rowed a boat across the Atlantic Ocean?
- 2. My uncle, who loves boating, rows his boat across the lake near his house nearly every day.
- Tea, which is a common drink throughout the world, is made by pouring boiling water onto the dried leaves of certain plants.
- 4. Tea which is made from herbs is called herbal tea.
- Toys which contain lead paint are unsafe for children.
- 6. Lead, which can be found in paint and plastics, is known to cause brain damage in children.

### Exercise 39, p. 288.

- 1. My mother looked in the fruit basket and threw away the apples that were rotten.
- 2. My mother looked in the fruit basket and threw away the apples, which were rotten.
- 3. The students who had done well on the test were excused from class early.
- 4. The students, who had done well on the test, were excused from class early.

# Exercise 52, p. 295.

- 1. The fence surrounding our house is made of wood.
- 2. The children attending that school receive a good
- 3. Dr. Stanton, the president of the university, will give a speech at the commencement ceremonies.
- 4. Our solar system is in a galaxy called the Milky Way.

# Exercise 56, p. 297.

#### Animals and Earthquakes

Whether or not animals can predict earthquakes has been widely debated for hundreds of years. In fact, as far back as 373 B.C. villagers reported that hundreds of animals deserted the Greek town of Helice a few days before an earthquake destroyed it. There are other interesting phenomena that scientists have noted. For example, before an earthquake, dogs may begin barking or howling for no reason; chickens might stop laying eggs; and some pets will go into hiding.

In Asia in 2004, many animals that were accustomed to being on the beach in the early morning refused to go there the morning of the big tsunami. In Thailand, a herd of buffalo on a beach noticed or heard something which made them run to the top of a hill before the tsunami was anywhere in sight. The villagers who followed them were saved.

What causes this strange behavior in animals? One theory is that they can sense the earth move before people can. There are vibrations deep in the earth that begin before an earthquake can be detected. Another idea is that the energy in the air changes and that animals are disturbed by these changes.

Some scientists dismiss these ideas, while others believe that they are worth researching further. Those scientists who have witnessed this strange animal behavior are certain that animals are far more sensitive to subtle changes in the earth than people are and that studying their behavior can be useful in the prediction of earthquakes.

# Chapter 14: Gerunds and Infinitives, Part 1

### Exercise 6, p. 305.

- 1. A: I'm sorry I'm late.
  - B: No problem. We have lots of time.
- 2. A: I finished the project early.
  - B: That's great you got it done so quickly.
- 3. A: I hate to do housework.
  - B: I know. I do too. It's a lot of work.
- 4. A: You were a big help. Thanks.
  - B: Sure. I was happy to help out.
- 5. A: Your report isn't finished. What's your excuse?
  - B: Uh, well, sorry. I don't really have one.
- 6. A: How do you like the food here?
  - B: It's too spicy. I can't eat much of it.
- 7. A: How was your weekend? Did you go away for the holiday?
  - B: No. I got the flu and spent the whole weekend in hed

#### Exercise 13, p. 308.

- 1. A: What should we do tomorrow night?
  - B: Let's just stay home and watch a movie. There's nothing I like to do better on a weekend.
  - A: Sounds good to me.
- 2. A: I was really looking forward to the hike up to Skyline Ridge to see the mountains, but I guess we're not going to get there this month.
  - B: It doesn't look like it. I don't think there's any hope. It's supposed to rain the rest of this week and into next week.
- 3. A: Do you want to take a break?
  - B: No, we have to finish this report by 5:00. We don't have time for a break.
- 4. A: Let's go into the city this weekend. There's a great concert at the park. And it's free!
  - B: Great idea! Who's playing?



- 5. A: Gosh, I'd really like to go out this evening, but I have all this work to do. I have three papers due, and I haven't begun to write any of them.
  - B: I know how you feel. I'm way behind in my homework too.
- A: I just heard that there's an accident on the freeway and nothing's moving. I don't want our drive home to take hours.
  - B: Me neither. Let's not leave the office for another couple of hours. We can get caught up on our work.
  - A: Good idea. I have so much to do.

# Exercise 17, p. 309.

Ron's Busy Saturday

Ron is an active individual. On his days off, he likes to do several activities in one day. His friends can't keep up with him.

Last Saturday, for example, he began by going canoeing early in the morning. He finds early mornings on the lake very calm and relaxing. He brought a fishing rod with him so he could go fishing and perhaps catch something for dinner. He saw some friends getting their sailboat ready and thought about going sailing with them, but decided instead to go swimming. By that time, it was only noon!

After lunch, he went biking in the hills behind his town. He cooked a fish that he had caught for dinner, and it was delicious. Later, some friends called to invite him out, so he finished the day by going dancing with them.

# Exercise 22, p. 312.

- 1. I have a terrible memory. I can't even remember my children's birthdays.
- 2. My teenage son tried to hide his report card, but I caught him.
- 3. I'm in a hurry in the mornings. I always stand at the kitchen counter and eat my breakfast.
- 4. Foreign languages are hard for me to learn.
- 5. I sat in traffic for two hours. It was a waste of time.
- 6. We sang songs on the bus trip. It was fun.
- 7. I looked all over for Tom. He was studying in the library.
- 8. There was a line to buy movie tickets. I had to wait for an hour.

#### Exercise 31, p. 318.

- 1. Joan remembered to call her husband before she left work yesterday.
- 2. Rita remembered going to the farmers' market with her grandmother.
- 3. Roger stopped smoking when the doctor told him he had heart disease.
- 4. Mr. and Mrs. Olson stopped to eat before the movie.
- 5. I regret leaving school before I graduated.

# Chapter 15: Gerunds and Infinitives, Part 2

#### Exercise 14, p. 336.

1. That dinner was delicious, Nancy.

- 2. Do you leave your daughter home alone when you go out?
- 3. I think our English is getting a lot better, but learning a second language isn't easy.
- 4. I used a new laundry detergent on these shirts. How did it work?
- 5. Mr. Jones is 99 years old. He's too old to drive.
- 6. We need 20 big envelopes, but we only have 10.

### Exercise 36, p. 348.

An Issue in Health Care: Illiteracy

According to some estimates, well over half of the people in the world are functionally illiterate. This means that they are unable to perform everyday tasks because they can't read, understand, and respond appropriately to information. One of the problems this creates in health care is that millions of people are not able to read directions on medicine bottles or packages. Imagine being a parent with a sick child and being unable to read the directions on a medicine bottle. We all know that it is important for medical directions to be understood clearly. One solution is pictures. Many medical professionals are working today to solve this problem by using pictures to convey health-care information.

# Exercise 39, p. 350.

Protecting Yourself in a Lightning Storm

Lightning storms can occur suddenly and without warning. It's important to know how to stay safe if you're outside when a storm begins. Some people stand under trees or in open shelters like picnic areas in order to protect themselves. They are surprised to hear that this can be a fatal mistake. Tall objects are likely to attract lightning, so when you are out in the open, you should try to make yourself as small as possible. Crouching down or curling up into a ball lessens the chance that a lightning bolt will strike you. Finding a depression in the ground to hide in, like a hole or a ditch, is even better.

Being inside a building is safer than being outside, but it's not without dangers. Be careful to stay away from doors and windows. If you're talking on a phone with a cord, hang up. Lightning has been known to travel along a phone cord and strike the person holding the phone. Even TVs can conduct lightning through the cable or antenna, so it's a good idea to stay away from the television. It's also inadvisable to take a shower or bath since plumbing can conduct electricity from lightning. How safe are cars? Surprisingly, the inside of a car is safe as long as it has a metal roof, but avoid touching any part of the car that leads to the outside.

There's a 30/30 rule regarding lightning. As soon as you see lightning, begin counting the seconds until you hear thunder. If you hear thunder before you reach 30, this means you need to seek shelter immediately. Additionally, even if the storm has passed, you want to stay in a protected place for 30 minutes after you hear the last sounds of thunder or have seen the last flashes of lightning. Many lightning deaths, in fact more than half in the United States, occur after a storm has passed.



# Chapter 16: Coordinating Confunctions

#### Exercise 5, p. 354.

- 1. My bedroom has a bed, a desk, and a lamp.
- 2. The price of the meal includes a salad, a main dish, and dessert.
- 3. The price of the meal includes a salad and a main dish.
- 4. Elias waited for his son, wife, and daughter.
- 5. Elias waited for his son's wife and daughter.
- 6. Susan raised her hand, snapped her fingers, and asked a question.
- 7. Red, yellow, gold, and olive green are the main colors in the fabric.
- 8. I love films full of action, adventure, and suspense.
- 9. I love action and adventure films.
- Travel is fatal to prejudice, bigotry, and narrowmindedness.

### Exercise 14, p. 359.

- 1. Ben will call either Mary or Bob.
- 2. Both my mother and father talked to my teacher.
- 3. Simon saw not only a whale but also a dolphin.
- 4. Our neighborhood had neither electricity nor water after the storm.
- 5. Either Mr. Anderson or Ms. Wiggins is going to teach our class today.

# Exercise 16, p. 360.

#### Bats

- (1) What do people in your country think of bats? Are they mean and scary creatures, or are they symbols of both happiness and luck?
- (2) In Western countries, many people have an unreasoned fear of bats. According to scientist Dr. Sharon Horowitz, bats are not only harmless but also beneficial mammals. "When I was a child, I believed that a bat would attack me and tangle itself in my hair. Now I know better," said Dr. Horowitz.
- (3) Contrary to popular Western myths, bats do not attack humans. Although a few bats may have diseases, they are not major carriers of rabies or other frightening diseases. Bats help natural plant life by pollinating plants, spreading seeds, and eating insects. If you get rid of bats that eat overripe fruit, then fruit flies can flourish and destroy the fruit industry.
- (4) According to Dr. Horowitz, bats are both gentle and trainable pets. Not many people, however, own or train bats, and bats themselves prefer to avoid people.

### Exercise 19, p. 362.

- Both Jamal and I had many errands to do yesterday. Jamal had to go to the post office and the bookstore. I had to go to the post office, the travel agency, and the bank.
- 2. Roberto slapped his hand on his desk in frustration. He had failed another examination and had ruined his chances for a passing grade in the course.

- 3. When Alex got home, he took off his coat and tie, threw his briefcase on the kitchen table, and opened the refrigerator looking for something to eat. Ann found him sitting at the kitchen table when she got home.
- 4. When Tara went downtown yesterday, she bought birthday presents for her children, shopped for clothes, and saw a movie at the theater. It was a busy day, but she felt fine because it ended on a relaxing note.
- 5. It was a wonderful picnic. The children waded in the stream, collected rocks and insects, and flew kites. The teenagers played an enthusiastic game of baseball. The adults busied themselves preparing the food, supervising the children, and playing some volleyball.

### Exercise 21, p. 363.

#### Butterflies

A butterfly is a marvel. It begins as an ugly caterpillar and turns into a work of art. The sight of a butterfly floating from flower to flower on a warm, sunny day brightens anyone's heart. A butterfly is a charming and gentle creature. Caterpillars eat plants and cause damage to some crops, but adult butterflies feed principally on nectar from flowers and do not cause any harm. When cold weather comes, some butterflies travel great distances to reach tropical climates. They can be found on every continent except Antarctica. Because they are so colorful and beautiful, butterflies are admired throughout the world.

# Chapter 17: Adverb Clauses

# Exercise 11, p. 372.

#### Cultural Misunderstandings

Since Marco and Anya came to this country, they've had some memorable misunderstandings due to language and culture. The first time Marco met someone at a party, he was asked "How's it going?" Marco thought that the person was asking him about leaving, and that seemed very strange.

Once, Anya walked into class, and a native speaker said, "Hi. How are you?" When Anya started to give a long answer, the native speaker looked at her rather oddly. This happened several times until Anya learned she was just supposed to say something like "Okay" or "Fine, thanks. And you?"

Another time, Marco was at a restaurant and wanted to get the server's attention. He snapped his fingers. The server was not pleased.

Since coming here, Marco and Anya have learned that cultural misunderstandings are a normal part of learning another language. They can be valuable and even entertaining learning experiences. Marco and Anya just smile at these misunderstandings now.



# Chapter 18: Reduction of Adverb Clauses to Modifying Adverbial Phrases

# Exercise 16, p. 395.

- 1. A: I don't want to play the piano at the family gathering. I don't play well enough. People will laugh at me.
  - B: Oh, Rose, don't be silly. You play beautifully. Everyone will love hearing you.
- 2. A: Jan, are you going to tell Thomas that he needs to do more work on the project? He hasn't done his share. He's being really lazy.
  - B: Well, he'll probably get upset, but I'm going to talk with him about it this afternoon.
- 3. A: I'm so relieved that I found my wedding ring. It'd been missing for a month. The next time I take it off, I'm going to put it in a box on top of my dresser drawer.
  - B: That sounds like a wise thing to do, Susan. It'd be terrible to lose your wedding ring again.
- 4. A: This is the first year I'm eligible to vote in the presidential election. I'm going to research all the candidates extensively.
  - B: They have very different positions, Sam. It's good to get as much information as you can.

# Exercise 18, p. 396

The QWERTY Keyboard

Do you know why the letters on an English language keyboard are placed where they are? Take a minute and look at the second row on the keyboard in the picture. Notice that Q-W-E-R-T-Y are the first six letters beginning on the left. In fact, the keyboard is called "QWERTY." As you look at all the letters on the keyboard, does it seem to make any sense to you? Many people have wondered about this rather strange placement of keys, but as it turns out, there is a logical reason for the design.

A man named Christopher Sholes, the inventor of the typewriter, came up with this keyboard in the 1860s. Wanting to create a logical design, Sholes first placed the letters in alphabetical order on his typewriter. He put two rows from A to Z on the keyboard.

But Sholes found there was a problem. The letters were on typebars — typebars, by the way, are also called keys — and some of these keys crashed into one another. This happened when letters that often occur together in words, like "s" and "l," were near each other on the keyboard. The keys tended to hit each other and get stuck, and the typist would have to stop and pull them apart.

Trying to figure out a way to keep the keys from hitting one another, Sholes made a list of letters commonly used together in English, like the pair I already mentioned, "s" and "l," or, for example, "q" and "u." He then rearranged these letters so they would be on

opposite sides of the keyboard. If you look at a keyboard, "q" is on the left side and "u" is on the right side. He put the keys that were most likely to be hit one after the other on opposite sides of the keyboard. This keyboard became known as QWERTY.

Nowadays, with computers, we don't have to worry about keys crashing into one another, so QWERTY is not necessarily the fastest and most efficient keyboard. Other people have come up with alternative keyboard patterns, but so far, none has gained much popularity. Having survived since the 1860s, QWERTY has demonstrated its longevity. It does not appear that it is going to be replaced any time soon by a faster, more efficient keyboard.

# Chapter 19: Connectives That Express Cause and Effect, Contrast, and Condition

# Exercise 33, p. 412.

- 1. Because I lift heavy boxes at work, . . .
- 2. I bought a new TV even though . . .
- 3. Even if I'm late for work, ...
- 4. I was late for work this morning; nevertheless, . . .
- 5. The air-conditioning has been broken; therefore, ...
- 6. Although I live in a noisy city, . . .
- 7. I was so tired last night that . . .

# Exercise 36, p. 414.

Why We Yawn

Have you ever noticed that when a person near you yawns, you may start yawning too? This is called contagious yawning. *Contagious* in this sense means that the behavior spreads: when one person does something like yawn, it can cause others to do the same thing.

There are various theories about why people yawn. One popular idea is that yawning brings more oxygen into the brain to wake people up. Is that what you have thought? But in 2007, researchers at a university in New York came up with a new idea: yawning helps cool the brain.

Scientists found that people yawned more frequently in situations where their brains were warmer. The idea is that yawning cools the brain by increasing blood flow and bringing cooler air into the body. Cooler brains work better than warmer ones.

This may also help explain why yawning is contagious. People are more awake when their brains are cooler. As people evolved over time, contagious yawning helped people stay awake. This was important in times of danger. It's very possible that the person yawning could have been signaling to others to stay awake.

The next time you are talking to someone and that person yawns, you can tell yourself that he or she actually wants to stay awake, not go to sleep.



# Exercise 38, p. 415.

#### Passage 1: Turtles

Turtles have survived on earth for more than 200 million years, but now many species face extinction. People in many parts of the world use them for food and for traditional medicine, so the demand for them is high. In spite of international trade laws that protect them, illegal traffic in turtles is increasing.

### Passage 2: Boy or Girl?

Research shows that many parents prefer to have a boy rather than a girl because boys are expected to become better economic providers for their parents in their old age. In developed countries, however, more women than men go to a university. It's possible that in some places more women than men will be prepared for the high-paying jobs of the 21st century.

# Chapter 20: Conditional Sentences and Wishes

# Exercise 6, p. 418.

- 1. If I'm talking too fast, please tell me.
- 2. If we get married, everyone will be shocked.
- 3. If it's okay, I'll ask for some advice.
- 4. If he's planning to quit, I hope he lets us know soon.
- 5. If it's not working, we'll need to try something else.
- 6. If she works harder, I'm sure she'll succeed.
- 7. If I should get the job, I'll call you right away.

#### Exercise 19, p. 424.

#### The Extinction of Dinosaurs

There are several scientific theories as to why dinosaurs became extinct. One theory has to do with asteroids. Asteroids, as you may know, are rocky objects that orbit the sun. According to this theory, an asteroid collided with the earth millions of years ago, causing disastrous changes in the earth's climate, such as tsunamis, high winds, and dust in the atmosphere that blocked the sun. As a result, dinosaurs could no longer survive. Some scientists believe that if this asteroid had not collided with the earth, dinosaurs would not have become extinct.

#### Exercise 20, p. 424.

- If I had known the truth sooner, I would have acted differently.
- 2. If we hadn't believed him, we wouldn't have felt so foolish
- If you hadn't told me what a great guy Jon was, I wouldn't have believed him so easily.

- 4. If it had been another person, I wouldn't have been so shocked.
- If he hadn't lied, I would have had more respect for him.

#### Exercise 22, p. 426.

- 1. If I had enough time, I'd go to the art museum this afternoon. I love going to art museums.
- 2. Mrs. Jones is really lucky. If she hadn't received immediate medical attention, she would have died.
- 3. If I were a carpenter, I'd build my own house. I'd really enjoy that.
- 4. So many people died unnecessarily in the earthquake. If the hotel had been built to withstand an earthquake, it wouldn't have collapsed.

### Exercise 32, p. 430.

- 1. If I hadn't been driving so fast, I wouldn't have gotten a speeding ticket.
- Should you have questions, give me a call on my cell.
- 3. Had you told us sooner, we could have helped you.
- 4. If there had been a faster way to get to the theater, I would have taken it.
- 5. Had anyone warned us about the situation, we would have stayed home.
- 6. Were we rich, we would live in a house overlooking the ocean.

#### Exercise 35, p. 431.

- 1. I would have called, but I left your number at home.
- 2. I couldn't have gone to college without my parents' financial help.
- 3. I ran out of time. Otherwise, I would have picked up your clothes from the cleaners.
- 4. We would have come to the party, but no one told us about it.
- 5. Without your advice, I wouldn't have known what to do.

# Exercise 45, p. 436.

- 1. Alice doesn't like her job as a nurse. She wishes she hadn't gone to nursing school.
- 2. A: I wish we didn't have to go to work today.
  - B: So do I. I wish it were a holiday.
- 3. We had a good time in the mountains over vacation. I wish you had come with us. If you had come with us, you would have had a good time.
- 4. I know that something's bothering you. I wish you would tell me what it is. Maybe I can help.
- 5. A: My feet are killing me! I wish I had worn more comfortable shoes.
  - B: Yeah, me too. I wish I had known that we were going to have to walk this much.



# Chapter 1: Overview of Verb Tenses

# Exercise 1, p. 1.

Sample questions:

- 1. What is your name?
- 2. How do you spell your (last/first) name? / How do you spell that?
- 3. Where are you from?
- 4. Where were you born?
- 5. Where do you live? / Where are you living?
- 6. Why did you come here?
- 7. How long have you been living here? How long are you going to be living here? / How long do you plan to be here?
- 8. What is your major? / What is your field of study? / What do you do?
- 9. What do you like to do in your free time? What hobbies do you have?
- 10. How do you like living here? How do you feel about living here? What do you think about living here?

# Exercise 2, p. 1.

Questions to ask:

#### Partner A:

- 1. What do you do every day before you leave home?
- 2. What have you done / have you been doing since you got up this morning?
- 3. What are you doing right now?
- 4. What were you doing at (this exact time) yesterday?
- 5. What had you done by the time you got here today? (also possible: What did you do . . . . )

#### Partner B:

- 1. What did you do last night?
- 2. What are you going to do / will you do tomorrow?
- 3. What have you been doing for the past five minutes?
- 4. What will you be doing at (this exact time)
- 5. What will you have done by the time you go to bed tonight?

# Exercise 4, p. 2.

- 1. cooked
- 4. will be
- 2. bought
- 5. am going to watch
- 3. get

# Exercise 6, p. 3.

- 1. was sleeping
- 4. will be watching
- 2. am thinking
- 5. was watching
- 3. will be sitting

# Exercise 8, p. 4.

- 1. have done
- 2. had done
- 4. have studied 5. had studied
- 3. will have done

# Exercise 11, p. 6.

- 1. studies
- 2. is studying
- 3. studied
- 4. was studying
- 5. will study / is going to study
- 6. will be studying / is going to be studying
- 7. has already studied
- 8. had already studied
- 9. will already have studied
- 10. has been studying
- 11. had been studying
- 12. will have been studying

# Exercise 12, p. 8.

- 2. The speakers are discussing an activity that began and ended in the past. Tense: simple past.
- 3. The speakers are discussing an activity that is happening (is in progress) at the moment of speaking. Tense: present progressive.
- 4. The speakers are discussing an activity in progress at a particular time in the past. Tense: past progressive.
- 5. The speakers are discussing activities that have occurred (or not occurred) "before now," at unspecific times in the past. Tense: present perfect
- 6. The speakers are discussing what will happen at a specific time in the future. Tense: simple future.
- 7. The speakers are discussing the duration of an activity that has already started and will end at a specific time in the future. Tense: future progressive.
- 8. This question concerns the duration of an activity that started in the past and is still in progress. Tense: present perfect progressive.
- 9. This question concerns an activity that started and ended before another time in the past. Tense: past perfect.

#### Exercise 14, p. 9.

- 1. Does Pedro walk to work every morning?
- 2. What are you talking about?
- 3. Did you finish your work?
- 4. My friend doesn't like her apartment.
- 5. Are you working for this company? Do you work for this company?
- 6. What time did your plane arrive?
- 7. How long have you been living in this city? How long have you lived in this city?
- 8. Ali won't be in class tomorrow.

#### Exercise 15, p. 9.

1.	hoped	6.	happened
2.	stopped	7.	planning
3.	waiting	8.	enjoyed
4.	sitting	9.	worried
5.	started	10.	studying

### Exercise 16, p. 10.

#### Part I.

dating	putting	enjoying
dining	stopping	happening
grading	winning	staying

#### Part II.

answered	controlled
listened	permitted
offered	planned
opened	preferred

# Exercise 17, p. 11.

#### Part I.

2.	hiding	8.	patting
3.	running	9.	lying
4.	ruining	10.	beginning
5.	coming	11.	earning
6.	writing	12.	flying
7	anting		

#### Part II.

2.	planning, planned	9.	dying, died
3.	raining, rained	10.	employing,
4.	taping, taped		employed
5.	tapping, tapped	11.	burying, buried
6.	entering, entered		admitting, admitted
7.	preferring, preferred		visiting, visited
8.	translating, translated	14.	waiting, waited

#### Exercise 18, p. 12.

LA	ercise 10, p.	14.	
1.	are renting	6.	'm planning
2.	preferred	7.	'm taking
3.	destroyed	8.	am replying
4.	visited	9.	replied
=	anim ad		

# Chapter 2: Present and Past; Simple and Progressive

### Exercise 1, p. 13.

- 2. I don't know Sam's wife.
- 3. My roommate usually watches television, listens to music, or goes out in the evening.
- 4. When I turned the key, the car started.
- 5. Air consists of oxygen, nitrogen, and other gases.
- The children drew some pictures in school this morning.
- 7. Right now Sally is in the kitchen eating breakfast.
- 8. While **I** was driving home last night, **I** heard a strange noise in the engine.
- 9. A: What are you talking about?
  - B: I am talking about the political situation in my country.

# Exercise 2, p. 13.

- 1. (Answers will vary.)
- 2. (Answers will vary.)
- 3. No. (The earth revolves around the sun.)
- 4. Sentence 3 is a general truth.
- 5. Sentence 1 is a daily habit.
- 6. Sentence 2 is something that is happening right now.

# Exercise 3, p. 14.

#### Sample sentences:

The earth revolves around the sun.

Air contains nitrogen and oxygen.

The human heart beats 72 times per minute (on average). Snowflakes have six sides.

The average person sleeps eight hours a night.

Hybrid cars use less gas.

# Exercise 4, p. 15.

2.	washes	5.	Do you always loc
3.	usually sits	6.	am still waiting
	is sitting	7.	is shining
4.	am trying	8.	shines wakes

#### Exercise 5, p. 15.

	, p		
1.	right now	4.	right now, toda
2.	in the winter,	5.	every summer,
	every April		in the spring
3.	every year	6.	this week

# Exercise 7, p. 16.

		7 K	
1.	b	3.	a
2.	ь	4.	a

### Exercise 8, p. 17.

- 1. a. *smell* describes a state that exists, i.e., the flowers have a smell and that smell is good.
  - b. *is smelling* describes the action of using one's nose.

- 2. a. *think* means "believe" in this sentence and describes a state.
  - b. *am thinking* is an action; thoughts are going through the speaker's mind.
- 3. a. see describes a perception that exists right now as a result of the speaker using his/her eyes.
  - b. *is seeing* a doctor means "is going to a doctor for help," a general activity in progress at present.
  - c. *are seeing* means they are dating each other, a general activity in progress at present.
- 4. a. *looks* means "appears or seems to be" and describes an apparent state that exists: Astrid is apparently cold.
  - b. is looking describes the action of using one's eyes.
- a. is feeling describes the action of using one's sense of touch. Sue is using her hands to touch the cat's fur. The activity is in progress at the present moment.
  - b. *feels* describes a state that exists, the state of the cat's fur; i.e., it is soft.
  - c. am not feeling describes the speaker's physical feelings of illness, in progress at the present. [Note: The simple present is also possible here with little difference in meaning (I don't feel well today) to describe a state that exists.]
  - d. feel means "think or believe" in this sentence and describes a state.
- 6. a. remember describes a state that exists.
  - b. *is remembering* describes an activity in progress: memories are going through Aunt Sara's mind.
- 7. a. be describes a state that exists.
  - b. *being* describes a temporary behavior: the children are acting awfully quiet.
- 8. a. *is appearing* describes the action of performing on stage in a theater, general activity in progress at present
  - b. *appears* means "seems" and describes an apparent state that exists.

### Exercise 9, p. 18.

- 2. a 5. a
- 3. b 6. a
- 4. b

### Exercise 10, p. 18.

- 1. is beginning . . . don't have . . . don't own . . . is wearing . . . wear
- 2. is doing . . . is being . . . doesn't want . . . is always
- 3. am looking ... looks ... has ... isn't having
- 4. A: do you like . . . Does it need B: tastes . . . reminds
- 5. A: are you looking
  - B: look
  - A: Do you think . . . resemble
  - B: see
- 6. am looking . . . is writing . . . is biting . . . is scratching . . . is staring . . . seems . . . is thinking . . . do you think . . . is doing

### Exercise 12, p. 22.

1. lost	10.	knew
2. forgot	11.	began
3. made	12.	spoke
4. wrote	13.	gave
5. took	14.	spent
6. did	15.	told
7. understood	16.	taught
8. brought	17.	sang
9. got		

### Exercise 13, p. 23.

- 1. Yes, I found a pet store.
- 2. Yes, I bought a parrot.
- 3. Yes, I took it out of its cage.
- 4. Yes, I had some trouble with it.
- 5. Yes, it bit me.
- 6. Yes, I left the pet store.
- 7. Yes, I went to the doctor.
- 8. Yes, I drove to the doctor's office.
- 9. Yes, she put a bandage on my finger.
- 10. Yes, I paid her.

# Exercise 14, p. 23.

1.	swam	8.	built
2.	stood	9.	wrote
3.	fell	10.	drew
4.	ran	11.	hid
5.	lay	12.	sang
6.	wore	13.	stung
7.	dug	14.	saw

# Exercise 15, p. 24.

- 1. Yes, I had a great trip.
- 2. Yes, I came back feeling rested.
- 3. Yes, I met many people.
- 4. Yes, I hung out with local people.
- 5. Yes, I did a lot of tourist activities.
- 6. Yes, I stood on the Acropolis.
- 7. Yes, I spent time in museums.
- 8. Yes, I bought some Greek sandals.
- 9. Yes, I spoke a little Greek.
- 10. Yes, I ate in typical Greek restaurants.
- 11. Yes, I got your emails.
- 12. Yes, I brought you a present.
- 13. Yes, I sent you a postcard.
- 14. Yes, I was sad to leave Greece.

# Exercise 16, p. 24.

1.	woke	8.	lay
2.	caught	9.	slept
3.	hurt	10.	dream
4.	took	11.	ate
5.	had	12.	spoke
6.	felt	13.	took
7.	kent	14	read

# Exercise 17, p. 25.

Note: The pronoun he is being used for these answers.

- 1. Yes, he woke me up a lot.
- 2. Yes, I heard a lot of noise.
- 3. Yes, his cell phone rang many times.
- 4. Yes, he fought with someone.
- 5. Yes, he put on a CD.
- 6. Yes, he sang loudly.
- 7. Yes, he made breakfast at midnight.
- 8. Yes, he ground some coffee beans first.
- 9. Yes, he fed the neighbor's cats.
- 10. Yes, he swept the floor afterwards.
- 11. Yes, he knew I was awake.
- 12. Yes, he meant to wake me up.
- 13. Yes, he upset me.
- 14. Yes, I was upset.

# Exercise 18, p. 25.

- 1. happy, good about my decision
- 2. two classes, at night
- 3. the car with gas
- 4. with colored pencils, several faces, for several hours
- 5. in the woods, some money
- 6. from the math class, some money from the bank
- 7. my hand, some rice
- 8. these jeans, my shirt
- 9. at the sad ending, when the play finished
- 10. over the fence, very quickly, in a sunny spot

# Exercise 19, p. 25.

#### Part I.

- 1. F 2. F
- 4. T 5. F
- 3. F
  - 6. F

#### Part II.

- 1. had
- 9. sped
- 2. burst
- 10. saw
- 3. broke
- 11. ran
- 4. woke
- 12. got
- 5. heard
- 13. caught
- 6. shook
- 14. felt
- 7. hid
- 15. upset
- 8. heard

#### Exercise 20, p. 26.

- 1. different
- 6. same
- 2. same
- 7. same
- 3. different
- 8. same
- 4. same
- 9. different
- 5. different

#### Exercise 21, p. 27.

- 1. /t/
- 4. /d/
- 7. /d/

- 2. /d/
- 5. /ad/
- 8. /t/

- 3. /əd/
- 6. /t/
- 9. /ad/

- Exercise 22, p. 27.
- 1. blinked/t/ . . . yawned/d/ . . . stretched/t/
- 2. mopped/t/ . . . vacuumed/d/ . . . dusted/əd/
- 3. started/əd/...ended/əd/
- 4. jumped/t/...yelled/d/
- 5. departed/əd/...landed/əd/
- 6. asked/t/ . . . suggested/əd/

### Exercise 23, p. 28.

/t/	/d/	/be/
chased	believed	accepted
fixed	complained	needed
missed	died	requested

pushed played thanked rained worked worried

# Evercise 24 n 28

23.141 6106 2 1	, p. 20.
combed/d/	exercised/d/
brushed/t/	talked/t/
cooked/t/	surfed/t/
waited/əd/	translated/əd/
walked/t/	added/əd/
washed/t/	cleaned/d/
typed/t/	listened/d/
worked/t/	

# Exercise 25, p. 28.

- 1. Rita stood under a tree when it began to rain.
- 2. Rita was standing under a tree when it began to rain.

# Exercise 26, p. 29.

- 1. a 3. a
- 2. b 4. a

# Exercise 27, p. 30.

- 2. called ... wasn't ... was studying
- 3. didn't hear . . . was sleeping
- 4. was shining . . . was blowing . . . were singing
- 5. were arguing . . . walked
- 6. opened . . . found
- 7. was reading . . . fell . . . closed . . . sneaked/snuck
- 8. A: Did you hear
  - B: wasn't listening . . . was thinking
- 9. was snowing . . . was shining . . . were shoveling . . . was lying

# Exercise 28, p. 31.

- 1. A: was waiting
  - B: Did they call
- 2. A: did you break
  - B: slipped . . . was crossing
- 3. B: was looking
  - A: Did you find
  - B: parked
- 4. A: Did you ask . . . saw
  - B: was working . . . looked . . . decided

5. B: happened

A: got . . . was driving . . . wasn't paying . . . didn't see . . . kept

# Exercise 29, p. 32.

1. found

5. looked

2. was

- 6. walked
- 3. were speaking
- 7. stopped
- 4. were sitting

# Exercise 33, p. 33.

All the sentences are correct. *Always* can also be used with the present progressive.

# Exercise 34, p. 33.

Sample sentences:

- 2. He's always leaving his dirty dishes on the table.
- 3. He's constantly borrowing my clothes without asking me.
- 4. He's always trying to show me he's smarter than me.
- 5. He's forever bragging about himself.
- He's constantly cracking his knuckles while I'm trying to study.
- 7. He's always forgetting to give me my phone messages.

# Exercise 35, p. 33.

Sample sentences:

- 1. playing the music too loud.
- 2. talking on the phone.
- 3. leaving her clothes on the floor.
- 4. inviting friends over for parties.

# Exercise 36, p. 34.

In A, the focus is on the activity. In B, the focus is on the place.

# Exercise 37, p. 34.

- 3. in his bedroom watching TV.
- 4. watching TV in his bedroom.
- 5. taking a nap on the couch in the living room.
- 6. on the couch in the living room taking a nap.
- 7. attending a conference in Singapore.

# Exercise 38, p. 35.

- Breakfast is an important meal. I always eat breakfast.
- 2. While I was working in my office yesterday, my cousin **stopped** by to visit me.
- 3. Yuki staved home because she caught a bad cold.
- 4. My brother **look**s like our father, but I **resemble** my mother.
- 5. Jun, are you listening to me? I am talking to you!
- 6. While I was surfing the internet yesterday, I found a really interesting Web site.
- 7. Did you speak English before you came here?

 Yesterday, while I was working at my computer, Shelley suddenly came into the room. I didn't know she was there. I was concentrating hard on my work. When she suddenly spoke, I jumped. She startled me.

# Chapter 3: Perfect and Perfect Progressive Tenses

# Exercise 1, p. 36.

Questions: Have you ever . . .

- 1. bought a boat?
- 2. broken a window?
- 3. hidden from the police?
- 4. taught English?
- 5. made ice cream?
- 6. won a contest?
- 7. ridden an elephant?
- 8. flown an airplane?
- 9. caught a butterfly?
- 10. left your umbrella at a restaurant?
- 11. dug a hole to plant a tree?
- 12. driven a school bus?
- 13. drawn a picture of yourself?
- 14. built a house?
- 15. forgotten your own name?
- 16. fallen off a ladder?
- 17. held a poisonous snake?
- 18. stolen anything?
- 19. eaten a duck egg?
- 20. swung a baseball bat?
- 21. fed a lion?
- 22. split wood with an axe?
- 23. hit a baseball?
- 24. read a play by Shakespeare?
- 25. grown tomatoes from a seed?
- 26. torn a page out of a library book?

# Exercise 2, p. 37.

- 1. written 9. taken
- 2. lost 10. shaken
- 3. climbed 11. helped
- 4. given 12. slept
- 5. told 13. driven
- 6. sung 14. had
- 7. ridden 15. studied
- 8. drunk 16. played

# Exercise 4, p. 39.

- 1. since 5. for
- 2. for 6. since
- 3. for 7. for
- 4. since 8. since

Chapter 3 ANSWER KEY 469

# Exercise 7, p. 40.

#### Present perfect verbs:

- 1. 've had
- 5. have met . . . haven't
- 2. 've missed
- 3. haven't eaten 4. hasn't finished
- 6. I've eaten
- 7. haven't read ... haven't had

#### Time frame:

- 1. from the beginning of the week to now (Wed.)
- 2. from the beginning of the term to now
- 3. from the time speaker got up to now
- 4. from right after dinner to now
- 5. unspecified time
- 6. unspecified time
- 7. from the time she/he got the book up to now

# Exercise 11, p. 42.

- 1. is
- 2. has already left
- 3. have already left
- 4. have you been
- 5. has she done
- 6. has come
- 7. have lived

- 8. is planning
- 9. have you been
- 10. has been
- 11. is
- 12. has been
- 13. have finished
- 14. has read

# Exercise 13, p. 44.

- 1. has never seen
- 2. saw
- 3. had ... went
- 4. haven't had
- 5. has been
- 6. was
- 7. has just occurred . . . occurred
- 8. have gotten . . . saw . . . am also getting
- 9. have already taken . . . took
- 10. have known
- 11. knew

# Exercise 14, p. 45.

- 1. Have you ever broken something valuable? What did you break?
- 2. Have you ever lost something important? What did
- 3. Have you ever stayed up all night? Why did you stay up all night?
- 4. Have you ever traveled to an interesting place? Where did you travel to?
- 5. Have you ever been in a car accident? When were you in a car accident?
- 6. Have you ever played a team sport? Which sport did you play?

# Exercise 15, p. 45.

- 1. a, c
- 2. a, c

# Exercise 16, p. 47.

- 2. is reviewing . . . has been reviewing
- 3. is standing . . . has been standing
- 4. has been playing
- 5. have been practicing
- 6. have been sleeping

### Exercise 17, p. 47.

### Possible sentences using the present perfect progressive:

- 1. He has been cooking some food.
- 2. He has been fixing the table.
- 3. He has been memorizing vocabulary.
- 4. He has been planting flowers.
- 5. He has been vacuuming.
- 6. He has been washing the windows.

#### Using yesterday plus the simple past:

- 1. He cooked some food yesterday.
- 2. He fixed the table yesterday.
- 3. He memorized vocabulary yesterday.
- 4. He planted flowers yesterday.
- 5. He vacuumed yesterday.
- 6. He washed the windows yesterday.

### Using just plus the present perfect:

- 1. He has just cooked some food.
- 2. He has just fixed the table.
- 3. He has just memorized vocabulary.
- 4. He has just planted flowers.
- 5. He has just vacuumed.
- 6. He has just washed the windows.

# Exercise 18, p. 48.

- 1. have you been
- 2. I've been taking
- 3. haven't been working
- 4. how are
- 5. haven't seen
- 6. They're doing
- 7. They're traveling
- 8. have they been
- 9. It's been
- 10. they've been traveling
- 11. They've been staying
- 12. spending
- 13. they're enjoying

# Exercise 19, p. 48.

- 4. has been waiting
- 5. have liked
- 6. has been watching
- 7. has been teaching / has taught
- 8. have been playing . . . has been playing / has played

# Exercise 20, p. 49.

- 1. has been waiting . . . 9:00 A.M.
- 2. has owned . . . one month
- 3. has not decided
- 4. has been sitting . . . 7:00
- 5. have been playing . . . three hours

# Exercise 22, p. 49.

#### First events:

- 1. Someone had knocked . . . .
- 2. The teacher had written . . . .

# Exercise 23, p. 51.

- 2. felt ... took
- 3. had already given . . . got
- 4. was ... had stopped
- 5. roamed . . . became / had become . . . appeared
- 6. had never seen . . . visited
- 7. had left/left
- 8. looked . . . had left . . . had forgotten. . . offered
- 9. saw . . . had not seen . . . didn't recognize . . . had
- 10. emigrated . . . had never traveled . . . settled . . . grew ... went ... had always wanted

# Exercise 24, p. 52.

#### Past perfect verbs:

- 1. had forgotten . . . had called . . . had rushed (Fiction writing uses more past perfect.)
- 2. no past perfect verbs (Spoken English uses more past tense.)
- 3. had had . . . had passed away . . . had grown (Fiction writing uses more past perfect.) [Note: moved could be either had moved or moved. If past perfect, the second had does not need to be repeated.]

# Exercise 25, p. 52.

- 1. we-əd
- 3. I-əd
- 2. movie-ad
- 4. roommate-əd

### Exercise 26, p. 53.

- 1. We had . . .
- 4. (no reduction)
- He had . . . They had
- 5. flood had
- 2. children had
- 6. Where had
- 3. roommates had
- 7. I had (1st sentence)

# Exercise 27, p. 53.

- 2. had 4. had 6. would
- 8. is . . . has
- 3. has 5. had 7. have

# Exercise 28, p. 54.

- 1. had already eaten
- 5. hadn't called
- 2. she'd been
- 6. she'd forgotten
- 3. she'd had
- 7. It'd been
- 4. there'd been

#### Exercise 29, p. 55.

- 1. a
- 3. b
- 2. b 4. a

# Exercise 30, p. 55.

- 3. have been studying
- 5. had been daydreaming
- 4. had been studying
- 6. have been sleeping

### Exercise 31, p. 56.

#### Sample answers:

- 2. had been talking
- 5. had been looking
- 3. had been playing
- 6. had been drawing
- 4. had been dancing
- 7. had been studying

# Exercise 32, p. 57.

- 2. Mr. Sanchez 6. Mr. Fox
- 3. Alice
- 7. Dan
- 4. Carlos 5. Jane
- 8. Ken 9. Robert

# Exercise 33, p. 58.

1. a

3. b

- 4. a
- 2. b
- 5. b

# Exercise 34, p. 58.

- 1. Since I came to this country, I have learned / have been learning a lot about the way of life here.
- 2. I arrived here only a short time ago. I have been here since last Friday.
- 3. How long have you been living here? I have been here for almost two years.
- 4. Why haven't you been in class for the last couple of days?
- 5. I have been coaching a soccer team for the last two months.
- 6. My grandfather lived in a small village in Italy when he was a child. At nineteen, he moved to Rome, where he met and married my grandmother in 1957. My father was born in Rome in 1960. I was born in Rome in 1989.
- 7. I have been living in my cousin's apartment since I arrived here. It is very small, and we are sharing the bedroom. I need my own place, but I haven't found one so far.
- 8. When I was a child, I lived with my grandmother instead of my parents. Grandpa had died / died before I was born, so I never knew him. Grandma raised me alone.

# Chapter 4: Future Time

# Exercise 1, p. 60.

- 1. future 6. present
- 2. future
- 7. present
- 3. present
- 8. future
- 4. future
- 9. future
- 5. future
- 10. present

# Exercise 2, p. 60.

- 1. Marie will cook some chicken and rice for dinner tonight.
- 2. Where will you be tomorrow morning?
- 3. I won't / will not ride the bus to work tomorrow.
- 4. Marco will **probably call** us this evening.
- 5. I am going to look for a new apartment.

### Exercise 3, p. 61.

- 1. no 5. yes
- 6. yes 2. yes
- 7. yes 3. yes
- 8. no 4. no

#### Exercise 5, p. 62.

- 5. You will have 1. You will need
- 6. nobody will finish 2. We will review
- 7. It will be 3. test will have
- 8. results will be 4. There will be

#### Exercise 6, p. 62.

- 1. going to 3. going to
- 4. gonna 2. gonna

### Exercise 8, p. 63.

- 1. b
- 2. a...d
- 3. c

#### Exercise 9, p. 64.

- 1. c 4. a 2. a 5. b
- 3. A: c 6. c
  - B: b

### Exercise 10, p. 64.

- 1. willingness 5. willingness
- 2. plan 6. prediction
- 3. prediction 7. willingness
- 4. plan 8. plan

#### Exercise 11, p. 65.

- 3. B: 'll do
  - C: 'll do
- 6. 'm going to meet 7. won't tell
- 8. won't open
- 4. 's going to erase 5. B: 'll meet
  - A: 'll see

#### Exercise 12, p. 66.

- 1. a 4. b
- 2. b 5. a
- 3. a

#### Exercise 14, p. 67.

- 2. [After the rain stops,] I'm going to sweep the front porch.
- 3. I'm going to start making dinner [before my wife gets home from work today.]
- 4. I'm going to wait right here [until Sonya comes.]
- 5. [As soon as the war is over,] there will be new elections.
- 6. Right now the tide is low, but [when the tide comes in,] the ship will leave the harbor.
- 7. [While I'm driving to work tomorrow,] I'm going to listen to my Greek language CD.

### Exercise 15, p. 67.

- 2. eat . . . will probably take / am probably going
- 3. get . . . will give / am going to give
- 4. watch . . . will call / am going to call
- 5. will wait / am going to wait . . . comes
- 6. stops . . . will walk / am going to walk
- 7. graduate . . . intend . . . will go / am going to go
- 8. will listen / am going to listen . . . am sleeping

### Exercise 16, p. 68.

- 1. What are you going to do after you wake up tomorrow?
- 2. What are you going to do as soon as class ends
- 3. Before you go to bed tonight, what are you going to do?
- 4. What are you going to do when you have free time this weekend?
- 5. When you finish school, what are you going to do?

### Exercise 17, p. 68.

All the sentences have a future meaning.

### Exercise 18, p. 69.

- 4. in the future
- 11. habitually
- 5. in the future
- 12. A: now B: now
- 6. now

- A: in the future
- 7. in the future 8. habitually
- 13. A: in the future
- 9. in the future
- B: in the future
- 10. in the future
- A: in the future

# Exercise 19, p. 70.

#### Sample answers:

- 2. am taking / am catching
- 3. am stopping / am quitting
- 4. am seeing
- 5. are driving

### Exercise 21, p. 71.

All the verbs take a progressive form (present, past, future).

#### Exercise 22, p. 72.

- 1. is going to be studying / will be studying . . . am going to be finishing / will be finishing
- 2. is going to be seeing / will be seeing . . . is going to be doing / will be doing . . . is going to be talking / will be talking

# Exercise 23, p. 72.

- 1. arrive . . . is going to be waiting / will be waiting
- 2. get . . . is going to be shining / will be shining . . . are going to be singing / will be singing . . . is still going to be lying / will still be lying

- 3. B: am going to be enjoying / will be enjoying A: am going to be thinking / will be thinking
- 4. will be / am going to be in Chicago visiting
- 5. will be / am going to be working

# Exercise 24, p. 73.

All the verbs are in a form of the perfect.

# Exercise 25, p. 73.

- 1. have been . . . had been . . . will have been
- 2. get ... will have already arrived ... will already have arrived
- 3. got . . . had already arrived
- 4. have been sitting . . . had been sitting . . . will have been sitting
- 5. will have begun . . . will have been teaching
- 6. will have been driving
- 7. get / will have taken
- 8. will have been running
- 9. will have been

### Exercise 26, p. 74.

- 2. He will shave, shower, and then make a light breakfast.
- 3. After he eats breakfast tomorrow, he will get ready to go to work.
- 4. By the time he gets to work tomorrow, he will have drunk three cups of coffee.
- 5. Between 8:00 and 9:00, Bill will answer his email and (will) plan his day.
- 6. By 10:00 tomorrow, he will have called his new
- 7. At 11:00 tomorrow, he will be attending a staff meeting.
- 8. He will go to lunch at noon and have a sandwich and a bowl of soup.
- 9. After he finishes eating, he will take a short walk in the park before he returns to the office.
- 10. He will work at his desk until he goes to another meeting in the middle of the afternoon.
- 11. By the time he leaves the office, he will have attended three meetings.
- 12. When Bill gets home, his children will be playing in the yard.
- 13. They will have been playing since 3:00 in the afternoon.
- 14. As soon as he finishes dinner, he will take the children for a walk to a nearby playground.
- 15. Afterward, the whole family will sit in the living room and discuss their day.
- 16. They will watch television for a while, and then he and his wife will put the kids to bed.
- 17. By the time Bill goes to bed tomorrow, he will have had a full day and will be ready for sleep.

# Chapter 5: Review of Verb Tenses

# Exercise 1, p. 76.

- 1. I have been studying here since last January.
- 2. By the time Hassan returned to his country, he had been away from home for more than three years.
- 3. After I graduate, I am going to return to my hometown.
- 4. By the end of the 21st century, man will have discovered the cure for the common cold.
- 5. I want to get married, but I haven't met the right person yet.
- 6. I have seen that movie three times, and now I want to see it again.
- 7. I don't like my job. My brother wants me to quit. I think he is right.
- 8. While I'm studying tonight, I'm going to listen to classical music.
- 9. We washed the dishes and **cleaned** up the kitchen after our dinner guests **left**.
- 10. My neighbors are Mr. and Mrs. Sanchez. I have known them ever since I was a child.
- 11. Many scientists believe there **will be** a major earthquake in California in the near future.

# Exercise 2, p. 76.

- 1. is studying . . . is also taking . . . begin
- 2. had already eaten . . . left
- 3. always eats . . . goes . . . goes . . . will eat / is going to eat
- 4. called . . . was attending
- 5. will be attending
- 6. got . . . was sleeping . . . had been sleeping
- 7. is taking . . fell . . . has been sleeping
- 8. eats . . . is going to go / will go . . . will have eaten . . . goes
- 9. started ... hasn't finished ... has been reading
- 10. has finished . . . is reading . . . has been reading . . . intends . . . has read . . . has ever read

# Exercise 4, p. 78.

#### Part I.

- 1. F 3. F
- 2. T 4. T

#### Part II.

- 1. got 8. didn't see 2. took 9. saw
- 3. put 10. had been trying 4. didn't open 11. apologized 5. tried 12. went 6. knocked 13. felt 7. opened 14. had done

# Exercise 6, p. 79.

- 1. got
- 2. have been trying
- 3. have been

Chapter 5 ANSWER KEY 473

- 4. have had / 've had
- 5. has been staying
- 6. have been spending have spent are spending
- 7. have been
- 8. went
- 9. watched
- 10. have barely had
- 11. is
- 12. am sitting
- 13. have been sitting
- 14. leaves is going to leave / will leave
- 15. decided have decided
- 16. am writing
- 17. am getting
- 18. am going to take / will take
- 19. get
- 20. are you getting
- 21. are your classes going

# Exercise 8, p. 80.

- 1. a 3. b
- 5. b 6. b
- 2. a
- 4. a

# Exercise 9, p. 80.

- 1. has experienced
- 2. will experience / is going to experience
- 3. began
- 4. have occurred
- 5. causes
- 6. have developed
- 7. hold / are holding
- 8. moves
- 9. waves
- 10. know
- 11. happened
- 12. struck
- 13. were sitting
- 14. suddenly found
- 15. died
- 16. collapsed
- 17. sent
- 18. will the next earthquake occur / is the next earthquake going to occur
- 19. have often helped
- 20. are studying
- 21. also appear
- 22. seem
- 23. have developed
- 24. will be / are going to be
- 25. strikes

#### Exercise 13, p. 82.

- 1. I haven't been in this town very long. I came here just two weeks ago.
- 2. Dormitory life is not quiet. Everyone shouts and makes a lot of noise in the halls.
- 3. My friends will meet me when I arrive at the airport.

- 4. Hasn't anyone ever told you to knock on the door before you enter someone else's room? Didn't your parents teach you that?
- 5. The phone rang while I was doing the dishes. I dried my hands and answered it. When I heard my husband's voice, I was very happy.
- 6. I have been in the United States for the last four months. During this time, I have done many things and seen many places.
- 7. When the old man started to walk back to his hut, the sun had already hid / hidden itself behind the mountain.
- 8. While I was writing my composition last night, someone knocked on the door.
- 9. Why did you write a children's book?
- 10. I'm really glad you are going to / will visit my hometown next year.
- 11. While I was visiting my cousin in Los Angeles, we went to a restaurant and ate Thai food.
- 12. When I was a child, I viewed things from a much lower height. Many physical objects around me appeared very large. When I wanted to move something such as a chair, I needed help.
- 13. When I was in my country, I was afraid to come to the United States. I thought I couldn't walk outside at night because of the terrible crime. But now I have a different opinion. I have lived in this small town for three months and (have) learned that there is very little crime here.

# Chapter 6: Subject-Verb Agreement

# Exercise 1, p. 84.

- 2. My parents visit many countries when they travel in
- 3. Robert sings when he takes a shower.
- 4. Chickens, ducks, and turkeys lay eggs.
- 5. Anna wears gloves on her hands when she works in her garden.
- 6. She scratches her chin when it itches.

# Exercise 2, p. 84.

- 2. plural, noun
- 5. singular, verb 6. plural, noun
- 3. singular, verb 4. plural, noun

#### Exercise 3, p. 85.

- 2. writes/s/
- 6. locks/s/
- 3. robs/z/
- 7. wishes/əz/ 8. pages/əz/
- 4. rugs/z/ 5. sleeps/s/
- 9. months/s/
- Exercise 4, p. 86. 4. bushes/əz/
- 9. touches/əz/
- 5. hats/s/
- 10. coughs/s/
- 6. rises/əz/
- 11. methods/z/
- 7. seasons/z/
- 12. languages/əz/
- 8. develops/s/

# Exercise 5, p. 86.

- 1. Cats sleep ... hours
- 2. shapes . . . sizes
- 3. practices . . . sentences
- 4. cafeteria . . . serves . . . sandwiches
- 5. teacher . . . encourages
- 6. coughs . . . sneezes

# Exercise 6, p. 86.

- 1. Opera singers sing. An opera singer sings.
- 2. Teachers teach. A teacher teaches.
- 3. Butterflies fly. A butterfly flies.
- 4. Balls bounce. A ball bounces.
- 5. Doors open and close. A door opens and closes.
- 6. Mosquito bites itch. A mosquito bite itches.
- 7. Hungry babies cry. A hungry baby cries.
- 8. Students ask questions. A student asks questions.
- 9. Snakes hiss. A snake hisses.
- Dogs say "arf-arf" in English. A dog says "arf-arf" in English.

### Exercise 7, p. 87.

- 1. The verb agrees with the subject: In sentence a., the subject is singular, so the verb is singular. In b., there is a plural subject, so the verb is plural.
- 2. In a., there is a plural subject, so the verb is plural. In b., *every* is followed by a singular noun, so the verb is singular.
- 3. In a. and b., the subjects *fruit* and *apples*, not the prepositional phrases that follow, determine agreement.
- 4. In a., *vegetables* is the plural subject, so the verb is plural. In b., the gerund *eating* is the subject, not *vegetables*. Gerunds require a singular verb.

### Exercise 8, p. 87.

	, ,				
1.	is	6.	agree	11.	do
2.	are	7.	approves	12.	was
3.	astounds	8.	has	13.	were
4.	are	9.	are is	14.	Is
5.	is	10.	is	15.	is

#### Exercise 9, p. 88.

1.	know	5.	knows
2.	know	6.	know
3.	knows	7.	knows
4	knows	8	knows

# Exercise 10, p. 88.

In most expressions of quantity, the verb is determined by the noun that follows of (items 1, 2, 3, 4). Exceptions: one of and each of take a plural noun but a singular verb (items 5, 6).

# Exercise 11, p. 89.

- 2. apples . . . are
- 3. movie . . . is

- 4. movies . . . are
- 5. students . . . are
- 6. money . . . is
- 7. students ... are
- 8. clothing . . . is
- 9. one . . . is
- 10. Each ... has
- 11. Each ... has
- 12. Every one . . . is
- 13. animals . . . are . . . All . . . are
- 14. A number . . . are
- 15. The number . . . is
- 16. One . . . is
- 17. Do . . . students
- 18. Does . . . homework
- 19. were . . . students
- 20. was . . . one

### Exercise 12, p. 90.

2.	are	9.	are	15.	is
3.	is	10.	are	16.	is
4.	are	11.	is	17.	are
5.	is	12.	is	18.	is
6.	is	13.	are	19.	is
7.	is	14.	is	20.	are
0					

# Exercise 14, p. 91.

		, ,	
1.	aren't	7.	was
2.	isn't	8.	is
3.	are	9.	are
4.	is	10.	has been
5.	are	11.	have been
6	ien't		

# Exercise 15, p. 91.

1. There are	
	5. Is there
2. there is	
3. There are	6. Are there
3. There are	7. there are
4. There is	
11 11010 10	8. Is there

# Exercise 17, p. 92.

<ol> <li>is</li> <li>is</li> <li>are</li> </ol>	4. a 5. a		
Exercise	19.	p.	94

# 2. is 11. is

3. is

4.	seeks	13.	1S
5.	is	14.	commute
6.	are	15.	is isn't it
7.	is	16.	are
8.	is	17.	want
9.	do	18.	depends
10.	are		are have

12. are

### Exercise 20, p. 94.

- 2. Linguistics is
- 3. Diabetes is
- 4. English is
- 5. are ... Canadians
- 6. 70 percent . . . is . . . one percent . . . is
- 7. is 256
- 8. The Netherlands is
- 9. Fish are

### Exercise 22, p. 95.

- 5. is 1. are 6. are 2. is
- 3. are 7. 1s 8. are 4. are
- 10. is 11. is 12. is

9. are

# Exercise 23, p. 96.

- 1. His ideas are interesting.
- 2. Some of the people are friendly.
- 3. One of the girls is absent.
- 4. Italian is a Romance language.
- 5. Two-thirds of the food is gone.
- 6. The clothes in that store are expensive.
- 7. The clothing in those stores is inexpensive.

5. is

8. Most of the stores in tourist towns are overpriced.

#### Exercise 24, p. 96.

- 1. has
- 2. is 6. is 7. is 3. need
- 8. are 4. needs

### Exercise 25, p. 96.

- 3. I, are 9. I, work
- 4. C 10. C
- 5. C 11. I, are
- 12. C 6. I, are
- 7. C 13. C
- 14. I, contain 8. I, has

#### Exercise 26, p. 97.

- 2. are 11. are
- 3. keeps 12. Are
- 13. is 4. makes
- 5. is 14. is
- 6. is 15. appears
- 16. are 7. Does
- 8. Do 17. is
- 18. provides 9. is
- 10. are

### Exercise 27, p. 98.

- 3. A lot of the people in my class work during the day and attend class in the evening.
- 4. Many of the satellites orbiting the earth are used for communications.
- 5. (no errors)
- 6. Studying a foreign language often leads students to learn about the culture of the countries where it is
- 7. One of the most common names for dogs in the United States is "Rover."

- 8. (no errors)
- 9. Most of the mountain peaks in the Himalayan Range are covered with snow the year round.
- 10. (no errors)
- 11. Seventy-five percent of the people in New York City live in upstairs apartments, not on the ground floor.
- 12. (no errors)
- 13. Unless there is a profound and extensive reform of government policies in the near future, the economic conditions in that country will continue to
- 14. While I was in Paris, some of the best food I found was not at the well-known eating places but in small out-of-the-way cafés.

# Chapter 7: Nouns

### Exercise 1, p. 100.

- 2. branches 9. echoes
- 3. mice 10. photos
- 4. enemies 11. zeros/zeroes
- 5. vallevs 12. crises
- 13. curricula 6. shelves
- 7. beliefs 14. offspring
- 8. women

### Exercise 2, p. 100.

- 8. geese 2. potatoes
- 3. fish 9. donkeys
- 4. sandwiches 10. deer
- 5. carrots 11. wolves
- 12. sheep 6. vegetables
- 7. kangaroos

# Exercise 4, p. 102.

-5

beliefs memos chiefs photos

clouds videos

kilos ZOOS

-es

heroes potatoes hoxes tomatoes

fishes (possible, but rare) classes

matches

-ves

knives scarves leaves shelves lives wolves

loaves

no change

deer fish

sheep

# Exercise 5, p. 103.

- 3. men
- 4. attorneys
- 5. discoveries . . . laboratories
- 6. boxes . . . oxen
- 7. beaches . . . cliffs
- 8. pianos
- 9. phenomena
- 10. media

# Exercise 6, p. 104.

- (1) **Bacteria** are the smallest living **things**. They are simple **organisms** that consist of one cell.
- (2) **Bacteria** exist almost everywhere. They are in the air, water, and soil, as well as in the **bodies** of all living **creatures**.
- (3) There are **thousands** of **kinds** of **bacteria**. Most of them are harmless to human **beings**, but some cause **diseases** such as tuberculosis and pneumonia.
- (4) **Viruses** are also microscopic **organisms**, but **viruses** live in the **cells** of other living **things**. By themselves, they are lifeless **particles** that cannot reproduce, but inside a living cell they become active and can multiply **hundreds** of **times**.
- (5) **Viruses** cause many **diseases**. They infect human **beings** with such **illnesses** as influenza, the common cold, measles, and AIDS (Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome).
- (6) **Viruses** are tiny. The virus that causes AIDS is 230 million times smaller than the period at the end of this sentence. Some viral **infections** are difficult or impossible to treat.

# Exercise 7, p. 104.

- 1. 2 4. 2
- 2. 1 5. 2
- 3. 1 6. 1

# Exercise 8, p. 105.

- 2. boy's
- 7. Bess's/Bess'
- 3. boys'
- 8. today's
- 4. children's5. child's
- month's
   Jack and Larry's
- 6. Sally's

# Exercise 9, p. 105.

- 3. My uncle is my father's brother.
- 4. I have four aunts. All of my aunts' homes are within walking distance of my mother's apartment.
- 5. Esteban's aunt's oldest son is a violinist.
- 6. Bill's wife is a factory worker.
- 7. I walked into my boss's/boss' office.
- 8. I borrowed the secretary's pen to fill out the application form.
- 9. Five astronauts were aboard the space shuttle. The **astronauts'** safe return to earth was a welcome sight to millions of television viewers.
- 10. It is the **people's** right to know what the city is going to do about the housing problem.

- 11. Quite a few diplomats are assigned to our city. Almost all of the **diplomats**' children attend a special school.
- A diplomat's work invariably involves numerous meetings.

# Exercise 10, p. 106.

- 2. Psychologists have developed many different kinds of tests. A "personality test" is used to evaluate an **individual's** personal characteristics, such as friendliness or trustworthiness.
- 3. Many mythological stories tell of heroes' encounters with giants or dangerous animals. In one story, the hero's encounter with a dragon saves a village from destruction.
- 4. Children's play is an important part of their lives. It teaches them about their environment while they are having fun. For instance, they can learn that boats float and can practice ways to make boats move across water. Toys are not limited to children. Adults have their own toys, such as pleasure boats, and children have theirs, such as miniature boats. Adults' toys are usually much more expensive than children's toys.

# Exercise 11, p. 106.

- computer error computer screen computer skills
- 2. airplane passenger airplane pilot airplane ticket

# Exercise 12, p. 107.

- 2. flowers . . . flower
- 3. beans . . . bean
- 4. babies . . . baby
- 5. children . . . child
- 6. salads . . . salad
- 7. mosquitoes/mosquitos . . . mosquito
- 8. two-hour . . . two hours
- 9. ten years old . . . ten-year-old
- 10. three-letter . . . three letters

# Exercise 14, p. 108.

- 1. taxi, drivers
- 5. airplanes, seats
- 2. drivers, taxis
- 6. airplane, seats
- 3. office, managers
- 7. schools, activities
- 4. managers, offices
- 8. school, activities

# Exercise 15, p. 108.

- 1. a, b, c
- 2. a, c, d

# Exercise 16, p. 109.

2. jewelry (NC) rings (C) bracelets (C)

necklace (C)

3. mountains (C) fields (C) lakes (C) scenery (NC)

- 4. Gold (NC) iron (NC) metals (C)
- 6. car (C) engine (C) furniture (NC) refrigerator (C) junk (NC)
- 5. iron (C)

### Exercise 17. p. 111.

- 3. trees, bushes, grass, dirt, flowers
- 4. advice, suggestions
- 5. words, vocabulary
- 6. glasses, water
- 7. Windows, glass
- 8 glasses, eyesight
- 9. time, homework, assignments
- 10. times, time
- 11. smoke, dust, monoxide, substances, pollution
- 12. literature, novels, poetry, essays, poets, poems
- 13. seasons, weather
- 14. happiness, patience, rewards
- 15. stars, grains, sand
- 16. (no change)

### Exercise 19, p. 112.

- 2. rivers
- 3. symphonies, music
- 4. trucks, traffic
- 5. computers, equipment
- 6. problems, homework
- 7. vocabulary, definitions
- 8. this information
- 9. advice
- 10. progress

### Exercise 20, p. 113.

- 1. Tom uses the because he and Anna are talking about the same specific cat.
- 2. Tom uses a because Anna doesn't know the cat he's talking about. The speaker and listener are not thinking of the same specific cat.
- 3. Tom and Anna are talking about any and all cats in general.

# Exercise 21, p. 115.

- 4. Ø Tennis
- 15. Ø Grammar 16. A

5. A 6. An

- 7. Ø Gold
- 17. Ø English 18. Ø Air
- 8. A

- 19. Ø Fruit
- 9. Ø Health
- 20. An

10. An

21. Ø Iron

11. A

22. An

- 23. A
- 12. Ø Water
- 24. Ø Basketball
- 13. Ø Knowledge 14. Ø Homework

12. some 6. some 18. some 7. a 13. an 19. Some 8. some 14. some 20. some 9. some 15. a 21. an 22. some 16. some

17. a

11. a

### Exercise 23, p. 117.

Exercise 22, p. 116.

5. an

10. some

- 4. a 7. Ø 1. Ø 5. an 8. Ø 2. an
- 3. Ø 6. a

# Exercise 25, p. 117.

- 1. Oh, look at the moon! It's beautiful tonight.
- 2. I saw a cat and a bird outside my window. The cat was trying to catch the bird, but it didn't succeed. The bird flew away.
- 3. Birds have wings. Many insects have wings too.
- 4. We all look for happiness.
- 5. I have a book.

# Exercise 26, p. 118.

- 3. a
- 4. the
- 5. B: the
  - A: a
- 6. a
- 7. the . . . the
- 8. A: The . . . a . . . the
- B: the 9. A: The
  - B: a . . . a
  - A: the
  - B: a . . . the . . . the
  - A: the
  - B: an

#### Exercise 27, p. 119.

- 9. the 4. Ø
- 5. A . . . an 10. an
- 11. the . . . the . . . 6. Ø Hats . . . Ø
- an . . . the 7. The 8. Ø ... Ø

# Exercise 28, p. 120.

- 2. a
- 3. Ø Cell . . . Ø
- 4. a
- 5. the
- 6. Ø Jewelry . . . Ø . . . Ø
- 7. an
- 8. Ø Beings . . . the
- 9. Ø
- 10. The
- 11. The

# Exercise 29, p. 120.

- 1. a
- 2. the
- 3. Ø (**P**eople) . . . Ø . . . Ø . . . Ø . . . Ø . . . Ø
- 4. Ø ... Ø ... Ø ... a
- 5. a . . . an . . . a . . . the . . . the . . . the
- 6. Ø . . . Ø . . . Ø . . . an . . . Ø
- 7. a . . . the . . . the

# Exercise 30, p. 121.

- 1. a 6. The 2. a 7. a
- 11. a 12. a
- 3. a 8. the
- 13. the
- 4. a 9. an 5. a 10. the
- 14. the 15. a

# Exercise 31, p. 121.

#### Deleted words/expressions:

- 9. too much
- 18. both
- 11. a little
- 19. several
- 13. a great deal
- 23. too many25. a few
- 16. two17. a couple of
- 27. a number of

# Exercise 32, p. 123.

# Deleted words/expressions:

- 6. too many
- 17. too much
- 7. a few
- 20. a little
- 9. a number of
- 22. a great deal of

# Exercise 33, p. 123.

- 3. much
- 10. much
- 4. many letters
- 11. is . . . much
- 5. is . . . much
- 12. much
- 6. much
- 13. many patients
- 7. many sides
- 14. many teeth
- 8. much
- 15. isn't much
- 9. many

# Exercise 34, p. 124.

- 2. stamps, rice, stuff, things
- 3. Ø, salt, equipment, Ø
- 4. Ø, loaves of bread, Ø, jars of honey
- 5. novels, Ø, poems, Ø
- orange juice, light bulbs, hardware, computer software
- 7. sleep, information, facts, help
- 8. women, movies, scenes, Ø
- 9. shirts, Ø, pens, Ø
- 10. patience, wealth, Ø, Ø
- 11. money, advice, time, Ø
- 12. ideas, theories, hypotheses, Ø

# Exercise 36, p. 125.

- 1. a
- 2. b

# Exercise 37, p. 126.

- 3. A little
- 7. a few
- 4. (very) little
- 8. a little
- 5. a few
- 9. (very) little
- 6. (very) few

# Exercise 38, p. 127.

- 3. (very) few
- 4. a few . . . a few
- 5. a few
- 6. (very) few . . . (very) little
- 7. a little
- 8. a little . . . a little

# Exercise 39, p. 128.

- 1. b 5. a
- 2. a 6. b
- 2. a 0. b 3. b 7. b
- 4. a

# Exercise 41, p. 128.

- 1. country
- 3. country . . . country
- 2. countries
- 4. countries

# Exercise 42, p. 129.

- 2. girls
- 7. student 8. students
- children
   child
- 9. student
- 5. member
- 10. students
- 6. members

# Exercise 43, p. 129.

- 3. The teacher gave each student / each of the students a test paper.
- 4. (no change)
- 5. Spain is one of the countries I want to visit.
- 6. Every piece of furniture / All the furniture / All of the furniture in that room is made of wood.
- 7. One of the machines / One of the pieces of equipment / One piece of equipment / Some of the equipment in our office is broken.
- 8. I gave a present to each woman / each of the women / all of the women in the room.
- 9. One of my favorite **places** in the world is an island in the Caribbean Sea.
- 10. (no change)
- 11. It's impossible for one human being to know every language in the world.
- 12. I found each of the **errors** / **each error** in this exercise.

# Exercise 44, p. 130.

- 3. Ø 7. of 4. of 8. Ø
- 11. of 12. of

- 4. of 5. of
- 9. of
- 13. of

- 6. of
- 10. of
- 13. of

#### Exercise 45, p. 131.

3.	ØØ ´*	6.	of	9.	Ø	12.	of
4.	of	7.	Ø	10.	of	13.	of
5	of	8.	of	11.	Ø		

### Exercise 50, p. 134.

- 1. That book contains many different kinds of stories and articles.
- 2. In my country, there are a lot of schools.
- 3. She is always willing to help her friends in every possible way.
- 4. In the past, horses were the principal means of transportation.
- 5 He succeeded in creating one of the best armies in the world.
- 6. There is a lot of **equipment** in the research laboratory, but undergraduates are not allowed to use if
- 7. I have a **five-year-old** daughter and a **three-year-** old son.
- Most of the people in my apartment building are friendly.
- 9. Everyone seeks happiness in life.
- 10. Writing compositions is very hard for me.
- 11. Almost all of the students / Almost all students / Most (of the) students in my class are from Asia.
- 12. It's difficult for me to understand English when people **use** a lot of **slang**.

# Chapter 8: Pronouns

### Exercise 1, p. 135.

- My friends and I ordered Indian food at the restaurant. I wasn't very hungry, but I ate most of it.
- 2. When we were in school, my sister and **I** used to play tennis after school every day.
- 3. If you want to pass **your** exams, you had better study very hard for **them**.
- 4. A hippopotamus spends most of its time in the water of rivers and lakes.
- 5. After work, Mr. Gray asked to speak to Mona and me about the company's new policies. He explained them to us and asked for our opinions.
- My friends asked to borrow my car because theirs was in the garage for repairs.

# Exercise 3, p. 137

Lacreise 3, p. 137.	
pronouns	antecedents
2. they they	monkeys
3. she	teacher
them	papers
4. her She	Nancy
it	apple
5. it	dog
6. She She	cat
His (poss. adj.) him	Yuri
They	dogs
him	Yuri

### Exercise 4, p. 137.

1.	me	4.	her
2.	me	5.	me
3.	him		

#### Exercise 5, p. 137.

2. She	8. I
3. her her	9. me
4. Her	10. me
5. She her her	11. my
6. her	12. mine me
7. She her	

### Evercise 6, n 138

-3A	crease of p. 130.
2.	mine yours
3.	their hers his
4.	Our our ours theirs

# Exercise 8, p. 138.

2.	its	4.	its
3.	Its It's It's	5.	it's

#### Exercise 9, p. 139.

```
It . . dives . . spears . . its . . it . . . tosses . . . catches . . . it . . . swallows . . . it . . . It's . . . them
```

### Exercise 10, p. 139.

1.	A: him
	B: he's
	C: him
	D: his
	E: his he's he'l
2	A. Does she

2.	A: Does she	
	B: Is she	

C: they	
D: their he's	
E: them	

#### Exercise 12, p. 140.

- (All) students in Biology 101 have to spend three hours per week in the laboratory where they do various experiments by following the directions in their lab manuals.
- 4. Citizens **have** two primary responsibilities. **They** should vote in **all elections** and **they** should serve willingly on juries.
- 5. (no change)

# Exercise 13, p. 141.

#### Most common answers:

2.	they (informal) want	5.	their (informal
3.	his or her	6.	his or her
4.	them (informal)	7.	his or her

#### Exercise 14, p. 141.

- 1. Team refers to individual players.
- 2. Team refers to a single, impersonal unit.

### Exercise 15, p. 142.

- 2. it ... consists
- 6. It was
- 3. It
- 7. They are . . . their . . . them
- 4. they 5. They
- 8. It is

# Exercise 17, p. 144.

- 2. herself
- 6. yourself
- 3. himself
- 7. yourselves
- 4. themselves
- 8. himself/herself/oneself
- 5. ourselves

# Exercise 18, p. 144.

- 2. herself
- 7. yourselves
- 3. themselves
- 8. myself
- 4. myself
- 9. yourself ... himself ...
- 5. themselves
- myself . . . ourselves . . .
- 6. yourself
- themselves

# Exercise 19, p. 145.

- 2. enjoy himself
- 3. proud of yourselves
- 4. pat yourself
- 5. killed himself
- 6. entertained themselves
- 7. introduced myself
- 8. feeling sorry for yourself
- 9. talking to yourself
- 10. laugh at ourselves
- 11. promised herself
- 12. angry at himself

# Exercise 20, p. 146.

- 1. yourself
- 4. himself
- 2. myself
- 5. themselves
- 3. ourselves
- 6. herself

# Exercise 21, p. 146.

- 1. Penguins . . . creatures . . . birds . . . they
- 2. Millions . . . years . . . wings . . . These . . . their
- 3. Penguins' . . . was . . . fish . . . wings . . . flippers . . .
- 4. spend . . . water . . . eggs . . . land
- 5. habits
- 6. lays . . . egg . . . ice . . . returns
- 7. takes . . . He covers . . . his . . . it hatches
- 8. This ... takes ... weeks ... this ... doesn't
- 9. hatches ... goes ... himself ... offspring
- 10. Penguins . . . environment . . . They . . . need

# Exercise 22, p. 147.

- MRs.: vou = Mr. Cook
- MR.: I = Mr. Cook ... He = Jack Woods ... it = car
- MRS.: it = car
- MR.: they = people in general . . . you = people in
- general . . . you = people in general MRS.: One = people in general  $\dots$  one = people in
- general

- Exercise 23, p. 147.
- 3. people in general
- 8. people in general

- 4. Alex
- 5. people in general
- 9. the orchestra 10. They = airline company;
- 6. Sonya
- 7. people in general
- you = people in general

# Exercise 25, p. 148.

- 1. Picture B
- 2. Picture A

# Exercise 26, p. 149.

- 2. Another . . . Another . . .
- 5. Others 6. Other
- Another . . . the other 3. The other
- 7. The other

4. another

8. The others

# Exercise 27, p. 149.

- 1. Helen
- 3. Susie's
- 2. Mai
- 4. Thursday

# Exercise 28, p. 150.

- 2. Another . . . The other
- 3. others
- 4. other
- 5. other
- 6. others
- 7. another
- 8. Another . . . Others
- 9. others
- 10. Another . . . Others . . . other
- 11. the other
- 12. the others
- 13. another
- 14. another

# Exercise 30, p. 151.

- 1. another 4. the other
- 2. the other 3. the others
- 5. Others 6. another

# Exercise 31, p. 151.

- 1. T
- 3. F

#### 2. F 4. T

# Exercise 32, p. 152.

- 2. Another . . . other
- 3. each other
- 4. the other 5. other . . . other
- 6. other
- 7. others . . . others
- 8. each other . . . each other . . . each other . . . other
- 9. other
- 10. other
- 11. another

### Exercise 34, p. 154.

- 1. a 4. a
- 2. b 5. b
- 3. b

#### Exercise 35, p. 154.

- 2. My cousin and her husband moved to **another** city because they don't like cold weather.
- 3. I like to travel because I like to learn about other countries and customs.
- 4. Collecting stamps is one of my hobbies.
- 5. I came here three and a half months ago. I think I have made good progress in English.
- 6. When I lost my passport, I had to apply for another
- 7. When I got to class, all of the **other** students were already in their seats.
- 8. English has borrowed quite a few words from other languages.
- 9. There are many students from different countries in this class.
- 10. Thousands of athletes take part in the Olympics.
- Education is one of the most important aspects of life. Knowledge about many different things allows us to live fuller lives.
- 12. All of the students' names were on the list.
- I live in a two-room apartment. It's too small for my family.
- 14. **Many people** prefer to live in small towns. Their attachment to their communities **prevents** them from moving from place to place in search of work.
- 15. Today's news is just as bad as yesterday's news.
- Almost all of the students in our class speak English well.
- 17. The teacher gave us several homework **assignments** / **some** homework to hand in next Tuesday.
- In today's world, women work as doctors, pilots, archeologists, and many other things. Both my mother and father are teachers.
- Every employee in our company respects Mr. Ward.
- 20. A child needs to learn how to get along with **other** people, how to spend his or her time wisely, and how to depend on himself or herself. OR

**Children need** to learn how to get along with **other** people, how to spend **their** time wisely, and how to depend on **themselves**.

# Chapter 9: Modals, Part 1

# Exercise 1, p. 157.

- 2.-4. She can see it.
- 5. Can you pass the rice, please?
- 6. Can you see it?
- 7. They can't go there.
- 8. They aren't able to pay their rent.

#### Exercise 2, p. 158.

1. I	4. you	6. you
2. you	5. I	7. you
3 T		

### Exercise 4, p. 160.

- 1. B
- 2. A

# Exercise 5, p.160.

- 2. a. Would you mind speaking with John?
  - b. Would you mind if I spoke with John?
- 3. a. Would you mind if I turned on the air conditioner?
  - b. Would you mind turning on the air conditioner?

# Exercise 6, p. 161.

- 2. if I stayed3. if I opened / opening6. speaking
- 4. if I asked 7. if I changed / changing

# Exercise 7, p. 161.

- 1. b 4. a
- 2. b 5. b
- 3. b

# Exercise 9, p. 162.

#### Sample answers:

- 2. you give us a little more time
- 3. I get a ride
- 4. rescheduling / if I reschedule / if we reschedule
- 5. you take a look
- 6. if we moved

# Exercise 12, p. 163.

- 1. a
- 2. b
- 3. a

# Exercise 14, p. 165.

Sentences 2 and 3.

# Exercise 15, p. 165.

- 2. must not 6. don't have to 7. don't have to
- 4. doesn't have to

  8. doesn't have to
- 5. must not

### Exercise 17, p. 166.

- 1. must 4. must
- don't have to
   don't have to
   must not
   must not

# Exercise 18, p. 166.

Advice possibilities: 1, 2, 4, 5

[*Note:* Item 6 is not advisable unless his cousin is a dentist.]

# Exercise 22, p. 168.

- 1. b 3. a 5. b
- 2. b 4. a 6. a

# Exercise 23, p. 169.

- 3. must/have to
- 4. have to/must (*have to* is preferred because the situation is not urgent or formal)
- 5. should
- 6. should (also possible: have to/must)
- 7. should OR must/have to (if it's a requirement of the school)
- 8. must/has to
- 9. should
- 10. must

### Exercise 24, p. 169.

- 1. a
- 3. a, b
- 2. a, b
- 4. b

# Exercise 25, p. 170.

Jim

# Exercise 26, p. 170.

- 1. b
- 3. a
- 2. a, b
- 4. a, b

# Exercise 27, p. 171.

Sample answers:

- 1. He shouldn't have left the door (to his house) open.
- 2. You should have gone (to the meeting).
- 3. She should have seen a doctor.
- 4. He should have read the contract (more) thoroughly.

# Exercise 28, p. 171.

Possible answers:

- 1. I should have worn a coat.
- 2. I should have returned his call.
- 3. I shouldn't have opened the window.
- 4. I should have gone to the grocery store.
- 5. I shouldn't have bought her candy.
- 6. He should have married her.
- 7. He shouldn't have married her.
- 8. I should have gone out.
- 9. I shouldn't have lent her my car.
- 10. I should have set my alarm clock.

# Exercise 29, p. 172.

Sample answers:

- 1. Kazu should have talked with Julie first.
  - He shouldn't have accepted the job immediately. He should have thought about the offer before accepting.
  - He should have known Julie would be upset.
- 2. Donna shouldn't have lent Hugo nearly all of her savings
  - Hugo shouldn't have spent her money so carelessly. Donna shouldn't have trusted Hugo.

# Exercise 30, p. 172.

- 2. We're not **supposed** to open that door.
- 3. I have a meeting at seven tonight. I am supposed to be there a little early to discuss the agenda.
- 4. I'm **supposed** to be at the meeting. I suppose I'd better go.
- 5. Where have you been? You were **supposed to** be here an hour ago!

# Exercise 31, p. 173.

Sample answers:

- 1. You're supposed to contact the police / fill out an accident report / call your insurance company.
- 2. You're supposed to put on your seat belt.
- 3. They are supposed to exercise.

  They are not supposed to eat unhealthy foods.
- 4. You're supposed to pull over (onto the shoulder).
- 5.-8. (Answers will vary.)

# Exercise 32, p. 174.

- 1. a 3. a
- 5. b

- 2. a
- 4. b
- 6. a

# Exercise 35, p. 175.

- 1. yes
- 2. yes (plan not completed)
- 3. no
- 4. yes (plan not completed)
- 5. no
- 6. yes (plan not completed)

# Exercise 36, p. 176.

- 1. I had planned to stay home . . . . I was intending to stay home . . . .
- 2. I had planned to surprise you . . . . I was intending to surprise you . . . .
- 3. I had planned to reply . . . . I was intending to reply . . . .

# Exercise 37, p. 176.

Sample answers:

- 1. I overslept
- 2. I got lost
- 2. I got lost
- 3. I had to work
- 4. I couldn't get time off
- 5. we decided they wouldn't know anyone
- 6. I had the wrong date
- 7. we missed it

# Exercise 40, p. 178.

Roberto's

# Chapter 10: Modals, Part 2

### Exercise 1, p. 180.

- 1. b
- 2. c
- 3. a

# Exercise 7 p. 182.

#### Possible answers:

- 2. must have the wrong number.
- 3. may might could be at a meeting.
- 4. may might/could fit Jimmy.
- 5. must miss them very much.

# Exercise 5, p. 182.

- 1. 50% sure
- 3. 99% sure
- 2. 95% sure
- 4. 100% sure

# Exercise 6, p. 183.

- 1. Rob
- 2. Linda and Hamid
- 3. Lucy

# Exercise 7, p. 183.

#### Sample answers:

- 2. be home
- 4. like nuts
- 3. be thirsty
- 5. have many friends

# Exercise 9, p. 184.

- 1. may be
- 7. may be
- 2. can't be
- 8. couldn't be
- 3. don't run
- 9. could be
- 4. could be
- 10. might be
- 5. must be
- 11. I'll go
- 6. might be
- 12. 's

# Exercise 11, p. 185.

- 1. might have left
- 2. couldn't have left
- 3. must have left

# Exercise 12, p. 186.

- 2. couldn't have been
- 3. must have been
- 4. must not have gotten
- 5. may/might/could have gotten

# Exercise 13, p. 187.

#### Sample answers:

- 2. It may have been David because he met with his girlfriend's parents two nights ago.
- 3. It must have been Dylan because he took a diamond ring with him.
- 4. It couldn't have been Dick because he is going to wait to get married until he has a better job.
- 5. It must not have been Doug because he isn't sure if he's ready for marriage.

# Exercise 14, p. 187.

#### Sample answers:

- 1. She (Laika) must have felt scared. He (Yuri) may have felt excited.
- 2. It must have been caused by the fireworks.
- 3. It might have been a mouse. It couldn't have been a burglar.

# Exercise 16, p. 188.

- 2. must not like
- 3. must have been
- 4. must have been
- 5. must not speak
- 6. must be
- 7. must have hurt
- 8. must mean
- 9. must have been

# Exercise 17, p. 188.

- 1. 50%
- 4. 90% 5. 50%
- 2. 100% 3. 50%

# Exercise 18, p. 189.

- 1. Ned
- 2. Marco
- 3. Linda

# Exercise 19, p. 189.

- 3. must
- 4. should/ought to/will
- 5. should/ought to
- 6. will
- 7. must
- 8. should/ought to/will
- 9. should/ought to/will
- 10. must be
- 11. should have/ought to have
- 12. must have

# Exercise 20, p. 190.

- 4. Beth 11. Mark
- 5. Ron
- 12. my neighbor
- 6. Stacy
- 13. Carol
- 7. Barb
- 14. Janet
- 8. a rat
- 15. Stephanie
- 9. a cat
- 16. Bob
- 10. a mouse
- 17. Andre

# Exercise 21, p. 192.

- 1. should ask
- 2. shouldn't ask
- 3. may have upset
- 4. should try
- 5. shouldn't have stayed
- 6. 'd better have
- 7. could have told
- 8. must have known

# Exercise 23, p. 193.

- 1. no 3. yes
- 2. no
- 4. yes

# Exercise 24, p. 193.

- 3. must be burning
- 4. may/might/could be talking . . . may/might/could be talking
- 5. must be playing
- 6. may/might/could be staying . . . may/might/could be staying
- 7. should be studying/ought to be studying
- 8. must be joking
- 9. may/might/could have been joking
- 10. must have been joking

# Exercise 26, p. 195.

- 2. must be waiting
- 3. shouldn't have left
- 4. might have borrowed
- 5. must have been watching . . . must have forgotten
- 6. may have been attending (also possible: may have attended)
- 7. must have left
- 8. might be traveling
- 9. must not have been expecting
- 10. must have been daydreaming . . . should have been paying . . . shouldn't have been staring

# Exercise 29, p. 197.

- 2. b 3. a
- 6. a 7. b
- 10. b 11. b

- 4. c
- 8. c
- 12. b
- 9. a 5. b

# Exercise 30, p. 198.

- 1. b
- 3. a
- 2. d 4. c

# Exercise 31, p. 199.

- 1. can
- 6. Can't
- 2. can't
- 7. can
- 3. can
- 8. can't
- 4. can
- 9. can't
- 5. can't
- 10. can

# Exercise 33, p. 200.

- 1. a group of four-year-olds
- 2. a college class of (twenty-five) students in their late teens and early twenties
- 3. How many of you can dance? How many of you can sing? How many of you can draw?
- 5. Fewer hands were raised in the second group (about 1/3 for the first question; fewer for the next question; two for the last question).

6. When children are young, they generally have the feeling that they can do anything. As they grow older, they become more cautious because they don't want to look foolish, especially around their peers.

# Exercise 34, p. 200.

The sentences have the same meaning.

# Exercise 35, p. 200.

- 2. would give
- 3. used to be
- 4. used to be . . . would start
- 5. would take
- 6. used to live . . . would go . . . would wake . . . would hike . . . would see
- 7. used to be ... would get ... would spend ... would find . . . would gather

[Note: The directions ask you to use would for repeated actions in the past, but in general, used to is also correct for repeated actions in the past.]

# Exercise 39, p. 202.

Correct sentences: 3, 4, 5, 6

# Exercise 40, p. 203.

- 1. will you be able to get
- 2. are going to have to take
- 3. am not going to be able to attend

# Exercise 41, p. 203.

- 2. have to be able to
- 3. must not have been able
- 4. would rather not have to
- 5. should not have to

# Exercise 43, p. 207.

- 2. could / would you hand (can / will you hand)
- 3. don't / won't have to go
- 4. can already say / is already able to say
- 5. must / have to attend
- 6. had to wait
- 7. could / might go
- 8. must not have seen
- 9. can't / couldn't / must not be . . . may / might / could belong (must belong)
- 10. can't / must not / may not go
- 11. shouldn't have laughed
- 12. could / might / may be

# Exercise 44, p. 208.

- 1. a
- 4. a
- 2. b 5. a, b
- 3. a, b

### Exercise 45, p. 208.

- 1. If you have a car, you can travel around the United
- 2. During class the students must sit quietly.
- 3. When you send for the brochure, you should include a self-addressed, stamped envelope.
- 4. A film director must have control over every aspect of a movie.
- 5. When I was a child, I could climb to the roof of my house and see all the other houses and streets.
- 6. We need to reschedule. I won't be able to see you at the time we scheduled for tomorrow.
- I broke my leg in a soccer game three months ago.
- 8 Would | Could | Will you please help me with this?
- o Many students would rather study on their own than go to classes.
- 10. We are supposed to bring our books to class every
- 11. You can have a very good time as a tourist in my country. My country has many different climates, so you had better plan ahead before you come.
- 12. When you visit a big city in my country, you must pay attention to your wallet when you are in a crowded place because a thief may / might / could try to steal it.

# Chapter 11: The Passive

### Exercise 1, p. 211.

- 1. A
- 4. B
- 2. A
- 5. A
- 3. B 6. (grammatically incorrect)

#### Exercise 2, p. 212.

- 3. A
- 7. A
- 4. A
- 8. P
- 5. P
- 6. P
- 9. A 10. A

# Exercise 3, p. 212.

- 2. is being opened
- 3. has been opened
- 4. was opened
- 5. was being opened
- 6. had been opened
- 7. will be opened
- 8. is going to be opened
- 9. will have been opened
- 10. Was... opened
- 11. Will . . . be opened
- 12. Has . . . been opened

#### Exercise 4, p. 213.

- 2. Customers are served by waitresses and waiters.
- 3. The lesson is going to be explained by the teacher.
- 4. The farmer's wagon was being pulled by two horses.
- 5. Yoko will be invited to the party by Toshi.
- 6. That report is being prepared by Alex.

- 7. The book had been returned to the library by Kathy.
- 8. Several public buildings have been designed by Miriam.
- 9. I won't be fooled by his tricks.
- 10. That note wasn't written by me. Was it written by
- 11. Is that course taught by Prof. Shapiro? No, it isn't taught by him.
- 12. Those papers haven't been signed by Mrs. Andrews yet. Have they been signed by Mr. Andrews yet?
- 13. Anwar gave the speech.
- 14. The teaching assistant is going to correct our assignments.
- 15. Did Thomas Edison invent the electric light bulb?
- 16. Most drivers don't obey the speed limit on Highway 5.
- 17. Has the building manager informed you of the rent increase?

# Exercise 5, p. 213.

- 3. (no change)
- 4. That theory was developed by Dr. Ikeda.
- 5. The small fishing village was destroyed by a hurricane.
- 6. (no change)
- 7. (no change)
- 8. After class, the board is always erased by one of the students.
- 9. (no change)
- 10. (no change)
- 11. (no change)
- 12. The dispute is going to be settled by a special committee.
- 13. Was the thief caught by the police?
- 14. (no change)

# Exercise 8, p. 215.

#### Early Writing Materials

The chief writing material of ancient times was papyrus. It was used in Egypt, Greece, and other Mediterranean lands. Parchment, another writing material that was widely used in ancient times, was made from the skins of animals such as sheep and goats. After the hair had been removed, the skins were stretched and rubbed smooth to make a writing surface. Paper, the main writing material today, was invented by the Chinese.

Ink has been used for writing and drawing throughout history. No one knows when the first ink was developed. The ancient Egyptians and Chinese made ink from various natural substances, such as berries, soot, and tree bark. Through the centuries, thousands of different formulas have been developed for ink. Most ink today is made from synthetic chemicals.

- 1. Papyrus and parchment were used for writing.
- 2. Parchment was made from the skins of animals such as sheep and goats.
- 3. The hair was removed, and the skins were stretched and rubbed smooth.

- 4. The Chinese first used paper.
- 5. No one knows when ink was first used.
- 6. Natural substances, such as berries, soot, and tree bark, were used for ink.
- 7. Synthetic chemicals are in ink today.

### Exercise 9, p. 215.

- 2. A package was delivered to our apartment yesterday.
- 3. Maria taught her son to read when he was three.
- 4. When I was in elementary school, we were required to wear uniforms.
- 5. As we watched, the airplane disappeared into the clouds.
- 6. I agreed with your decision yesterday.
- 7. Timmy dropped a plate after dinner last night.
- 8. The plate fell to the floor with a crash.
- 9. What happened yesterday?
- 10. Something very sad happened yesterday.
- 11. My cat was hit by a speeding truck.
- 12. She was killed instantly.
- 13. She died instantly.

### Exercise 10, p. 216.

- 1. a 3. b
- 2. b 4. a
- 5. b 6. b

# Exercise 11, p. 216.

- 1. were killed by tornadoes
- 2. will be announced / is going to be announced
- 3. are consumed
- 4. have been recalled
- 5. will be delayed / are going to be delayed

# Exercise 12, p. 216.

- 1. I was invited to a party.
- 2. Rice is grown in many countries.
- 3. The tennis match is being televised.
- 4. I was told to be here at ten.
- 5. Dinner is going to be served at six.
- 6. A mistake has been made.
- 7. (no change)
- 8. That picture was drawn by Ivan's daughter. This picture was drawn by my son.
- 9. The applicants will be judged on their creativity.
- 10. (no change)
- 11. Is that course being taught by Professor Rivers this semester?
- 12. The mail had already been delivered by the time I left for school this morning.
- 13. When are the results of the contest going to be announced?
- 14. After the concert was over, the rock star was surrounded by hundreds of fans outside the theater.

### Exercise 14, p. 218.

- 2. is surrounded
- 3. is spelled
- 4. is going to be /
  - will be built
- 5. was divided
- 6. is worn 7. was caused
- 8. was ordered

- 9. was . . . killed
- 10. was reported
- 11. was surprised
- 12. was offered
- 13. were frightened
- 14. was confused

7. has been done

15. is expected

# Exercise 15, p. 219.

- 1. is made
- 2. have been roasted
- 3. is pressed
- 4. is called
- 5. contains
- 8. is left 9. is known
- 10. is ground
- 11. will be added

# Exercise 16, p. 219.

2. is produced

6. is separated

- 3. is being treated
- 4. are controlled . . . are determined
- 5. was informed . . . was told
- 6. is exposed . . . affects
- 7. have been destroyed
- 8. was recognized ... was asked ... took
- 9. knew . . . multiplied . . . came

# Exercise 18, p. 221.

- 4. must be kept
- 5. must keep
- 6. couldn't be opened
- 7. couldn't open
- 8. may be offered
- 9. may offer
- 10. may have already been offered / may already have been offered
- 11. may have already offered / may already have offered
- 12. ought to be divided
- 13. ought to have been divided
- 14. have to be returned
- 15. has to return . . . will have to pay
- 16. had better be finished
- 17. had better finish
- 18. is supposed to be sent
- 19. should have been sent
- 20. must have been surprised

# Exercise 19, p. 222.

- 1. a. Many lives will be saved with the new medical procedure.
  - b. The procedure will save many lives.
- 2. a. Shoppers can look for product information on the internet every day.
  - b. Product information can be found on the internet.

- 3. a. People should check smoke alarm batteries once a month.
  - b. Smoke alarm batteries should be tested once a month.
- 4. a. The typhoon may have killed hundreds of villagers yesterday.
  - b. Hundreds of villagers may have been killed in the typhoon yesterday.
  - c. Hundreds of villagers may have died in the typhoon yesterday.
- 5. a. Medical supplies had better be delivered soon.
  - b Villagers had better receive medical supplies

### Exercise 20, p. 223.

Sample answers:

- 1. Cell phones must be turned off. Cell phones have to be turned off.
- 2. Computers must be used for schoolwork only. Only schoolwork may be done on computers.
- 3. Computer games may not be played. Computer games cannot be played.
- 4. Music cannot be downloaded from the internet. Music must not be downloaded from the internet.
- 5. The printer must be used for schoolwork only. The printer cannot be used for any work except schoolwork.

# Exercise 21, p. 223.

Sample answers:

- 2. must be married
- 3. must / have to be written
- 4. must have been left
- 5. should / ought to / must be encouraged
- 6. cannot be explained
- 7. may / might / could / will be misunderstood
- 8. must have been embarrassed
- 9. should ought to have been built
- 10. must / should be saved

# Exercise 22, p. 224.

#### Part I.

- 2. a 3. b, d
- 4. b, c 5. a, c
- 6. a, b 7. a

- Part II.
- 1. were hit
- 2. were changed
- 3. was measured
- 4. has ever been recorded
- 5. was followed
- 6. were destroyed
- 7. were swept
- 8. died
- 9. were killed
- 10. were left
- 11. continued
- 12. could have been lessened
- 13. exists
- 14. doesn't reach

- 15. have been working
- 16. will not experience

# Exercise 23, p. 225.

- (1) Throughout history, paper has been made from various plants such as rice and papyrus, but today wood is the chief source of paper. In the past, paper was made by hand, but now most of the work is done by machines. Today paper is made from wood pulp by using either a mechanical or a chemical process.
- (2) In the mechanical process, wood is ground into small chips. During the grinding, it is sprayed with water to keep it from burning from the friction of the grinder. Then the chips are soaked in water.
- (3) In the chemical process, first the wood is washed, and then it is cut into small pieces in a chipping machine. Then the chips are cooked in certain chemicals. After the wood is cooked, it is washed to get rid of the chemicals.
- (4) The next steps in making paper are the same for both the mechanical and the chemical processes. The pulp is drained to form a thick mass, (is) bleached with chlorine, and then (is) thoroughly washed again. Next the pulp is put through a large machine that squeezes the water out and forms the pulp into long sheets. After the pulp sheets go through a drier and a press, they are wound onto rolls. These rolls of paper are then ready for use.
- (5) The next time you use paper, you should think about its origin and how it is made. And you should . . . .

# Exercise 26, p. 227.

- 2. is shut
- 3. are turned
- 4. is not crowded
- 5. is finished
- 6. is closed
- 9. is gone 10. is torn
- 7. was closed

# Exercise 27, p. 228.

- 2. is ... crowded
- 3. is scheduled
- 4. am exhausted
- 5. am confused 6. is stuck
- 7. are turned off
- - 8. are divorced
- 9. are ... qualified
- 10. am married

8. is set . . . are done . . .

are lit

- 11. is spoiled
- 12. is blocked 13. is located
- 14. was born
- 15. Is ... plugged in

# Exercise 29, p. 229.

- 2. for 6. to
- 7. in/with 3. in 4. with 8. about
- 5. of

# Exercise 30, p. 230.

- 1. of 5. for
- 2. with 6. to
- 3. to 7. about 8. with 4. in

#### Exercise 31, p. 230.

1. to 7. with
2. with 8. A: to
3. with B: of/by
4. to 9. A: with
5. of B: in

#### Exercise 32, p. 231.

6. to

2. is finished with
3. is addicted to
4. am satisfied with
5. is engaged to
6. is divorced from
7. Are . . . related to

A: to

# Exercise 33, p. 231.

1. about 4. with/by 2. about 5. to 6. to

# Exercise 34, p. 232.

filled with
 protected from
 connected to
 addicted to
 dressed in
 exposed to
 gone from
 qualified for
 located in

# Exercise 35, p. 232.

dirty
 dressed
 lost
 hungry
 wet
 hurt

# Exercise 36, p. 233.

2. b 5. a, b, d 3. a, b 6. b 4. c, d 7. c

# Exercise 37, p. 234.

- 2. got wet
- 3. get nervous
- 4. is getting dark
- 5. is getting better
- 6. Get well
- 7. get accustomed
- 8. get done
- 9. got depressed
- 10. Did . . . get invited
- 11. get paid
- 12. got hired
- 13. got fired
- 14. got engaged . . . got married . . got divorced . . . got remarried

# Exercise 39, p. 235.

- 1. boring
- 2. bored

#### Exercise 40, p. 236.

1. B 4. neither 2. A 5. neither 3. A 6. B

# Exercise 41, p. 236.

exciting
 excited
 surprising
 surprised
 excited
 frightened
 frightening
 exhausting
 exhausted

# Exercise 43, p. 237.

missing
 satisfied
 scary
 frightened
 marrying
 scary
 finished

# Exercise 44, p. 238.

thrilling
 thrilled
 shocked
 shocking
 delightful
 delightful
 confused
 shocking

# Exercise 45, p. 238.

2. embarrassing 10. sleeping 3. injured 11. thrilling 4. challenging 12. abandoned 5. expected 13. Polluted 6. printing 14. furnished 15. dividing 7. Experienced 8. growing . . . 16. elected balanced 17. amazing 9. spoiled

# Exercise 46, p. 239.

#### Questions:

- 2. What are you tired of?
- 3. What (or who) are you pleased with?
- 4. What do you get really nervous about?
- 5. What do you want to be remembered for?
- 6. What is exciting to you?
- 7. What do you get excited about?
- 8. What is confusing to students?
- 9. What are you confused by?
- 10. What is confusing to children?

# Exercise 47, p. 239.

#### Part I.

- 1. F
- 2. F
- 3. T

#### Part II.

- began
   was crowned
   were established
   could be placed
   were allowed
   were not even permitted
   were treated
   was
   brought
- 6. were not invited

#### Exercise 50, p. 241.

- 2. Two people got hurt in the accident and were taken to the hospital by an ambulance.
- 3. The movie was so boring that we fell asleep after an
- 4. The students were helped by the clear explanation that the teacher gave.
- 5. The winner of the race hasn't been announced yet.
- 6. When and where was the automobile invented?
- 7. My brother and I have always been **interested** in learning more about our family tree.
- 8. I do not don't agree with you, and I don't think you'll ever convince me.
- 9. It was late, and I was getting very worried about my mother.
- 10. Many strange things happened last night.
- I didn't go to dinner with them because I had already eaten.
- In class yesterday, I was confused. I didn't understand the lesson.
- 13. When we were children, we were very afraid of caterpillars. Whenever we saw one of these monsters, we ran to our house before the caterpillars could attack us. I still get scared when I see a caterpillar close to me.
- 14. One day, while the old man was cutting down a big tree near the stream, his axe **fell** into the river. He sat down and **began** to cry because he **did** not have enough money to buy another axe.

# Chapter 12: Noun Clauses

#### Exercise 1, p. 242.

Complete sentences: 2, 4, 6, 8

#### Exercise 2, p. 243.

Noun clauses:

- 3. where Tom went
- 4. Where Tom went
- 5. (no noun clause)
- 6. what Nancy wants

#### Exercise 3, p. 243.

- 3. What does Alex need? Do you know?
- 4. Do you know what Alex needs?
- 5. What Alex needs is a new job.
- 6. We talked about what Alex needs.
- 7. What do you need? Did you talk to your parents about what you need?
- 8. My parents know what I need.

#### Exercise 5, p. 244.

- 1. a
- 2. b

# Exercise 6, p. 244.

- 2. What he was talking about
- 3. where you live

- 4. Where she went
- 5. when they are coming
- 6. which one he wants
- 7. what happened
- 8. who opened the door
- 9. Why they left the country
- 10. What we are doing in class
- 11. who those people are
- 12. whose pen this is

# Exercise 7, p. 245.

Can you tell me . . .

- 1. how this word is pronounced?
- 2. what this means?
- 3. what my grade was?
- 4. who I am supposed to talk to?
- 5. when our next assignment is due?
- 6. how much time we have for the test?
- 7. when classes end for the year?
- 8. where our class is going to meet?

# Exercise 9, p. 246.

- 2. Why is he coming? Please tell me why he is coming.
- 3. What/Which flight will he be on? Please tell me what/which flight he will be on.
- 4. Who is going to meet him at the airport? Please tell me who is going to meet him at the airport.
- 5. Who is his roommate? Please tell me who his roommate is.
- 6. Where does he live? Please tell me where he lives.
- 7. Where was he last week? Please tell me where he was last week.
- 8. How long has he been working for Sony Corporation? Do you know how long he has been working for Sony Corporation?
- 9. What kind of computer does he have at home? Do you know what kind of computer he has at home?

#### Exercise 10, p. 247.

- 2. A: is my eraser B: it is
- 3. A: didn't Franco lock B: he didn't lock
- 4. A: has he been B: he has been
- 5. A: are we supposed B: we are supposed

# Exercise 11, p. 248.

- 1. a 4. b 6. b 2. b 5. a 7. b
- 3. a

# Exercise 12, p. 248.

- 1. Do you know how many minutes (there) are in 24 hours? (1,440 minutes)
- 2. Do you know when the first man walked on the moon? (1969)
- 3. Do you know who won the Nobel Peace Prize last year? / . . . who the winner of the Nobel Peace Prize was last year?
- 4. Do you know where Buddha was born? (northern India which is now part of Nepal)

- 5. Do you know how far it is from the earth to the sun? (about 93 million miles / 149 million km.)
- Do you know how long it takes for the moon to rotate around the earth? (about a month — 27 days, 8 hours)

#### Exercise 13, p. 248.

I wonder whether the mail has arrived.

I wonder whether or not the mail has arrived.

I wonder whether the mail has arrived or not.

I wonder if the mail has arrived or not.

Whether, if, and or not are added to yes/no questions.

#### Exercise 14, p. 249.

- 1. Let me know if the financial report is ready.
- 2. Let me know if it will be ready tomorrow.
- 3. Let me know if the copy machine needs paper.
- 4. Let me know if someone is waiting for me.
- 5. Let me know if we need anything for the meeting.
- 6. Let me know if you are going to be there.
- 7. Please check whether they got my message.
- 8. Please check whether the copy machine is working.
- 9. Please check whether there is any paper left.
- 10. Please check whether this information is correct.
- 11. Please check whether the fax came in.
- 12. Please check whether we are going to have Monday off.

# Exercise 15, p. 249.

#### I wonder . . .

- 1. where Tom is.
- 2. whether/if we should wait for him.
- 3. whether/if he is having trouble.
- 4. when the first book was written.
- 5. what causes earthquakes.
- 6. how long a butterfly lives.
- 7. whose dictionary this is.
- 8. whether/if it belongs to William.
- 9. why dinosaurs became extinct.
- 10. whether/if there is life on other planets.
- 11. how life began.
- 12. whether/if people will live on the moon someday.

#### Exercise 17, p. 250.

- 1. I don't know where you left your keys.
- 2. I don't know where you put your shoes.
- 3. I don't know where your other sock is.
- 4. I don't know what you did with your briefcase.
- 5. I'll find out where he's (he is) from.
- 6. I'll find out what he does.
- 7. I'll find out where he works.
- 8. I'll find out if he'd (he would) like to come to dinner.
- 9. Let's ask where the bus station is.
- 10. Let's ask how much the city bus costs.
- 11. Let's ask if the city buses carry bikes.
- 12. Let's ask if this bus schedule is correct.
- 13. We need to figure out how far it is from here to town.

- 14. We need to figure out how much it costs to take a taxi from here to downtown.
- 15. We need to figure out where we get our money changed.

# Exercise 18, p. 250.

- 2. No one seems to know when Maria will arrive.
- 3. I don't know what that word means.
- 4. I wonder if/whether the teacher knows the answer.
- 5. I'll ask her if/whether she would like some coffee
- 6. Be sure to tell the doctor where it hurts.
- 7. Why I am unhappy is something I can't explain.
- 8. Nobody cares if we stay or leave.
- 9. I need to know who your teacher is.
- 10. I don't understand why the car is not running properly.
- 11. My young son wants to know where the stars go in the daytime.

#### Exercise 19, p. 251.

#### Sample answers:

- 1. Do you know if/whether the restaurant is open yet?
- 2. Could you tell me what the homework was?
- 3. I'll find out what the date is.
- 4. I haven't heard if/whether it is supposed to be sunny.
- 5. Could you tell me how many days I have to return the coat?
- I don't care if/whether we go to a movie or get a DVD.
- 7. I'd like to know why I have a late fee on my bill.
- 8. It doesn't matter to me if/whether you bring your dog.

#### Exercise 20, p. 251.

- b. to do
- d. to get

#### Exercise 21, p. 252.

- 2. The plumber told me how to fix the leak in the sink.
- 3. Please tell me where to meet you.
- Robert had a long excuse for being late for their date, but Sandy didn't know whether to believe him or not.
- 5. Jim found two shirts he liked, but he had trouble deciding which one to buy.
- 6. I've done everything I can think of to help Andy get his life straightened out. I don't know what else to do.

# Exercise 22, p. 252.

#### Sample answers:

- 2. to live in a dorm . . . to get an apartment
- 3. to repair a bicycle
- 4. to get my sister
- to take a job with low pay that he would enjoy . . .
   (to) take a job with higher pay that he wouldn't enjoy
- 6. to stay . . . to travel cheaply

#### Exercise 23, p. 253.

Correct sentences: 2, 3

#### Exercise 26. p. 254.

Sample answers:

- 2. It's too bad that Tim hasn't been able to make any friends. OR That Tim hasn't been able to make any friends is too bad.
- 3. It's a fact that the earth revolves around the sun. OR That the earth revolves around the sun is a fact.
- 4 It's true that exercise can reduce heart disease. OR That exercise can reduce heart disease is true.
- 5. It's clear that drug abuse can ruin one's health. OR That drug abuse can ruin one's health is clear.
- 6. It's unfortunate that some women do not earn equal pay for equal work. OR That some women do not earn equal pay for equal work is unfortunate.
- 7. It's surprising that Irene, who is an excellent student, failed her entrance examination. OR That Irene, who is an excellent student, failed her entrance examination is surprising.
- 8. It's a well-known fact that English is the principal language of business throughout much of the world.

  OR That English is the principal language of business throughout much of the world is a well-known fact.

#### Exercise 27, p. 255.

- 3. It's a fact that . . . .
- 4. It isn't true that . . . (It's sunlight.)
- 5. It's a fact that . . . .
- 6. It isn't true that .... (It's about 55–78%, depending on body size.)
- 7. It's a fact that . . . .
- 8. It isn't true that . . . . (It went online in 1992 and was developed by British computer scientist Tim Berners-Lee.)
- 9. It's a fact that . . . . (The average pregnancy is 22 months.)
- 10. It isn't true that . . . . (They were made out of tree trunks 3500 B.C.)
- 11. It's a fact that . . . .

#### Exercise 28, p. 255.

- 2. The fact that Rosa didn't come made me angry.
- 3. The fact that many people in the world live in intolerable poverty must concern all of us.
- 4. I was not aware of the fact that I was supposed to bring my passport to the exam for identification.
- 5. Due to the fact that the people of the town were given no warning of the approaching tornado, there were many casualties.

#### Exercise 29, p. 255.

- 2. The fact that traffic is getting worse every year is undeniable.
- 3. The fact that the city has no funds for the project is unfortunate.

- 4. The fact that the two leaders don't respect each other is obvious.
- 5. The fact that there were no injuries from the car accident is a miracle.

#### Exercise 31, p. 256.

- 1. T 4. F
- 2. T 5. F
- 3. T

# Exercise 32, p. 257.

- 1. Watch out! Mrs. Brooks said.
- 2. Are you okay? She asked.
- 3. "You look like you're going to fall off the ladder," she said.

The punctuation is inside the quotation marks. A comma is used at the end of a quoted statement.

#### Exercise 33, p. 259.

- 1. Henry said, "There is a phone call for you."
- 2. "There is a phone call for you," he said.
- 3. "There is," said Henry, "a phone call for you."
- 4. "There is a phone call for you. It's your sister," said Henry.
- 5. "There is a phone call for you," he said. "It's your sister."
- 6. I asked him, "Where is the phone?"
- 7. "Where is the phone?" she asked.
- 8. "Stop the clock!" shouted the referee. "We have an injured player."
- 9. "Who won the game?" asked the spectator.
- 10. "I'm going to rest for the next three hours," she said. "I don't want to be disturbed." "That's fine," I replied. "You get some rest. I'll make sure no one disturbs you."

#### Exercise 34, p. 259.

When the police officer came over to my car, he said, "Let me see your driver's license, please."

"What's wrong, Officer?" I asked. "Was I speeding?"

"No, you weren't speeding," he replied. "You went through a red light at the corner of Fifth Avenue and Main Street. You almost caused an accident."

"Did I really do that?" I said. "I didn't see a red light."

#### Exercise 36, p. 260.

The reporting verbs (*said*, *told*) are simple past. This means that the noun clause verbs that are present in quoted speech change to the past in reported speech.

#### Exercise 37, p. 262.

- 2. if/whether I needed a pen.
- 3. what I wanted.
- 4. if/whether I was hungry.
- 5. (that) she wanted a sandwich.

- 6. (that) he was going to move to Ohio.
- 7. if/whether I enjoyed my trip.
- 8. what I was talking about.
- 9. if/whether I had seen her grammar book.
- 10. (that) she didn't want to go.
- 11. if/whether I could help him with his report.
- 12. (that) he might be late.
- 13. that I should work harder.
- 14. she had to go downtown.
- 15. why the sky is blue.
- 16. where everyone was.
- 17. (that) he would come to the meeting.
- 18. if/whether he would be in class tomorrow.
- 19. he thought he would go to the library to study.
- 20. if/whether Omar knew what he was doing.
- 21. if/whether what I had heard was true.
- 22. the sun rises in the east.
- 23. someday we would be in contact with beings from outer space.

# Exercise 40, p. 264.

- 1. was scheduled
- 4. had applied
- 2. was snowing
- 5. could come
- 3. needed
- 6. was going to continue

#### Exercise 41, p. 264.

- 2. couldn't lend . . . was
- 3. was wearing . . . was giving
- 4. would meet . . . promised
- 5. was considering . . . thought . . . should do
- 6. were going to be . . . had to

# Exercise 42, p. 265.

- 2. that she was excited about her new job and that she had found a nice apartment.
- 3. that he expected us to be in class every day and that unexcused absences might affect our grades.
- 4. that Highway 66 would be closed for two months and that commuters should seek alternate routes.
- 5. that every obstacle was a steppingstone to success and that I should view problems in my life as opportunities to improve myself.

# Exercise 43, p. 265.

#### Possible answers:

- 1. Alex asked me what I was doing. I replied that I was drawing a picture.
- 2. Asako asked Cho if she wanted to go to a movie Sunday night. Cho said that she would like to but that she had to study.
- 3. The little boy asked Mrs. Robinson how old she was. She told him that it was not polite to ask people their age. He also asked how much money she made. She told him that was impolite too.

4. My sister asked me if there was anything I especially wanted to watch on TV. I replied that there was a show at 8:00 that I had been waiting to see for a long time. She asked me what it was. When I told her that it was a documentary about green sea turtles, she wondered why I wanted to see that. I explained that I was doing a research paper on sea turtles and thought I might be able to get some good information from the documentary. I suggested that she watch it with me. She declined and said she wasn't especially interested in green sea turtles.

# Exercise 44, p. 266.

- 1. Tell the taxi driver where you want to go.
- My roommate came into the room and asked me why I wasn't in class. I said (that) I was waiting for a telephone call from my family. OR I told him (that)....
- 3. It was my first day at the university, and I was on my way to my first class. I wondered who else would be in the class and what the teacher would be like.
- He asked me what I intended to do after I graduated.
- 5. What a patient tells a doctor is confidential.
- What my friend and I did was our secret. We didn't even tell our parents what we did. (also possible: had done)
- 7. The doctor asked **if/whether** I felt okay. I told him that I **didn't** feel well.
- 8. I asked him what kind of movies he liked. He said to me / He told me that he liked romantic movies.
- 9. "Is it true you almost drowned?" my friend asked me. "Yes," I said. "I'm really glad to be alive. It was really frightening."
- 10. The fact that I almost drowned makes me very careful about water safety whenever I go swimming.
- 11. I didn't know where I was supposed to get off the bus, so I asked the driver where the science museum was. She told me the name of the street. She said she would tell me when I should get off the bus.
- 12. My mother did not live with us. When other children asked me where my mother was, I told them (that) she was going to come to visit me very soon.
- 13. When I asked the taxi driver to drive faster, he said he would drive faster if I paid him more. OR When I asked the taxi driver to drive faster, he said, "I will drive faster if you pay me more." At that time I didn't care how much it would cost, so I told him to go as fast as he could.
- 14. My parents told me it is essential to know English if I want to study at an American university.

#### Exercise 48, p. 268.

- 1. any place that
- 3. anything that
- 2. at any time that
- 4. in any way that

#### Exercise 49, p. 269.

- 2. whenever
- 3. whatever
- 4. whatever
- 5. Whoever
- 6. however
- 7. whoever
- 8. wherever
- 9. whatever ... wherever ... whoever (also possible, but rare: whomever) ... however

# enaprer 13/ Adjective Clauses

#### Exercise 1, p. 270.

- 1. a. He = man
- 2. a. It = computer
- b. who = man
- b. which = computer

c. that = man c. that = computer Pronoun choice: who = person; that = person, thing;

#### Exercise 2, p. 271.

2. b, c

which = thing.

- 3. a, b
- 4. b, c

#### Exercise 3, p. 271.

- 2. The girl who/that won the race is happy.
- 3. The student who/that sits next to me is from China.
- 4. The students who/that sit in the front row are from China.
- 5. We are studying sentences that/which contain adjective clauses.
- 6. I am using a sentence that/which contains an adjective clause.

# Exercise 5, p. 271.

- 2. who is
- 9. would like
- 3. who has
- 10. is giving
- 4. who are
- 11. has traveled
- 5. who have
- 12. are planning
- 6. who had
- 13. have worked
- 7. who would
- 14. had been taking
- 8. will be

# Exercise 6, p. 272.

Note: which can be used in place of that.

- 1. He is looking for a job that leaves him free on weekends.
- 2. He is not looking for a job that requires him to work on weekends.
- 3. He is not looking for a job that includes a lot of long-distance travel.
- 4. He is looking for a job that has minimal travel requirements.
- 5. He is not looking for a job has a long commute.
- 6. He is looking for a job that is close to home.

- 7. He is not looking for a job that demands sixteenhour work days.
- 8. He is looking for a job that has flexible hours.

# Exercise 7, p. 273.

- 2. b, c, f 4. b, c, f
- 3. a, b, e, f 5. a, b, e, f

#### Exercise 8, p. 273.

- 2. I liked the woman who/that/whom/Ø I met at the party last night.
- 3. I liked the composition that/which/Ø you wrote.
- 4. The people who/that/whom/Ø we visited yesterday were very nice.
- 5. The man who/that/whom/Ø Ann brought to the party is standing over there.

# Exercise 9, p. 274.

In the a. sentences, the preposition comes at the end of the adjective clause.

In the b. sentences, the preposition comes before *whom/which* (at the beginning of the adjective clause).

#### Exercise 10, p. 274.

- 1. a, b, c
- 2. a, b, d, f

# Exercise 11, p. 274.

1. The man who I was telling you about is standing over there.

The man whom I was telling you about is standing over there

The man that I was telling you about is standing over there.

The man I was telling you about is standing over there.

The man about whom I was telling you is standing over there.

- 2. I must thank the people who I got a present from. I must thank the people whom I got a present from. I must thank the people that I got a present from. I must thank the people I got a present from. I must thank the people from whom I got a present.
- 3. The meeting that Omar went to was interesting.
  The meeting which Omar went to was interesting.
  The meeting Omar went to was interesting.
  The meeting to which Omar went was interesting.

#### Exercise 12, p. 275.

- 2. who, whom, that, Ø
- 5. that, which
- 3. that, which, Ø
- 6. who, whom, that, Ø

4. who, that

# Exercise 13, p. 275.

Adjective clauses:

which I had borrowed from my roommate that I had borrowed from my roommate I had borrowed from my roommate

- 3. I hadn't seen for years who I hadn't seen for years whom I hadn't seen for years that I hadn't seen for years
- 4. she knew very little about which she knew very little about that she knew very little about about which she knew very little
- 5. who keeps chickens in his apartment that keeps chickens in his apartment

# Exercise 14, p. 275.

- 1. In our village, there were many people who/that didn't have much money.
- 2. I enjoyed the book that you told me to read.
- 3. I still remember the man who taught me to play the guitar when I was a boy.
- 4. I showed my father a picture of the car I am going to buy as soon as I save enough money.
- 5. The woman about whom I was talking suddenly walked into the room. OR The woman whom I was talking about suddenly walked into the room. I hope she didn't hear me.
- 6. The people who/that appear in the play are amateur
- 7. I don't like to spend time with people who/that lose their temper easily.
- 8. While the boy was at the airport, he took pictures of people who/that were waiting for their planes.
- 9. People who work in the hunger program estimate that 45,000 people worldwide die from starvation and malnutrition-related diseases every single day of
- 10. In one corner of the marketplace, an old man was playing a violin.

# Exercise 16, p. 277.

Correct sentences: 1 and 2

# Exercise 17, p. 277.

- 5. who 3. whose
- 7. whose

- 4. who
- 6. whose
- 8. who

# Exercise 18, p. 278.

- 2. Mrs. North teaches a class for students whose native language is not English.
- 3. The people whose house we visited were nice.
- 4. I live in a dormitory whose residents come from many countries.
- 5. I have to call the man whose umbrella I accidentally picked up after the meeting.
- 6. The man whose beard caught on fire when he lit a cigarette poured a glass of water on his face.

# Exercise 19, p. 278.

- 1. who's 5. whose
- 2. who's 6. who's
- 7. who's 3. whose
- 8. whose 4. who's

# Exercise 20, p. 278.

- 3. There is the girl whose mother is a dentist.
- 4. There is the person whose picture was in the newspaper.
- 5. There is the woman whose car was stolen.
- 6. There is the man whose daughter won a gold medal at the Olympic Games.
- 7. There is the woman whose keys I found.
- 8. There is the teacher whose class I am in.
- 9. There is the author whose book I read.
- 10. There is the student whose lecture notes I borrowed.

# Exercise 21, p. 279.

- 1. who is
- 4. whose
- 7. who has 5. who is
- 2. whose 3. who has
- 8. who is
- 6. whose

# Exercise 24, p. 280.

- 1. The city where we spent our vacation was beautiful. The city in which we spent our vacation was beautiful.
  - The city which/that/Ø we spent our vacation in was beautiful.
- 2. That is the restaurant where I will meet you. That is the restaurant at which I will meet you. That is the restaurant which/that/Ø I will meet
- 3. The office where I work is busy. The office in which I work is busy. The office which/that/Ø I work in is busy.
- 4. That is the drawer where I keep my jewelry. That is the drawer in which I keep my jewelry. That is the drawer which/that/Ø I keep my jewelry in.

# Exercise 26, p. 280.

- 1. Monday is the day when they will come. Monday is the day on which they will come. Monday is the day that/Ø they will come.
- 2. 7:05 is the time when my plane arrives. 7:05 is the time at which my plane arrives. 7:05 is the time that/Ø my plane arrives.
- 3. 1960 is the year when the revolution took place. 1960 is the year in which the revolution took place. 1960 is the year that/Ø the revolution took place.
- 4. July is the month when the weather is usually the hottest.
  - July is the month in which the weather is usually the
  - July is the month that/Ø the weather is usually the hottest.

# Exercise 27, p. 281.

- 3. A café is a small restaurant where people can get a
- 4. Every neighborhood in Brussels has small cafés where customers drink coffee and eat pastries.
- 5. There was a time when dinosaurs dominated the earth.

- 6. The house where I was born and grew up was destroyed in an earthquake ten years ago.
- 7. The miser hid his money in a place where it was safe from robbers.
- 8. There came a time when the miser had to spend his

# Exercise 20, p. 251

- 1. a, b 3. b
- 5. b

- 2. a, c
- 4. c
- 6. b

# Feet 31, p. 282.

- 2. somebody who speaks Spanish
- 3. Everything the Smiths do
- 4. one who really understands me

# Exercise 33, p. 284.

- 1. who is
- 5. who is
- 2. that are
- 6. that sounded
- 3. whose
- 7. that I heard
- 4. whose wife

#### Exercise 34, p. 285.

The adjective clause in sentence 1 can be omitted without changing the meaning.

The commas are used to set off additional information.

#### Exercise 35, p. 286.

- 3. additional: Rice, which is grown in many countries, is a staple food throughout much of the world.
- 4. necessary: The rice which we had for dinner last night was very good.
- 5. necessary: The newspaper article was about a man who died two weeks ago of a rare tropical disease.
- 6. additional: Paul O'Grady, who died two weeks ago of a sudden heart attack, was a kind and loving man.
- 7. additional: I have fond memories of my hometown, which is situated in a valley.
- 8. necessary: I live in a town which is situated in a
- 9. necessary: People who live in glass houses shouldn't throw stones.
- 10. additional: In a children's story, Little Red Riding Hood, who went out one day to visit her grandmother, found a wolf in her grandmother's bed when she got there.

#### Exercise 36, p. 286.

- 1. Did you hear about the man who rowed a boat across the Atlantic Ocean?
- 2. My uncle, who loves boating, rows his boat across the lake near his house nearly every day.
- 3. Tea, which is a common drink throughout the world, is made by pouring boiling water onto the dried leaves of certain plants.
- 4. Tea which is made from herbs is called herbal tea.
- 5. Toys which contain lead paint are unsafe for children.

6. Lead, which can be found in paint and plastics, is known to cause brain damage in children.

#### Exercise 37, p. 287.

- 3. The Mississippi River, which flows south from Minnesota to the Gulf of Mexico, is the major commercial river in the United States.
- 4. A river that is polluted is not safe for swimming. (no commas)
- 5. Mr. Trang, whose son won the spelling contest, is very proud of his son's achievement. The man whose daughter won the science contest is also very pleased and proud.
- 6. Goats, which were first tamed more than 9,000 years ago in Asia, have provided people with milk, meat, and wool since prehistoric times.
- 7. She's furious at the goat that got on the wrong side of the fence and is eating her flowers. (no commas)

# Exercise 38, p. 288.

5. a

- 3. a
- 4. b 6. b

# Exercise 39, p. 288.

- 3. a
- 2. a 4. b

# Exercise 40, p. 288.

- 1. (no change)
- 2. We enjoyed Mexico City, where we spent our vacation.
- 3. (no change)
- 4. One of the most useful materials in the world is glass, which is made chiefly from sand, soda, and
- 5. You don't need to take heavy clothes when you go to Bangkok, which has one of the highest average temperatures of any city in the world.
- 6. Child labor was a social problem in late eighteenthcentury England, where employment in factories became virtual slavery for children.
- 7. (no change)
- 8. (1st sentence: no change) The research scientist, who was wearing protective clothing before she stepped into the special chamber holding the bees, was not stung. (3rd sentence: no change)

#### Exercise 41, p. 289.

#### Sample answers:

- 1. developed QDOS.
- 2. Tim Paterson worked for.
- 3. meant "quick and dirty operating system."
- 4. was developing a personal computer.
- 5. was looking for an operating system, bought Tim Paterson's.
- 6. became known as MS-DOS.

#### Exercise 42, p. 290.

- 1. b
- 2. b

# Exercise 43, p. 290.

- 2. Last night the orchestra played three symphonies, one of which was Beethoven's Seventh.
- 3. I tried on six pairs of shoes, none of which I liked.
- 4. The village has around 200 people, the majority of whom are farmers.
- 5. That company currently has five employees, all of whom are computer experts.
- 6. After the riot, over 100 people were taken to the hospital, many of whom had been innocent bystanders.

# Exercise 45, p. 291.

- 1. The soccer team worked very hard to win.
- 2. Some of the athletes in the class cheated on the final exam.
- 3. final exam

# Exercise 46, p. 292.

- 2. She usually came to work late, which upset her boss.
- 3. So her boss fired her, which made her angry.
- 4. She hadn't saved any money, which was unfortunate.
- 5. So she had to borrow some money from me, which I didn't like.
- 6. She has found a new job, which is lucky.
- 7. So she has repaid the money she borrowed from me, which I appreciate.
- 8. She has promised herself to be on time to work every day, which is a good idea.

# Exercise 47, p. 292.

- 2. The blue whale, which can grow to 100 feet and 150 tons, is considered the largest animal that has ever lived.
- 3. The plane was met by a crowd of 300 people, <u>some</u> of whom had been waiting for more than four hours.
- 4. In this paper, I will describe the basic process by which raw cotton becomes cotton thread.
- 5. The researchers are doing case studies of people whose families have a history of high blood pressure and heart disease to determine the importance of heredity in health and longevity.
- 6. At the end of this month, scientists at the institute will conclude their AIDS research, the results of which will be published within six months.
- 7. According to many education officials, "math phobia" (that is, fear of mathematics) is a widespread problem to which a solution can and must be found.

- 8. The art museum hopes to hire a new administrator under whose direction it will be able to purchase significant pieces of art.
- 9. The giant anteater, whose tongue is longer than 30 centimeters (12 inches), licks up ants for its dinner.
- 10. The anteater's tongue, which can go in and out of its mouth 160 times a minute, is sticky.

# Exercise 48, p. 293.

- (2) 6:00 . . . parking lot . . . bus
- (3) reports
- (4) coffee
- (5) commuting for an hour and a half

# Exercise 51, p. 295.

- 2. The scientists researching the causes of cancer are making progress.
- 3. We have an apartment overlooking the park.
- 4. The photographs published in the newspaper were extraordinary.
- 5. The rules allowing public access to wilderness areas need to be reconsidered.
- 6. The psychologists studying the nature of sleep have made important discoveries.
- 7. Antarctica is covered by a huge ice cap containing 70 percent of the earth's fresh water.
- 8. When I went to Alex's house to drop off some paperwork, I met Jacob, his partner.
- 9. Many of the students hoping to enter this university will be disappointed because only one-tenth of those applying for admission will be accepted.
- Kuala Lumpur, the capital of Malaysia, is a major trade center in Southeast Asia.

#### Exercise 52, p. 295.

- 1. a 3. a, b
- 2. b 4. a

# Exercise 53, p. 295.

- 2. Corn was one of the agricultural products that/which was introduced to the European settlers by the Indians. Some of the other products that/which were introduced by the Indians were potatoes, peanuts, and tobacco.
- Mercury, which is the nearest planet to the sun, is also the smallest of the planets which/that orbit our sun.
- 4. The pyramids, which are the monumental tombs of ancient Egyptian pharaohs, were constructed more than 4,000 years ago.
- 5. Any student who/that doesn't want to go on the trip should inform the office.
- 6. Be sure to follow the instructions that/which are given at the top of the page.

# Exercise 54, p. 296.

- (2) Walt Disney, the creator of Mickey Mouse and the founder of his own movie production company, once was fired by a newspaper editor because he had no good ideas
- (3) Thomas Edison, the inventor of the light bulb and the phonograph, was believed by his teachers to be too stupid to learn.
- (4) Albert Einstein, one of the greatest scientists of all time, performed badly in almost all of his high school courses and failed his first college entrance exam.

# Freruise 55, p. 296.

- 2. , the capital of Iraq.
- 3. , sensitive instruments that measure the shaking of the ground.
- 4. , the lowest place on the earth's surface,
- 5. , the capital of Argentina.
- 6. , devices that produce a powerful beam of light.
- 7. , the northernmost country in Latin America,
- 8. , the most populous country in Africa,
- 9. , the largest city in the Western Hemisphere, ..., the largest city in the United States,

# Exercise 56, p. 297.

#### Part I.

- 1. F
- 3. F
- 2. T 4. T

#### Part II.

- 1. Whether or not
- 2. reported that
- 3. that scientists
- 4. that were
- 5. something which
- 6. who followed
- 7. is that they

- 8. that begin
- 9. is that
- 10. and that
- 11. believe that12. who have
- 13. are certain that
- 14. and that

# Exercise 57, p. 298.

- 2. Disney World, an amusement park located in Orlando, Florida, covers a large area of land that includes lakes, golf courses, campsites, hotels, and a wildlife preserve.
- Jamaica, the third largest island in the Caribbean Sea, is one of the world's leading producers of bauxite, an ore from which aluminum is made.
- 4. Robert Ballard, an oceanographer, made headlines in 1985 when he discovered the remains of the *Titanic*, the "unsinkable" passenger ship that has rested on the floor of the Atlantic Ocean since 1912, when it struck an iceberg. (also possible: Oceanographer Robert Ballard made headlines . . . .)
- 5. The Republic of Yemen, located at the southwestern tip of the Arabian Peninsula, is an ancient land that has been host to many prosperous civilizations, including the Kingdom of Sheba and various Islamic empires.

#### Exercise 58, p. 299.

- Baseball is the only sport in which I am interested.
   OR Baseball is the only sport (which) I am interested in.
- 2. My favorite teacher, **Mr. Chu**, **was** always willing to help me after class.
- 3. It is important to be polite to people who **live** in the same building.
- 4. My sister has two children, whose names are Ali and Talal.
- 5. He comes from Venezuela, (which is) a Spanishspeaking country.
- 6. There are some people in the government (who are) trying to improve the lives of the poor.
- 7. My classroom is located on the second floor of Carver Hall, which is a large brick building in the center of the campus.
- 8. A myth is a story **expressing** traditional beliefs. OR A myth is a story **which/that expresses** traditional beliefs.
- There is an old legend (which/that is) told among people in my country about a man who lived in the seventeenth century and saved a village from destruction.
- 10. An old man fishing (OR who/that was fishing) next to me on the pier was muttering to himself.
- 11. The road that we took through the forest was narrow and steep.
- 12. There are ten universities in Thailand, seven of which are located in Bangkok, (which is) the capital city.
- 13. At the national park, there is a path leading to a spectacular waterfall. OR At the national park, there is a path which/that leads to a spectacular waterfall.
- 14. At the airport, I was waiting for some relatives who / that / whom / Ø I had never met before.
- 15. It is almost impossible to find two persons whose opinions are the same.
- 16. On the wall, there is a colorful poster which/that consists of / consisting of a group of young people (who are) dancing.
- 17. The sixth member of our household is Pietro, **who** is my sister's son.
- 18. Before I came here, I didn't have the opportunity to speak with people whose native tongue is English. OR... people for whom English is their native tongue.

# Chapter 14: Gerunds and Infinitives, Part 1

#### Exercise 1, p. 301.

- a. sentence 2
- b. sentence 1
- c. sentence 3

# Exercise 2, p. 302.

Each verb ends in -ing.

# Exercise 3, p. 302.

- 2. about going
- 3. in going
- 6. to going
- 4. about going
- 7. from going 8. from going
- 5. on going

# Exercise 4, p. 303.

- 2. to being
- 9. of stealing
- 3. about flying
- 10. for taking
- 4. for spilling
- 11. for doing
- 5. about having
- 12. from taking
- 6. for being
- 13. of listening
- 7. for flying
- 14. in convincing
- 8. from getting

# Exercise 5, p. 304.

- 2. of doing
- 9. in searching
- 3. to having
- 10. for making
- 4. for helping
- 11. to going
- 5. on knowing
- 12. from running
- 6. in being
- 13. to going
- 7. of living
- 14. of clarifying
- 8. for not going
- 15. to wearing

# Exercise 6, p. 305.

- 2. in finishing the project early/in getting the project
- 3. about doing housework.
- 4. for helping (out).
- 5. for not finishing his report.
- 6. to eating spicy food.
- 7. from going away for the holiday weekend.

# Exercise 7, p. 305.

#### **Ouestions:**

- 2. What are you not accustomed to doing?
- 3. What are you interested in finding out about?
- 4. Where are you looking forward to going on your next trip?
- 5. What is a good reason for not doing your homework?

# Exercise 8, p. 305.

- 1. Yes, I thanked him/her for helping me carry heavy boxes. OR No, I didn't thank him/ her for helping
- 2. Yes, I'm looking forward to visiting/going to visit my friends in another town this weekend. OR No, I'm not looking forward to visiting/going to visit . . . .
- 3. Yes, I had a good excuse for not coming to class on time. OR No, I didn't have a good excuse for not coming to class on time.
- 4. Yes, I'm accustomed to living in a cold/warm climate. OR No, I'm not accustomed to living . . . .
- 5. Yes, I'm excited about going to a tropical island for vacation. OR No, I'm not excited about going . . . .

- 6. Yes, she apologized for interrupting me while I was talking to the store manager. OR No, she didn't apologize for interrupting me . . . .
- 7. Yes, all of the students in the class participated in doing role-plays. OR No, all of the students in the class didn't participate in doing . . . .
- 8. Yes, I know who was responsible for breaking the window. OR No, I don't know who was responsible for breaking . . . .
- 9. Yes, I am used to having my biggest meal at lunch. or No, I am not used to having . . . .
- 10. The hot/cold weather prevents me from . . . .
- 11. Yes, they complain about having to do a lot of homework. OR No, they don't complain about having . . . .
- 12. Yes, I blame him for taking my wallet. OR No, I don't blame him for taking . . . .
- 13. Instead of studying grammar last night, I . . . .
- 14. In addition to studying last weekend, I....

# Exercise 9, p. 306.

#### Sample answers:

- 2. By talking to native speakers. / By watching TV., etc.
- 3. By eating.
- 4. By drinking.
- 5. By looking it up in a dictionary.
- 6. By coming to work late.
- 7. By wagging their tails.
- 8. By saying, "Excuse me."

# Exercise 13, p. 308.

- 2. hoping
- 5. doing
- 3. working
- 6. leaving
- 4. going

# Exercise 14, p. 308.

#### Sample answers:

- 2. closing
- 6. making
- 3. studying
- 7. going
- 4. going
- 8. taking
- 5. cleaning
- 9. being

# Exercise 17, p. 309.

- 2. go fishing
- 5. went biking
- 3. go sailing
- 6. going dancing
- 4. went swimming

# Exercise 19, p. 310.

Verbs: understanding, asking, trying, looking, feeling Form: -ing

# Exercise 20, p. 311.

#### Sample answers:

- 2. understanding
- 7. going
- 3. doing
- 8. making
- 4. waiting
- 9. watching 10. eating
- 5. taking 6. listening

#### Exercise 22, p. 312.

- 1. remembering his children's birthdays
- 2. hiding his report card
- 3. eating her breakfast
- 4. learning foreign languages
- 5. sitting in traffic
- 6. singing songs on the bus trip
- 7. studying in the library
- 8. waiting in line to buy movie tickets [Note: Some speakers of American English say "on line."]

# Exercise 22, p. 312.

#### Questions:

- 1. What do you have difficulty remembering?
- 2. What do you have a hard time learning?
- 3. What do you have a good time playing?
- 4. What English sounds do you have a hard time pronouncing?
- 5. What do people waste money doing?
- 6. What do people waste time doing?

# Exercise 24, p. 312.

- 1. b
- 2. a
- 3. b, c

# Exercise 25, p. 314.

- 4. to leave
- 5. to leave/me to leave
- 6. to leave
- 7. to leave/me to leave
- 7. to leave/file to leave
- 8. me to leave 9. to leave
- 10. to leave
- 11. to leave

- 12. me to leave
- 13. to leave/me to leave
- 14. me to leave
- 15. me to leave
- 16. me to leave
- 17. to leave
- 18. to leave

# Exercise 26, p. 314.

#### Sample answers:

- 2. Roberto reminded me to take my book back to the
  - I was reminded (by Roberto) to take . . . .
- 3. Mr. Chang encouraged me to take singing lessons. I was encouraged (by Mr. Chang) to take . . . .
- Mrs. Alvarez warned the children not to play with matches.
  - The children were warned (by Mrs. Alvarez) not to play . . . .
- 5. The Dean of Admissions permitted me to register for school late.
  - I was permitted (by the Dean of Admissions) to register . . . .
- The law requires every driver to have a valid driver's license.
  - Every driver is required (by law) to have . . . .
- 7. My friend advised me to get some automobile insurance.
  - I was advised (by my friend) to get some automobile insurance.

- 8. The robber forced me to give him all of my money. I was forced (by the robber) to give him (the robber)
- 9. My boss told me to come to the meeting ten minutes early.

# I was told (by my boss) to come . . . .

# Exercise 27, p. 315.

#### Ouestions:

- 1. What did a family member remind you to do recently? (also possible: present perfect tense with "recently" questions)
- 2. Where did a friend ask you to go recently?
- 3. What does the government require people to do?
- 4. What do doctors advise people to do?
- 5. What do teachers expect students to do?
- 6. What did our teacher tell you (us) to do recently?
- 7. What do the laws not permit you to do?
- 8. Where do parents warn their kids not to go?
- 9. What does our teacher encourage us to do to practice our English?

# Exercise 28, p. 315.

#### Sample answers:

•		
to give	12.	to finish

- 4. opening 13. getting . . . to wait
- 5. to be ... talking 14. to look for
- 6. to know 15. to look for 7. to be 16. looking for
- 8. being 17. looking for
  - to touch 19 walking for
- 9. to touch 18. walking 10. to have 19. understanding
- 11. to take 20. going

# Exercise 29, p. 316.

- same
   different
   different
- 3. same

# Exercise 30, p. 318.

- 2. playing 7. to do
- 3. doing 8. biting
- 4. to do5. to do9. to get10. driving
- 6. watching

# Exercise 31, p. 318.

- 1. b 4. b
- 2. a 5. a
- 3. b

# Exercise 32, p. 318.

- 2. lecturing/to lecture
- 3. seeing/to see . . . watching/to watch . . . reading/to read
- 4. moving/to move . . . racing/to race . . . to move . . . to
- 5. driving . . . taking
- 6. to drive . . . (to) take [Note: See Chart 14-7 fn., p. 317.]

- 7. to inform
- 8. not listening
- 9. to explain
- 10. crying . . . holding . . . feeding . . . crying/to cry . . . burping . . . changing

# Exercise 34, p. 320.

#### Questions:

- 1. What do you enjoy listening to?
- 2. What are you interested in learning?
- 3. What are you used to having for breakfast?
- 4. What time do you prefer going to bed?
- 5. What can't you stand watching/to watch?
- 6. Why did you decide to study English?

#### Exercise 35, p. 320.

- 2. to help ... (to) paint
- 3. quitting . . . opening
- 4. to take
- 5. looking . . . to answer
- 6. watching . . . listening [*Note:* See Chart 14-7 fn., p. 317.]
- 7. to take . . . to pay
- 8. not to wait . . . to make
- 9. talking
- 10. to water
- 11. going skiing
- 12. not to smoke
- 13. not to know/not knowing
- 14. to renew
- 15. to tell ... to call ... going ... swimming
- 16. to ask . . . to tell . . . to remember . . . to bring
- 17. doing
- 18. convincing

# Exercise 41, p. 326.

1.	to do it.	26.	doing it.
2.	to do it.	27.	to do it.
3.	to do it.	28.	doing it.
4.	to do it.	29.	to do it.
5.	to do it.	30.	doing it?
6.	doing it.	31.	doing it.
7.	doing it.	32.	to do it.
8.	to do it.	33.	to do it.
9.	doing it.	34.	to do it.
10.	doing it.	<b>35</b> .	doing it.
11.	to do it.	36.	to do it.
12.	to do it.	37.	to do it.
13.	to do it.	38.	doing it.
14.	doing it.	39.	doing it?
15.	to do it.		doing it.
16.	to do it.	41.	doing it.
17.	to do it.	42.	to do it.
18.	to do it.	43.	doing it.
19.	doing it.	44.	to do it.
20.	to do it.	45.	to do it.
21.	doing it.	46.	doing it?
22.	doing it.	47.	to do it.
23.	doing it	48.	doing it?
24.	to do it.	49.	doing it.
25.	to doing it.	<b>5</b> 0.	to do it.

# Exercise 43, p. 327.

1.	to bring	1.	to do
2.	pronouncing	8.	to be
3.	to eat	9.	to pass
4.	to lift	10.	getting/to get
5.	to know	11.	seeing/to see
6.	being	12	losing

#### Exercise 44, p. 327.

- 2. to have
- 3. being
- 4. worrying
- 5. to play
- 6. leaving
- 7. to return . . . (to) finish
- 8. hoping . . . praying
- 9. promising to visit
- 10. telling
- 11. to persuade . . . to stay . . . (to) finish
- 12. to race

# Exercise 46, p. 328.

- 1. I don't mind having a roommate.
- 2. Most students want **to** return home as soon as possible.
- 3. Learning about another country is very interesting.
- 4. I tried very hard not to make any mistakes.
- 5. The task of **finding** a person who could tutor me in English wasn't difficult.
- 6. All of us needed to **go** to the ticket office before the game yesterday.
- I'm looking forward to going swimming in the ocean.
- 8. Skiing in the Alps was a big thrill for me.
- Don't keep asking me the same questions over and over
- During a fire drill, everyone is required to leave the building.
- 11. I don't enjoy playing card games. I prefer to spend my time reading or watching movies. OR I prefer spending my time reading or watching movies.
- 12. It is hard for me to understand people who speak very fast.
- 13. When I entered the room, I found my young son standing on the kitchen table.
- 14. When I got home, Irene was lying in bed thinking about what a wonderful time she'd had.

# Chapter 15: Gerunds and Infinitives, Part 2

# Exercise 1, p. 331.

Sentences that answer "Why": 3, 4, 6

# Exercise 2, p. 331.

- 3. for 6. to 4. to 7. for
- 5. to

# Exercise 4, p. 322.

- 7. in order
- 8. in order 4. in order
- 9. Ø 5. in order
- 10. Ø 6. Ø

# Exercis 1 u 1 3.

- 2. Helen borrowed my dictionary to look up the
- 3. The teacher opened the window to let some fresh die nom.
- 4 i mme to this school to learn English.
- 5 I traveled to Osaka to visit my sister.

#### Exercise 7, p. 333.

The be verb comes before the adjectives; infinitives come after the adjectives.

# Exercise 11, p. 335.

Negative idea: sentences 1, 4

#### Exercise 14, p. 336.

- 1. b 3. a 5. a
- 2. b 4. b 6. a

# Exercise 16, p. 338.

- 1. being seen
- 2. to be seen

# Exercise 17, p. 338.

- 2. to be invited
  - 5. being invited 6. to be invited
- 3. to be invited
- 4. being invited

# Exercise 18, p. 338.

- 3. being understood 6. being elected
- 4. to be written
- 7. telling
- 5. to be called
- 8. to be loved . . . needed

# Exercise 21, p. 339.

- 2. to be changed / changing
- 3. to be cleaned / cleaning . . . to clean
- 4. to be ironed / ironing
- 5. to be repaired / repairing
- 6. to take . . . to be straightened / straightening
- 7. to be picked / picking
- 8. to be washed / washing

# Exercise 24, p. 340.

They take the simple or gerund form, not the infinitive.

# Exercise 26, p. 341.

#### Part I. Sample answers:

- 2. singing/chirping OR sing/chirp
- 3. going/walking or go/walk

- 4. shaking/moving OR shake/move
- 5. knock or knocking
- 6. take off ... land OR taking off ... landing

#### Part II.

- 2. slam 6. walking
- 3. snoring 7. land
- 4. playing 8. calling
- 5. call

# Exercise 27, p. 342.

Correct sentences: 1, 3, 4

# Exercise 29, p. 343.

- a. 2
- b. 1
- c. 3

#### Exercise 30, p. 344.

- 1. c 3. b 2. a
  - 4. a
- 5. b 6. c

# Exercise 31, p. 345.

- 3. cashed 7. crv
- 4. to go 8. to do
- 5. shortened 9. take . . . taken
- 6. fixed

#### Exercise 34, p. 346.

- 2. I asked my roommate to let me use his shoe polish.
- 3. I heard a car door open and close.
- 4. I had my friend lend me his car.
- 5. You should visit my country. It is very beautiful.
- 6. I went to the college bookstore to get my books for the new term.
- 7. One of our fights ended up with me having to be sent to the hospital to get stitches.
- 8. Lilly deserves to be told the truth about what happened last night.
- 9. Barbara always makes me laugh. She has a great sense of humor.
- 10. Stop telling me what to do! Let me make up my own mind.
- 11. I went to the pharmacy to have my prescription
- 12. You shouldn't let children play with matches.
- 13. When Shelley needed a passport photo, she had her picture taken by a professional photographer.
- 14. I've finally assembled enough information to begin writing my research paper.
- 15. Omar is at the park right now. He is sitting on a park bench watching the ducks swimming in the pond. The sad expression on his face makes me feel sorry for him.
- 16. The music director tapped his baton to begin the rehearsal.

#### Exercise 35, p. 347.

2.	a, c	٥.	a	8.	С
3.	a	6.	С	9.	a
4.	С	7.	b	10.	С

# Exercise 36, p. 348.

- 4. to be understood 1. able to read 5. to solve 2. being
- 3. to read 6. using

# Exercise 37, p. 348.

- 2. thinking
- 3. to have . . . to know . . . to handle
- 4. having . . . adjusting
- 5. sipping . . . eating
- 6. being forced to leave/to be forced to leave . . . (in order) to study . . . having
- 7. have . . . join
- 8. coming . . . leaving
- 9. chewing . . . grabbing . . . holding . . . tearing . . . swallow
- 10. to force . . . to use . . . to feel . . . (to) share
- 11. to commute ... moving ... (in order) to be ... to spend . . . doing . . . doing

# Exercise 38, p. 350.

- 1. play/playing . . . joining
- 2. (in order) to let . . . run
- 3. staying . . . getting
- 4. to get ... running ... having ... sprayed
- 5. feel . . . to get . . . feeling . . . sneezing . . . coughing ... to ask ... go

# Exercise 39, p. 350.

#### Part II.

1. F 3. T 4. F 2. T

#### Part III.

- 1. to know how to stay
- 2. in order to protect
- 3. surprised to hear
- 4. likely to attract
- 5. to make
- 6. Crouching down or curling up
- 7. Finding
- 8. Being inside
- 9. being outside
- 10. Be careful to stay
- 11. to stay
- 12. to take
- 13. avoid touching
- 14. begin counting
- 15. need to seek
- 16. has passed
- 17. to stay

# Chapter 16: Coordinating Conjunctions

# Exercise 1, p. 352.

- 2. noun, and
- 3. adverb, and
- 4. gerund, or
- 5. adverb, but

# Exercise 2, p. 352.

2. c 5. a, c 7. a 3. b, c 6. b 8. b 4. b

# Exercise 3, p. 353.

2. vegetables 4. strong 3. rudely 5. sped

# Exercise 4, p. 353.

Correct sentences: 2, 3, 4

# Exercise 5, p. 354.

Note: 2nd comma optional in items 2, 4, 6, 8, 10; 3rd comma optional in item 7.

- 2. The price of the meal includes a salad, a main dish, and dessert.
- 3. (no change)
- 4. Elias waited for his son, wife, and daughter.
- 5. (no change)
- 6. Susan raised her hand, snapped her fingers, and asked a question.
- 7. Red, yellow, gold, and olive green are the main colors in the fabric.
- 8. I love films full of action, adventure, and suspense.
- 9. (no change)
- 10. "Travel is fatal to prejudice, bigotry, and narrowmindedness."

# Exercise 6, p. 354.

- 2. Molly is opening the door and (is) greeting her
- 3. Molly will open the door and (will) greet her guests.
- 4. Linda is kind, generous, and trustworthy.
- 5. Please try to speak more loudly and (more) clearly.
- 6. He gave her flowers on Sunday, candy on Monday, and a ring on Tuesday.
- 7. He decided to quit school, (to) go to California, and (to) find a job.
- 8. I am looking forward to going to Italy and eating wonderful pasta every day.
- 9. The boy was old enough to work and (to) earn some
- 10. I should have finished my homework or cleaned up my room.
- 12. I have met his mother but not his father.
- 13. Jake would like to live in Puerto Rico but not in Iceland.

# Exercise 7, p. 355.

#### Sample answers:

- 2. the noise
  - I dislike living in a city because of the air pollution, (the) crime, and (the) noise.
- 3. flowers
  - Hawaii has a warm climate, beautiful beaches, and many interesting tropical trees and flowers.
- 4. is a good leader
  - Mary Hart would make a good president because she works effectively with others, has a reputation in integrity and independent thinking, and is a good leader.

# Exercise 8, p. 356.

Sample answers:

- 2. fair
- 3. greeted her students
- 4. lying on the sofa
- 5. get ready for work
- 6. Hiking in the mountains
- 7. sleeping under the stars

# Exercise 10, p. 357.

- By obeying the speed limit, we can save energy, lives, and money.
- 2. My home offers me a feeling of security, warmth, and love.
- 3. The pioneers hoped to clear away the forest and plant crops.
- 4. When I refused to help Alice, she became very angry and **shouted** at me.
- 5. When Nadia moved, she had to rent an apartment, make new friends, and find a job.
- All plants need light, a suitable climate, and an ample supply of water and minerals from the soil.
- 7. Slowly **and cautiously**, the firefighter climbed the burned staircase.
- 8. On my vacation, I lost a suitcase, broke my glasses, and missed my flight home.
- With their keen sight, fine hearing, and refined sense of smell, wolves hunt elk, deer, moose, and caribou.
- 10. When Anna moved, she had to rent an apartment, make new friends, and find a job.
- 11. The Indian cobra snake and the king cobra use poison from their fangs in two ways: by injecting it directly into their prey **or** (**by**) **spitting** it into the eyes of the victim.

# Exercise 11, p. 357.

Agreement is determined by the noun that directly precedes the verb.

6. are

#### Exercise 12, p. 358.

- 2. is 5. is
- 7. are

- 3. is
- 4. are

#### Exercise 13, p. 358.

- 2. Yes, both the driver and the passenger were injured.
- 3. Yes, both wheat and corn are grown in Kansas.
- 4. Yes, the city suffers from both air and water pollution.
- 6. Yes, not only his cousin but also his mother-in-law is living with him.
- 7. Yes, I lost not only my wallet but also my keys.
- 8. Yes, she not only goes to school, but also has a full-time job.
- 10. Yes, I'm going to give my friend either a book or some jewelry for her birthday.
- 11. Yes, either my sister or my brother will meet me at the airport.
- 12. Yes, they can either go swimming or play tennis.
- No, neither her husband nor her children speak English.
- 15. No, they have neither a refrigerator nor a stove for their new apartment.
- 16. No, the result was neither good nor bad.

#### Exercise 14, p. 359.

- 1. b 4. b
- 2. a 5. b
- 3. a

#### Exercise 15, p. 360.

- 3. Both Tanya and Beth enjoy horseback riding.
- 4. Neither Arthur nor Ricardo is in class today.
- 5. Both Arthur and Ricardo are absent.
- 6. We can either fix dinner for them here or take them to a restaurant.
- 7. Both the leopard and the tiger face extinction.
- 8. Neither the library nor the bookstore has the book.
- 9. We could either fly or take the train.
- 10. The hospital will neither confirm nor deny the story.
- Both coal and oil are irreplaceable natural resources.
- Neither her roommates nor her brother knows where she is.

#### Exercise 16, p. 360.

- (2) harmless . . . beneficial . . . tangle
- (3) attack . . . eating . . . destroy
- (4) trainable

#### Exercise 17, p. 361.

Correct sentences: 1, 3, 4

# Exercise 18, p. 361.

- 2. The boys walked (,) and the girls ran.
- 3. The teacher lectured. The students took notes.
- 4. The teacher lectured (,) and the students took notes.
- 5. Elena came to the meeting, but Pedro stayed home.
- Elena came to the meeting. Her brother stayed home.

#### Exercise 19, p. 361.

- Both Jamal and I had many errands to do yesterday.
   Jamal had to go to the post office and the bookstore.
   I had to go to the post office, the travel agency, and the bank.
- 2. Roberto slapped his hand on his desk in frustration. He had failed another examination and had ruined his chances for a passing grade in the course.
- 3. When Alex got home, he took off his coat and tie, threw his briefcase on the kitchen table, and opened the refrigerator looking for something to eat. Ann found him sitting at the kitchen table when she got home.
- 4. When Tara went downtown yesterday, she bought birthday presents for her children, shopped for clothes, and saw a movie at the theater. It was a busy day, but she felt fine because it ended on a relaxing note.
- 5. It was a wonderful picnic. The children waded in the stream, collected rocks and insects, and flew kites. The teenagers played an enthusiastic game of baseball. The adults busied themselves preparing the food, supervising the children, and playing some volleyball.

#### Exercise 20, p. 362.

- 1. Janice entered the room and looked around. She knew no one.
- 2. A thermometer is used to measure temperature.

  A barometer measures air pressure.
- 3. Derek made many promises, but he had no intention of keeping them.
- 4. The earthquake was devastating. Tall buildings crumbled and fell to the ground.
- 5. Birds have certain characteristics in common. They have feathers, wings, and a beak with no teeth.

  Birds lay hard-shelled eggs, and their offspring are dependent on parental care for an extended period after birth.
- 6. The ancient Egyptians had good dentists.

  Archeologists have found mummies that had gold fillings in their teeth.

#### Exercise 21, p. 363.

A butterfly is a marvel. It begins as an ugly caterpillar and turns into a work of art. The sight of a butterfly floating from flower to flower on a warm, sunny day brightens anyone's heart. A butterfly is a charming and gentle creature. Caterpillars eat plants and cause damage to some crops, but adult butterflies feed principally on nectar from flowers and do not cause any harm. When cold weather comes, some butterflies travel great distances to reach tropical climates. They can be found on every continent except Antarctica. Because they are so colorful and beautiful, butterflies are admired throughout the world.

#### Exercise 22, p. 363.

Note: Parallel structures that are found within a larger parallel structure are underlined twice.

- 1. justice, peace, and brotherhood
- 2. where he stands in moments of comfort and convenience, but where he stands at times of challenge and controversy
- 3. not the words of our enemies, but the silence of our friends
- 4. <u>political</u> and <u>moral</u> question . . . <u>oppression</u> and <u>violence</u> . . . <u>oppression</u> and <u>violence</u> . . . <u>revenge</u>, <u>aggression</u>, and <u>retaliation</u>

# Chapter 17: Adverb Clauses

# Exercise 1, p. 365.

When the adverb clause comes before the main clause, there is a comma. If it comes after the main clause, there is no comma.

#### Exercise 2, p. 366.

Correct sentences: 4, 5, 6, 7, 10

# Exercise 3, p. 366.

- 2. We went inside when it began to rain.
- 3. It began to rain. We went inside.
- 4. When it began to rain, we went inside.
- 5. When the mail comes, my assistant opens it.
- 6. My assistant opens the mail when it comes.
- 7. The mail comes around ten o'clock every morning.

  My assistant opens it.

#### Exercise 4, p. 366.

- As soon as the rain began, the children wanted to go outdoors. They love to play outside in the warm summer rain. I used to do the same thing when I was a child.
- 2. I had a cup of tea before I left for work this morning, but I didn't have anything to eat. I rarely eat breakfast.
- 3. When Jack and his wife go on vacation, . . . .
- 4. After Ellen gets home from work, she likes to read the newspaper. She follows the same routine every day after work. As soon as she gets home, she changes her clothes, gets a snack and a drink, and sits down in her favorite chair to read the newspaper in peace and quiet. She usually has . . . .
- 5. When you speak to someone who is hard of hearing, you do not have to shout. It is important to face the person directly and speak clearly. My elderly father is hard of hearing, . . . .
- 6. Jane wears contact lenses because she is near-sighted. Without them, she can't see from one end of a basketball court to the other. When one of her contacts popped out during a recent game, both teams stopped playing and searched the floor for the lens.

Chapter 17 ANSWER KEY 505

#### Exercise 5, p. 367.

- 2. Before I go to bed, I always brush my teeth.
- 3. Ever since I was a child, I've been interested in butterflies
- 4. I'm going to meet some friends after I leave class today.
- 5. When people speak English too fast, Oscar can't catch the meaning.
- 6. The next time the teacher speaks too fast, Oscar is going to ask her to slow down.

#### Fer ise 6, p. 369.

#### Sample answers:

- 2. did
- 9. will have been

- 3. do
- 10. gets
- 4. have been
- 11. go
- 5. give
- 12. you graduate from college
- 6. had brought
- 13. go
- 7. was8. was driving
- 14. ate

# Exercise 7, p. 369.

#### Sample answers:

- 2. I left the room after I turned off the lights.
- 3. Before I left the room, I turned off the lights.
- 4. Whenever Suki feels nervous, she bites her nails.
- 5. The frying pan caught on fire while I was making
- 6. Just as we were sitting down to eat, someone knocked on the door.
- 7. The audience burst into applause as soon as the singer finished her song.
- 8. We have to wait here until Nancy comes.
- 9. As soon as Julia comes, we can leave for the theater.
- Just as soon as my roommate walked into the room, I knew something was wrong.
- 11. Just before I stood up to give my speech, I got butterflies in my stomach.
- 12. The first time I saw the great pyramids of Egypt in the moonlight, I was speechless.
- Since Lori started working at this company six months ago, she has gotten three promotions.
- 14. Once the weather gets warmer, we can start spending more time outside.
- 15. By the time Shakespeare died in 1616, he had written more than 37 plays.
- The next time Sam goes to get his driver's license, he'll remember to take his glasses.

#### Exercise 8, p. 370.

- 2. d 7. b 11. b 3. c 8. c 12. a
- 4. d 9. b 13. d 5. d 10. b 14. b
- 6. a

# Exercise 9, p. 371.

#### Sample answers:

- 1. Just after Judy returned to her car, she called the police.
- 2. Just as the police arrived, Judy began crying in frustration.
- 3. When Judy returned to her car, she discovered that her car had been broken into.
- 4. While Judy was buying jeans, a thief broke into her car.
- 5. By the time Judy returned to her car, the thief was gone.
- 6. As soon as Judy got back to her car, she called the police.

#### Exercise 11, p. 372.

- 1. he thought the person was asking him about leaving.
- 2. she gave a long answer.
- 3. he won't snap his fingers.
- 4. they have learned that cultural misunderstandings are a normal part of learning another language.
- 5. they just smile.

# Exercise 12, p. 372.

Adverb clauses: 1, 3

# Exercise 13, p. 373.

- 3. Cold air hovers near the earth because it is heavier than hot air.
- 4. Since you paid for the theater tickets, please let me pay for our dinner.
- 5. Do you want to go for a walk now that the rain has stopped?
- 6. Because our TV set was broken, we listened to the news on the radio.
- Many young people move to the cities in search of employment since there are few jobs available in the rural areas.
- 8. Now that the civil war has ended, a new government is being formed.
- Since ninety-two thousand people already have reservations with an airline company for a trip to the moon, I doubt that I'll get the chance to go on one of the first tourist flights.

# Exercise 15, p. 375.

Sentence 2

# Exercise 16, p. 374.

- 2.
- 3. a
- 4. b

#### Exercise 17, p. 375.

- 3. Even though
- 7. even though
- 4. Because
- 8. even though
- 5. even though
- 9. because
- 6. because
- 10. Even though . . . because

# Exercise 18, p. 375.

- 1. Yes. Even though I wasn't tired, I went to bed
- 2. No. Even though the phone rang many times, I didn't wake up.
- 3. Yes. Even though the food was terrible, I ate it anyway.
- 4. Yes. Even though I didn't study, I passed the test anyway.
- 5. No. Even though the weather is terrible today, I didn't stay home.
- 6. No. Even though I fell down the stairs, I didn't get hurt.
- 7. No. Even though I told the truth, no one believed me.
- 8. Yes. Even though I turned on the air conditioner, it's still hot in here.
- 9. No. Even though I mailed the letter a week ago, it hasn't arrived yet.
- 10. No. Even though I have a lot of money, I can't afford to buy an airplane.
- 11. Yes. Even though my grandmother is ninety years old, she is still young at heart.
- 12. Yes. Even though I didn't understand the joke, I laughed anyway.

## Exercise 19, p. 376. Sentences: 1, 3

# Exercise 20, p. 376.

2. d

5. a 6. b

3. c 4. c

# Exercise 22, p. 377.

Correct sentence: 2

# Exercise 23, p. 377.

- 1. If the teacher isn't in class tomorrow, ....
- 2. If I stay up until two in the morning tonight, . . . .
- 3. If the sun is shining when I get up in the morning,
- 4. If predictions about global warming are correct,
- 5. (Answers will vary.)

# Exercise 24, p. 378.

Correct sentences: 1, 2, 3, 4

#### Exercise 25, p. 378.

2. a. so 5. a. so b. did b. are 3. a. so 6. a. not

b. do

b. can't

4. a. so

b. are

#### Exercise 26, p. 379.

True sentences: 1, 4, 5, 6

# Exercise 27, p. 380.

2. b 5. b 3. a 6. b

4. a

# Exercise 28, p. 380.

2. a. they are funny

b. they aren't funny

3. a. you are finished

b. you aren't finished

4. a. it snows

b. it snows

5. a. he gets a scholarship

b. he doesn't get a scholarship

6. a. the weather is cold

b. the weather is hot

7. a. you approve

b. you don't approve

# Exercise 29, p. 381.

Sentence 1

# Exercise 30, p. 381.

- 2. In case you (should) need to see me, I'll be in my office tomorrow morning around ten.
- 3. In case you (should) need any more information, you can call me.
- 4. In case you (should) have any more questions, ask Dr. Smith.
- 5. In case Russ calls (should call), please tell him that I'm at the library.
- 6. In case you aren't satisfied with your purchase, you can return it to the store.

# Exercise 32, p. 382.

1. isn't 3. rainy

2. is 4. sunny

#### Exercise 33, p. 382.

- 2. You can't travel abroad unless you have a passport.
- 3. You can't get a driver's license unless you are at least sixteen years old.
- 4. Unless I get some new batteries for my camera, I won't be able to take pictures when Laura and Rob
- 5. You'll get hungry during class unless you eat breakfast.

#### Exercise 35, p. 383.

1. No. 3. No.

2. No. 4. Yes.

# Exercise 36, p. 383.

True sentences: 1, 3

# Exercise 37, p. 384.

#### Part I.

- 2. you have an invitation.
- 3. you have a student visa.
- 4. chews gum
- 5. will go to the movie
- 6. the temperature reaches 32°F / 0°C.

(Notice subject-verb inversion for sentences 7.-10.

See Chart 17-11 fn. p. 383.)

- 7. will you pass the exam.
- 8. can you get into the soccer stadium.
- 9 can he watch TV in the evening.
- 10. will I have enough money to go to school.

Part II. (Answers will vary.)

#### Exercise 38, p. 385.

- 2. I can pay my bills only if I get a job.
  I can't pay my bills unless I get a job.
- 3. Your clothes will get clean only if you use soap. Your clothes won't get clean unless you use soap.
- 4. I can take (some) pictures only if the flash works. I can't take any pictures unless the flash works.
- 5. I wake up only if the alarm clock rings. I don't wake up unless the alarm clock rings.
- 6. Eggs will hatch only if they are kept at the proper temperature.
  - Eggs won't hatch unless they are kept at the proper temperature.
- 7. Borrow money from friends only if you absolutely have to.
  - Don't borrow money from friends unless you absolutely have to.
- 8. Anita talks in class only if the teacher asks her specific questions.
  - Anita doesn't talk in class unless the teacher asks her specific questions.

#### Exercise 39, p. 385.

- 1. Whether or not it rains, the party will be held outside/inside.
- 2. Even if it rains, the party will be held outside. Even if it doesn't rain, the party will be held inside.
- 3. In case it rains, the party will be held inside.
- 4. Unless it rains, the party will be held outside.
- 5. Only if it rains will be party be held inside.
  Only if it doesn't rain will the party be held outside.

# Chapter 18: Adverb Clauses

Exercise 1, p. 387.

Correct sentences: 1, 2, 4, 6

Exercise 2, p. 388.

Correct sentences: 4, 5, 7

#### Exercise 3, p. 388.

- 3. Before I came to class, I had a cup of coffee. / Before coming to class, I had a cup of coffee.
- 4. Before the student came to class, the teacher had already given a quiz. / (no change)
- 5. Since I came here, I have learned a lot of English. / Since coming here, I have learned a lot of English.
- 6. Since <u>Alberto</u> opened his new business, <u>he</u> has been working 16 hours a day. / Since opening his new business, Alberto has been working 16 hours a day.
- Omar left the house and went to his office after he (had) finished breakfast. / Omar left the house and went to his office after finishing/having finished breakfast.
- 8. Before the waiter came to our table, I had already made up my mind to order shrimp. / (no change)
- 9. You should always read a contract before you sign your name. / You should always read a contract before signing your name.
- 10. While <u>Jack</u> was trying to sleep last night, <u>a mosquito</u> kept buzzing in his ear. / (no change)
- 11. While <u>Susan</u> was climbing the mountain, <u>she</u> lost her footing and fell onto a ledge several feet below. / While climbing the mountain, Susan lost her footing and fell onto a ledge several feet below.
- 12. After I heard Marika describe how cold it gets in Minnesota in the winter, I decided not to go there for my vacation in January. After hearing Marika describe how cold it gets in Minnesota in the winter, I decided not to go there for my vacation in January.

# Exercise 5, p. 389.

- 1. Alan
- 2. the bear

# Exercise 6, p. 390.

Modifying adverbial phrases:

- 2. Being a widow with three children (because)
- 3. Sitting on the airplane and watching the clouds pass beneath me (while)
- 4. Having guessed at the answers for most of the test (because)
- 5. Realizing that I had made a dreadful mistake when I introduced him as George Johnson (because)
- 6. Tapping his fingers loudly on the airline counter (while, because)
- 7. Having broken her arm in a fall (because)
- 8. Lying on her bed in peace and quiet (while, because)

# Exercise 7, p. 390.

- 2. Believing no one loved him, the little boy ran away from home.
- 3. Having forgotten to bring a pencil to the examination, I had to borrow one.
- 4. Being a vegetarian, Chelsea does not eat meat.

# Exercise 8, p. 391.

- 2. a, c 6. b, c
- 3. a, b 7. b, c
- 4. a, b, c 8. b
- 5. a, c 9. a, b

# Exercise 9, p. 391.

- 3. Keeping one hand on the steering wheel, Anna paid the bridge toll with her free hand.
- 4. (no change)
- 5. Hearing that Nadia was in the hospital, I called her family to find out what was wrong.
- 6. (no change)
- 7. Living a long distance from my work, I have to commute daily by train.
- 8. (no change)
- 9. Being a married man, I have many responsibilities.
- 10. (no change)
- 11. Recognizing his face but having forgotten his name, I just smiled and said, "Hi."
- 12. (Being) Convinced that she could never learn to play the piano, Ann stopped taking lessons.

#### Exercise 10, p. 392.

- 2. Having done very well in her studies, Nancy expects to be hired by a top company after graduation.
- (Having been) Born two months prematurely, Monique needed special care for the first few days of her life.
- 4. Having done everything he could for the patient, the doctor left to attend other people.
- 5. Having never eaten / Never having eaten Thai food before, Marta didn't know what to expect when she went to the Thai restaurant for dinner.
- 6. Having no one to turn to for help, Sayid was forced to work out the problem by himself.
- (Being) Extremely hard and nearly indestructible, diamonds are used extensively in industry to cut other hard minerals.
- 8. (Being) Able to crawl into very small places, mice can hide in almost any part of a house.

# Exercise 11, p. 392.

- 3. (correct)
- 4. Because I was too young to understand death, my mother . . .
- 5. (correct)
- 6. While I was working in my office late last night, someone . . .
- 7. After we (had) hurried to get ready for the picnic, it . . . .
- 8. While I was walking across the street at a busy intersection, a truck . . . .

# Exercise 12, p. 393.

All three sentences have the same meaning.

# Exercise 13, p. 393.

2. Upon crossing the marathon finish line, Tina fell in exhaustion.

- 3. Upon looking in my wallet, I saw I didn't have enough money to pay my restaurant bill.
- 4. Sam found that he had made a math error upon re-reading the data.
- 5. Upon finishing the examination, bring your paper to the front of the room.
- 6. ... Upon hearing my name, I raised my hand to identify myself.
- 7. ... Upon hearing this, Cook grabbed his telescope and searched the horizon.

# Exercise 14, p. 394.

- 5. Before leaving on my mp, I checked to see what shots I would need.
- 6. (no change)
- 7. Not having understood the directions, I got lost.
- My father reluctantly agreed to set me attend the game after having talked/talking it over with my mother.
- 9. (Upon) Discovering I had lost my key to the apartment, I called the building superintendent.
- 10. (no change)
- 11. After having to wait for more than half an hour, we were finally seated at the restaurant.

# Exercise 16, p. 395.

- 1. a 3. b
- 2. b 4. a

# Exercise 17, p. 395.

#### Part I.

# The First Telephone

Alexander Graham Bell, a teacher of the deaf in Boston, invented the first telephone. One day in 1875, while running a test on his latest attempt to create a machine that could carry voices, he accidentally spilled acid on his coat. Naturally, he called for his assistant, Thomas A. Watson, who was in another room. Bell said, "Mr. Watson, come here. I want you." Upon hearing words coming from the machine, Watson immediately realized that their experiments had at last been successful. He rushed excitedly into the other room to tell Bell that he had heard his words over the machine.

After successfully testing the new machine again and again, Bell confidently announced his invention to the world. For the most part, scientists appreciated his accomplishment, but the general public did not understand the revolutionary nature of Bell's invention. Believing the telephone was a toy with little practical application, most people paid little attention to Bell's announcement.

#### Part II.

1. T 3. F 2. T 4. F

# Exercise 18, p. 396.

- 1. T 3. F
- 2. T 4. T

# Chapter 15 Cannectives That Acres Cause and Effect, Contrast, and Condition

# Exerc Electric

All four senier - late the same meaning.

# Example 43.

- 1 Date: On is a heavy smoker.

  Energy Jon is a heavy smoker, he has breathing problems.

  Decruse Jon is a heavy smoker, he has breathing problems.
- Effect: Martina feels homesick.
   Cause: Martina moved to a new town.
   Martina feels homesick because she moved to a new town.
- 3. Effect: Mr. Jordan's house has no heat.

  Cause: Mr. Jordan lost his job.

  Mr. Jordan's house has no heat because he lost his job.
- Cause: Victor has gained weight.
   Effect: Victor is going to eat less.
   Because Victor has gained weight, he is going to eat less.

#### Exercise 3, p. 398.

- 1. because of 5. Because of
- 2. because
- 6. Because
- 3. because
- 7. because of
- 4. because of

# Exercise 4, p. 398.

- 2. his wife's illness
- 3. the noise in the next apartment
- 4. our parents' generosity
- 5. circumstances beyond our control

# Exercise 5, p. 398.

Sentences: 1, 4, 6

# Exercise 6, p. 399.

- 1. A storm was approaching. Therefore, the children staved home.
- 2. A storm was approaching. Consequently, the children stayed home.
- 3. A storm was approaching, so the children stayed home

# Exercise 7, p. 399.

- 1. Because it was cold, she wore a coat.
- 2. (no change)
- 3. Because of the cold weather, she wore a coat.
- 4. (no change)
- 5. The weather was cold. Therefore, she wore a coat.
- 6. The weather was cold. She wore a coat, therefore.
- 7. The weather was cold, so she wore a coat.

#### Exercise 8, p. 400.

- Pat always enjoyed studying sciences in high school.
   Therefore, she decided to major in biology in college.
- 2. Due to recent improvements in the economy, fewer people are unemployed.
- 3. Last night's storm damaged the power lines.

  Consequently, the town was without electricity.
- 4. Due to the snowstorm, only five students came to class. The teacher, therefore, canceled the class.

# Exercise 9, p. 400.

Correct sentences: 3, 4

#### Exercise 10, p. 401.

- 1. The weather was bad. Therefore, we postponed our trip. OR We, therefore, postponed our trip. OR We postponed our trip, therefore.
- Since the weather was bad, we postponed our trip. OR We postponed our trip since the weather was bad.
- 3. The weather was bad, so we postponed our trip.
- Because of the bad weather, we postponed our trip.
   OR We postponed our trip because of the bad weather.
- The weather was bad. Consequently, we postponed our trip. OR We, consequently, postponed our trip. OR We postponed our trip, consequently.
- Due to the fact that the weather was bad, we
  postponed our trip. OR We postponed our trip due
  to the fact that the weather was bad.

# Exercise 11, p. 401.

- Pat doesn't want to return to the Yukon to live because the winters are too severe. OR Because the winters are too severe, Pat doesn't want to return to the Yukon to live.
- It is important to wear a hat on cold days since we lose sixty percent of our body heat through our head. OR Since we lose sixty percent of our body heat through our head, it is important to wear a hat on cold days.
- 4. Bill's car wouldn't start. Therefore, he couldn't pick us up after the concert. OR He, therefore, couldn't pick us up after the concert. OR He couldn't pick us up after the concert, therefore.
- When I was in my teens and twenties, it was easy for me to get into an argument with my father because both of us can be stubborn and opinionated.
- 6. Due to the fact that a camel can go completely without water for eight to ten days, it is an ideal animal for desert areas. OR A camel is an ideal animal for desert areas due to the fact that it can go completely without water for eight to ten days.
- Robert got some new business software that didn't work, so he emailed the software company for technical support.

- 8. A tomato is classified as a fruit, but most people consider it a vegetable since it is often eaten in salads along with lettuce, onions, cucumbers, and other vegetables. OR Since it is often eaten in salads along with lettuce, onions, cucumbers, and other vegetables, a tomato is considered a vegetable.
- 9. Due to consumer demand for ivory, many African elephants are being slaughtered ruthlessly. Consequently, many people who care about saving these animals from extinction refuse to buy any item made from ivory. OR Many people who care about saving these animals from extinction, consequently, refuse to buy any item made from ivory. OR Many people who care about saving these animals from extinction refuse to buy any item made from ivory, consequently.
- 10. Because most 15th-century Europeans believed the world was flat and that a ship could conceivably sail off the end of the earth, many sailors of the time refused to venture forth with explorers into unknown waters. OR Many sailors of the 15th century refused to venture forth with explorers into unknown waters because most Europeans of the time believed the world was flat and that a ship could conceivably sail off the end of the earth.

# Exercise 13, p. 402.

- 6. so 4. so
- 8. such
- 7. so 5. so
- 9. so

# Exercise 15, p. 403.

- 2. The radio was so loud that I couldn't hear what Michael was saving.
- 3. Olga did such poor work that she was fired from her job.
- 4. The food was so hot that it burned my tongue.
- 5. There are so many leaves on a single tree that it is impossible to count them.
- 6. The tornado struck with such great force that it lifted cars off the ground.
- 7. So few students showed up for class that the teacher postponed the test.
- 8. Charles used so much paper when he was writing his report that the wastepaper basket overflowed.

# Exercise 16, p. 403.

Correct completions: 1, 4

# Exercise 17, p. 404.

- 5. Please be quiet so (that) I can hear what Sharon is saving.
- 6. I asked the children to be quiet so (that) I could hear what Sharon was saying.
- 7. I'm going to cash a check so (that) I will have / have enough money to go to the store.
- 8. I cashed a check yesterday so (that) I would have enough money to go to the store.

- 9. Tonight Ann and Larry are going to hire a babysitter for their six-year-old child so (that) they can go out with some friends.
- 10. Last week, Ann and Larry hired a babysitter so (that) they could go to a dinner party at the home of Larry's boss.
- 11. Be sure to put the meat in the oven at 5:00 so (that) it will be/is ready to eat by 6:30.
- 12. Yesterday, I put the meat in the oven at 5:00 so (that) it would be ready to eat by 6:30.
- 13. I'm going to leave the party early so (that) I can get a good night's sleep tonight.
- 14. When it started to rain, Harry opened his umbrella so (that) he wouldn't get wet.
- 15. The little boy pretended to be sick so (that) he could stay home from school.

# Exercise 18, p. 405.

- 3. I need a visa so that I can travel overseas.
- 4. I needed a visa, so I went to the embassy to apply for one.
- 5. Marta is trying to improve her English so that she can become a tour guide.
- 6. Olga wants to improve her English, so she has hired
- 7. Tarek borrowed money from his parents so that he could start his own business.
- 8. I turned off the TV so that I could concentrate on my paperwork.

# Exercise 19, p. 405.

- 1. no
- 4. no
- 6. yes 7. yes
- 2. yes 5. no 3. yes

# Exercise 20, p. 406.

- 1. outside
- 5. outside
- 2. inside
- 6. outside
- 3. outside
- 7. outside
- 4. outside
- 8. inside

# Exercise 21, p. 406.

- 1. am
- 2. am not
- 6. am not
- 3. am
- 7. am
- 4. am

# Exercise 22, p. 407.

- 4. but
- 10. However
- 5. Nevertheless

- 11. yet
- 6. Even though
- 12. Although
- 7. even though
- 13. yet
- 8. but
- 14. Although
- 9. Nevertheless
- 15. However

#### Exercise 23, p. 407.

- 2. Anna's father gave her some good advice, but she didn't follow II.
- 3. Even though Anna's father gave her some good advice, she adn't follow it.
- 4. Anna's fathe gave her some good advice. She did not roblew it, he ever.
- 5. Thema was thusty. I offered him some water. He refused in
- 7. Cathas and its. Nevertheless, he refused the
- 11. Manual was thirsty, yet he refused to drink the water that I offered him.

#### Exercise 24, p. 408.

- Even though his grades were low, he was admitted to the university. OR He was admitted to the university even though his grades were low.
- 2. His grades were low, but he was admitted to the university anyway.
- 3. His grades were low, yet he was still admitted to the university.
- 4. His grades were low. Nonetheless, he was admitted to the university.
- 5. Despite his low grades, he was admitted to the university.
- He wasn't admitted to the university because of his low grades. OR Because of his low grades, he wasn't admitted to the university.

# Exercise 25, p. 408.

Sentences: 1, 3, 4, 5

# Exercise 26, p. 409.

#### Possible answers:

- Florida has a warm climate; however, Alaska has a cold climate. OR Florida has a warm climate. Alaska, on the other hand, has a cold climate.
- 2. Fred is a good student; however, his brother is lazy. OR Fred is a good student. His brother, on the other hand, is lazy.
- 3. Elderly people in my country usually live with their children; however, the elderly in the United States often live by themselves. OR The elderly in the United States, on the other hand, often live by themselves.

#### Exercise 30, p. 410.

- 1. can 3. can't
- 2. can't 4. can't

#### Exercise 31, p. 410.

- 2. You should / had better / have to / must leave now. Otherwise, you'll be late for class.
- 3. You should / had better / have to / must have a ticket. Otherwise, you can't get into the theater.
- 4. You should / had better / have to / must have a passport. Otherwise, you can't enter that country.

- Tom should / had better / has to / must get a job soon. Otherwise, his family won't have enough money for food.
- You should / had better / have to / must speak both Japanese and Chinese fluently. Otherwise, you will not be considered for that job.
- 7. Mary should / had better / has to / must get a scholarship. Otherwise, she cannot go to school.
- 8. I should / had better / have to / must wash my clothes tonight. Otherwise, I won't have any clean clothes to wear tomorrow.

# Exercise 32, p. 411.

#### Possible completions:

- 2. I failed the exam because I did not study.
- 3. Although I studied, I did not pass the exam.
- 4. I did not study. Therefore, I failed the exam.
- 5. I did not study. However, I passed the exam.
- 6. I studied. Nevertheless, I failed the exam.
- 7. Even though I did not study, I (still) passed the exam.
- 8. I did not study, so I did not pass the exam.
- 9. Since I did not study, I did not pass the exam.
- 10. If I study for the exam, I will pass it.
- 11. Unless I study for the exam, I will fail it.
- 12. I must study. Otherwise, I will fail the exam.
- 13. Even if I study, I won't pass.
- 14. I did not study. Consequently, I failed the exam.
- 15. I did not study. Nonetheless, I passed the exam.
- 16. I will probably fail the exam whether I study or not.
- 17. Only if I study will I pass the exam.
- 18. I studied hard, yet I still failed the exam.
- 19. You'd better study, or else you will fail the exam.

#### Exercise 33, p. 412.

1.	a	4. b	6.	b
2.	a	5. a	7.	a
3.	b			

# Exercise 36, p. 414.

1.	T	3.	F	5.	T
2.	T	4.	F	6.	F

#### Exercise 37, p. 414.

- We went shopping after we ate / eating dinner, but the stores were closed. We had to go back home even though we hadn't found what we were looking for.
- I want to explain that I know a lot of grammar, but my problem is that I don't have enough vocabulary.
- 3. When I got lost in the bus station, a kind man helped me. **He** explained how to read the huge bus schedule on the wall, took me to the window to buy a ticket, and showed me **where my bus was.** I will always appreciate his kindness.
- 4. I had never understood the importance of knowing the English language / of knowing English until I worked at a large, international company.

- 5. When I was young, my father found an American woman to teach my brothers and me English, but when we moved to another town, my father wasn't able to find another teacher for another five years.
- 6. I was surprised to see the room that I was given at the dormitory because there wasn't any furniture and it was dirty.
- 7. When I met Mr. Lee for the first time, we played video games at the student center. Even though we couldn't communicate very well, we had a good time.
- 8. Because the United States is a large and big country, it has a diverse population.
- 9. My grammar class started at 10:35. When the teacher came to class, she returned the last quiz to my classmates and me. After that, we had another quiz.
- 10. If a wife has to work, her husband should share the housework with her. If both of them help, the housework can be finished much faster.
- 11. The first time I went skiing, I was afraid to go down the hill, but then I thought to myself, "Why not? Give it a try. You'll make it!" After standing around for ten minutes without moving, I finally decided to go down that hill.

# Chapter 20: Conditional Sentences and Wishes

# Exercise 1, p. 416.

Result clauses:

- 2. I will buy a new laptop computer next month
- 3. I would buy a new laptop today or tomorrow
- 4. I would have bought a new laptop last month

# Exercise 2, p. 416.

- 2. have . . . will send
- 3. had . . . would send
- 4. had . . . would send
- 5. had had . . . would have sent

# Exercise 3, p. 417.

- a. = habitual activities or situations.
- **b.** = a particular activity or situation in the future OR a predictable fact or general truth

# Exercise 5, p. 418.

- 1. will let
- 4. (both correct)
- 2. (both correct)
- 5. (both correct)
- 3. (both correct)
- 6. will recharge

# Exercise 6, p. 418.

- 1. If I'm talking
- 5. If it's not working
- 2. If we get 3. If it's
- 6. If she works 7. If I should get
- 4. If he's planning

# Exercise 7, p. 418.

- 1. a. isn't
  - b. doesn't teach
- 2. a. isn't b. can't

# Exercise 8, p. 419.

- 3. have 6. would go
- 4. had
- 7. is 8. were
- 5. will go

# Exercise 10, p. 419.

- 1. would not be . . . were
- 2. will float / floats
- 3. were . . . would not exist
- 4. doesn't arrive
- 5. were . . . wouldn't want
- 6. would human beings live
- 7. disappears / will disappear
- 8. had ... would have to ... wouldn't be

# Exercise 11, p. 420.

- 1. If there weren't gravity on the earth, ....
- 2. If people had wings, . . . .
- 3. If cars could fly, . . . .
- 4. If children got everything they wanted, . . . .
- 5. If guns didn't exist, . . . .
- 6. If there were enough food on the earth for everyone, . . . .

# Exercise 12, p. 420.

Sentences with a past meaning: 2, 4

# Exercise 13, p. 421.

- 2. he became a soccer player.
- 3. I answered my cell phone while I was driving.
- 4. Professor Stevens didn't give a fair test.

# Exercise 14, p. 421.

Conditional clauses:

- 3. U If the weather had been warm, (past)
- 4. U If I had more money, (present/future)
- 5. U If I had had more money, (past)
- 6. T If I take time off from work, (present/future)
- 7. U If I hadn't had to work, (past)
- 8. U If I didn't have to work, (present/future)

# Exercise 15, p. 422.

- 1. will do
- 2. would do
- 3. would have done

# Exercise 16, p. 422.

- 1. have
- 2. had
- 3. had had
- 4. will go
- 5. would go
- 6. would have gone
- 7. is
- 8. were . . . would visit
- 9. had been . . . would have visited
- 10. had read . . . wouldn't have washed

#### Exercise 17, p. 423.

2.	a.	no	3.	a.	yes	4.		no
	b.	yes		b.	no		b.	yes
	c.	no		C.	yes			

# Exercise 10 p. -24.

- 1. T
- 2. T

# Example, n. -124.

- 1 If I had known ... I would have acted
- 2. If we hadn't believed . . . we wouldn't have felt
- 3. If you hadn't told . . . I wouldn't have believed
- 4. If it had been . . . I wouldn't have been
- 5. If he hadn't lied, I would have had

#### Exercise 21, p. 425.

- 1. were . . . would tell
- 2. had had . . . would have taken
- 3. have . . . will give
- 4. had ... wouldn't have to
- 5. had been . . . wouldn't have bitten
- 6. would we use . . . didn't have had
- 7. doesn't rain . . . will die . . . die . . . will go
- 8. had realized . . . wouldn't have made
- 9. B: would/could have come . . . washed . . . had told A: would have come . . . had called

#### Exercise 22, p. 426.

1.	a. no	3. a. no	4. a. no
	b. no	b. yes	b. yes
2.	a. yes	c. no	
	h no		

#### Exercise 23, p. 426.

4. did	8. had
5. weren't	9. didn't
6. had	10. weren't
7. were	11. hadn't

#### Exercise 25, p. 427.

- 1. b
- 2. a

# Exercise 26, p. 427.

- 2. if you were wearing a coat, you would be cold.
- 3. if he hadn't been driving so fast, he wouldn't have gotten a ticket.
- 4. if I weren't enjoying myself, I would leave.
- 5. if you hadn't been sleeping, I would have told you the news (as soon as I heard it).

#### Exercise 27, p. 428.

- 3. weren't drying
- 5. were having
- 4. hadn't been drying
- 6. hadn't been talking

#### Exercise 28, p. 428.

- 1. earlier . . . now
- 2. now . . . earlier

#### Exercise 29, p. 429.

- 2. But if you hadn't left the door open, the room wouldn't be full of flies.
- 3. But if you had gone to bed at a reasonable hour last night, you wouldn't be tired this morning.
- 4. But if I had finished my report yesterday, I could begin a new project today.
- 5. But if I were you, I would have told him the truth.
- 6. But if I knew something about plumbing, I would/could have fixed the leak in the sink myself.
- 7. But if she had followed the doctor's orders, Anita wouldn't have gotten sick.

#### Exercise 30, p. 429.

- 1. If I were the teacher, I would give fewer tests.
- 2. If I had known about your problem, I would have
- 3. If anyone should come, please tell them I'm asleep.

#### Exercise 31, p. 429.

- 2. Were I you, . . . .
- 3. Had they realized the danger, . . . .
- 4. Were I your teacher, . . . .
- 5. Should you change your mind, ....
- 6. ... had she been better prepared.
- 7. Were I you, . . . .
- 8. ... Should you need to reach me, ....
- 9. ... Had they not dared to be different, ....
- 10. Should there be a global nuclear war, . . . .

#### Exercise 32, p. 430.

1.	b	3.		5. t
2.	d	4.	a	6. 0

# Exercise 33, p. 430.

True sentences: 1, 3

# Exercise 34, p. 431.

- 3. I would have answered the phone if I had heard
- 4. I couldn't have finished the work if you hadn't
- 5. I like to travel. I would have gone to Nepal last summer if I had had enough money.
- 6. If I hadn't stepped on the brakes, I would have hit the child on the bicycle.
- 7. The neighbors probably would have called to complain about the noise if Olga hadn't turned down the volume on the CD player.
- 8. Tarek would have finished his education if he hadn't had to quit school and find a job in order to support his family.

# Exercise 35, p. 431.

- 1. a, b 2. a
- 4. a 5. b
- 3. b

# Exercise 36, p. 431.

- 1. would/could spend
- 2. would/could have sent
- 3. is completed
- 4. weren't snowing
- 5. would have gone
- 6. would be
- 7. hadn't been sleeping
- 8. would forget . . . were not
- 9. A: were not/weren't B: would be sleeping
- 10. were . . . wouldn't be
- 11. would have been
- 12. would not ride
- 13. will tell

# Exercise 40, p. 434.

- 2. were shining
- 8. would lend
- 3. had gone
- 9. were coming
- 4. knew
- 10. weren't going to give
- 5. were wearing
- 11. could meet12. had come
- 6. had7. could
- 13. were lying

# Exercise 42, p. 435.

- 6. had 11. were
- 7. could 12. had
- 8. did 13. did
- 9. had 14. were
- 10. would

# Exercise 43, p. 435.

- 1. now
- 2. soon

# Exercise 44, p. 436.

- 1. (a) Anna wishes Yoko would come to the concert.
  - (b) Anna wishes Yoko would change her mind.
- 2. (a) Helen wishes Judy would pick up after herself, wash her dirty dishes, pick up her clothes, and make her bed.
  - (b) Judy probably wishes Helen didn't nag her to pick up after herself.

# Exercise 45, p. 436.

- 1. she hadn't gone
- 2. A: we didn't have to
  - B: it were
- 3. you had come . . . you had come . . . we would have had
- 4. you would tell
- 5. A: I had worn
  - B: I had known

Chapter 20 ANSWER KEY 515





Able to, 202, 205 (Look on pages 202 and 205.) The numbers following the words listed in the index refer to page numbers in the text.

Continuous tenses, 3fn. (Look at the footnote on page 3.) The letters fn. mean "footnote." Footnotes are at the bottom of a chart or the bottom of a page.

#### A

A/an, 109, 114, 118 Able to, 157, 205 Accustomed to, 302 A couple of, 122 Active verbs, 211, 236 Adjective(s), defined, 439 following being (e.g., being foolish), 16fn. followed by infinitive (e.g., happy to meet), 333 with linking verbs (e.g., taste good), 441 with get (e.g., get hungry), 441 nouns used as (e.g., vegetable soup), 107 used as nouns (e.g., the poor), 93 participial (e.g., amusing/amused), 236 passive verbs (non-progressive), used as, 227 possessive (my, your, etc.), 136, 349fn. preposition combinations with, 449 Adjective clauses, defined, 270, 274 expressions of quantity in, 290 object pronouns (whom, which, that), 273 used to modify pronouns, 283 punctuation of, 285 reduction to adjective phrases, 294 subject pronouns (who, which, that), 33fn., 136, 270 with when, 280 with where, 279 with which to modify whole sentence, 291 with whose, 277, 443 Adjective phrases, 294

Adverb(s), defined, 440 conjunctive (e.g., therefore), 399 midsentence, 440 placement in future perfect, 73fn., 439 Adverb clauses, defined, 365 cause and effect (because, etc.), 373, 390 condition (if, unless, etc.), 377, 381-383, 410, 429 contrast (although, etc.), 406 direct contrast (whereas, while), 376 punctuation of, 365, 400 purpose (so that), 406 reduction to modifying phrases, 387-390, 393 summary (cause and effect, contrast, condition), 411 time (after, before, etc.), 67, 365 words used to introduce, 365 Advise, 313fn. A few, 122, 126 Affect vs. effect, 219fn. Affirmative, 446 Afraid, 253fn. After, 50, 368 A great deal of, 122, 131 Agreement: pronoun with noun, 140-142 subject-verb, 87, 89, 91, 93 verb with paired conjunctions, 358 Ain't, 448fn. A little, 122, 126

All day/morning week, 40	C
All (of), 122, 131, 133fn.	Can, 157, 205
A lot of, 109, 122, 131	ability/possibility, 198
Already, 44fa., 73fa.	degree of certainty, 183, 186
Although, 375, 374fn., 406	permission, 158
Always, 33	in polite requests, 158–159
Am is are being + adjective, 16fn.	Causative verbs (make, have, get), 344
Am is are going to, 176	Clauses, defined, 242, 270 (SEE ALSO
Ana, 352.311	Adjective clauses; Adverb clauses; Nou
4nd, out, or, nor, 352, 361	clauses; Independent clauses; Time
Another, 148	clauses)
Antecedent, 136	Collective nouns, 142
A number of, 89	Commands (SEE Imperative sentences)
Any, 122, 448	Commas:
Apostrophes:	with adjective clauses, 285
in contractions with <i>not</i> , 448	with adjective phrases, 294
in contractions with pronouns and	with adverb clauses, 365, 400
nouns, 136	in combining independent clauses, 361
with possessive nouns, 105	inverted, 258fn.
Appositives (SEE Adjective phrases)	in parallel structure, 354
Articles, 114, 118	in quoted speech, 258
<b>As</b> , 368	with transitions, 399
A/some, 114	with while-clauses, 408fn.
As/so long as, 368	Complex sentences (SEE Adjective clauses;
As soon as, 368	Adverb clauses; Noun clauses)
Auxiliary verbs (SEE <i>Be</i> ; Contractions of	Compound sentences, 361
verbs; Do/does/did; Have/has/had;	Conditional sentences, 416–419, 421,
Modal auxiliaries; Questions)	427, 430
	Conjunctions:
В	combining independent clauses with,
<b>Be</b> , 441	352, 361
auxiliary, 3, 211	coordinating, 352, 354, 361
with modal + -ing, 193	paired (correlative), 358
Be able to, 202, 205	punctuation with, 400
Be accustomed to, 302	subordinating, 365fn.
Be going to, 61, 71, 205	Conjunctive adverb, 399 (SEE ALSO
vs. will, 63	Transitions)
Because, 365, 373	Consequently, 399
vs. even though, 374	Constantly, 33
Because of, 397	Continuous tense, 3fn.
<b>Before</b> , 50, 368	Contractions of verbs, 167
<b>Being</b> + adjective, $16fn$ .	auxiliaries with <i>not</i> , 448
Be supposed to, 173, 204	auxiliaries with pronouns and nouns, 38,
Be used for, 331fn.	42, 447
Be used to, 302	Contractions with pronouns and nouns, 61
Both and, 358	Contrary to fact (SEE Conditional sentences)
But, 352, 361, 406, 408	Coordinating conjunctions, 352, 354, 361
But, 552, 501, 400, 400	Correlative conjunctions, 358fir.
•	Could, 205
with passive (the <i>by</i> -phrase), 213–214, 227	degree of certainty, 180, 183, 186, 189
with reflexive pronouns, 143	to express a possible option 421

past ability, 198	F
in polite requests, 158–159	
in reported speech, 261	(A) Few/(a) little, 122, 126
for suggestions/possibilities, 178	For:
after wish, 434	purpose, 331
Count/noncount nouns, 109–110, 114,	vs. since, 38, 46
122, 126	Forever, 33
expressions of quantity with, 110fn., 122	Forget/remember, 317
expressions of quantity with, 110jn., 122	Frequency adverbs, 440
	Full stop, 361fn
	Future time, 61–73
D	modals to express, 204–205
	present tenses to express, 69, 417
Dangling modifiers (SEE Modifying phrases, reduction of adverb clauses)	time clauses to express, 67
Definite nouns, article use, 114, 118	making wishes in, 436
Dependent clauses, defined, 242, 270 (SEE	(SEE ALSO <b>Be going to</b> ; Verb tenses; <b>Will</b> )
ALSO Adjective clauses; Adverb clauses;	3,000
Noun clauses)	
Despite, 406	G
Direct speech, 258fn.	Generic noun, 114, 140
Do/does/did:	Gerunds, defined, 301
in negatives, 448	after advise, intend, 313fn.
in questions, 442–444	following go, 309
Double negatives, 448	following need, 339
Due to, 397	as objects of prepositions, 302
200 00, 37.	passive/past, 338
	preposition combinations followed by, 302
	as subjects, 322
E	verbs followed by, 307, 317
Each/every, 87, 129	list, 324
Each of, 89, 129	Get:
-Ed forms, 10, 20	causative (e.g., get them to do it), 344
pronunciation, 27	linking (e.g., get hungry), 441
spelling, 10	passive (e.g., get worried), 233
Effect vs. affect, 219fn.	Go + gerund (e.g., go shopping), 309
<i>Either or</i> , 358	Going to, 61, 63, 67, 71, 205
<b>Enough</b> , 335	Got to, pronunciation, 164
Even if, 379	
Even though, 374, 406	н
-Ever words, 268	
Everyone, 128	Habitual past, 200, 205
Every one (of), 89, 129	Had:
vs. everyone, 129fn.	contracted with pronouns, 50
Every time, 368	in reduced speech, 53, 167
Except, 152	Had better, 167, 204
Expressions:	Had to, 164
with other, 152	Have got, 44fn.
of place, 34, 91 of quantity, 89, 122, 131, 290	Have got to, 164, 204 Have, has:
(SEE ALSO Past participle; Verb tenses,	helping vs. main verb, 277fn.
simple past)	in reduced speech, 42
- J	reacted specen, 12

Have/has/had:	modal + be + -ing, 193
auxiliary, 4–5	special expressions followed by (e.g., hav
causative, 344	fun doing), 309
contracted, 447-448	spelling, 10
as main verb, use of do in negative, 18fn.	upon + -ing, 393
Have to:	uses of, 301fn.
lack of necessity, 165	verbs of perception, + -ing (e.g., see her
necessity, 104	walking), 341
phrasal modal, 202, 204	(SEE ALSO Gerunds; Present participle)
Help, 343	In order that, 404fn.
Норе, 176	In order to, 307fn., 317, 331, 404
How, 443	In spite of, 406
However:	Intend, 176, 313fn.
-ever word, 268	Intransitive verbs, defined, 439
transition, 406, 408	not used in passive, 211
How long, 46	Inverted commas, 258fn.
Hyphen, 107	Inverted word order:
	after negatives, 448
I	after only if, 383
	Irregular plural nouns, 101
If, 249, 253 (SEE ALSO Adverb clauses,	Irregular verbs, 20
conditions; Conditional sentences;	list, 20–21
Noun clauses)	It:
<i>If</i> -clauses, 377–378, 416, 430	with infinitives, 322
If not, 382	its vs. it's, 136
Imperative sentences, 261	with noun clauses, 253
Impersonal pronouns, 147	personal pronoun, 136
In case, 381	
Indefinite nouns, articles with, 114, 118	J
Indefinite pronouns, 140	
modified by adjective clauses, 283	Just:
Independent clauses, defined, 242, 270	meaning immediately, 369fn.
combining with conjunctions, 361	with present perfect, 44fn.
Indirect speech, 258fn.	
Infinitives, defined, 313	L
following adjectives, 333	<i>Lay/lie</i> , 450
following be, 173, 204–205	Let + simple form, 343
with causative get, 344	Let's, 177
with it, 322	Linking verbs, 441
with modal auxiliaries, 157	(A) Little/(a) few, 126
following need, 339	Lots of, 122, 131
negative form, 313	-Ly, adverb form, 440
past, passive, 338	
purpose (in order to), 317, 331	M
with question words, 252	
in reported speech, 261fn.	Main clauses (SEE Independent clauses)
as subjects, 322	Make, causative (e.g., make them do it), 344
with toolenough, 335	Many/much, 109
verbs followed by, 313, 317	Many of, 131
list, 325	May, 204 degree of certainty, 180, 183, 186, 189
Information questions, 442–444	permission, 158
-Ing forms:	in polite requests, 158–159
$g_0 + -ing$ , 309	III polite requests, 190 199

<b>Maybe</b> vs. <b>may be</b> , 180jn.	Noun clauses, defined, 242		
Midsentence adverbs, 440	with <i>it</i> , 253		
<i>Might</i> , 204	with question words, 244		
degree of certainty, 180, 183, 186, 189	reduced to infinitive phrases, 261		
in polite requests, 158fn.	reported speech, sequence of tenses, 261		
in reported speech, 261	subjunctive in, 450		
Modal auxiliaries, defined, 157	with that, 253		
passive, 220	with the fact that, 253, 397		
with phrasal modals, 202	with whether/if, 249		
progressive, 193	after wish, 434		
in reported speech, 261	word order in, 244		
summary chart, 204	Now that, 373		
Modify, defined, 439	11000 01100, 3.3		
Modifying phrases:	0		
reduction of adjective clauses, 294			
reduction of adverb clauses, 387–388, 393	Object(s), defined, 439		
Most (of), 89, 122, 131	of a preposition, 274, 302		
Much/many, 109, 122	Object pronouns, 136, 143, 261fn., 274		
Must, 204	Of, in expressions of quantity, 131		
degree of certainty, 180, 183, 186, 189	Once, 368		
necessity, 164	One, impersonal pronoun, 147		
lack of, 165	One + singular noun, 129, 131		
prohibition, 165	One of + plural noun, 89, 129, 131		
	Only if, 383		
N	On the other hand, 408		
	Or, 352		
Need, verb forms following, 339	Or else, 410		
as auxiliary, 165fn.	Other, forms of, 148, 152		
Negative(s), 448	Otherwise, 410, 430		
with main verb have, 18fn.	Ought to, 167, 170fn., 189, 204		
questions, 44, 247fn.	Ought 10, 101, 110jn., 109, 204		
<i>Neither nor</i> , 358			
Nevertheless/nonetheless, 404	р		
<b>No</b> , 448	*		
with count nouns, 122	Paired conjunctions (e.g., both and), 358		
Noncount nouns, 109–110, 114, 122	Parallel structure, 352, 354		
None (of), 89	Participial adjectives (e.g., confusing vs.		
Non-progressive verbs, 16	confused), 236		
passive, 227	Participial phrases (SEE Modifying phrases)		
followed by prepositions, 229	Participles (SEE ALSO Modifying phrases; Past		
<i>Nor</i> , 352	participle, Present participle)		
<i>Not</i> , 448	Passive, form, 211		
Not only but also, 358	<i>by</i> -phrase, 213–214		
Noun(s), defined, 439	with causative verbs (e.g., have it done), 344		
used as adjectives (e.g., vegetable soup), 107	gerunds, (e.g., being done), 338		
collective, 142	with get (e.g., get worried), 233		
count and noncount, 109–110, 114,	infinitives (e.g., to be done), 338		
122, 126	modal auxiliaries, 220		
definite/indefinite/generic, 110, 114,	non-progressive, (e.g., the door is locked), 227		
118, 140	in parallel structure, 225fn.		
possessive, 105	participial adjectives (e.g., aniused		
pronoun agreement with, 140, 142	children), 236		
regular and irregular plurals, 101	Past habit, 200		
105 unu unu mogulai piutuio, 101	2 dot 11do1t, 200		

Past participle(s), 20	1 interpar parts of veros, 20
as adjective (e.g., amused children), 236	Progressive verbs, 3, 14, 33–34, 193, 427
irregular, 20	(SEE ALSO Verb tenses)
in passive, 211, 220, 233	vs. non-progressive, 16
in verb tenses, 4	Pronouns:
(SEE ALSO -Ed forms)	impersonal, 147
Past progressive verbs, 29	indefinite, 140, 283
Past time (SEE Verb tenses)	object, 136, 143, 261fn., 274
Perfect perfect progressive verbs, 4–5, 38	personal, 136
(SEE ALSO Verb tenses)	agreement with nouns, 140, 142
Periods, 192fn., 361, 400	possessive, 136, 277
Personal pronouns, 136	reflexive, 143
agreement with nouns, 140, 142	relative (SEE Adjective clauses)
Phrasal modals, defined, 157	subject, 33fn., 136, 270
passive, 220	Pronunciation:
Phrasal verb, defined, 307fn.	-ed, 27
Phrases, defined, 242fn.	got to, 164
prepositional, 440	had in reduced speech, 53
reduction of adjective clauses, 294	have/has in reduced speech, 42
reduction of adverb clauses, 387–390, 393	in informal speech, 164, 167
reduction of noun clauses, 249	-s/-es, 85
Place expressions with progressive verbs, 34	Punctuation:
Plan, 176	adjective clauses, 285
Plenty of, 122	adjective chauses, 294
Plural nouns, 85, 101	adverb clauses, 365, 400
Polite requests, 158–160	conjunctions, 400
Possessive:	independent clauses, 361
in adjective clauses (whose), 277, 443	parallel structure, 348
nouns (e.g., John's book), 105	quoted speech, 258
pronouns/adjectives ( <i>mine</i> , <i>my</i> , etc.),	transitions, 399–400
136, 277	(SEE ALSO Apostrophes; Commas; Hyphen
in questions (whose), 443	Periods; Quotation marks; Semicolons
Prefer, 317fn.	remous, Quotation marks, Semicolons
Preposition(s):	
combinations followed by gerunds, 302	Q
combinations with adjectives and verbs, 449 as connectives, 411	Quantity (SEE Expressions of quantity) Questions:
	information, 442–444
list, 440	
following non-progressive passive verbs, 229	negative, 445 word order in, 247fn.
Prepositional phrases, 440 Present participle(s), 20	statements used as, $48fn$ .
as adjective (e.g., <i>amusing story</i> ), 236	tag, 446
, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	word order in, 442
vs. gerund, 301fn.	
in reduction of adjective clauses, 294	yes/no, 442, 445 Question words:
in reduction of adverb clauses, 388 special expressions followed by (e.g., have	with infinitives, 252
fun doing), 310	in noun clauses, 244 in questions, 443–444
spelling of -ing forms, 10	with reduced has/have, 42
with verbs of perception (e.g., watch	Quotation marks, 258
someone doing), 341	Quotation marks, 238  Quoted speech, 258
in verb tenses, 3, 5	Quoted speech, 236
Present time (SEE Verb tenses)	

R	in imperative sentences, 261
Raise/rise, 450	following let and help, 343
Reduction:	with modal auxiliaries, 157
of adjective clauses, 294	subjunctive, 450
of adverb clauses, 387–390, 393	with verbs of perception, 341
of noun clauses, 261	Simple tenses, 2, 14, 29 (SEE ALSO Verb
Reflexive pronouns, 143	tenses)
Regret, 317	Since:
Regular plural nouns, 101	meaning because, 373
Regular verbs, 20	duration of time, 46, 368
pronunciation of -ed endings, 27	Since vs. for, 38
Relative clauses, 270 (SEE ALSO Adjective	Singular/plural (SEE Agreement; Count/
clauses)	noncount nouns; Noun, regular and
Relative pronouns, 270	irregular plurals; Nouns, used as
Remember/forget, 317	adjectives; -S/-es)
Repeated action in the past (would,	<b>So</b> , conjunction, 361, 399
<del>-</del>	So long as, 368
used to), 200 Penertad areach, 50, 55, 261	Some, 109, 114
Reported speech, 50, 55, 261	Some/any, 122
Restrictive/nonrestrictive, 285fn.	Some of, 89, 131
Run-on sentence, 361	So that, 404
	So that, 402
S	Spelling:
<i>-S/-es</i> , 85, 87, 101, 105, 109, 439	-ed/-ing, 10
Say vs. tell, 261fn.	-s/-es, 85
-Self/-selves,143	Statements, used as questions, 48fn.
Semicolons, 400fn.	Stative verbs, defined, 16fn.
Sentences:	Stop, 317
affirmative, 448	Subject pronouns, 136
complex (SEE Adjective clauses; Adverb	Subjects, verbs, objects, 439
clauses; Noun clauses)	Subject-verb agreement, 87
compound (SEE Conjunctions, combining	with expressions of quantity, 89
independent clauses with)	irregularities in, 93
conditional, 416–417, 419, 421, 427, 430	with there + be, 91
inverted word order in, 429	Subjunctive, 450
imperative, 261	Subordinate clauses (SEE Adjective clauses;
interrogative (SEE Questions)	Adverb clauses; Noun clauses)
negative, 448	Subordinating conjunctions, defined, 365fn.
simple (SEE Subjects, verbs, objects)	Such as, 450
Sequence of tenses in noun clauses, 261	Such that/so that, 402
Set/sit, 450	Superlative, $131fn$ .
Several, 122, 131	Suppose, 172fn.
Shall, 205	
for suggestions, 177	Supposed to, 172fn., 173, 204
Should, 204	
advisability, 167	
in conditional sentences, 417	
degree of certainty, 189	T
past form, 170	Tag questions, 446
in reported speech, 261	in imperative sentences, 261
for suggestions/advice, 178	Tell vs. say, 261fn.
Simple form of a verb, 20	Tenses (SEE Verb tenses)
with causative verbs, 344	Than, 33fn.
	Truit, Jojii.

That:	past perfect progressive, 5, 55
in adjective clauses, 270, 273	past progressive, 3, 29
in noun clauses, 253	present perfect, 4, 38
The, 114, 118	present perfect progressive, 5, 46, 213fr
The number of, 89	present progressive, 3, 14, 69
<i>There</i> + <i>be</i> , 91	vs. present perfect progressive, 46
Therefore, 399	sequence of, in noun clauses, 261
They, impersonal pronoun, 147	simple future, 2
Think about, 176	simple past, 2, 20, 29
Though, 374fn., 406	simple present, 2, 14, 69
<i>Till</i> , 368	summary, 6–7
Time clauses, defined, 67	with <i>wish</i> , 434, 436
changed to phrases, 388	Very + few/little, 126
future, tense use in, 67	Very/too, 335
with since, 373	Voiced and voiceless sounds, 27
words used to introduce, 365	
Too, after way/far, 128fn.	
Too/very, 335	**7
Transitions, 399–400, 411	W
Transitive/intransitive, defined, 439	Was/were in conditional sentences, 419
in passive, 211	Was/were going to, 176
with troublesome verbs (e.g., lay/lie), 450	Way/far + too, 128fn.
<i>Try</i> , 317	What, 444
	What $+$ a form of $do$ , 444
U	What kind of, 444
U	When, 29, 280, 368, 443
Uncountable nouns (SEE Noncount nouns)	Whenever, 368
<i>Unless</i> , 377, 382	Where, 279, 443
<i>Until</i> , 368	Whereas, 376fn.
Upon + -ing, 393	Whether, 249
<i>Used to</i> , 200, 205	Whether or not, 379
	Which, 270, 273, 291, 444
V	While, 368, 376, 383, 408
	Who/whom, 270, 273, 443
Verbs, defined, 439	Whose, 277, 443
causative, 344	Why, 443
with final -s/-es, 85	Why don't, 177
regular, irregular, 20	Will, 204
irregular, list, 20–21	vs. be going to, 63
of perception, 341	conditional, 417
transitive, intransitive, 211, 439, 450	degree of certainty, 189
Verbals (SEE Gerunds; Infinitives, verbs	future, 61
followed by)	negative, 61
Verb tenses:	in polite requests, 159
continuous, 3fn.	Wish, 434, 436
future perfect, 4, 73	Word order:
future perfect progressive, 5, 73, 213fn.	in adjective phrases, 294fn.
future progressive, 3, 71	in inverted questions:
overview, 1	after negatives, 448
in passive, 211, 213–214, 220, 227, 229,	after only if, 383
233, 344	in negative questions, 247fn.
past perfect, 4, 50, 53, 213fn.	in questions, 443–444

# Would, 205

in conditional sentences, 416, 428 for a desired result, 421 in polite requests, 159–160 repeated action in the past, 200 in reported speech, 261 with wish, 436

Would have, in informal speech, 421fn., 434fn.

Would rather, 201

Would you mind, 160

#### Y

-Y, final, spelling:
with -ed, -ing, 10
with -s/-es, 85
Yes/no questions, 442, 445
Yet, 44fn.
conjunction, 361, 406
You, impersonal pronoun, 147, 159









#### **AUDIO CD TRACKING LIST**

SD 1	TRACK	EXERCISE	CD 2	TRACK	EXERCISE
Introduction	1 2	Exercise 4, p. 2	Chapter 12	1 2	Exercise 11, p. 248 Exercise 41, p. 264
Chapter 1	3	Exercise 6, p. 3	Chapter 13	3	Exercise 5, p. 271
	4 5	Exercise 8, p. 4 Exercise 15, p. 9	•	4	Exercise 19, p. 278
	6	Exercise 18, p. 12		5 6	Exercise 21, p. 279 Exercise 29, p. 281
Chapter 2	7 8	Exercise 5, p. 15 Exercise 12, p. 22		7 8	Exercise 33, p. 284 Exercise 36, p. 286
	9	Exercise 14, p. 23		9	Exercise 39, p. 288
	10 11	Exercise 16, p. 24 Exercise 18, p. 25		10 11	Exercise 52, p. 295 Exercise 56, p. 297
	12 13	Exercise 19, p. 25	Chapter 14	12	Exercise 6, p. 305
	14	Exercise 20, p. 26 Exercise 21, p. 27		13 14	Exercise 13, p. 308 Exercise 17, p. 309
	15 16	Exercise 22, p. 27 Exercise 29, p. 32		15	Exercise 22, p. 312
Chapter 3	17	Exercise 2, p. 37		16	Exercise 31, p. 318
Ghapter 3	18	Exercise 10, p. 41	Chapter 15	17 18	Exercise 14, p. 336 Exercise 36, p. 348
	19 20	Exercise 11, p. 42 Exercise 18, p. 48		19	Exercise 39, p. 350
	21 22	Exercise 20, p. 49 Exercise 25, p. 52	Chapter 16	20 21	Exercise 5, p. 354 Exercise 14, p. 359
	23	Exercise 26, p. 53		22	Exercise 16, p. 360
	24 25	Exercise 27, p. 53 Exercise 28, p. 54		23 24	Exercise 19, p. 362 Exercise 21, p. 363
	26	Exercise 33, p. 58	Chapter 17	25	Exercise 11, p. 372
Chapter 4	27 28	Exercise 3, p. 61 Exercise 5, p. 62	Chapter 18	26	Exercise 16, p. 395
	29	Exercise 6, p. 62		27	Exercise 18, p. 396
01 . "	30	Exercise 12, p. 66	Chapter 19	28 29	Exercise 33, p. 412 Exercise 36, p. 414
Chapter 5	31 32	Exercise 4, p. 78 Exercise 8, p. 80		30	Exercise 38, p. 415
Chapter 6	33	Exercise 3, p. 85	Chapter 20	31 32	Exercise 6, p. 418 Exercise 19, p. 424
	34 35	Exercise 5, p. 86 Exercise 9, p. 88		33	Exercise 20, p. 424
	36	Exercise 15, p. 91		34 35	Exercise 22, p. 426 Exercise 32, p. 430
Chapter 7	37 38	Exercise 14, p. 108 Exercise 23, p. 117		36 37	Exercise 35, p. 431 Exercise 45, p. 436
	39	Exercise 30, p. 121		,	2.101c1c10c 15, p. 150
Chapter 8	40 41	Exercise 39, p. 128  Exercise 10, p. 139			
Chapter 5	42	Exercise 20, p. 146			
	43 44	Exercise 30, p. 151 Exercise 34, p. 154	ALC: U		
Chapter 9	45	Exercise 7, p. 161			
	46 47	Exercise 17, p. 166 Exercise 24, p. 169			
	48	Exercise 26, p. 170			
Chapter 10	49 50	Exercise 9, p. 184 Exercise 21, p. 192			
	51	Exercise 31, p. 199			
	52 53	Exercise 33, p. 200 Exercise 44, p. 208			
Chapter 11	54	Exercise 10, p. 216			
	55 56	Exercise 15, p. 219 Exercise 22, p. 224	13 1		
	57	Exercise 30, p. 230			
	58 59	Exercise 43, p. 237 Exercise 44, p. 238			
	60	Exercise 47, p. 239			

# Irregular Verbs: An Alphabetical Reference List (continued)

Simple Form	Simple Past	Past Participle	Simple Form	Simple Past	Past Participle
rise	rose	risen	spring•	sprang/sprung	sprung
run	ran	run	stand	stood	stood
say	said	said	steal	stole	stolen
see	saw	seen	stick	stuck	stuck
seek•	sought	sought	sting•	stung	stung
sell	sold	sold	stink•	stank/stunk	stunk
send	sent	sent	strike•	struck	struck/stricken
set	set	set	strive•	strove/strived	striven/strived
shake	shook	shaken	string	strung	strung
shed•	shed	shed	swear	swore	sworn
shine	shone/shined	shone/shined	sweep	swept	swept
shoot	shot	shot	swell	swelled	swelled/swollen
show	showed	shown/showed	swim	swam	swum
shrink•	shrank/shrunk	shrunk	swing•	swung	swung
shut	shut	shut	take	took	taken
sing	sang	sung	teach	taught	taught
sink•	sank	sunk	tear	tore	torn
sit	sat	sat	tell	told	told
sleep	slept	slept	think	thought	thought
slide•	slid	slid	throw	threw	thrown
slit•	slit	slit	thrust•	thrust	thrust
smell	smelled/smelt	smelled/smelt	understand	understood	understood
sneak	sneaked/snuck	sneaked/snuck	undertake	undertook	undertaken
speak	spoke	spoken	upset	upset	upset
speed	sped/speeded	sped/speeded	wake	woke/waked	woken
spell	spelled/spelt	spelled/spelt	wear	wore	worn
spend	spent	spent	weave•	wove	woven
spill	spilled/spilt	spilled/spilt	weep•	wept	wept
spin•	spun	spun	win	won	won
spit	spit/spat	spit/spat	wind•	wound	wound
split•	split	split	withdraw	withdrew	withdrawn
spoil spread•	spoiled/spoilt spread	spoiled/spoilt spread	write	wrote	written

#### •Definitions of some of the less frequently used irregular verbs:

bet wager; offer to pay	forecast predict a future	sting cause pain with a
money if one loses	occurrence	sharp object (e.g.,
bid make an offer of money,	forsake abandon or desert	pin) or bite (e.g., by
usually at a public sale	grind crush, reduce to small	an insect)
bind fasten or secure	pieces	stink have a bad or foul
breed bring animals together	seek look for	smell
to produce young	shed drop off or get rid of	strike hit something with
broadcast send information by	shrink become smaller	force
radio waves; announce	sink move downward, often under water	strive try hard to achieve a goal
burst explode; break suddenly	slide glide smoothly; slip or	swing move back and forth
cast throw	skid	thrust push forcibly; shove
cling hold on tightly	slit cut a narrow opening	weave form by passing pieces
creep crawl close to the ground; move slowly	spin turn rapidly around a central point	of material over and under each
and quietly	split divide into two or	other (as in making
deal distribute playing	more parts	baskets, cloth)
cards to each person;	spread push out in all	weep cry
give attention to (deal with)	directions (e.g., butter on bread, news)	wind (sounds like <i>find</i> ) turn around and around
flee escape; run away	spring jump or rise suddenly	
fling throw with force	from a still position	

# UNDERSTANDING AND USING ENGLISH GRAMMAR

**Fourth Edition** 

Betty S. Azar Stacy A. Hagen with Answer Key

A classic developmental skills text for intermediate to advanced English language learners, *Understanding and Using English Grammar* is a comprehensive reference grammar as well as a stimulating and teachable classroom text.

While keeping the same basic approach and material as in earlier editions, the fourth edition more fully develops communicative and interactive language-learning activities. Some of the new features are:

- Innovative warm-up exercises that precede the grammar charts and introduce points to be taught
- Structure-based listening exercises ranging from casual speech to academic content
- Academic readings that highlight the targeted grammar structures
- Greatly expanded speaking practice with extensive pair, group, and class work
- Corpus-informed syllabus that reflects the discourse patterns of spoken and written English
- Audio CDs and listening script in the back of the Student Book

# UNDERSTANDING AND USING ENGLISH GRAMMAR, Fourth Edition, includes:

Student Book, now with Audio CDs

Full Edition: ISBN 0-13-233333-3 978-0-13-233333-7 Full Edition with Answer Key: ISBN 0-13-233331-7

N 0-13-233331-7 978-0-13-233331-3

Volume A: ISBN 0-13-233330-9 978-0-13-233330-6 Volume B: ISBN 0-13-233332-5 978-0-13-233332-0

Workbook, consisting of self-study exercises for independent work

Full edition: ISBN 0-13-241543-7 978-0-13-241543-9 Volume A: ISBN 0-13-241544-5 978-0-13-241544-6 Volume B: ISBN 0-13-241545-3 978-0-13-241545-3

Teacher's Guide with PowerPoint CD-ROM, with teaching suggestions,

grammar notes, expansion activities, and answer key

ISBN 0-13-205211-3 978-0-13-205211-5

 $\boldsymbol{\mathit{Test Bank}},$  consisting of quizzes, tests, and mid-term and final exams

ISBN 0-13-205214-8 978-0-13-205214-6

**Chartbook**, a reference text consisting of only the grammar charts

ISBN 0-13-205210-5 978-0-13-205210-8

Student Book Answer Key

ISBN 0-13-241546-1 978-0-13-241546-0



AzarGrammar.com a teacher-support website



for online interactive software, go to



Azar/Grammar Exchange Companion website http://www.longman.com/azar http://www.longman.com/grammarexchange

